Latvian

for Missionaries

Latvian
for Missionaries

Latvian, May 2018

© 2018 by Intellectual Reserve, Inc. All Rights Reserved.
This document may contain proprietary intellectual property that may not be used or shared without proper written consent.

Contents

How to Use This Book vi
Grammar Task Index viii

Basics
1 Alphabet and Pronunciation 1
2 Parts of Speech 9
3 Latvian Cases 15
4 Nouns 21
Asking About and Expressing a State of Being 29
5 Nominative Case 30
6 "To Be" *(Būt, Kļūt)* 33
7 Accusative Case 38
8 Asking Questions 43
Review: State of Being 51
Asking About and Expressing Possession or Ownership 55
9 Genitive Case 56
10 Pronouns 62
Review: Possession or Ownership 72
Asking About and Describing Objects, People, and Their Characteristics 75
11 Adjectives 76
12 Comparatives and Superlatives 81
13 *Kas, Kurš, Kāds* 86
14 Reflexive Verbs 92
Review: Describing Objects and People 98
Asking About and Expressing Desire, Need, Preference, Intention, or Purpose 101
15 Dative Case 102
16 Dative Construction 109
17 Debitive Mood 116
18 Imperative Mood 121
Review: Expressing Desire, Need, Preference, etc. 125
Asking About and Describing Actions and Events 127
19 Verbs 128
20 Verb Prefixes and Synonyms 136
21 Perfect Tense 142
22 Passive Voice 146
23 Adverbs 150
24 Prepositions 155
Review: Actions and Events 160
Narrating Experiences and Telling Stories 163
25 Participles 164
26 Adverb Participles 169
Review: Narrating Experiences and Telling Stories 175

Asking and Answering Questions of Time, Date, and Location 177
27 Telling Time 178
28 Days, Dates, Years 182
29 Locative Case 187
Review: Time, Date, and Location 192
Asking and Answering Questions of Quality and Quantity 195
30 Numbers 196
31 Duration, Frequency, and Distance 200
Review: Quality and Quantity 203
Asking and Answering Questions of Cause and Effect 205
32 Conditional Mood 206
33 Conjunctions 210
Review: Cause and Effect 217
Asking and Answering Questions of Judgment, Doubt, Emotion, Possibility, and Influence 221
34 Relative Mood 222
35 Transitive and Intransitive Verbs 225
Review: Judgment, Doubt, Emotion, Possibility, and Influence 228
Missionary Tasks 230
Scenario Practice 245
Grammar Glossary 251
Answers 255
Index 285

How Do I Use This Book?

What is This Book?

Preach My Gospel teaches that you should focus your language study "on improving your ability to communicate and teach during scheduled activities" (129). This book is designed to provide you with resources to help you create your own effective language study plan. The grammar principles are organized according to the purpose for communicating gospel topics and missionary tasks to help you choose tasks to learn as you create your own language study plan. Use this book to identify which grammar principles you need to understand to help you address the needs of your investigators and invite them to come to Christ.

This book is not simply to teach you grammar, but more importantly to help you prepare to teach the gospel of Jesus Christ with greater power and clarity in your mission language (*Preach My Gospel*, 127).

Features of This Book

- **Grammar-Task Index.** Easy access to specific grammar principles that can help as you teach and prepare to teach each lesson from *Preach My Gospel* and complete various missionary tasks.
- **Tabs.** Black tabs on the sides of the pages will help you find principles of communication quickly (e.g., possession, describing, expressing, time/location, etc.).
- **Explanations.** Explanations are made up of sentence equations, tables, and examples that will help you understand grammar principles.
- **Activities.** Activities are designed to help you create a language study plan as directed in chapter 7 of *Preach My Gospel*. You don't have to do all the activities, and you don't have to do them in any particular order. It is up to you to choose activities that will help you learn new vocabulary and grammar principles, practice your ability to listen, and improve your ability to read and write. These activities can be done in personal study, with your companion, or with native speakers.
- **Missionary Tasks.** Basic sentence structures and vocabulary needed for common missionary tasks.
- **Scenario Practice.** These are sample situations and conversations that you may experience as a missionary. Practicing these situations will prepare you to respond to members and investigators' questions or handle challenging situations.
- **Grammar Glossary.** Occasionally you may find a few English grammar terms that you don't recognize or understand. The grammar glossary is designed to be a quick reference to common grammar terms.
- **Answer key.** Answers to most activities can be found in the back of the book listed by section.

Remember:

"As your ability to speak the language grows, people will listen more to what you say than to how you say it. . . You will be better able to respond to the needs of investigators and the promptings of the Spirit" (*Preach My Gospel*, 128). You can receive the gift of tongues as you do all that you can to learn the language, trust in the Spirit to guide you, and have faith that you can be given the gift of tongues (*Preach My Gospel*, 133).

Ask Yourself This as You Study

- What am I learning about the structure of my mission language? What can the grammar teach me about the people and their culture?
- How can mastering this grammar principle help me to invite others to come unto Christ and receive the restored gospel?
- How do I invite the Spirit to help me learn grammar?
- How am I using my language study time in a way that will help me to improve my ability to communicate with the people?

Feedback

We want to know what you think about the book and how it has impacted your language learning experience!

- How are you using this book to learn your mission language?
- What about this book is most helpful to you? Why?
- Do you have additional suggestions?
    - grammar principles
    - activities
    - corrections

Send a quick message with your mission language in the subject line to formissionaries@mtc.byu.edu.

Grammar-Task Index

The grammar-task index is intended to be a quick reference so you can focus your language study improving your ability to teach specific gospel principles or perform missionary tasks. Because the content in each of the lessons in *Preach My Gospel* is different, your need to understand specific grammar principles will vary based on the lesson you will be teaching. You can **use this list to help you determine which grammar principles to study based on the needs of your investigators and planned daily activities.**

The grammar principles are divided into two columns, basic and additional, so you can study grammar principles based on your understanding of the language.

Principle/Task	Basic	Additional
Lesson 1		
God Is Our Loving Heavenly Father	Nominative Case; Pronouns; "To Be" (*Būt*, *Kļūt*); Verbs	Adjectives; Perfect Tense
The Gospel Blesses Families	Accusative Case; Latvian Cases; Nouns	Conjunctions; Comparatives and Superlatives
Heavenly Father Reveals His Gospel in Every Dispensation	Genitive Case; Conjunctions; Dative Case; Verbs	Locative Case; Adverbs
The Savior's Earthly Ministry and Atonement	Verbs; Accusative Case; Prepositions	Passive Voice; Genitive Case; Telling Time
The Great Apostasy	Passive Voice; Participles; Verbs	Adjectives and Demonstratives; Duration, Frequency, Distance
The Restoration of the Gospel of Jesus Christ through Joseph Smith	Prepositions; Passive Voice; *Kas, Kurš, Kāds*; Conjunctions; Adjectives and Demonstratives	Days, Dates, Years; Transitive and Intransitive; Verbs
The Book of Mormon: Another Testament of Jesus Christ	"To Be" (*Būt*, *Kļūt*); Prepositions; Adjectives and Demonstratives	Imperative Mood; Genitive Case
Pray to Know the Truth through the Holy Ghost	Parts of Speech; Debitive Mood; Dative Case; Accusative Case	Adverbs; Conditional Mood; Latvian Cases; Verb Prefixes and Synonyms
Lesson 2		
Pre-Earth Life: God's Purpose and Plan for Us	Asking Questions; Prepositions; Conjunctions; Dative Construction	Verbs; Genitive Case; Duration, Frequency, Distance
The Creation	Conditional Mood; Locative Case	Adverb Participles; Debitive Mood
Agency and the Fall of Adam and Eve	Conjunctions; Verbs; Participles; Adverbs; Accusative Case	Adjectives; Nouns; Prepositions; Conditional Mood
Our Life on Earth	"To Be" (*Būt*, *Kļūt*); Genitive Case; Conjunctions; Pronouns	Passive Voice; Adverbs; Dative Case
The Atonement	Verbs; Prepositions; Adjectives; Accusative Case; Genitive Case	Perfect Tense; Nouns; Conjunctions; Participles
The Spirit World	Comparatives and Superlatives; Debitive Mood; *Kas, Kurš, Kāds*; Perfect Tense	Reflexive Verbs; Participles; Adverbs
The Resurrection, Judgment, and Immortality	Reflexive Verbs; Participles; Passive Voice; Prepositions; Nominative Case	Dative Construction; Asking Questions; Locative Case
Kingdoms of Glory	Comparatives and Superlatives; Reflexive Verbs; Adjectives; Genitive Case	Conjunctions; Passive Voice; Participles; *Kas, Kurš, Kāds*
Lesson 3		
Through Christ We Can Be Cleansed from Sin	Passive Voice; Prepositions; Verbs; Participles	Adverbs; Accusative Case; Adjectives
Faith in Jesus Christ	Dative Case; Conjunctions; Pronouns; Verbs	Participles; Adjectives

Repentance	Debitive Mood; Imperative Mood; Accusative Case; Adjectives	Adverbs; Genitive Case; Participles
Baptism, Our First Covenant	Transitive and Intransitive; Passive Voice; Reflexive Verbs; Imperative Mood	Parts of Speech; Nominative Case; Perfect Tense; Conjunctions
The Gift of the Holy Ghost	Genitive Case; Adjectives; Verbs	Accusative Case; Conjunctions
Endure to the End	Imperative Mood; Dative Case; Adverb Participles;	Prepositions; Adverbs
Lesson 4		
Obedience	Asking Questions; Imperative Mood; Dative Case	Dative Construction; Adjectives
Pray Often	Imperative Mood; Dative Case; Verbs; Accusative Case	Conditional Mood; Locative Case; Pronouns
Study the Scriptures	Imperative Mood; Participles; Conditional Mood	Adjectives; Dative Construction; Adverbs Participles
Keep the Sabbath Day Holy	Days, Dates, Years; Imperative Mood; Telling Time; Participles	Transitive and Intransitive; Accusative Case
Baptism and Confirmation	Asking Questions; Verbs; Days, Dates, Years; Passive Voice	Pronouns
Follow the Prophet	Imperative Mood; Dative Case; *Kas, Kurš, Kāds*	Participles; Dative Construction; Prepositions
Keep the Ten Commandments	Numbers; Imperative Mood	Conditional Mood
Live the Law of Chastity	Asking Questions; Debitive Mood; Accusative Case	Verbs; Adjectives; Pronouns
Obey the Word of Wisdom	Asking Questions; Perfect Tense; Imperative Mood; Adjectives	Adjectives; Conditional Mood; Conjunctions
Keep the Law of Tithing	Numbers; Adjectives; Accusative Case	Conditional Mood; Prepositions; Verbs
Observe the Law of the Fast	Prepositions; Dative Construction; Accusative Case; Days, Dates, Years	Parts of Speech; Conjunctions
How to Donate Tithes and Offerings	Numbers; Verbs; Passive Voice	Prepositions; Adverbs
Obey and Honor the Law	Debitive Mood; Passive Voice; Dative Construction	Imperative Mood
Lesson 5		
Priesthood and Auxiliaries	Nominative Case; Adjectives; Prepositions	Passive Voice
Missionary Work	Passive Voice; Dative Case; Verbs	Prepositions, Accusative Case
Eternal Marriage	Adjectives; Prepositions; Participles	Duration, Frequency, Distance; Reflexive Verbs
Temples and Family History	Duration, Frequency, Distance; Conditional Mood; Debitive Mood; Verbs	Locative Case; Adjectives; Days, Dates, Years; Genitive Case
Service	Dative Case; Pronouns; Prepositions	Adverb Participles; Participles
Teaching and Learning in the Church	Conditional Mood; Dative Case; Accusative Case	Conjunctions; Adverbs
Endure to the End	Dative Case; Adverb Participles; "To Be" (*Būt*, *Kļūt*); Adverb	Verbs
Missionary Tasks		
Ask Questions	Asking Questions; *Kas,Kurš,Kāds*; Dative Construction	Verb Prefixes and Synonyms; Conjunctions; Pronouns
Conduct a Meeting	Accusative Case; Pronouns; Telling Time; Days, Dates, Years	Conditional Mood
Explain Priesthood Ordinances	Adjectives; Nominative Case; Accusative Case; Verbs	Adverb Participles; Passive Voice; Asking Questions

Extend Commitment Invitations	Asking Questions; Conditional Mood; Accusative Case; Dative Case	Adjectives; Passive Voice
Follow Up on Commitments	Asking Questions; Perfect Tense; Verbs; Accusative Case	*Kas, Kurš, Kāds;* Conjunctions
Get to Know Someone	Asking Questions; Dative Construction; Nominative Case	Prepositions; Accusative Case
Give Directions	Duration, Frequency, Distance; Prepositions	Imperative Mood
Help People Resolve Their Concerns	Asking Questions; Conditional Mood; Pronouns; Adjectives; Conjunctions	Accusative Case; Dative Case
Make a Telephone Call	Numbers; Asking Questions; Conditional Mood	Pronunciation
Make Appointments	Asking Questions; Days Dates, Years; Telling Time	Duration, Frequency, Distance; Conditional Mood
Make Purchases	Asking Questions; Numbers; Imperative Mood; Accusative Case	Adjectives; Nouns
Meet Someone	"To Be" (*Būt*, *Kļūt*); Nominative Case; Accusative Case; Adjectives	Dative Construction
Obtain Referrals	Asking Questions; Conditional Mood; Pronouns	*Kas, Kurš, Kāds;* Accusative Case
Offer a Prayer	Accusative Case; Dative Case; Imperative Mood; Adjectives	Conditional Mood; Verb Prefixes and Synonyms
Perform Priesthood Ordinances	Accusative Case; Nominative Case; Prepositions	Conjunctions
Plan Daily and Weekly Activities	Telling Time; Days, Dates, Years; Duration, Frequency, Distance	Locative Case; Asking Questions
Share an Experience	Transitive and Intransitive; Participles; Conjunctions	Relative Mood; Verbs; Conditional Mood
Talk with Everyone	"To Be" (*Būt*, *Kļūt*); Dative Construction; Asking Questions	Transitive and Intransitive; Conditional Mood
Teach Others How to Pray	Verbs; Conjunctions; Imperative Mood; Accusative Case; Prepositions	Asking Questions; Dative Case
Testify	Conjunctions; Verbs; Accusative Case	Adjectives; Genitive Case; Prepositions
Use the Scriptures	Imperative Mood; Accusative Case; Conditional Mood	Prepositions; Locative Case; Conjunctions

Alphabet and Pronunciation

Explanation

The Latvian alphabet has 33 letters; most of these are familiar to English speakers, with just a few additional letters. Words in Latvian are almost always pronounced just as they are spelled. The emphasis for each word is placed on the first syllable.

The Alphabet

The following chart shows each Latvian letter accompanied by the approximate sound, some example words, and an explanation.

Letter	Sound	Examples	Explanation
a	w**a**ter	avots, galds	Vowels are always formed with the mouth wide open. Think short and sharp.
ā	f**a**ther	māsa, grāmata	"Long a" (ā) makes the same sound as "a," but is held longer in duration.
b	**b**all	bērns, brālis	Pronounced the same as an English "b."
c	bi**ts**	cukurs, cerība	Press tip of the tongue to back of upper teeth and release to make an explosive "ts." Never pronounced as a hard "c" as in "**c**at" or as a soft "c" as in "**c**ertain."
č	**ch**urch	četri, čakls	Pronounced the same as an English "ch."
d	**d**og	dāvana, daba	Pronounced the same as an English "d."
e	m**e**n f**ea**ther	zemes, eja (narrow) ezers (wide)	Usually pronounced with the mouth narrow (narrow e) as in "m**a**ny," but can be pronounced with the mouth wide (wide e) as in "b**a**t."
ē	(long **e**)	mērķis, ēst (narrow) vētra, tēvs (wide)	"Long e" (ē) makes the same sound as "e," but is held longer in duration.
f	**f**ire	filma, frāze	Used only in cognates (words of foreign origin).
g	**g**ood	laimīgs, gars	Pronounced the same as an English "g." But never as soft "g," as in "**g**eneral."
ģ	a**di**eu (French), **du**ty (British)	ģimene, reliģija	Press the front portion, not just the tip, of the tongue to the roof of your mouth and make a "g"/"dy" sound. Note: it is much softer than the English "dy" sound.
h	**h**ouse	humors, hipijs	A guttural "h," but not as much as a German "h." Used in cognates.
i	hone**y**	ideja, divi	A very short and sharp version of the English "ee" sound.
ī	**ea**t, **e**-mail	ticība, īsts	"Long i" (ī) makes the same sound as "i", but is held longer in duration. Like "ee."
j	**y**es	Jēzus, jauns	Always pronounced as "y," never as "j" as in "**j**ob."
k	**k**ing	kas, grēks	Always pronounced as a hard "k," as in "**k**ite" or "cat."
ķ	**tu**na (British) cal**c**ulator	ķēniņš, ķermenis	Press the front half, not just the tip, of the tongue to the roof of your mouth (where unpalatalized k is otherwise pronounced) and make a "k"/"ty" sound. Note: it is much softer than the English "ty" sound.
l	**l**ove	labi, lepns	Pronounced the same as an English "l."
ļ	mi**ll**ion	ļoti, kļūt	Pronounced as an English "ly" sound, but only one syllable and much softer. Semi-flattened tongue is pressed against teeth and outwards/laterally, then pulled back into the mouth.
m	**m**o**m**	miers, māte	Pronounced the same as an English "m."

n	**n**ice	nāve, nams	Pronounced the same as an English "n."
ņ	ca**ny**on, o**n**ion	ņemt, evaņģēlijs	Press front half of tongue to the roof of the mouth and make "ny" sound.
o	**wha**t, b**oa**	ola, roka oktobris, omlete	Pronounce "o" as if you had a Bostonian accent. If in a cognate, pronounce as "**oa**k" (but shorter and sharper).
p	**p**ipe	pestīt, pravietis	Pronounced the same as an English "p."
r	(rolled)	runāt, rīts	Pronounced with a quick flap of the tongue against the roof of the mouth. It is similar to a Spanish "r," but only rolled once or twice.
s	**s**ong	salds, sirds	Pronounced the same as an English "s."
š	**sh**oe	pestīšana, šodien	Pronounced the same as an English "sh."
t	**t**each	templis, tikai	Pronounced the same as an English "t."
u	s**oo**n	uguns, kartupelis	A very short and sharp version of the English "oo" sound.
ū	m**oo**n	ūdens, kļūt	"Long u" (ū) makes the same sound as "u," but is held longer in duration. Pronounced as "oo."
v	**v**ery	valoda, vara	Usually pronounced as a softer version of English "v."
	no**w**	nav, divpadsmit	In some words, pronounced as an English "w."
z	**z**oo	zināt, zaļš	Pronounced the same as an English "z."
ž	plea**s**ure, bei**g**e	mūžīgs, žēl	Place tongue near the upper front teeth with the sides of the tongue against the sides of the teeth and the lips slightly puckered.

Pronunciation

Latvian pronunciation is consistent and phonetic. Each letter is pronounced exactly how it is written, with only a few exceptions.

Syllable Emphasis

The first syllable receives the emphasis or stress in Latvian words. When a word is negated, the stress still remains on the first syllable:

'Jēzus *Jesus*	**'mīl**estība *love*	**'ģi**mene *family*	**'kris**tīšanās *baptism*	**'for**ši *cool*	**'ne**zinu *I do not know.*

There are some exceptions to this rule. Here are a few examples:

lab'**rīt** *good morning*	lab'**dien** *good day*	lab'**vak**ar *good evening*	ne'**viens** *no one*	paļ'**dies** *thanks*	vis'**liel**ākais* *biggest*	ne'**kas** *nothing*

*Almost all words that start with vis- will have the stress on the second syllable.

Pace

A long sign is a line above a vowel that lengthens the duration of the vowel sound. Long signs are important to observe, as they can change the tense and meaning of a word. The following chart shows examples of the importance of long signs:

Sentence	Common Error	Sentence	Common Error
Man patīk kāzas. *I like weddings.*	Man patīk kazas. *I like goats.*	Mēs braucām uz Rīgu. *We traveled to Rīga.*	Mēs braucam uz Rīgu. *We travel to Rīga.*
Es saku "paldies." *I say "thanks."*	Es sāku, "paldies." *I begin, "thanks."*	Man ir liela ģimene. *I have a big family.*	Man ir lielā ģimene. *I have the big family.*
Es esmu baznīcā. *I am at the church.*	Es esmu baznīca. *I am the church.*	Jā, es to gribu. *Yes, I want that.*	Ja es to gribu. *If I want that.*

Softening (Palatalization)

A soft sign is shown by placing a small hat (v sign) above a consonant or a comma symbol (usually bellow the letter). Soft signs are used in noun declensions. See chapter 4, "Nouns." The following chart shows how to soften letters in Latvian and some examples:

Letter	Softened	Nominative	Genitive Plural
b	bj	krabis *crab*	krabju
c	č	lācis *bear*	lāču
d	ž	sirds *heart*	siržu
dz	dž	kaudze *pile*	kaudžu
l	ļ	brālis *brother*	brāļu
m	mj	zeme *earth*	zemju
n	ņ	suns *dog*	suņu
p	pj	skapis *closet*	skapju
s	š	trusis *rabbit*	trušu
sl	šļ	bauslis *commandment*	baušļu
sn	šņ	aploksne *envelope*	aplokšņu
t	š	pravietis *prophet*	praviešu
v	vj	zivs *fish*	zivju
z	ž	nazis *knife*	nažu
zn	žņ	zvaigzne *star*	zvaigžņu

Here are some examples of softening in a sentence:

Sentence	Softened
Jā**nis** un Pēteris ir labi draugi. *Janis and Peteris are good friends.*	Pēteris ir Jā**ņa** labākais draugs. *Peteris is Janis's best friend.*
Dievs mums ir devis bau**sli** būt laipniem. *God has given us a commandment to be kind.*	Dievs mums ir devis bau**šļ**us. *God has given us commandments.*
Pagāja mazs brī**dis**, pirms es sapratu, par ko viņš runāja. *It took me a second before I understood what he was talking about.*	Es tev pēc brī**ža** piezvanīšu. *I will call you in a second.*
Mēs meklējam pazudušās av**is**. *We are looking for the lost sheep.*	Kristus ir av**ju** gans. *Christ is the Shepherd.*

Letter Combinations (Diphthongs)

When certain letters are placed next to each other in a word, they combine to form one sound. Each letter is pronounced as usual, but the sounds are combined into one syllable. The following charts show some common combinations:

Consonant Combinations	Sound	Latvian Examples	
dz	la**ds**	dziesma *song*	lūdzu *please*
dž	**J**ud**g**e	Džozefs *Joseph*	džinsi *jeans*

Vowel Combinations (dipthongs)	Sound	Latvian Examples	
ai	l**i**ke, f**i**ght	laime *happiness*	skaists *beautiful*
ei	b**a**ke	pateikt *to say*	Eiropa *Europe*
ie	IK**EA**, L**eah**	Dievs *God*	vienmēr *always*
au	fl**ow**er, M**au**i	nauda *money*	tauta *a people*
ui	b**uoy**	muiža *estate*	puika *boy*

Narrow and Wide "e/ē"

There are two pronunciations of "e/ē" depending on their context and root.

1) Narrow or *šaurie* "e/ē" sound, like the diphthong "ei" or the name of the letter *a* (J**ē**zus, m**ē**telis sound like "**a**ble" or "**a**cre").
2) Wide or *platie* "e/ē" are pronounced with a wide mouth and a sound like an *e* (T**ē**vs, v**ē**los sound like "**e**very" or "**e**nter").

The following rules show when a narrow "e/ē" is used:

Rule	Examples
If the syllable following an "e/ē" contains one of these letters, then the "e/ē" will be **narrow**: e, ē, i, j, ž, č, ģ, ķ, ņ, ļ (any palatalized letter).	eļļa, mērķis, ķēniņš oil, purpose, king
If the letter j follows an "e/ē" in the same syllable, then it is **narrow** and pronounced as "ei."	kafejnīca cafe
When an "e/ē" appears at the end of a word, that "e/ē" will always be **narrow**.	māte, mēle mom, tongue
When an "e/ē" appears in cognates, it will almost always be **narrow**.	televizors television
Translated names: The letter *a* is translated as a **narrow** "e/ē."	Džeks Bleks *(J**a**ck Bl**a**ck)*
Prefix *ne-* is **narrow** in most cases.*	nezinu *I don't know*

* When the prefix ne- is followed by a wide "e/ē," it becomes wide.

Assimilation

Multiple sounds are "assimilated," or pronounced as one; usually this occurs with the letters s and z:

Examples	Pronunciation
drošs	droš
mežs	meš
mačs	mač

Fricatives

In Latvian, t+s or d+s are pronounced like the Latvian letter c, unless they are separating syllables:

Examples	Pronunciation
kāds	kāc
rakstīts	rakstīc
sveicināts	sveicināc

Voiced and Unvoiced Consonants

Consonants are pronounced as unvoiced letters when followed by an unvoiced letter, usually *-s* or *-t*.

(b → p, g → k)

Examples	Pronunciation
labs	laps
laimīgs	laimīks
draugs	drauks

Examples	Pronunciation
beigt	beikt
uzkapt	uskapt
mazs	mas

Unvoiced consonants become voiced when followed by a voiced letter, usually the letters *-g*, *-b*, or *-d*.

(p → b, t → d)

Examples	Pronunciation
atgadināt	adgadināt
atbrīvot	adbrīvot
apdomāt	abdomāt

Sound Loss

Sometimes when consonant clusters are difficult to pronounce, one or more sounds will be changed or left out to be more fluid.

Examples	Pronunciation
svētdien	svēdien
trešdien	treždien
ceturtdien	ceturdien
piektdien	piegdien
sestdien	sezdien

Contraction

When vowels are repeated the two vowels are contracted:

Examples	Pronunciation
neesmu	nēsmu (partial contraction)
saadīt	sādīt

Note: Use the above Latvian pronunciation explanations only as guidelines. To develop native-like pronunciation, listen attentively to native Latvian speakers and closely imitate their pronunciation (see *Preach My Gospel* page 130, "Actively Listen.") You may also find more detailed explanations of Latvian sounds in more advanced grammar books. Each Latvian generally speaks a little differently; listen and learn from them.

Activities

A. Reading Practice

Read a section of *Preach My Gospel*, or a few verses from the Book of Mormon out loud to a native speaker and have them correct your pronunciation. Ask the native speaker to read the section or verse and try to imitate their pronunciation. Try reading the passage at the same time as the native speaker, paying attention to pronunciation, intonation, and punctuation.

B. Scripture Activity

Choose a section from the scriptures you plan to use in an upcoming lesson. First, read the section with a focus on emphasizing the first syllable of each word. Try clapping on the first syllable of each word to remind you to place the emphasis there. Second, read the same section consciously holding out each long sign. Read the section a third time, now concentrating on punctuation and sentence flow.

C. The Missionary Purpose

Practice reading the missionary purpose out loud.

> "Mūsu mērķis ir: Aicināt citus nākt pie Kristus, palīdzot viņiem pieņemt Atjaunoto evaņģēliju caur ticību Jēzum Kristum un Viņa veiktajai Grēku Izpirkšanai, caur grēku nožēlošanu, kristīšanos, Svētā Gara dāvanas saņemšanu un pastāvēšanu līdz galam." (*Sludini Manu Evaņģēliju*, 13)

D. The First Vision

Listen to the First Vision multiple times on the Restoration DVD. Then practice reading the First Vision out loud multiple times.

> "Es ieraudzīju gaismas stabu, spožāku par sauli, tieši virs savas galvas, kas pakāpeniski nolaidās, līdz krita man pāri. . . . Kad gaisma apstājās virs manis, es ieraudzīju divas personas stāvam virs manis gaisā, kuru spožumu un godību nav pat iespējams aprakstīt. Viena no viņām uzrunāja mani, nosaucot mani vārdā un, norādot uz otro, sacīja: „Šis ir Mans mīļais Dēls. Uzklausi viņu!" (Džozefs Smits—Vēsture 1:16–17)

E. Record Yourself

If you have access to a recording device (e.g., a camera), record yourself saying the following in Latvian:

1. Reading Pastāvēt Līdz Galam (*Sludini Manu Evaņģēliju*, 78)
2. Reading Moronija Grāmatā 10:3–5.
3. Bearing your testimony about prayer.
4. Introducing yourself and explaining your purpose as a missionary.

Identify pronunciation errors for each task or sentences that do not make sense. Record yourself again and focus on correcting your mistakes. This exercise can be repeated consistently to recognize progress in your language and pronunciation skills.

F. Pronunciation Practice

Practice saying the following words in Latvian. Focus on emphasizing the first syllable and holding out long signs.

vēlme *desire*	Dieva Dēls *God's Son*	dāvana *gift*	aicinājums *calling*
mūžīgā dzīve *eternal life*	cilvēce *mankind*	priecīgs *glad, happy*	brīvība *freedom*
krekls *shirt*	nemirstība *immortality*	Dieva valstība *kingdom of God*	skaisti *beautiful*
saule *sun*	evaņģēlijs *gospel*	mīlēt *to love*	pasaule *world*
ziedot *to donate*	žēlsirdība *charity*	Grēku Izpirkšana *Atonement*	augšāmcelšanās *Resurrection*

G. Softening Practice

Practice softening by declining the following words into genitive plural. Check your answers.

1. briedis	3. vīrietis	5. koris	7. zemene
2. baznīcas locekle	4. sieviete	6. lācis	8. pasaule

H. Common Errors

The following sentences have starred errors. Correct and explain the errors to your companion. Check your answers.

1. Mēs lūdzam Jezus* Kristus vārdā. We pray in the name of Jesus Christ.	4. Kā paTEIkt* "faith"? How do you say "faith"?
2. Viņas brāļu* liecība ir ļoti stipra. Her brother's testimony is very strong.	5. LABrīt*, brāļi un māsas! Good morning, brothers and sisters!
3. Manu māsu sauc Dženia*. My sister's name is Jenny.	6. Vai jūs vakar cepat* kūku? Did you bake a cake yesterday?

I. Soft Signs Pronunciation Practice

Practice saying the following words in Latvian. Focus on pronouncing the soft signs correctly.

ģimene *family*	šķīvis *plate*	zaļš *green*	biļete *ticket*
ļoti *very*	kaķis *cat*	ņemt *to take*	džezs *jazz*
šķērslis *obstacle*	četri *four*	mērķis *goal*	gurķis *cucumber*
nedēļa *week*	kuņģis *stomach*	eļļa *oil*	ļaudis *people*
pakļauties *to obey*	brīnišķīgs *wonderful*	mēģināt *to try*	ķēniņš *king*

J. Vowel Combination Pronunciation Practice

Practice saying the following words in Latvian. Focus on pronouncing the vowel combinations correctly.

pareizs *correct*	meita *daughter*	sveiki *hello*	beidzot *finally*
iecere *plan*	vienotība *unity*	mācīties *to learn*	liecība *testimony*
atjaunošana *restoration*	šaubas *doubts*	ļauns *evil*	daudz *many*
aicināt *to call*	laime *happiness*	aizmirst *to forget*	skaidrs *clear*
puisis *boy*	kuilis *boar*	jautājums *question*	ķēniņš *king*

K. Mēles Mežģi

Tongue twisters are great for pronunciation practice. Practice saying these sentences as clearly and quickly as possible.

1. Visneiedomājamākais šaursliežu dzelzceļš.	5. Tik pa taku, blaku, blaku, žviku, žvaku, žviku, žvaku.
2. Šis žagaru saiškis nav mans žagaru saiškis.	6. Maziņš eža puskažociņš.
3. Liepu lapu laipu liku.	7. Pupa pa kapeikai.
4. Žurka šņukst šņukstēdama.	8. Vienā vēsā vasaras vakarā vecs vācu vīrs veda veselu vezumu vārītu vēžu.

Parts of Speech

Explanation

Different words play specific roles in creating sentences. This chapter will explain the parts of speech used in Latvian grammar. Using the correct part of speech (noun, pronoun, adjective, verb, etc.) in the right way is important in order for you to understand and be understood. When learning a new word, determine which part of speech it is so you can use it correctly. Many of the concepts that are presented in this section will be covered in more detail later in this book

Parts of Speech

The following chart shows common parts of speech used in a sentence:

Pronoun	Verb	Noun	Adverb	Verb
Mēs *We*	sajutām *felt*	Svēto Garu *the Holy Ghost*	spēcīgi *powerfully*	apstiprinām *confirm*

Noun	Preposition	Pronoun	Adjective	Noun
patiesību *truth*	caur *through*	Jūsu *your (formal)*	vienkāršo *simple*	liecību. *testimony*.

Verbs

Verbs are action words—a verb is what the subject (noun) does. For example, a person prays, serves, loves, etc.

lūgt *to pray*	**smaidīt** *to smile*	**mīlēt** *to love*
kalpot *to serve*	**zināt** *to know*	**mācīties** *to learn*

These verbs are in their infinitive (basic) form. In English, an infinitive verb contains "to" and the verb, as in "to pray." All Latvian infinitive verbs end with –t (regular) or –ties (reflexive). Verbs in Latvian are broken into two parts: (1) the stem and (2) the ending:

Stem		Ending		Verb
mīl-	+	-ēt	=	mīlēt
lūg-	+	-t	=	lūgt
māc-	+	-īties	=	mācīties

In Latvian, verbs receive different endings depending on the **subject** (e.g., I, you, missionaries), **tense** (e.g., past, present, or future), and **mood** (e.g., relative, conditional, imperative). This process of changing verb endings is called **conjugation**. See chapter 19, "Verbs."

Nouns

A noun is a person, place, thing, or idea:

lūgšanas *prayers*	pravietis *prophet*	dzīve *life*	Vācija *Germany*	evaņģēlijs *gospel*

In Latvian, nouns have a specific **gender**, which is determined by the ending of the noun. Masculine nouns end with *-s*, *-is*, and *-us*, and feminine nouns end with *-a*, *-e*, and *-s*. Nouns also have a specific **number**, meaning they can be singular or plural (more than one). The six noun endings in Latvian can be declined to form different **cases**. See chapter 4, "Nouns."

Pronouns

Pronouns are words that can replace nouns in a sentence. For example, "she" instead of "the woman," or "they" instead of "the people." The following chart shows personal pronouns used in Latvian:

	Sg		Pl	
1st person	es I		mēs we	
2nd person	tu you (informal)		jūs you (formal or plural)	
3rd person	viņš-viņa he-she		viņi-viņas they (m-f)	
	šis-šī this (m-f)	tas-tā that (m-f)	šie-šīs these (m-f)	tie-tās those (m-f)

Note: In Latvian, a sentence usually does not end in a pronoun. See chapter 10, "Pronouns," for more practice and examples, including demonstratives, personal pronouns, possessive pronouns, reflexive pronouns, emphatic pronouns, relative pronouns, definite pronouns, and negative pronouns.

Adjectives

Adjectives describe nouns. They match, or agree with the noun they describe in **number**, **case**, and **gender**. Adjectives normally come before the noun they describe. In Latvian, because there is no way to say "a" or "the," the ending of the adjective determines definiteness ("a" good book vs. "the" good book) for the nouns they describe. See chapter 11, "Adjectives," for more examples.

Examples

Dievs ir tavs **mīlošais** Debesu Tēvs.
*God is your **loving** Heavenly Father.*

Lielā atkrišana noveda pie **garīgās** tumsības.
*The **Great** Apostasy led to **spiritual** darkness.*

Ģimenes ir **mūžīgas**.
*Families are **eternal**.*

Man ir **stipra** liecība.
*I have a **strong** testimony.*

Adverbs

Adverbs are words that describe verbs, adjectives, or other adverbs. In English, adverbs are often formed by adding the suffix *-ly* to the end of an adjective. In Latvian, adverbs are formed by adding the suffix *-i*, *-u*, *-am*, or *-ām* to the end of almost any adjective stem. See chapter 23, "Adverbs."

Examples

Dievs uzklausa mūsu lūgšanas, kad mēs **sirsnīgi** lūdzam.
*God hears our prayers when we **sincerely** pray.*

Viņš lasa **lēnām**, bet **čakli**.
*He reads **slowly** but **diligently**.*

Kristības ir **ļoti** svarīgas.
*Baptism is **very** important.*

Prepositions

Prepositions describe relationships between words in a sentence. In Latvian, each preposition is associated with a specific case (accusative, genitive, dative). For example, a singular noun following a genitive preposition will be in the genitive case. The noun being affected by the preposition is known as the prepositional object. Whenever the prepositional object is plural, ALL prepositions force the dative case. See chapter 24, "Prepositions."

Examples

Vēl viena liecība **par** Jēzu Kristu. *Another testament **of (about)** Jesus Christ.*
Mēs sajūtam Dieva mīlestību **caur** Svēto Garu. *We feel God's love **through** the Holy Ghost.*
Bērni mācījās **no** Svētajiem Rakstiem. *The children learned **from** the scriptures.*
Dievam ir ķermenis **no** miesas un kauliem. *God has a body **of (from)** flesh and bones.*

Particles

Particles are words that do not fit under the main parts of speech. They can be used to emphasize particular words or parts of a sentence, and many do not translate well into English. Some particles can also act as another part of speech (e.g., conjunctions). Here are some examples of Latvian particles:

ak! *alas!*	arī *also*	tik *so*	vēl *still*
ka *that*	kā *as, how*	jā *yes*	vai *or*
vien	diez	itin	tak
jau *already*	tikai *only*	tātad *consequently*	tur *there*
lai *in order to*	pat *even*	pavisam *all, in total*	taču *however*
kaut	gan	nu	visai

Examples

Gan jau viņi izdomās, ko darīt. *They will **probably** figure out what to do.*
Diez vai viņa gribēs braukt uz Lietuvu. *She **almost certainly won't** want to go to Lithuania.*
Ja vien tu zinātu, cik ļoti es par tevi uztraucos. ***If only** you knew how much I worry about you.*

Activities

A. Identify the Verb

Identify the verb or verbs in each of the following sentences. Add verbs you are unfamiliar with to your vocabulary list to memorize. Check your answers.

1. Dievs mūs mīl. *God loves us.*	5. Misionāri(es) māca klausītājam(ai) evaņģēliju. *Missionaries teach the investigator the gospel.*
2. Tu sajutīsi Svēto Garu. *You will feel the Holy Ghost.*	6. Dievs ir aicinājis pravieti. *God has called a prophet.*
3. Vai Jūs esat laimīgs(a)? *Are you (formal) happy?*	7. Es ticu Jēzum Kristum. *I believe in Christ.*
4. Vai tu lūgsi? *Will you pray?*	8. Misionāri(es) palīdz cilvēkiem nākt tuvāk Kristum. *Missionaries help people come closer to Christ.*

B. Identify the Pronoun

Identify the pronoun in each of the following sentences. Check your answers.

1. Vai jūs vēlētos uzzināt vairāk par evaņģēliju?
   Would you (pl.) like to learn more about the gospel?
2. Caur Grēku Izpirkšanu mēs varam tikt pestīti.
   Through the Atonement, we can be redeemed.
3. Tu esi Dieva bērns.
   You are a child of God.
4. Dievs ir mūsu Debesu Tēvs.
   God is our Heavenly Father.
5. Es esmu misionārs(e).
   I am a missionary.
6. Viņš māca Gudrības Vārdu.
   He teaches the Word of Wisdom.
7. Viņi pazaudēja patiesības pilnību.
   They lost the fulness of the truth.
8. Dievs mūs mīl.
   God loves us.

C. Identify the Adjective

Identify the adjective or adjectives in each of the following sentences. Check your answers.

1. Džozefs Smits bija patiess pravietis.
   Joseph Smith was a true prophet.
2. Tas ir labs jautājums.
   That is a good question.
3. Šī ir vienīgā patiesā un dzīvā baznīca.
   This is the only true and living Church.
4. Šodien ir skaista diena!
   Today is a beautiful day!
5. Vienīgi cienīgiem baznīcas locekļiem ir atļauts ieiet templī.
   Only worthy members are allowed to go into the temple.
6. Svētajam Garam ir klusa, maiga balss.
   The Holy Ghost has a still, small voice.
7. Jēzus Kristus ir rādījis mums nevainojamu piemēru.
   Jesus Christ has given us the perfect (flawless) example.
8. Mūsu mūžīgā pilnveidošanās ir atkarīga no tā, kā mēs ooizmantojam savu rīcības brīvību.
   Our eternal progression is dependent upon how we use our agency.

D. Identify the Adverb

Identify the adverb or adverbs in each of the following sentences. Check your answers.

1. Viņš klusi lūdza.
   He prayed quietly.
2. Viņa čakli lasīja Mormona Grāmatu.
   She diligently read the Book of Mormon.
3. Kristīšanās ir ļoti svarīga derība.
   Baptism is a very important covenant.
4. Debesīs spoži spīdēja saule.
   The sun shone brightly in the sky.
5. Viņš bija patiešām noguris.
   He was really (truly) tired.
6. Cilvēkiem ir patiesi jānožēlo grēki, lai viņi varētu tikt kristīti.
   One must sincerely repent in order to be baptized.
7. Dievs pacietīgi uzklausa mūsu lūgšanas, ja mēs sirsnīgi lūdzam.
   God listens patiently to our prayers if we sincerely pray.
8. Ja mēs dzīvojam taisnīgi un pastāvam līdz galam, mēs varēsim mūžīgi dzīvot kopā ar Dievu.
   If we live righteously and endure to the end, we can live eternally with God.

E. Identify the Preposition

Identify the preposition and which case it is forcing in each of the following sentences. Check your answers.

1. Santa saņēma savu atbildi caur Svēto Garu.
   Santa received her answer through the Holy Ghost.
2. Pēc kristīšanās tu saņemsi Svētā Gara dāvanu.
   After baptism you will receive the gift of the Holy Ghost.
3. Mēs uzrunājām visus cilvēkus uz ielas.
   We talked to everyone on the street.
4. Ja mēs dzīvojam taisnīgi, mēs atgriezīsimies pie mūsu ooDebesu Tēva.
   If we live righteously, we will return to our Heavenly Father.
5. Neaizej bez manis!
   Don't leave without me!
6. Vai Jūs vēlaties tikt attīrīts(a) no visiem saviem grēkiem?
   Do you (formal) want to be cleansed from all of your sins?
7. Mormona Grāmata ir vēl viena liecība par Jēzu Kristu.
   The Book of Mormon is another testament of Jesus Christ.
8. Misionāri nevar efektīvi mācīt bez Svētā Gara.
   Missionaries cannot teach effectively without the Holy Ghost.

F. Identify Parts of Speech

Read the following passage from page 31 in *Preach My Gospel.* On a separate sheet of paper, write down each bolded word and identify which part of speech it is (noun, verb, adjective, etc.) Try translating the passage into Latvian. Check your answers.

> "**God**$_1$ is our Heavenly Father. We are **His**$_2$ children. **He**$_3$ has **a**$_4$ body of flesh and bone that is **glorified**$_5$ and **perfected**$_6$. He **loves**$_7$ us. He weeps **with**$_8$ us when we **suffer**$_9$ and rejoices when we **do**$_{10}$ what is right. He wants to **communicate**$_{11}$ with us, and **we**$_{12}$ can communicate with Him **through**$_{13}$ **sincere**$_{14}$ **prayer**$_{15}$."

G. Common Errors

The following sentences have bolded and starred errors. Correct and explain the errors to your companion. Check your answers.

1. Džozefs Smits bija patiess pravietis.
   Joseph Smith was a true prophet.
2. Tas ir labs jautājums.
   That is a good question.
3. Šī ir vienīgā patiesā un dzīvā baznīca.
   This is the only true and living Church.
4. Šodien ir skaista diena!
   Today is a beautiful day!
5. Vienīgi cienīgiem baznīcas locekļiem ir atļauts ieiet templī.
   Only worthy members are allowed to go into the temple.
6. Svētajam Garam ir klusa, maiga balss.
   The Holy Ghost has a still, small voice.
7. Jēzus Kristus ir rādījis mums nevainojamu piemēru.
   Jesus Christ has given us the perfect (flawless) example.
8. Mūsu mūžīgā pilnveidošanās ir atkarīga no tā, kā mēs ooizmantojam savu rīcības brīvību.
   Our eternal progression is dependent upon how we use our agency.

H. Error Correction

With your companion, take turns reading the following sentences aloud. Start by giving the English translation and then say the sentence as it is written in Latvian. Then have the other companion identify errors, if any, and restate the sentence correctly. Check your answers.

1. Glābējs no jauna nodibināt Savu Baznīcu uz zemes.
   The Savior again organized His Church on the earth.
2. Vai Jums ticat Jēzum Kristum?
   Do you believe in Jesus Christ?
3. Džozefs nolēma lūgt Dievs, lai uzzinātu, kas viņam jādara.
   Joseph decided to pray to God to find out what he must do.
4. Iekša baznīca, Dace tevi gaida.
   Dace is waiting for you in the church.
5. Es iedošu Mormonu Grāmatu manam tēvam.
   I will give the Book of Mormon to my father.
6. Viņa uzmanīga izvēlējās, kuru skolu apmeklēt.
   She changed her decision about which school to attend.
7. Judīte un es kopā apmeklēju konferenci.
   Judite and I went to the conference together.
8. Viņam ir ticēt, ka caur Kristu viss būs iespējams.
   He has faith that through Christ everything is possible.
9. Autobuss reti apstājas šo pieturu; iesim uz cita!
   The bus rarely stops at this stop; let's go to another.
10. Pravietis runā Dievam.
    The prophet speaks for God.

I. Story

Below is a story about Kristine. Complete the story by filling in the blanks on a separate piece of paper with a correct part of speech of your choice for each blank.

> Šī ir Kristīne. Viņa ir ___ (adj). Viņai ir ___ (adj) brāļi un jauk__ (adj ending) ___ (noun). Viņai patīk ___ (verb) un ___ (verb). Viņa var ___ (adv) lasīt. Kristīne ir Jēzus Kristus baznīcas locekle. Viņa ___ (adv) studē Mormona Grāmatu un ___ (adv) lūdz katru dienu. Viņai patīk apmeklēt ___ (noun) kopā ar ___ (noun). Viņas lielāk__ (adj ending) vēlme ir iemacīties, kā ___ (adv) ___ (verb).

Latvian Cases

Explanation

This chapter introduces the seven Latvian cases and will explain when to use each case. The five main cases—nominative, accusative, genitive, dative, and locative—will be covered in more detail throughout this book.

What are Cases?

Latvian words are declined (put into different cases) by changing the noun or adjective endings according to their role in a sentence. Here is an example showing how declension is used occasionally in English with pronouns:

Case	Correct	Incorrect
Nominative	**We** are good.	**Us** are good.
Accusative	He sees **us**.	He sees **we**.
Genitive	This is **our** book.	This is **we** book.
Dative	They give the book **to us.**	They give the book **to we**.
Locative	The Spirit resides **in us.**	The Spirit resides **in we.**

Each noun and adjective has a specific number (singular or plural) and gender (masculine or feminine) that is used to determine which case ending is used. Verbs and prepositions will force words into specific cases. Each case is represented in Latvian with the question word *kas* ("what") declined into that case. This is how Latvians refer to specific cases. The following chart shows declension endings:

Masculine	I		II		III	
	Sg	Pl	Sg	Pl	Sg	Pl
Nominative Kas	-s	-i	-is	*-i	-us	-i
Accusative Ko	-u	-us	-i	*-us	-u	-us
Genitive Kā	-a	-u	*-a	*-u	-us	-u
Dative Kam	-am	-iem	-im	*-iem	-um	-iem
Locative Kur	-ā	-os	-ī	*-os	-ū	-os

Feminine	I		II		III	
	Sg	Pl	Sg	Pl	Sg	Pl
Nominative Kas	-a	-as	-e	-es	-s	-is
Accusative Ko	-u	-as	-i	-es	-i	-is
Genitive Kā	-as	-u	-es	*-u	-s	*-u
Dative Kam	-ai	-ām	-ei	-ēm	-ij	-īm
Locative Kur	-ā	-ās	-ē	-ēs	-ī	-īs

***** Indicates where softening takes place. See chapter 1, "Alphabet and Pronunciation," for softening patterns.

Observe how the word Dievs ("God") is declined in the following chart based on its meaning and role in a sentence. The English translations indicate the implied meaning of each case:

Case	Sentence	Explanation
Nominative	**Dievs** tevi mīl. ***God** loves you.*	"God" is the subject (nominative case) of the sentence. He is performing the action.
Accusative	Es mīlu **Dievu**. *I love **God**.*	"God" is the direct object (accusative case) of the verb "love." He is being loved.
Genitive	Jēzus Kristus ir **Dieva** Dēls. *Jesus Christ is the Son of **God**.*	"God" in genitive case shows possession. This also could be expressed as "God's Son."
Dative	Mēs pateicamies **Dievam**. *We give thanks **to God**.*	"God" in dative case is receiving thanks as the indirect object (to/for someone).
Locative	Mēs ieklausāmies **Dievā** un darām, ko Viņš saka. *We listen to **God** and do what He says.*	"God" is in locative because the verb *ieklausīties* requires an object in locative. It literally means "listen into."

Note: Look for patterns to help memorize the case endings. For example, all masculine plural nouns end in *-i*. Notice that in the second category of masculine plural nouns, the consonant before the ending is always softened.

The following chart shows an example of a sentence using the five main Latvian cases:

Gen	Loc	Nom	Verb	Prep	Gen	Dat
Ģetzemenes	dārzā	Kristus	izcieta	par	mūsu	grēkiem

Conj	Verb	Dat	Acc	Verb	Prep	Gen
un	deva	mums	iespēju	atgriezties	pie	Dieva.

Christ suffered in the Garden of Gethsemane for our sins and gave us the ability to return to God.

Nominative

The nominative case is used to indicate the subject of the sentence. This is the basic form for nouns and adjectives. Words in the dictionary will be listed in nominative case.

Examples

Džozef<u>s</u> Smit<u>s</u> atjaunoja Dieva baznīcu.
Joseph Smith *restored God's Church.*

<u>Es</u> esmu **misionār<u>s(e)</u>*****.
I *am a* ***missionary****.*

Krist<u>us</u> ir mūsu **Glābēj<u>s</u>**.
Christ *is our* ***Savior****.*

***Some Latvian nouns have both a masculine and feminine ending to differentiate between male and female. An elder is *misionārs*; a sister is *misionāre*.

See chapter 5, "Nominative Case," for more examples and practice.

Accusative

The accusative case is used to indicate the direct object (who or what is being acted upon by the verb). Most verbs force accusative case:

Verb	Example
lasīt *to read*	Gvido lasa **Bībeli**. *Gvido reads the* ***Bible****.*
saprast *to understand*	Jēzus **<u>mūs</u>** saprot. *Jesus understands* ***us****.*
zināt *to know*	Vai tu zini **patiesīb<u>u</u>** par **Dievu<u></u>**? *Do you know the* ***truth*** *about* ***God****?*

See chapter 7, "Accusative Case," for more examples and practice.

Genitive

The genitive case is used to show possession (sometimes rendered in English by the word of). It is also used after quantitative words (such as *daudz*—"a lot, many"), to show negation or lacking (*man nav*—"I don't have"), and with certain prepositions and postpositions.

Examples

Pēdējo Dienu Svēto Jēzus Kristus Baznīca.
*The Church **of** Jesus Christ **of** Latter-day Saints*

Mēs esam **Dieva** bērni.
*We are **God's** children.*

Man **nav laika.**
*I **do not have time.***

Mēs saņemam **daudz svētību.**
*We receive **many blessings**.*

See chapter 9, "Genitive Case," for more examples and practice.

Dative

The dative case indicates the indirect object (to whom or what the action of a verb is done) in a sentence. This is often expressed with the prepositions *to* or *for* in English:

Examples

Viņi **man** iedeva Mormona Grāmatu.
*They gave **(to) me** the Book of Mormon.*

Mēs **tev** sagatavojām stundiņu.
*We prepared a lesson **for you**.*

Pateicoties **Izpirkšanai**, mēs varam tikt atbrīvoti no mūsu grēku nastas.
*Thanks **to the Atonement**, we can be freed from the burdens of our sins.*

There are some verbs that always force the dative case. The following are a few examples:

Verb	Example
sekot *to follow*	Mēs **sekosim** Dieva **pravietim**. *We **will follow** the **prophet** of God.*
ticēt *to believe*	Vai jūs **ticat Dievam**? *Do you (pl.) **believe** in God?*
kalpot *to serve*	Tu **kalpo ģimenēm**. *You **serve families**.*

Dative case is also used in dative constructions. See chapters 16, "Dative Construction," and 17, "Debitive Mood."

In addition to dative prepositions, **ALL** prepositions force plural prepositional objects into the dative case:

Case	Sentence	Explanation
ar	Es atbraucu uz misiju kopā ar **viņu**$_{acc}$. *I traveled to the mission together with **him/her**.*	Es atbraucu uz misiju kopā ar **viņiem**$_{dat}$/**viņām**$_{dat}$. *I traveled to the mission together with **them**.*
pēc	Redzēsimies pēc **stundas**$_{gen}$**!** *See you in an **hour**!*	Tiksimies pēc divām **stundām**$_{dat}$! We'll meet in two hours!

See chapter 15, "Dative Case," for more examples and practice.

Locative

The locative case expresses location. It communicates "in, at, on, or within," and is used in reference to time and place:

Examples

Es kalpoju **misijā Latvijā** .
I am serving **(on) a mission in Latvia**.

Mēs viņus satikām pagāšnedēļ **baznīcā**.
We met them last week **at church**.

Svētais Gars mājo **mūsu sirdīs**.
The Holy Ghost dwells **in our hearts**.

See chapter 29, "Locative Case," for more examples and practice.

Vocative

Vocative case is used to address others and is formed by dropping the last letter of the word:

Nominative	Jānis	skolotājs *teacher*	mīļā māmiņa *loving mom*	Elders Smits	Velga*
Vocative	Jāni!	skolotāj!	mīļo māmiņ!	Elder Smit!	Velga!

*****Short feminine nouns (1–2 syllables) remain unchanged in the nominative case.

Examples

Indra, vai tev būtu laiks palīdzēt mums mācīt stundiņu?
***Indra**, would you have time to help us with a lesson?*

Skolotāj, kāda ir pareizā atbilde uz otro jautājumu?
***Teacher**, what is the right answer to the second question?*

Marta, paldies, ka esi tik draudzīga pret mūsu klausītājiem!
***Marta**, thank you for being so friendly to our investigators!*

Instrumental

Instrumental case is used to describe the means by which something is done. Its function is communicated by using the preposition *ar* meaning "with" or "by means of." *Ar* makes prepositional objects accusative in singular and dative in plural.

Examples

Es braucu uz Rīgu **ar** brāļa **mašīnu**.
*I went to Riga **with** my brother's **car**.*

Viņa raksta vēstuli **ar zīmuli**.
*She wrote the letter **with a pencil**.*

See chapter 24, "Prepositions," for more examples and practice.

Activities

A. Translation

Translate the following sentences into Latvian and identify each case that is used. Check your answers.

1. I feel the power of the Holy Ghost.
2. Ainars gave priesthood authority to his son.
3. Elder, we are witnesses of Jesus Christ to our investigators.
4. He sang me a song.
5. Remember that her baptism is on Saturday!
6. Juris read in the newspaper about the construction of the new church building in Riga.

B. Case Identification

On a separate piece of paper, write down the case of each of the bolded words. Check your answers.

1. Mormona Grāmata **mums** ir ļoti svarīga.
   The Book of Mormon is very important to us.
2. **Alma** mācīja nabadzīgajiem par ticību.
   Alma taught the poor about faith.
3. Evaņģēlijs **viņai** sniedz mieru un prieku.
   The gospel brings her peace and joy.
4. Kas ir lielākā svētība Jūsu **dzīvē**?
   What is the biggest blessing in your (formal) life?
5. Mēs mācām **evaņģēliju**.
   We teach the gospel.
6. Mēs esam **Dieva** bērni.
   We are children of God.
7. Pirmszemes dzīvē **tu** izvēlējies ticēt Jēzum Kristum.
   Before life on this earth, you chose to believe in Jesus Christ.
8. Svētais Gars atklāj **patiesību** caur sajūtām, domām un iespaidiem.
   The Holy Ghost reveals truth though feelings, thoughts, and impressions.
9. **Dievkalpojuma laikā** mēs pieņemam Svēto Vakarēdienu.
   During sacrament meeting we partake of the sacrament.
10. Vai **tev** rītdien ir laiks?
    Do you have time tomorrow?

C. Common Errors

The following sentences have bolded and starred errors. Correct and explain the errors to your companion. Check your answers.

1. **Ko*** ir tavas attiecības ar Debesu Tēvu?
   What is your relationship with Heavenly Father?
2. Bez Svētā Gara mēs nevaram paveikt **šī darba***.
   We cannot do this work without the Holy Ghost.
3. Gunita gavēja, lai zinātu **Tas Kungs*** gribu.
   Gunita fasted to know the will of the Lord.
4. Sveiks, **Valdis***! Ko tu šodien darīsi?
   Hello Valdis! What are you going to do today?
5. **Mums*** ķermeņi ir svēti.
   Our bodies are sacred.
6. Māris piešķira **Līga*** Svētā Gara dāvanu.
   Maris conferred the gift of the Holy Ghost to Liga.
7. Pravieši Mormona **Grāmata*** mācīja cilvēkiem par Dieva ieceri.
   Prophets in the Book of Mormon taught people about God's plan.
8. Dievs izvēlēja Jēzu Kristu būt par **Glābējs** un **Pestītājs***.
   God chose Jesus Christ to be the Savior and Redeemer.
9. Jūs daudz labāk izpratīsiet garīgās patiesības, ievērojot **Gudrība*** Vārdu.
   You (pl.) will understand spiritual truths much better by observing the Word of Wisdom.
10. Priesterības nesēji var tikt aicināti par **mājskolotājus***.
    Priesthood holders may be called as home teachers.

D. Error Correction

With your companion, take turns reading the following sentences aloud. Start by giving the English translation and then say the sentence as it is written in Latvian. Then have the other companion identify errors, if any, and restate the sentence correctly.

1. Edgars, es tevi sen neesmu redzējis.
   Edgars, I haven't seen you in a long time.
2. Vai tu gatavosies doties uz templis?
   Will you prepare to go to the temple?
3. Mormona Grāmata liecība apstiprina Bībele patiesumu.
   The Book of Mormon's testimony confirms the truth of the Bible.
4. Kā lai es rodu miers un prieks?
   How can I find peace and joy?
5. Mēs jau mācījām Ditai par šķīstības likums.
   We already taught Dita about the law of chastity.
6. Desmitās tiesas likums dod mums iespēju piedalīties Viņa valstības celšanā.
   The law of tithing gives us the opportunity to participate in the building of His kingdom.
7. Baznīcas locekļi vajadzētu lūgt par tiem, kuri nav no mūsu baznīca.
   Church members should pray for those who are not in our Church.
8. Piedāvā cilvēkus izmācīt, kā noturēt ģimenes mājvakarus!
   Offer to teach people how to hold family home evening.
9. Klausītāji būs ļoti atšķirīga attieksme pret Svētajiem Rakstiem.
   Investigators will have very different views of the scriptures.
10. Vai tu atceries, kur Mārtiņam dzīvo?
    Do you remember where Martins lives?

E. Companionship Activity

Discuss with your companion the implied meaning of each Latvian case. Teach one another in your own words the definition for each case. On a separate piece of paper write two sentences for each of the seven Latvian cases.

F. Writing Activity

Choose a case that you have a hard time using. Write down five sentences that use that case. Then show your sentences to a native speaker and ask him or her to correct them and explain how to avoid any mistakes you made.

G. Scripture Activity

The following paragraph is an excerpt from President Russell M. Nelson's general conference talk "Catch the Wave" (April 2013). Read through the following paragraph several times, identifying a different case each time. Think about why each word is in its specific case. On a separate piece of paper, write the case for each word. Check your answers.

Nouns

Explanation

In a sentence, a noun can be the subject, direct object, or indirect object:

Subject (Nominative)	Indirect Object (Dative)	Verb	Direct Object (Accusative)
Mēs *We*	Skaidrītei *to Skaidrite*	lasījām *read*	Bībeli. *the Bible.*

Subject (Nominative Case)

The **subject** (nominative case) is a noun that performs the action or state of being. See chapter 5, "Nominative Case."

Examples

Jēzus Kristus ir augšāmcēlies. *Jesus Christ is risen.*	The state of "being risen" is performed by **Jesus Christ.**
Džozefs Smits redzēja Jēzu Kristu. *Joseph Smith saw Jesus Christ.*	**Joseph Smith** is the one "seeing." He is performing the action.

Direct Object (Accusative Case)

The **direct object** (accusative case) is a noun that is being acted upon or receiving the action. See chapter 7, "Accusative Case."

Examples

Jūs sajūtat **Svēto Garu**. *You (formal) feel the **Holy Ghost.***	"Holy Ghost" answers *what* is being felt.
Apustuļi māca **patiesību**. *Apostles teach **truth**.*	What is being taught? "Truth" is what is being taught.

Indirect Object (Dative Case)

The i**ndirect object** (dative case) tells us "to whom" or "for whom" that action is done. See chapter 15, "Dative Case."

Examples

Misionāri sludina evaņģēliju **visiem cilvēkiem.** *Missionaries preach the gospel **to all people**.*	The action is being done "to all people."
Mēs pateicamies **Dievam** par mūsu svētībām. *We thank **God** for our blessings.*	The thanks is being given "(to) God."

Declension

In Latvian, nouns are classified and declined by number, case, and gender. Putting nouns into different cases is called *declension* (changing the ending of the noun). There are six noun categories (three masculine and three feminine) based on the ending of the noun. The following chart shows how Latvian noun endings decline:

Masculine	I		II		III	
	Sg	Pl	Sg	Pl	Sg	Pl
Nominative Kas	-s	-i	-is	*-i	-us	-i
Accusative Ko	-u	-us	-i	*-us	-u	-us
Genitive Kā	-a	-u	*-a	*-u	-us	-u
Dative Kam	-am	-iem	-im	*-iem	-um	-iem
Locative Kur	-ā	-os	-ī	*-os	-ū	-os

Feminine	I		II		III	
	Sg	Pl	Sg	Pl	Sg	Pl
Nominative Kas	-a	-as	-e	-es	-s	-is
Accusative Ko	-u	-as	-i	-es	-i	-is
Genitive Kā	-as	-u	-es	*-u	-s	*-u
Dative Kam	-ai	-ām	-ei	-ēm	-ij	-īm
Locative Kur	-ā	-ās	-ē	-ēs	-ī	-īs

	Gender and Number					
	Masc (sg.)	**Fem (pl.)**	**Masc (pl.)**	**Fem (sg.)**	**Masc (sg.)**	**Fem (sg.)**
Nom	Elders	Māsas	pravieši	māte	Kristus	sirds
Acc	Elderu	Māsas	praviešus	māti	Kristu	sirdi
Gen	Eldera	Māsu	praviešu	mātes	Kristus	sirds
Dat	Elderam	Māsām	praviešiem	mātei	Kristum	sirdij
Loc	Elderā	Māsās	praviešos	mātē	Kristū	sirdī

For more practice and examples with cases, see chapter 3, "Latvian Cases."

-s Ending Nouns

Second Declension -s Nouns

There are a few irregular masculine -s ending nouns that do not follow the normal declension pattern, but follow the second declension paradigm in every case but the nominative. These words are written, with their respective English translations, in the chart below:

Masculine			
akmens *stone*	mēness *moon*	asmens *blade*	sāls* *salt*
zibens *lightning*	rudens *fall (season)*	ūdens *water*	suns *dog*

*The word sāls has been changed in the recent years from being a feminine word (as used in the scriptures) to being masculine. The declension for these words is shown in the following chart.

Masculine	Singular	Plural
Nom	-s akmens	*-i akmeņi
Acc	-i akmeni	*-us akmeņus
Gen	-s akmens	*-u akmeņu
Dat	-im akmenim	*-iem akmeņiem
Loc	-ī akmenī	*-os akmeņos

*Indicates where softening takes place. See chapter 1, "Alphabet and Pronunciation," for softening patterns.

Word Building

In Latvian, many words are built from other words. The patterns used to build nouns are good to learn and recognize. The following are formulas that can be used to create nouns from other parts of speech.

Person			**Examples**				
Infinitive 2nd and 3rd conjugation verbs	+	-ājs(a)	Pestīt to save	+	ājs	=	Pestītājs Redeemer
Past stem of 1st conjugation verbs	+	-ējs(a)	glāb (glābt) to save	+	ējs	=	Glābējs Savior
Nouns	+	-ietis(e)	Latvija Latvia	+	ietis	=	latvietis a Latvian
Nouns, adjectives, adverbs, and present verb stems	+	-nieks(ce)	zināt to know	+	nieks	=	zinātnieks scientist
Place			**Examples**				
Nouns and adjectives	+	-nīca	grāmata book	+	nīca	=	grāmatnīca bookstore
2nd and 3rd conjugation verb infinitives	+	-tava	mazgāt to clean	+	tava	=	mazgātava laundromat
1st conjugation verbs	+	-tuve	cept to bake	+	tuve	=	ceptuve bakery
Thing			**Examples**				
Nouns and verbs	+	-ulis(e)	zīmēt to draw	+	ulis	=	zīmulis pencil
Nouns and verbs	+	-eklis(e)	grābt to grab	+	eklis	=	grābeklis rake
Qualities			**Examples**				
Adjective	+	-ums	godīgs honest	+	ums	=	godīgums honesty
Adjective, noun, verb, or participle (abstract or collective)	+	-ība	ticēt to believe	+	ība	=	ticība faith
Adjective	+	-atne	jauns young	+	atne	=	jaunatne youth
Actions			**Examples**				
Past stem of 1st conjugation verbs (end result of action)	+	iens	braukt (brauc) to travel	+	iens	=	brauciens journey
Past stem of 2nd and 3rd verbs (end result of action)	+	ums	jautāt to ask	+	ums	=	jautājums question
Infinitive stem (process of doing the action)	+	šana	lasīt to read	+	šana	=	lasīšana reading

Diminutives

Diminutives are modified nouns. In Latvian, they are used to express closeness, cuteness, smallness, or endearment. This idea can somewhat be communicated in English by adding a y to the end of words. For example:

Regular	John	dog	bird	stomach
Diminutive	*Johnny*	*doggy*	*birdy*	*tummy*

The following chart shows nominative endings used in Latvian with their corresponding diminutive endings:

Form	**Masculine**			**Feminine**			
Nominative	-s, -š	-is	-us	-a	-e	-s	-s
Diminutive	-iņš	-ītis	*-iņš	-iņa	-īte	-tiņa	-sniņa

*Indicates where softening takes place. See chapter 1, "Alphabet and Pronunciation," for softening patterns.

Nominative	gabals piece	brālis brother	tirgus market	māsa sister	Liene (women's name)	govs cow	sirds heart
Diminutive	gabaliņš *small piece*	brālītis *little brother*	tirdziņš *small market*	māsiņa *cute little sister*	Lienīte *(women's name)*	gotiņa *small cow*	sirsniņa *little heart*

In addition, the endings -uks and -ēns are often used to make baby animal names:

Nominative	lācis *bear*	kaķis *cat*
Diminutive	lāčuks *cub*	kaķēns *kitten*

Diminutive nouns still need to be declined to the correct case based on their role in the sentence. To do this, use the same declension patterns you would for any other noun:

	Brālis → Brālītis	**Māsa → Māsiņa**
Nom	Mans brāl**ītis** kalpo misijā Anglijā *My **brother** is serving a mission in England.*	Mana mās**iņa** grib kristīties. *My **sister** wants to be baptized.*
Acc	Viņš kalpoja misijā ar manu brā**līti**. *He served his mission with my **brother**.*	Es gribu kristīties ar savu mās**iņu**. *I want to be baptized with my **sister**.*
Gen	Es kalpošu sava brā**līša** misijā. *I will serve in my **brother's** mission*	Es apmeklēju savas mās**iņas** kristības. *I attended my **sister's** baptism.*
Dat	Es bieži kalpoju savam brā**lītim**. *I serve my **brother** often.*	Manai mās**iņai** patiktu kristīties. *My **sister** would like to be baptized.*
Loc	Manā bral**ītī** atgriezās prieks, kad viņš nožēloja grēkus. *Joy returned to my little (dear) **brother** when he repented.*	Pēc kristīšanās es redzēju izmaiņas savā mās**iņā**. *After baptism, I saw changes in my **sister**.*

Feminine

Feminine *-s* ending nouns follow the normal feminine third declension pattern for nouns. Feminine *-s* nouns should be learned in order to differentiate them from the more common masculine *-s* nouns. Here is a list of common feminine *-s* ending nouns:

Theme	**Feminine *-s* Ending**						
Body	sirds *heart*	acs *eye*	balss *voice*	auss *ear*	asins *blood*	nāss *nostril*	krūts *breast*
Nature	klints *rock*	nakts *night*	debess *sky*	smilts *sand*	cilts *tribe*	birzs *grove*	pāksts *pea pod*
Other	uguns *fire*	krāsns *oven*	valsts *nation*	dzelzs *iron*	izkapts *scythe*	plīts *stove*	vēsts *news*
Buildings	kūts/klēts *barn*	pils *castle*	pirts *sauna*	telts *tent*			
Animals	zivs *fish*	zoss *goose*	govs *cow*	avs *sheep*			

Note: Be sure to use feminine adjectives with these nouns.

Reflexive Nouns

Reflexive nouns are a unique feature of Latvian. They are formed from reflexive verbs; they are feminine and end in *-šanās*.

Reflexive Verb	**Reflexive Noun**
vēlēties *to wish*	vēlēšanās *desire*
kristīties *to be baptized*	kristīšanās *baptism (the act of)*
atgriezties *to return*	atgriešanās *returning*
satikties *to meet*	satikšanās *meeting*

The following chart shows the declension pattern for reflexive nouns:

Case	Sg	Pl
Nom	-ās	-ās
Acc	-os	-ās
Gen	-ās	-os
Dat	--	--
Loc	--	--

-- Indicates that reflexive nouns cannot be declined to these cases.

Singular Absolute and Plural Absolute Nouns

There are a few nouns in Latvian that are always expressed as singular or always expressed as plural. These must be learned when learing the noun in order to decline them correctly.

Examples

Sagatavošanās dienā mēs sapērkam **pārtik<u>u</u>**.
*We buy **groceries** on preparation day.*

Mēs iegūstam **zināšan<u>as</u>** laika gaitā, nevis uzreiz.
*We gain **knowledge** over the course of time, not right away.*

Singular

Absolute singular (uncountable) nouns have no plural form (e.g., *milk*, not *milks*; *love*, not *loves*; *honey*, not *honies*). Latvian nouns that are used only in the singular are:

(1) Objects that are uncountable because they refer to a substance (often a liquid, gas, or a powder).
(2) Nouns with endings *-ība*, *-ums*, or *-šana* that refer to abstract ideas or qualities or that are built from verbs.

Here are a few examples:

(1)	cukurs *sugar*	piens *milk*	medus *honey*	biezpiens *cottage cheese*	gaiss *air*	maize *bread*	sviests *butter*	pārtika *groceries*
(2)	labums *benefit*	skaistums *beauty*	mīlestība *love*	dziedāšana *singing*	mācīšana *teaching*	brīvība *freedom*	čaklums *diligence*	bagātība *wealth*

Plural

Absolute plural nouns cannot be used in singular. Latvian nouns that are used only in plural are:

(1) Objects that consist of at least two parts or are used in a pair.
(2) Objects that consist of many small parts that are too small to be counted.
(3) Nouns that refer to special occasions or mealtimes.
(4) Some nouns that refer to feelings.
(5) The word *zināšanas* ("knowledge").

(1)	bikses *pants*	džinsi *jeans*	brilles *glasses*	šķēres *scissors*	apavi *shoes*	svārki *skirt*	durvis *door*	drēbes *clothes*
(2)	smiltis (fem) *sand*	rīsi *rice*	dūmi *smoke*	pelni *ashes*	drupas *ruins*	kvieši *wheat*	tauki *fat*	milti *flour*
(3)	kāzas *wedding*	bēres *funeral*	Ziemassvētki *Christmas*	Lieldienas *Easter*	brokastis *breakfast*	pusdienas *lunch*	vakariņas *dinner*	
(4)	jūtas *feelings*	sāpes *pain*	bēdas *sadness*	bažas *fear*	dusmas *anger*			
(5)	zināšanas *knowledge*							

Word Order

Basic word order in Latvian will tend to be *subject - verb - object*, as shown below:

Examples

Es$_S$ gāju$_V$ uz baznīcu$_O$.
I went to church.

Gunita$_S$ spēlēs$_V$ klavieres$_O$.
Gunita will play the piano.

Planētas$_S$ griežas$_V$ ap sauli$_O$.
Planets orbit the sun.

If the object is changed from a noun to a pronoun, then word order will be *suject - object - verb,* as shown below:

Examples

Es$_S$ mīlu$_V$ **savu mammu**$_O$. *I love my mom.*	→	Es$_S$ **viņu**$_O$ mīlu$_V$. *I love her.*
Ilze$_S$ lasīja$_V$ **Mormona Grāmatu**$_O$. *Ilze was reading the Book of Mormon.*	→	Ilze$_S$ **to**$_O$ lasīja$_V$. *Ilze was reading it.*
Mēs$_S$ palīdzēsim$_V$ **Pēterim**$_O$. *We will help Peteris.*	→	Mēs$_S$ **viņam**$_O$ palīdzēsim$_V$. *We will help him.*

If there is a sentence with both a direct (DO) and an indirect object (IO), usually the indirect object will come before the direct object.

Examples

Es dāvinu Gintam$_{IO}$ grāmatu.$_{DO}$ *I am gifting a book to Gints.*	**OR**	Es viņam$_{IO}$ to$_{DO}$ dāvinu. *I am gifting it to him.*
Mēs mācījām Zanei$_{IO}$ par Kristus Izpirkšanu.$_{DO}$ *We taught Zane about the Atonement of Christ.*		
Dievs mums$_{IO}$ dod svētības.$_{DO}$ *God gives us blessings.*		
Mēs par to$_{DO}$ runājam ar visiem cilvēkiem.$_{IO}$ *We talk about that with everyone.*		

Note: In Latvian, word order is more flexible than in English. The word order can be changed to emphasize a particular word or

make a point by placing it at the beginning or end of a sentence. Listen to how and in what context natives change word order.

Activities

A. Gender Identification

On a separate piece of paper, identify and write the gender of each word (masculine or feminine). Learn the meaning of each
word you do not already know. Check your answers.

1. acs	2. bērns	3. dators	4. medus	5. soma	6. tirgus	7. zeķe	8. ceļš
9. ģimene	10. brālis	11. govs	12. iela	13. mērķis	14. tēja	15. upe	16. piemērs

B. Number

On a separate piece of paper, write the plural form of the nouns from the chart in activity A. Check your answers.

C. Case Declension

On a separate piece of paper, decline the nouns from the chart in activity A into nominative, accusative, genitive, dative, and locative cases, in both the singular and plural forms. Check your answers. For any word you incorrectly decline, write two sentences using that word and case.

D. Constructing Diminutives

On a separate piece of paper, put the nouns from the chart in activity A into diminutive form. Check your answers.

E. Irregular -s Ending Noun Declension

On a separate piece of paper, decline the following nouns into all cases for both singular and plural. Check your answers.

1. ūdens
2. krāsns
3. auss *(fem.)*
4. suns
5. akmens
6. sirds
7. sāls
8. klints

F. Absolute Singular and Plural Nouns

Translate the following sentences into Latvian. Check your answers.

1. Your (pl.) pain can be taken away from you through Christ's Atonement.
2. Christmas is a time when we remember Christ's birth.
3. We show our love for God by keeping His commandments.
4. Did you buy milk?
5. When Adam and Eve fell, they gained knowledge of good and evil.
6. Her skirt is black.
7. The beauty of the gospel is in its simplicity.
8. We ate rice for dinner.
9. One of my hobbies is dancing.
10. Let's go to a grocery store to buy flour!

G. Identification

On a separate sheet of paper, classify the nouns in the following sentences according to whether they are the subject (S), direct object (DO), or indirect object (IO). Check your answers.

1. Misionāri māca klausītājam stundu.
   The missionaries teach the investigator a lesson.
2. Mēs viņam mācām evaņģēliju.
   We are teaching him the gospel.
3. Misionāri mācās latviešu valodu.
   The missionaries are learning Latvian.
4. Jēzus deva saviem apustuļiem priesterību.
   Jesus gave His Apostles the priesthood.
5. Džozefs Smits iztulkoja Mormona Grāmatu.
   Joseph Smith translated the Book of Mormon.
6. Jēzus mums dāvāja savu dzīvi.
   Jesus gave His life for us.
7. Mēs zinām patiesību caur Svēto Garu.
   We know the truth through the Holy Ghost.
8. Dievs mums dod baušļus.
   God gives us commandments.
9. Misionāri iedeva vīrietim Mormona Grāmatu.
   The missionaries gave the man the Book of Mormon.
10. Eņģelis parādīja Nefijam vīziju.
    The angel showed Nephi a vision.

H. Common Errors

The following sentences have bolded and starred errors. Correct and explain the errors to your companion. Check the answers.

1. **Pravieti*** ir Dieva kalpi.
   Prophets are servants of God.
2. Jēzus mācīja **patiesība.***
   Jesus taught truth.
3. Man patīk zīmēt **templus***.
   I love to draw temples.
4. **Mans brālis*** sieva ir baznīcas locekle.
   My brother's wife is a Church member.
5. Baznīca ir vieta, kur macīties par **Dievs***.
   Church is a place to learn about God.
6. Debesīs ir **mēnesis***.
   The moon is in the sky.
7. Jums nav **iemesls*** neticēt, ja Jūs esat saņēmis atbildi no Dieva.
   You (formal) have no reason not to believe, if you have received an answer from God.
8. Es zinu, ka Mormona Grāmata satur Dieva **vārdi***.
   I know that the Book of Mormon contains the words of God.
9. Mēs varam atbildēt jūsu **jautājums*** par to, kas ir mūsu dzīves mērķis.
   We can answer your questions about what our purpose is in this life.
10. Mums vajag nopirkt **pārtikas***.
    We need to buy groceries (food).
11. **Mans*** sirds ir **pilns*** prieka.
    My heart is filled with joy.
12. Viņai ir **skaists svārks***.
    She has a beautiful skirt.

I. Error Correction

With your companion, take turns reading the following sentences aloud. Start by giving the English translation and then say the sentence as it is written in Latvian. Then have the other companion identify errors, if any, and restate the sentence correctly. Check your answers.

1. Nāve neizmaina mūsu raksturs.
   Death does not change our character.
2. Visi cilvēki ir daļa no Dieva ģimeni.
   All people are a part of God's family.
3. Ādams un Ieva dzīvoja Ēdenes Dārzs.
   Adam and Eve lived in the Garden of Eden.
4. Mums vajag attīstīt gars dāvanas.
   We need to develop gifts of the Spirit.
5. Pestīšanas iecere atbild trīs jautājums.
   The plan of salvation answers three questions.
6. Grēku Izpirkšana atļauj mūs atgriezties pie Dieva.
   The Atonement allows us to return to God.
7. Viņiem patika mūsu stundu.
   They liked our lesson.
8. Mums ir rīcības brīvība, bet katra rīcība ir sekas.
   We have agency, but every action has consequences.
9. Mēs iedevām viņus Mormona Grāmatu.
   We gave them a Book of Mormon.
10. Dievs atjaunoja evaņģēlijs caur pravieti Džozefs Smits.
    God restored the gospel through the prophet Joseph Smith.

J. Memorize

Memorize the declension charts for nouns. Choose one word for each noun ending, and practice declining it over and over again until you feel comfortable using those declensions.

Asking About and Expressing a State of Being

Purpose

This function will help you talk about what something is or what it isn't; for example, what faith is or who God is. The grammar principles in this section are targeted at helping you perform this function. Below are examples of the types of things you will be able to express with the grammar in this function.

- **Jesus Christ** is the **Savior** of the world. ("Nominative Case")
- God **is** a merciful Being. He **is** happy when we **are** happy. ("'To Be' (*Būt*, *Kļūt*)")
- We keep the **commandments** to show God our **love** and **faith**. ("Accusative Case")
- **Will** you follow the example of Jesus Christ by being baptized**?** ("Asking Questions")

Application

Below is a list of doctrinal points that these grammar principles will help you teach, as well as some common missionary tasks that they will help you perform. This list is not comprehensive; it is meant to help you think about how you can use the grammar in real situations. In parentheses next to each point are some sample questions that you can ask yourself to help you think about how to apply the grammar.

Doctrine from the Lessons

- God Is Our Loving Heavenly Father (Who is God? What is our relationship with Him?)
- The Great Apostasy (What is an apostasy? What is missing during an apostasy?)
- The Resurrection, Judgment, and Immortality (Who will be resurrected? What will we be judged for after this life?)
- Endure to the End (What can you do each day to endure to the end today? What questions do you have about the things we have taught you?)
- Pray Often (What is prayer? What things can we pray for?)
- Follow the Prophet (What is a prophet? What does a prophet teach us to do?)
- Faith in Jesus Christ (What is faith? Who do we believe Christ is?)

Tasks from the *Missionary Vocabulary and Phrases* Book

- Ask Questions and Listen (How do I ask questions in Latvian?)
- Explain Priesthood Ordinances (What is the priesthood? What is an ordinance?)
- Get to Know Someone (Who are they? What are their interests?)
- Extend Commitment Invitations (What will you ask them to do that will help them come closer to Jesus Christ?)

Nominative Case

Examples

The **Book** of Mormon contains the fulness of the gospel.	Mormona **Grāmata** satur evaņģēlija pilnību.
God has prepared a plan for His children.	**Dievs** ir sagatavojis Saviem bērniem plānu.
A **prophet** is a special **witness** of Jesus Christ.	**Pravietis** ir Jēzus Kristus īpašs **liecinieks.**
I know **Jesus Christ** is my **Savior**.	**Es** zinu, ka **Jēzus Kristus** ir mans **Glābējs.**

Explanation

The subject of a sentence (who or what is doing the action) is in nominative case (represented by *kas*). A verb will conjugate, or change, in order to match the noun in the nominative case; see chapter 19, "Verbs."

Examples	Explanation
Dievs mūs mīl. ***God** loves us.*	*Dievs* is the subject because He is the one who loves.
Evaņģēlijs man dod mieru. *The **gospel** brings (gives) me peace.*	*Evaņģēlijs* is the subject because it is doing the action—bringing peace.
Jēzus Kristus ir Dieva Vienpiedzimušais **Dēls**. ***Jesus Christ** is the Only Begotten **Son** of God.*	*Jēzus Kristus* and *Dēls* are both in nominative because *būt* ("to be") acts as an equal sign between two nouns.
Mēs ceram, ka **tu** izbaudīsi draudzes pasākumu. ***We** hope that **you** will enjoy the branch activity.*	*Mēs* is the subject because "we" are hoping. *Tu* is also in nominative because after a conjunction, the sentence is reset.

Nouns are listed in their nominative form in dictionaries, making it easy to identify the gender of words. See Chapter 4, "Nouns." When using the nominative case in a sentence, the noun or pronoun remains unchanged.

Nominative Case Endings

The following is an example of how the nouns *prophet* and *president* are used in the nominative case:

	Nom		Nom
Example	pravietis *prophet*	→	prezidents *president*

	Nom	Verb	Gen	Nom
Sentence	**Pravietis** *The prophet*	ir *is*	Baznīcas *the Church's*	**prezidents.** *president.*

There are six different noun ending types in Latvian, three masculine and three feminine. The following chart shows how each ending declines, with the nominative case endings highlighted:

Masculine	I		II		III		Feminine	I		II		III	
	Sg	Pl	Sg	Pl	Sg	Pl		Sg	Pl	Sg	Pl	Sg	Pl
Nominative ***Kas***	-s	-i	-is	*-i	-us	-i	**Nominative** ***Kas***	-a	-as	-e	-es	-s	-is
Accusative ***Ko***	-u	-us	-i	*-us	-u	-us	**Accusative** ***Ko***	-u	-as	-i	-es	-i	-is
Genitive ***Kā***	-a	-u	*-a	*-u	-us	-u	**Genitive** ***Kā***	-as	-u	-es	*-u	-s	*-u
Dative ***Kam***	-am	-iem	-im	*-iem	-um	-iem	**Dative** ***Kam***	-ai	-ām	-ei	-ēm	-ij	-īm
Locative ***Kur***	-ā	-os	-ī	*-os	-ū	-os	**Locative** ***Kur***	-ā	-ās	-ē	-ēs	-ī	-īs

*Indicates where softening takes place. See chapter 1, "Alphabet and Pronunciation," for softening patterns.

The following chart shows the endings for words in nominative case and an example for each ending:

Masc	I		II		III	
	Sg	**Pl**	**Sg**	**Pl**	**Sg**	**Pl**
Nom	-s (š)	-i	-is	***-**i	-us	-i
Example	tēvs	tēvi	brālis	brāļi	tirgus	tirgi

Fem	I		II		III	
	Sg	**Pl**	**Sg**	**Pl**	**Sg**	**Pl**
Nom	-a	-as	-e	-es	-s	-is
Example	māsa	māsas	māte	mātes	sirds	sirdis

*Indicates where softening of the previous letter occurs.

Nominative Pronouns

The following chart shows nominative case pronouns:

Nominative			
Sg		**Pl**	
es *I*		mēs *we*	
tu *you (informal)*		jūs *you (formal or plural)*	
viņš - viņa *he - she*		viņi - viņas *they (m-f)*	
šis - šī *this (m-f)*	tas - tā *that (m-f)*	šie - šīs *these (m-f)*	tie - tās *those (m-f)*

Activities

A. Recognition

The following sentences taken from lesson 3 in *Preach My Gospel* teach about the gospel of Jesus Christ. Write each noun that is in the nominative case on a separate piece of paper. Then identify each noun according to its gender and number. Check your answers. For any nouns you do not know, look them up in the dictionary and add them to your vocabulary. Write a sentence for each new word you learn. (There are 25 nouns or pronouns in nominative case.)

> "Pirmais evaņģēlija princips ir ticība Tam Kungam Jēzum Kristum. Ticība Kristum ietver nešaubīgu pārliecību, ka Viņš ir vienpiedzimušais Dieva Dēls un pasaules Glābējs un Pestītājs. Otrais evaņģēlija princips ir grēku nožēlošana. Ticība Kristum un mīlestība pret Viņu vedina nožēlot grēkus jeb mainīt tās domas, uzskatus un rīcību, kas ir pretēja Viņa gribai. Ticība Jēzum Kristum un grēku nožēlošana sagatavo mūs kristīšanās un konfirmācijas priekšrakstiem. Priekšraksts ir svēts rituāls jeb ceremonija, kas parāda, ka mēs esam stājušies derībā ar Dievu. Jēzus mācīja, ka mums jātiek kristītiem ar ūdeni un arī ar Svēto Garu. Pēc kristīšanas ar ūdeni mums jātiek kristītiem ar Svēto Garu, citādi kristīšanās ir nepilnīga. Vienīgi pēc kristīšanās un Svētā Gara saņemšanas mēs varam saņemt grēku piedošanu un pieredzēt pilnīgu garīgu atdzimšanu. Un tad mēs uzsākam jaunu garīgo dzīvi kā Kristus mācekļi. Mēs uzsākam iet pa šauro jo šauru taku, un mums no visa spēka jācenšas palikt uz šī ceļa."

B. Fill In the Blank

On a separate piece of paper, fill in the blank for each sentence with a noun from the list on the far right. Most sentences have more than one correct answer and some nouns will be used more than once. Make sure to make the noun plural, if needed. Check your answers.

1. Dievs ir mūsu Debesu ___.
2. Mēs esam Viņa ___.
3. Džozefs Smits bija ___.
4. Jēzus Kristus ir Dieva ___.
5. Es esmu ___.
6. Mans ___ mani mīl.
7. ___ māca Dieva Vārdu.
8. Jēzus Kristus ir pasaules ___.
9. Russell M. Nelson ir ___.
10. ___ ir dāvana no Dieva.
11. ___ ir Dieva aicināti.
12. Mana ___ man ir svarīga.
13. ___ izpirka mūsu grēkus, lai mēs varētu atgriezties pie Tēva.
14. Mums ir jāklausa ___.

Ģimene
Pravietis
Misionārs
Glābējs
Dēls
Tēvs
Bērns

C. Translation

Translate each sentence into Latvian on a separate piece of paper. Check your answers.

1. My parents taught me about God.
2. Apostles are chosen men of God.
3. We must remember Jesus.
4. She will be a grandma.
5. Who are your visiting teachers?
6. They know that the Book of Mormon is true.
7. I would like that.
8. Who is your best friend?
9. You (formal) are a great example.
10. Jesus is your brother and friend.

D. Common Errors

The following sentences have bolded and starred errors. Correct and explain the errors to your companion. Check your answers.

1. Dieva **dēla*** ir Jēzus Kristus.
   The Son of God is Jesus Christ.
2. **Ko*** jums patīk?
   What do you like?
3. Desmitā tiesa ir **likumu***, kas ir dots, lai palīdzētu celt Dieva valstību.
   Tithing is a law that has been given to help build the kingdom of God.
4. Mormona Grāmata ir vēl viena **liecību*** par Jēzu Kristu.
   The Book of Mormon is another testament of Jesus Christ.
5. **Mūs*** neesam slinki misionāri.
   We are not lazy missionaries.
6. **Jums*** palīdzat citiem.
   You help others.
7. **Ko*** man jādara, lai sagatavotos kristībām?
   What do I have to do to prepare for baptism?
8. Praviešu **vārdus*** ir Dieva **vārdus***.
   The prophet's words are the words of God.
9. Es zinu, ka **šo baznīcu** ir **patiesu***.
   I know that this Church is true.
10. **Tevi*** vari sazināties ar Dievu caur lūgšanu.
    You can communicate with God through prayer.

E. Error Correction

With your companion, take turns reading the following sentences aloud. Start by giving the English translation and then say the sentence as it is written in Latvian. Then have the other companion identify errors, if any, and restate the sentence correctly. Check your answers.

1. Svētos Rakstus ir pierakstus par Dieva darbiem starp Viņa bērniem.
   The scriptures are a record about God's work with His children.
2. Sabata diens ir svēta diens.
   The Sabbath day is a holy day.
3. Mēs esam pateicīgi par to, ka mums ir iespēja nožēlot grēkus.
   We are grateful for the opportunity to repent.
4. Dievu aicina praviešus.
   Prophets are called of God.
5. Es gribu uzzināt, ko tas ir.
   I want to find out what that is.
6. Jums tiksiet atbrīvoti no grēkiem caur Jēzu Kristu.
   You will be freed from sin through Jesus Christ.
7. Vai tev bija jāpieskata bērnus?
   Did you have to watch the children?
8. Mans tētis ir labs cilvēku.
   My dad is a good person.
9. Grēku nožēlošana ir izmainīšanu.
   Repentance is change.
10. Viņu sauc Dzintra.
    Her name is Dzintra.
11. Pēc šīs dzīves mūs dzīvosim Dieva klātbūtnē.
    After this life, we will live in the presence of God.
12. Kristu nomira mūsu dēļ.
    Christ died for us.

"To Be" (*Būt, Kļūt*)

Examples

God **is** our Heavenly Father.	Dievs **ir** mūsu Debesu Tēvs.
We **are** missionaries.	Mēs **esam** misionāri(es).
Jesus Christ **is** the Savior.	Jēzus Kristus **ir** Glābējs.
You **are** children of God.	Jūs **esat** Dieva bērni.

Explanation

Būt ("to be") is used to express the state of being of the subject. Like all verbs in Latvian, *būt* will conjugate to match the subject. *Kļūt (*"to become") is a similar verb that will be shown at the end of this chapter.

Būt

Būt is one of the three irregular verbs in Latvian (*būt, iet, dot*). These verbs are irregular because they do not follow a regular conjugation pattern; see chapter 19, "Verbs." The following chart shows how to conjugate *būt* in past, present, and future*:*

Past Tense		Present Tense		Future Tense	
es **biju** *I **was***	mēs **bijām** *we **were***	es **esmu** *I **am***	mēs **esam** *we **are***	es **būšu** *I **will be***	mēs **būsim** *we **will be***
tu **biji** *you **were***	jūs **bijāt** *you (pl.) **were***	tu **esi** *you **are***	jūs **esat** *you (pl.) **are***	tu **būsi** *you **will be***	jūs **būsiet** *you (pl.) **will be***
viņš - viņa **bija** *he - she **were***	viņi - viņas **bija** *they (m-f) **were***	viņš - viņa **ir** *he - she **is***	viņi - viņas **ir** *they (m-f) **are***	viņš - viņa **būs** *he - she **will be***	viņi - viņas **būs** *they (m-f) **will be***

Būt acts as an equal sign. This means that nouns and adjectives describing the subject of the sentence are expressed in the same case as the subject. The following examples show how *būt* causes both sides of the sentence to match in case:

Examples

Pravieš**i** ir Dieva lieciniek**i**.
Prophets are witnesses of God.

Viņ**as** ir skaist**as** mās**as.**
They are beautiful sisters.

Jums ir jābūt paklausīg**iem(ām)**.
You (pl.) must be obedient.

Constructions Using *Būt*

The conjugated form of *būt* is used in the following constructions:

Sentence Construction	Example	Chapter
State of Being	Mormona Grāmata **ir** senu praviešu raksti. *The Book of Mormon **is** an ancient record of prophets.*	"To Be" (*Būt, Kļūt)*
Dative Constructions	Man **ir** divas māsas. *I **have** two sisters.*	Dative Construction
Debitive Mood	Jums **būs** jālasa Mormona Grāmata katru dienu. *You **will have to** read the Book of Mormon every day.*	Debitive Mood
Perfect Tense	Es **esmu** izlasījis Mormona Grāmatu piecas reizes. *I **have** read the Book of Mormon (completely) five times.*	Perfect Tense
Passive Voice	Baznīca jau **ir** iztīrīta. *The church **has** already been cleaned.*	Passive Voice

State of Being

Adjectives

All adjectives match what they describe in number, case, and gender. This also applies when an adjective is used to describe the qualities or state of being of a subject:

Examples

Tas Kung**s** ir žēlīg**s**.
The Lord is merciful.

Viņš(a) ir uzticīg**s(a)**.
He/She is faithful.

Mormona Grāmat**a** ir paties**a**.
The Book of Mormon is true.

When describing a subject's state of being, Latvians tend to use adjectives over nouns. For example:

Adjective	Noun	
Viņš ir **pacietīgs**. *He is **patient**.*	Viņš ir **pacietība**. *He is **patience**.*	Viņam ir **pacietība**. *He has **patience**.*
Jūs būsiet **laimīgi**, ja jūs dzīvosiet pēc evaņģēlija. *You will be **happy** if you live the gospel.*	Jums būs **laime**, dzīvojot pēc evaņģēlija. *You will have **happiness** while living the gospel.*	

Nouns

Būt is used to describe, identify, and indicate the condition or state of the subject:

Examples

Jēzus Kristus **ir Glābējs.**
*Jesus Christ **is** the **Savior**.*

Viņa **būs skolotāja.**
*She **will be** a **teacher**.*

Mormona Grāmata **ir** Dieva **vārds**.
*The Book of Mormon **is** the **word** of God.*

Negation

In order to express a negative state of being ("I **am not**"), add the prefix *ne-* to the verb *būt*.

Examples

Mēs **neesam** gatavi iet.
*We **are not** ready to go.*

Viņi rītdien **nebūs** mājās.
*They will **not** be home tomorrow.*

*Viņi **nav** baznīcas locekļi.
*They are **not** Church members.*

*Note: When negating *būt* in third-person present tense, use the word *nav*, not *neir*.

"Is Not" and "Has Not"

Būt ("to be") is used to express both "is not" and "has not." The following example shows how construction changes the meaning of *nav*:

Negated State of Being "Is Not"			Negated Dative Construction "Has Not"		
Nom	**=**	**Nom**	**Dat**	**⟶**	**Gen**
Viņš *He*	nav *is not*	draudzīgs. *friendly.*	Viņam *He*	nav *does not have*	draugu. *friends.*

Kļūt

Kļūt is a first conjugation verb that means "to become." It is used when the subject is becoming:

(1) An adjective. Remember, adjectives must match the subject in number, case, and gender.
(2) A noun. This is expressed using *par* with the noun in accusative if it is singular and dative if it is plural.

Examples

Mūsu klausītāji **kļūs par** labiem baznīcas loceķliem.
*Our investigators **will become** great members of the Church.*

Viņa **kļuva** pacietīgāka.
*She **became** more patient.*

Bērni **kļūst** pieauguši.
*Children **become** adults.*

The following chart shows how to conjugate *kļūt*:

Past Tense		Present Tense		Future Tense	
es **kļuvu** *I **became***	mēs **kļuvām** *we **became***	es **kļūstu** *I **become***	mēs **kļūstam** *we **become***	es **kļūšu** *I **will become***	mēs **kļūsim** *we **will become***
tu **kļuvi** *you **became***	jūs **kļuvāt** *you (pl.) **became***	tu **kļūsti** *you **become***	jūs **kļūstat** *you(pl.) **become***	tu **kļūsi** *you **will become***	jūs **kļūsiet** *you(pl.) **will become***
viņš - viņa **kļuva** *he - she **became***	viņi - viņas **kļuva** *they (m-f) **became***	viņš - viņa **kļūst** *he - she **become***	viņi - viņas **kļūst** *they (m-f) **become***	viņš - viņa **kļūs** *he - she **will become***	viņi - viņas **kļūs** *they (m-f) **will become***

The state of being can also be expressed in passive voice using the verb *tikt.* See chapter 22, "Passive Voice."

Activities

A. Fill In the Blank

On a separate sheet of paper, fill in the blanks with the correct form of either *būt* or *kļūt.* Pay attention to the subject and the tense of the sentence. Check your answers.

1. Viņš __ labs draugs.
   He is a good friend.
2. Jūs __ labi vecāki.
   You (pl.) will be great parents.
3. Es __ par pazemīgu kalpotāju.
   I will become a humble servant.
4. Dace __ uz pareizā ceļa.
   Dace is on the right path.
5. Mēs __ par evaņģēlija skolotājiem.
   We are becoming gospel teachers.
6. Viņi __ priecīgi būt baznīcā.
   They are happy to be at church.
7. Mēs __ Dieva aicināti.
   We are called of God.
8. Tu __ stiprs(a) caur savām grūtībām.
   You became strong through your hardships.
9. Jēzus __ pasaules Pestītājs.
   Jesus is the Redeemer of the world.
10. Es __ pateicīgs(a) par savām svētībām.
    I am grateful for my blessings.

B. Matching

On another piece of paper, match a subject from the box on the left with the correct form of the verb from the box on the right. Then finish writing a sentence for each pair to use in a lesson.

Mēs Evaņģēlijs Viņš Dievs	ir nav esat esi
Viņa Daniels un Sāra Jūs Tu	nav esam bija būšu
Viņas Jūs Mēs ar Andi Es	bija ir nebijāt būsim

Examples

Mēs esam misionāri(es).
We are missionaries.

Mēs ar Andi būsim baznīcā.
Andis and I will be at church.

C. Translation

Translate the following sentences into Latvian, focusing on using the correct form of *būt*. Check your answers.

1. I am a representative of Jesus Christ.
2. The teacher was kind.
3. We are not Americans.
4. Jesus is the perfect example.
5. You are wonderful.
6. You (formal) will be a student.
7. He is a Latvian.
8. Apostles are also prophets.
9. I was happy on Sunday to see you.
10. They are not ready to go.
11. They are great parents.
12. President Nelson is the modern-day prophet.
13. I will not be loud.
14. You are calm.
15. She is Janis's daughter.
16. Joseph Smith was the prophet of the Restoration.

D. Common Errors

The following sentences have bolded and starred errors. Correct and explain the errors to your companion. Check your answers.

1. Dievs **būt*** mūsu Tēvs debesīs.
   God is our Father in Heaven.
2. Zaiga **būs*** zelta klausītāja.
   Zaiga was a golden investigator.
3. **Es neesi*** laimīgs(a).
   I am not happy.
4. Jēzus Kristus evaņģēlijs **būt*** miera vēstījums.
   Jesus Christ's gospel is a message of peace.
5. **Jūs esi** gudrs(a).
   You (formal) are smart.
6. Nemirstība **neir*** tas pats, kas mūžīgā dzīve.
   Immortality is not the same as eternal life.
7. **Tu esat*** skaists(a).
   You are beautiful.
8. Mēs **būt*** tādi, kāds **būt*** Dievs.
   We will be as God is.
9. Caur lūgšanu jūs varat **kļuvāt*** pazemīgāki(as).
   Through prayer, you (pl.) can become more humble.
10. Kalpot citiem **esmu*** bauslis no Dieva.
    Serving others is a commandment from God.

E. Error Correction

With your companion, take turns reading the following sentences aloud. Start by giving the English translation and then say the sentence as it is written in Latvian. Then have the other companion identify errors, if any, and restate the sentence correctly. Check your answers.

1. Mēs bijāt pateicīgs par iespēju palīdzēt Leldei.
   We were grateful for the opportunity to help Lelde.
2. Es ir misionāri.
   I am a missionary.
3. Vai Diāna esi Brāļa Ozola meitu?
   Is Diana Brother Ozols's daughter?
4. Jūs esat tīri pēc kristīšanās.
   You (pl.) are clean after baptism.
5. Tu vēl esi ne gatavs kristīties.
   You still are not ready to be baptized.
6. Misionāriem ir jābūt pazemīgi.
   Missionaries must be humble.
7. Ar laiku jūs kļūt pilnīgi.
   You will become perfect with time.
8. Mans pārinieks neir no Amerikas.
   My companion is not from America.
9. Viņi esi ļoti labi skolotāji.
   They are really good teachers.
10. Vai tu būt no Rīgas?
    Are you from Riga?

F. Translation

Translate the following sentences into Latvian, focusing on using the correct form of *kļūt*. Check your answers.

1. He became the branch president last year.
2. They will become members soon.
3. You will become perfect in Christ.
4. The church became a place for me to feel peace.
5. I become stronger when I pray.
6. Sintija and I will become good friends.
7. They became the best teachers, with practice.
8. You become more like God by following Him.
9. The Book of Mormon became the foundation of Helen's faith.
10. We become clean when we partake of the sacrament.

G. "Is Not" and "Have Not"

The words bolded below are in the nominative case. Determine what case they need to be in and conjugate them if necessary to complete the sentence. Then translate the sentences into English and check your answers.

1. Vai tu aicināsi savus draugus, kuri nav baznīcas **locekļiem**, uz baznīcu?
2. Kā tev nav **kauns**?
3. Viņam nav pietiekami **pacietība**, lai tiktu galā ar bērniem.
4. Dzīve ir **skaists**.
5. Kritizēt nav **mūsu pienākums**.
6. Viņai nav **brāļi** un **māsa**s.
7. Viņš nav **ļauna**.
8. Manai māsai nav **laiks** tikties ar misionāriem.

H. Writing Activity

Write a description of yourself and your family to practice introducing yourself to people. Some ideas include things such as *I am the oldest son*, *Sarah is my sister*, *My dad is a doctor*, *We are from Arizona*, *My brother is my friend*, etc. Focus on using the correct conjugations of *būt.*

Accusative Case

Examples

Joseph Smith translated the **Book** of Mormon.	Džozefs Smits pārtulkoja Mormona **Grāmatu.**
Jesus Christ completed the **Atonement.**	Jēzus Kristus paveica Grēku **Izpirkšanu**.
John the Baptist restored the Aaronic **Priesthood.**	Jānis Kristītājs atjaunoja Ārona **priesterību**.
The gospel blesses **families.**	Evaņģēlijs svētī **ģimenes**.

Explanation

When a noun is acted upon by a verb (direct object), the accusative case (*ko*) is used. Like other cases, the accusative case is formed by declining or modifying the noun endings.

Examples	Explanation
Dievs mīl **visus cilvēkus**. *God loves **all people.***	*Visus cilēkus* is the direct object because "all people" are being loved.
Dievs **tevi** uzklausa. *God hears **you.***	*Tevi* is the direct object because "you" is what is being heard.
Mācot **evaņģēliju**, izmanto **Svētos Rakstus**. *When teaching **the gospel**, utilize **the scriptures**.*	*Evaņģēliju* is the direct object because it is what is being taught; *Svētos Rakstus* is the direct object because "the scriptures" are what are being utilized.

Note: Adjectives also decline to accusative case when the noun they describe is in accusative case. This can be seen with *visus* and *Svētos* in the previous examples. Pronouns declension charts can be found in chapter 10, "Pronouns."

Accusative Case Endings

The following is an example of how the noun "peace" is changed to the accusative case:

	Nom		Acc
Example	mier**s** *peace*	→	mier**u** *peace*

	Nom	Verb	Acc
Sentence	Es *I*	sajūtu *feel*	**mier<u>u</u>.** *peace.*

The following chart shows how each ending declines, with the accusative case endings highlighted:

Masculine	**I**		**II**		**III**	
	Sg	**Pl**	**Sg**	**Pl**	**Sg**	**Pl**
Nominative ***Kas***	-s	-i	-is	*-i	-us	-i
Accusative ***Ko***	-u	-us	-i	*-us	-u	-us
Genitive ***Kā***	-a	-u	*-a	*-u	-us	-u
Dative ***Kam***	-am	-iem	-im	*-iem	-um	-iem
Locative ***Kur***	-ā	-os	-ī	*-os	-ū	-os

Feminine	**I**		**II**		**III**	
	Sg	**Pl**	**Sg**	**Pl**	**Sg**	**Pl**
Nominative ***Kas***	-a	-as	-e	-es	-s	-is
Accusative ***Ko***	-u	-as	-i	-es	-i	-is
Genitive ***Kā***	-as	-u	-es	*-u	-s	*-u
Dative ***Kam***	-ai	-ām	-ei	-ēm	-ij	-īm
Locative ***Kur***	-ā	-ās	-ē	-ēs	-ī	-īs

*Indicates where softening takes place. See chapter 1, "Alphabet and Pronunciation," for softening patterns.

The following chart shows the endings for words in accusative case and an example for each ending:

Masc	I		II		III	
	Sg	**Pl**	**Sg**	**Pl**	**Sg**	**Pl**
Acc	-u	-us	-i	*-us	-u	-us
Example	tēvu	tēvus	brāli	brāļus	tirgu	tirgus

Fem	I		II		III	
	Sg	**Pl**	**Sg**	**Pl**	**Sg**	**Pl**
Acc	-u	-as	-i	-es	-i	-is
Example	māsu	māsas	māti	mātes	sirdi	sirdis

*Indicates where softening of the previous letter occurs.

Examples

Es gribu, lai tu uzzinātu **patiesību**.
*I want you to find out the **truth**.*

Mēs pielietojām savu **izvēles brīvību**, lai izvēlētos nākt uz Zemes.
*We used our **agency** to choose to come to earth.*

Debesu Tēvs ir nodrošinājis mums **ceļu**, kā atgriezties pie Viņa.
*Heavenly Father has provided us a **path** to return to Him.*

Atklāsme var tikt dota caur Kristus **gaismu** un caur **Svēto Garu.**
*Revelation can be given through the **light** of Christ and through the **Holy Ghost**.*

Accusative Pronouns

The chart below shows personal pronouns in nominative and how they decline into accusative case:

Nominative				→	Accusative			
Sg		**Pl**			**Sg**		**Pl**	
es *I*		mēs *we*			mani *me*		mūs *us*	
tu *you (informal)*		jūs *you (formal or plural)*			tevi *you*		jūs *you*	
viņš - viņa *he - she*		viņi - viņas *they (m-f)*			viņu - viņu *him - her*		viņus - viņas *them (m-f)*	
šis - šī *this (m-f)*	tas - tā *that (m-f)*	šie - šīs *these (m-f)*	tas - tā *those (m-f)*		šo - šo *this (m-f)*	to - to *that (m-f)*	šos - šīs *these (m-f)*	tos - tās *those (m-f)*

Examples

Dievs **mani** mīl.
*God loves **me**.*

Mēs **viņus** aicinājām lasīt Mormona Grāmatu.
*We invited **them** to read the Book of Mormon.*

Dievs **mūs** atalgo par mūsu darbiem un vēlmēm.
*God rewards **us** for our works and desires.*

Dievam ir iecere, kā **mūs** padarīt laimīgus.
*God has a plan to make **us** happy.*

Note: The usual word order is to place the pronoun before the verb.

Accusative Prepositions

When accusative prepositions are used with singular objects, then the preposition forces the object into the accusative case. These are the accusative prepositions:

ap *around*	ar *with*	caur *through*	gar *along*	starp *between*
pa *at/through*	par *about/than/for*	pār *over/across*	pret *against*	uz* *to*

***** *Uz* is also a genitive preposition meaning "on." See chapter 24, Prepositions."

Examples

Vai tu nāksi **uz** baznīcu?
*Will you come **to** church?*

Jēzus Kristus evaņģēlijs tika atjaunots **caur** Džozefu Smitu.
*The gospel of Jesus Christ was restored **through** Joseph Smith.*

Es viņu redzēju ārā **pa** logu.
*I saw her **through** the window.*

Kopā **ar** Dievu viss ir iespējams.
*All is possible **with** God.*

Pravieši un apustuļi liecina **par** Glābēju.
*Prophets and apostles testify **about** the Savior.*

Misionāri sapulcējās **ap** misijas prezidentu, lai dzirdētu, kas viņam sakāms.
*Missionaries grouped **around** the mission president to hear what he had to say.*

Note: Any time a preposition describes a plural object, the dative case is forced.

Examples

Vai tu šosvētdien kopā **ar** mums apmeklēsi baznīcu?
*Will you attend church **with** us this Sunday?*

Mums ir jādzīvo saskaņā **ar** Dieva pavēlēm visu savu mūžu.
*All our lives we must live according **to** God's commands.*

Activities

A. Identification

Each of the following sentences contains a direct object (accusative case). Identify the direct objects by writing them on a separate piece of paper, then check your answers.

1. Es mīlu To Kungu.
   I love the Lord.
2. Es esmu pateicīgs(a) par Dieva ieceri.
   I am thankful for God's plan.
3. Mormona Grāmata satur evaņģēlija pilnību.
   The Book of Mormon contains the fulness of the gospel.
4. Viņi var atpazīt Svēto Garu.
   They can recognize the Holy Ghost.
5. Dievs vienmēr ir aicinājis praviešus.
   God has always called prophets.
6. Mūsu klausītājs lasa Mormona Grāmatu.
   Our investigator is reading the Book of Mormon.
7. Kristus vada šo baznīcu.
   Christ leads this Church.
8. Mēs saņemam piedošanu no Dieva.
   We receive forgiveness from God.
9. Debesu Tēvs ir pacietīgs ar mani.
   Heavenly Father is patient with me.
10. Ticība mūs vedina nožēlot grēkus.
    Faith leads us to repent.

B. Declension

Decline the following nouns into the accusative case on a separate piece of paper in both singular and plural forms. These words can be used as a pattern to decline all nouns of the same category. Check your answers.

1. Dievs
   God
2. lūgšana
   prayer
3. pravietis
   prophet
4. Bībele
   Bible
5. Kristus
   Christ
6. sirds (f)
   heart

C. Companion Practice Activity

Look around you. Tell your companion what you see. To ask what your companion sees, say, "*Ko tu redzi?*" Your companion will then reply, "*Es redzu ___ .*" ("I see ___.") Switch roles. Note that *redzēt* ("to see"), like almost all verbs, forces the accusative case.
Here are some examples of words you could use in singular or plural. Check your answers.

1. Elders
   Elder
2. galds
   table
3. Māsa
   Sister
4. lampa
   lamp
5. Bībele
   Bible
6. krēsls
   chair
7. skolotājs(a)
   teacher
8. dators
   computer

D. Translation

Translate the following sentences into Latvian on a separate piece of paper. Check your answers.

1. I love my Savior.
2. God sent His Son because He loves us.
3. Christ leads this Church.
4. Did you pray about the Book of Mormon?
5. We feel the Holy Ghost.
6. Do you (formal) read the Bible?
7. The gospel blesses families.
8. How long have you known him?

E. Common Errors

The following sentences have bolded and starred errors. Correct and explain the errors to your companion. Check your answers.

1. Es runāju ar **Ilona***.
   I spoke with Ilona.
2. Mēs redzējām Dieva **apustulus un pravietus***.
   We saw God's apostles and prophets.
3. Misionāri mīl **Dieva***.
   Missionaries love God.
4. Mēs mācām angļu valodas **kursi***.
   We teach English courses.
5. Caur **pārbaudījumus*** mēs mācāmies paļauties uz Dievu.
   Through trials, we learn to rely on God.
6. Iesim uz priekšu ar **cerībai*** Kristū.
   Let us go forth with hope in Christ.

F. Error Correction

With your companion, take turns reading the following sentences aloud. Start by giving the English translation and then say the sentence as it is written in Latvian. Then have the other companion identify errors, if any, and restate the sentence correctly. Check your answers.

1. Mēs varam saņemt mūžīgā dzīvi.
   We can receive eternal life.
2. Pārejiet pāri tiltam, lai nokļūtu uz mūsu baznīcu!
   Go over the bridge to get to our church.
3. Mammas vakaros bieži dzied šūpuļdziesmām saviem bērniem.
   In the evenings, moms often sing lullabies to their children.
4. Es nespēju runāt par Atjaunošana pieklusināti.
   I can't speak about the Restoration in a toned-down voice.
5. Autobuss izbrauks ap vienu.
   The bus departs at about one.
6. Es nezinu, kas tas ir.
   I don't know what that is.

G. Accusative Adjectives

Use the adjectives below to describe the words from activity C in the accusative case. Use both definite and indefinite adjective endings. Think of additional adjectives to use. Check your answers.

1. labs
   good
2. brīnišķīgs
   wonderful
3. milzīgs
   huge
4. skaists
   beautiful
5. grūts
   hard/tough
6. garš
   tall
7. svēts
   holy
8. zils
   blue

H. Fill In the Blank

Fill in the blanks in each sentence with the correct ending or the correct accusative pronoun. Check your answers.

1. Es mīlu sav_ ģimen_.
   I love my family.
2. Šī grāmata ietver evaņģēlija mūžīg_ patiesīb_.
   This book contains eternal truths of the gospel.
3. Caur Svēt_ Gar_ mēs sajūtam mier_.
   Through the Holy Ghost we feel peace.
4. Viņš nav lasījis Bībel_.
   He has not read the Bible.
5. Viņiem(ām) patīk studēt Svēt_ Rakst_.
   They like to study the scriptures.
6. Kādi Jums ir jautājumi par __, __ mēs mācījām?
   What questions do you (formal) have about what we taught?
7. Godini sav_ tēv_ un sav_ māt_!
   Honor your father and your mother.
8. Dievs atklāja veselības likum_, sauktu par Gudrības Vārd_.
   God revealed a health law that is called the Word of Wisdom.
9. Jānis uzticīgi maksāja sav_ desmit_ ties_.
   Jānis faithfully paid his tithing.
10. Vai jūs atradāt Ditas dzīvokl_?
    Did you (pl.) find Dita's apartment?

I. Create a Sentence

On a separate piece of paper, use the following words to create a simple sentence with the given subject, verb, and direct object. Make sure to conjugate the verb correctly according to the subject and the tense given in parentheses. As you continue to learn and expand your abilities, try adding adjectives, adverbs, and other grammar principles to make the sentences more complex. Check your answers.

1. Joseph / to see / God. (past)
2. God / to love / us. (present)
3. I / to read / Bible. (future)
4. The Holy Ghost / to confirm / truth. (future)
5. Nephi / to build / ship. (past)
6. They / to sing / song. (past)
7. Will you / to keep / the Ten Commandments? (future)
8. Priesthood holders / to perform / sacred ordinances. (present)
9. Church members / to pay / fast offerings. (present)
10. She / to receive / calling. (past)

J. Writing Activity

Write your testimony of the Book of Mormon. Pay special attention to your use of the accusative case. Consider writing it in a Latvian Book of Mormon to give away.

K. Language Study Plan Activity (*Preach My Gospel*, chapter 7)

Read the fourth bullet point under "Actively Listen" (page 130). Throughout the day, pay attention to how native speakers use the accusative case. Make note of anything you do not understand. Review those notes with your companion during your next companionship language study.

L. Scripture Activity

Look up two or three scriptures you will use in teaching today. Identify any accusative prepositions and pronouns and why they were used. Prepare how you would share the scritpures, and pay particular attention to the accusative prepositions and pronouns. Practice by sharing them with your companion.

Asking Questions

Examples

What do you think about God?	**Ko** jūs domājat par Dievu?
Do you believe in God and Jesus Christ?	**Vai** tu tici Dievam un Jēzum Kristum?
What are your (formal) thoughts about this verse?	**Kādas** ir Jūsu domas par šo pantu?
What plans do we have today?	**Kādi** mums šodien ir plāni?

Explanation

This chapter discusses different ways to ask questions in Latvian using interrogatives, or question words.

Yes/No Questions

A yes/no question in Latvian is formed by adding the question word ***vai*** to the beginning of a statement.

	Question Word	Subject	Direct Object	Verb	Translation
Statement:	-	Dievs	mani	mīl.	*God loves me.*
Question:	Vai	Dievs	mani	mīl?	*Does God love me?*

The following chart shows examples of yes/no questions and possible responses:

Question	Answers
Vai tu lasīji Mormona Grāmatu? *Did you read the Book of Mormon?*	Jā, es lasīju par Lehija sapni. *Yes, I read about Lehi's dream.* Nē, es biju aizņemts. *No, I was busy.*
Vai jūs šovakar lūgsiet? *Will you pray tonight?*	Jā, es lūgšu pirms gulētiešanas. *Yes, I will pray before going to bed.* Nē, šovakar man nebūs laika. *No, I will not have time tonight.*
Vai viss ir kārtībā? *Literally: Is everything in order?* *English: Is everything ok?*	Jā, viss kārtībā. *Yes, everything is fine (in order).* Ne gluži. Man ļoti sāp galva. *Not really. I have a really bad headache.*
Vai kāds nomazgāja traukus? *Did someone wash the dishes?*	Jā, es tos vakar nomazgāju. *Yes, I washed them yesterday.* Man liekas, ka nē. *I don't think so.*

Vai

Vai is also used in questions or statements to express "whether or not," using the following pattern: *vai* ____ *vai nē*.

Examples

Es nezinu, **vai** tas ir labi **vai nē**.
*I do not know **whether** that is good **or not**.*

Viņa jautāja, **vai** Džozefs Smits bija pravietis **vai nē.**
*She asked if **(whether or not)** Joseph Smith was a prophet.*

Kad tu lūgsi, lai uzzinātu, **vai** Mormona Grāmata ir patiesa **vai nē**?
*When will you pray to find out if (**whether or not)** the Book of Mormon is true?*

If the phrase "whether or not" can be correctly substituted for "if" in English, ***vai,*** NOT ***ja***, should be used.

Question Words

In addition to *vai,* there are many other question words. The following chart shows some common Latvian question words:

Declinable	kas? *who/what?*	kurš? *which/which one?*			kāds? *what kind?*	
Indeclinable	kā? *how?*	cik? *how (much, many)?*	kad? *when?*		cikos? *what time?*	kādēļ? kāpēc? *why?*

Declinable

Kas, *kurš*, and *kāds* are declinable question words. The following questions show examples of how the declinable question words are used with different cases. Pay attention to how the case changes based on what information is being asked for.

	Questions	Answers
Kas	**Kas** tev šodien patika mūsu baznīcas sanāksmēs? ***What** did you like in our church meetings today?*	Man patika **runātāji** un garīgās **dziesmas**. *I liked the **speakers** and the **hymns**.*
	Ko tev nozīmē tas, ka mūsdienās ir pravietis? ***What** does it mean to you that we have a prophet in our day?*	Tas man dod **drošības sajūtu un mieru.** *That gives me a **feeling of safety and peace.***
Kurš	**Kurš** noskaitīs lūgšanu? ***Who** will say the prayer?*	**Sanita** pieteicās noskaitīt lūgšanu. ***Sanita** volunteered to say the prayer.*
	Kuram ir atbildība sagatavot Svēto Vakarēdienu? ***Who** has the responsibility to prepare the sacrament?*	Priesterības **nesēji** ir par to atbildīgi. *Priesthood **holders** are responsible for that.*
Kāds	**Kāda** ir Dieva Tēva un Jēzus Kristus daba? ***What** is the nature of God the Father and Jesus Christ?*	Viņi ir **mīloši** un **pacietīgi**. *They are **loving** and **patient**.*
	Kādi tev ir jautājumi par to, ko mēs šodien mācījām? ***What** questions do you have about what we taught today?*	Kāpēc priesterība tika paņemta prom no zemes? *Why was the priesthood taken away from the earth?*

Nominative

Questions asking about the subject—who or what—are asked in nominative case.

Question	Answer
Kas spēlēs klavieres? ***Who** will play the piano?*	**Madara** spēlēs klavieres. ***Madara** will play the piano.*
Kurš no jums grib atgriezties pie Dieva? ***Which** of you wants to return to God?*	**Es** gribu atgriezties pie Dieva. ***I** want to return to God.*
Kāds svētdien būs laiks? ***What** will the weather be like on Sunday?*	Laiks svētdien būs **saulains**. *The weather on Sunday will be **sunny**.*

Note: Answers to questions match the case of the question word. For example, the answer to a nominative question is also given in the nominative case. This is true for every case.

Accusative

When asking about the direct object of the sentence (what the verb is affecting), use an accusative question word.

Question	Answer
Ko tev nozīmē ticība? ***What** does faith mean to you?*	**To**, ka man ir jāpaļaujas uz Dievu. ***That,** (that) I need to rely on God.*
Kuru bausli Jūs nesaprotat? ***Which** commandment do you (formal) not understand?*	**Desmito tiesu.** ***Tithing.***
Kādu baznīcu Jūs meklējat? ***What** kind of church are you (formal) looking for?*	**Baznīcu ģimenēm**. ***A church for families.***

Genitive

When using genitive prepositions and postpositions, genitive verbs, or when asking about possession or lack of possession, the genitive case is used.

Question	Answer
Kā dēls tu esi? ***Whose** son are you?*	**Gunitas un Gata.** ***Gunita and Gatis'.***
Kopš kura laika tev patīk dziedāt? ***Since when** do you like to sing?*	Kopš **bērnības**. *Since **childhood.***
No kāda materiāla ir taisīts šis krēsls? *What **(what kind of) material** is this chair made out of?*	No **koka**. *From **wood.***

Note: Questions can also be formed with prepositions, which will go before the question word and force different cases.

Dative

When asking about the subject of a dative construction or "whom" or when using a dative verb, the dative case is used.

Question	Answer
Kuram no taviem bērniem visvairāk patīk sportot? ***Which** of your children likes to play sports the most?*	**Rūdolfiņam.** ***Rudolf**.*
Kam es iedevu savu grāmatu? ***Whom** did I give my book to?*	**Tētim.** ***Dad**.*
Kādam tev ir jābūt, lai saņemtu atbildes uz savām lūgšanām? ***What kind** of person do you have to be to receive answers to your prayers?*	Man ir jābūt **pazemīgam**. *I have to be **humble**.*

Locative

Locative case is used when asking about location.

Question	Answer
Kur Džozefs gāja lūgt Dievu? ***Where** did Joseph go to pray to God?*	**Mežā.** ***Into the woods.***
Kurā nodaļā ir runāts par mūsu kristīšanās derību? ***In which** chapter does it talk about our baptismal covenant?*	Mosijas **Grāmatā, astoņpadsmitajā nodaļā.** ***In the book** of Mosiah, **in the eighteenth chapter**.*
Kādā gadījumā ir jāizsauc ātrā palīdzība? *When **(in what situation)** do we need to call the ambulance?*	**(Tādā gadījumā)**, ja ir notikusi kāda nelaime. *If something bad has happened.*

Kurš and *Kāds*

Kurš and *kāds* decline following the normal adjective endings and match in number, case, and gender when asking a question.

Examples

Kurā nodaļā ir tas pants par to, ka ticība ir kā sēkla?
***In which** chapter is the verse about how faith is like a seed?*

Kādu atbildi tu saņēmi par to, kas tev ir jādara?
***What kind of** answer did you receive about what you have to do?*

Uz kuru Kristus īpašību mēs šonedēļ koncentrēsimies?
***Which** attribute of Christ is our focus this week?*

Pie **kura** baznīcas locekļa mēs braucam?
***Which** Church member's (home) are we going to?*

See chapter 13, "*Kas*, *Kurš*, *Kāds*," for more information on their definitions, additional uses, and examples.

Indeclinable

Indeclinable question words do not decline. The following chart shows examples of indeclinable questions and possible answers:

Question	Answer
Kā tevi sauc? *Literal: **How** are you called?* *English: What is your name?*	Mani sauc **Judīte**. *Literal: They call me **Judite**.* *English: My name is **Judite**.*
Cik ir pulkstenis? ***What** time is it?*	**Divi**. (notice how the answer is in nominative) ***Two**.*
Kad tu domā tu beigsi gatavoties savai stundiņai? ***When** do you think you will finish preparing for your lesson?*	**Apmēram pēc pusstundas.** ***In about half an hour.***
Cikos mēs rīt varētu tikties? ***What time** could we meet tomorrow?*	Tiekamies **četros**! (notice how the answer is in locative) *Let's meet at **four**!*
Kāpēc/Kādēļ Grēku Izpirkšana tev ir svarīga? ***Why** is the Atonement important to you?*	**Tāpēc, ka es varu saņemt piedošanu un tikt attīrīta no grēkiem.** ***Because I can receive forgiveness and be made clean.***

Kā

Kā has two different uses as a question word. The first definition of $kā_1$ is declined from *kas* into genitive case and means "whose." The second definition of $kā_2$ is indeclinable and means "how." In the examples below, notice which *kā* is being used:

Question	Answer
Kā$_1$ bērni tie ir? ***Whose** children are they?*	Tie ir **Jāņa** bērni. *They are **Janis's** children.*
No kā$_1$ ir celta šī māja? ***What** is this house built **of**?*	Šī māja ir celta **no ķieģeļiem**. *This house is built **of bricks.***
Kā$_2$ jūs satikāt Ritu? ***How** did you meet Rita?*	Mēs parkā satikām Ritu kopā ar viņas bērniem. *We met Rita in the park together with her children.*
Kā$_1$ tev trūka, kad tu biji students? ***What** were you lacking when you were a student?*	Man trūka **naudas**. *I was lacking **money**.*
Kā$_2$ tev patika šodienas sapulce? ***How** did you like today's meeting?*	Man patika. Tā bija ļoti pamācoša. *I liked it! It was very instructive.*

Commonly Asked Questions

There are several ways to say "to ask" in Latvian. For examples, see chapter 20, "Verb Prefixes and Synonyms." This section will show some examples of common questions you might encounter or need to use.

Asking for Help or Favors

The chart below shows the most common ways to ask for help or a favor:

	Example	Explanation
Imperative	Palīdziet, lūdzu! *Help, please!*	Use the command form and add *lūdzu* for politeness. See chapter 18, "Imperative Mood."
	Aizveriet, lūdzu, logu! *Please close the window.*	
Conditional	Vai tu varētu, lūdzu, noskaitīt lūgšanu? *Could you please offer the prayer?*	*Vai* + *tu* (*jūs*) + *varētu* + *lūdzu* + (pronoun, if used) + verb in infinitive + direct object. See chapter 32, "Conditional Mood."
	Vai jūs varētu, lūdzu, mums palīdzēt iztīrīt baznīcu? *Could you please help us clean the church?*	

Asking for Directions

The following chart shows the most common ways to ask for directions:

Example	Explanation
Kur atrodas Cēsu iela? ***Where*** *is Cesu Street (located)?*	*Kur atrodas* + 'place' in nominative
Kā nokļūt līdz Ģertrūdes baznīcai? ***How*** *do you get to Gertrude's church?*	*Kā nokļūt līdz* + 'place' in dative

Asking About Possession

To ask about possession, dative construction (*kam* + *ir,* or *kam* + *pieder*) is most often used. However, the genitive question word *kā* can be used when asking about people. The following examples illustrate this:

Question	Answer
Kā sieva **ir** Kristīne? ***Whose*** *wife* ***is*** *Kristine?*	Viņa **ir Riharda** sieva. *She* ***is Rihard's*** *wife.*
Kam Kristīne **ir** sieva? ***Whose*** *wife* ***is*** *Kristine?*	
Kam pieder šī mašīna? ***Whom*** *does this car* ***belong to****?*	Tā **ir Guntara** mašīna. *That* ***is Guntar's*** *car.*
Kam ir šī mašīna? ***Whose*** *car* ***is*** *this?*	
Kam pieder šīs atslēgas? ***Whom*** *do these keys* ***belong to****?*	Tās **ir manējās**. *OR* Tās **pieder man**. *Those* ***are mine****.* OR *Those* ***belong to me****.*
Kam ir šīs atslēgas? ***Whose*** *keys* ***are*** *these?*	
Kam jūs vakar nokrāsojāt sētu? ***Whose*** *fence did you paint yesterday?*	Mēs vakar nokrāsojām **Kārļa** sētu. *We painted* ***Karlis's*** *fence yesterday.*
Kura klausītāja sētu jūs vakar nokrāsojāt? ***Which*** *investigator's fence did you paint yesterday?*	

Note: *Kam pieder* is not used with people, since people don't belong to people.

Activities

A. Translation

Translate the following questions. Check your answers. Practice asking and answering each question with your companion, and come up with more questions on your own.

1. What is your favorite scripture verse?
2. What do you (formal) know about the Book of Mormon?
3. Where did we live before this life?
4. Do you believe that God loves you?
5. Why is your family important to you?
6. What do you (formal) understand with (about) the word "prophet"?
7. Which one of us is going to teach Sunday School?
8. Does Robert know where the post office is?
9. What helps us feel the Holy Ghost?
10. What is missing in your life?
11. What is your (pl.) religion (*literally:* religious conviction)?
12. What did you just ask me?

B. Fill In the Blank

Fill in the blank with the correct question word. Check your answers.

1. ___ mēs varētu tikties?
   When could we meet with you?
2. ___ ir Džozefs Smits?
   Who is Joseph Smith?
3. Es zinu, ___ tu jūties.
   I know how you feel.
4. ___ tu sekosi Jēzus Kristus piemēram?
   Will you follow the example of Jesus Christ?
5. ___ baznīcu jūs apmeklējat?
   Which church do you go to?
6. ___ Jūs domājat, ___ ir mūsu dzīves jēga?
   What do you (formal) think, what is the purpose of our life?
7. ___ tu šodien esi lasījis(usi) Mormona Grāmatu?
   Have you read the Book of Mormon today?
8. ___ Jūs ticat Dievam?
   Why do you (formal) believe in God?
9. ___ sākas baznīca?
   What time does the church start at?
10. ___ mēs varam zināt, ___ ir patiess?
    How can we know what is true?

C. Getting to Know Someone

Role-play moving into a new area and getting to know the local members. With your companion, practice asking and responding to the following questions. Then create five additional questions you could ask when getting to know someone.

1. Vai mēs varētu Jūs kaut kad apciemot?
   Could we come visit you (formal) sometime?
2. Vai Jūs esat students(e)? Ko Jūs studējat?
   Are you (formal) a student? What do you (formal) study?
3. Kuri no Jūsu draugiem vai paziņām varētu būt ieinteresēti evaņģēlijā?
   Which of your (formal) friends and acquaintances could be interested in the gospel?
4. Ko jums patīk darīt?
   What do you (pl.) like to do?
5. Kas Jums pašlaik sagādā grūtības Jūsu dzīvē?
   What is difficult in your (formal) life right now?
6. Ko Jūs par to domājat?
   What are your (formal) thoughts about that?

D. Using *Vai* or *Ja*

When translating *if* into Latvian, decide whether the following sentences would require a *vai* construction or the word *ja*. Check your answers.

1. We don't know if you want to learn more or not.
2. If you love me, keep my commandments.
3. She asked if Joseph Smith was a prophet.
4. If you pray, then you will get an answer.
5. Do you want to know if God loves you?
6. If you get an answer that this is the truth, will you be baptized?

E. Questions with *Kā*

Translate the following sentences into English. Explain to your companion whether *kā* is used as a genitive of *kas* or as an indeclinable question word meaning "how." You can refer to chapter 9, "Genitive Case," for help. Check your answers.

1. Kā var nožēlot grēkus?
2. Pie kā mēs šovakar iesim ciemos?
3. Kā var uzzināt, vai šī ir patiesība?
4. Kā sētu jūs nokrāsojāt?
5. No kā ir cēlušies cilvēki?
6. Kā viņam trūka, ka viņam vajadzēja zagt?

F. Common Errors

The following sentences have bolded and starred errors. Correct and explain the errors to your companion. Check your answers.

1. **Ko*** tev patīk?
   What do you like?
2. **Ko*** Jūs sauc?
   How are you (formal) called? (What is your name?)
3. **Ka*** mēs varam atgriezties pie Dieva?
   How can we return to God?
4. **Ko*** tev ir vajadzīgs?
   What do you need?
5. Es gribu zināt, **kas*** ir tavs mīļākais pants.
   I want to know what your favorite verse is.
6. **Kur*** Jūs esat?
   Where are you (formal) from?
7. **Kuru*** skaitīs lūgšanu?
   Who will pray?
8. Vai es drīkstu **jautāt*** Jums jautājumu?
   May I ask you (formal) a question?
9. **Ko*** Jūs iedevāt grāmatu?
   Who did you (formal) give the book to?
10. **Kas*** Jums patīk darīt?
    What do you (formal) like to do?

G. Error Correction

With your companion, take turns reading the following sentences aloud. Start by giving the English translation and then say the sentence as it is written in Latvian. Then have the other companion identify errors, if any, and restate the sentence correctly. Check your answers.

1. Kas laiks sāksies sapulce?
   What time does the meeting start?
2. Kas mēs varam palīdzēt?
   Whom can we help?
3. Vai tu lūdzi par to, ja Džozefs Smits bija pravietis?
   Have you prayed about about Joseph Smith being a prophet?
4. Mēs viņiem jautājām jautājumus par viņu ticību.
   We asked them questions about their faith.
5. Uz ko skolu tu ej?
   Which school do you go to?
6. Ka jūs lūdzat?
   How do you (pl) pray?
7. Vai ir zināms kāds ir atbildība?
   Do we know whose responsibility it is?
8. Kāds mācīja saviem dēliem būt paklausīgiem?
   Who taught their sons to be obedient?
9. Ko tev ir svarīgi?
   What is important to you?
10. Kurai baznīcai ir patiesa?
    Which church is true?

H. Answering Questions

Write the answers to the following questions using the word given, then translate the answers into English. Check your answers.

1. Kad Jūs pēdējo reizi bijāt baznīcā? (mēnesis)
2. Kur atrodas tirgus? (centrs)
3. Ar ko mēs brauksim uz Rīgu? (vilciens)
4. Par ko jūs mācījāt? (pestīšanas iecere)
5. Kurš runā Dieva vārdā? (pravietis)
6. Ar ko Pauls dzīvo kopā? (vectēvs)
7. Kam tu nosūtīji īsziņu? (klausītājs)
8. Ar kādu autobusu mēs brauksim? (trešais)
9. Vai bija kāds, kuram nebija iespējas skatīties Vispārējo Konferenci? (Rivo)
10. Kam Pāvels nopirka krāsojamo grāmatu? (meitiņa)

I. *Preach My Gospel* Activity

Review the section "Ask Questions" in *Preach My Gospel,* pages 183–84. Think about two of your current investigators and write at least five questions for each investigator that you might use in your next appointment. Practice asking and answering these questions with your companion by each taking a turn to be the missionary and then the investigator.

J. Scripture Activity

Read the following verses, comparing the Latvian and English versions side by side. Consider how the question verbs are used in these scriptures.

1 Nephi 3:12	Alma 32:11	Moroni 10:4	D&C 102:4
1 Nephi 15:3	3 Nephi 27:29	D&C 8:10	D&C 109:4
Alma 26:2	Moroni 4:3	D&C 50:13	Joseph Smith—History 1:10

K. Baptismal Commitment Question

Memorize the following baptismal invitation and use it as you invite others to come unto Christ through baptism. Role-play with your companion inviting an investigator to be baptized.

> „Vai tu sekosi Jēzus Kristus piemēram, topot kristīts no kāda, kam ir priesterības pilnvaras no Dieva? Mēs noturēsim kristību dievkalpojumu . . . (nosauc konkrētu datumu). Vai tu gatavosies kristīties šajā datumā?"

L. Asking and Answering Questions

Practice with your companion, asking questions to those you will meet throughout your day.

Examples:

1. Kas ir pati svarīgākā lieta tavā dzīvē? (Piemēram: ģimene, darbs, nauda, mūzika, ēdiens, ect.)
2. Vai tu tici Dievam? Ko tev nozīmē Dievs? Kāpēc?
3. Kādas svētības tu esi saņēmis(usi) savas ticības dēļ?
4. Vai tu esi lasījis(usi) Bībeli? Kurš ir tavs miļākais stāsts no Bībeles?
5. Vai tu esi dzirdējis(usi) par Pēdējo Dienu Svēto Jēzus Kristus Baznīcu? Ko tieši tu esi dzirdējis(usi)?
6. Vai tu esi dzirdējis(usi) par mormoņu baznīcu? Ko tu esi dzirdējis(usi)?
7. Ja Dievs mūsdienās runātu uz mums caur praviešiem, vai tev būtu svarīgi viņus uzklausīt?
8. Kāda ir dzīves jēga?
9. Vai tu gribētu uzzināt, kā izvairīties no grēka un ļaunuma, kas apdraud tevi un tavu ģimeni?
10. Vai tu gribētu mācīties par to, kā izveidot laimīgu ģimeni? Kāpēc?
11. Vai tu gribi uzzināt par Jēzus Kristus evaņģēliju?

M. Scripture Activity

Alma chapter five contains numerous questions. Read through the chapter in Latvian with your companion, and for each question identify the question word and which case it is in. (The answer section contains verses 10 and 11 to show you an example.) Check your answers.

N. Practice Teaching

With your companion, take turns approaching someone for the first time in a park or on the street. Teach him or her about how God is their loving Heavenly Father. Focus on asking questions that help you get to know the person and his or her needs and beliefs. If you don't know how to properly construct a question, stop and work through it with your companion. Write it down and look at it frequently throughout the day until you can use it in teaching. Switch roles.

Review: State of Being

This review will help you see how well you have learned the material in the previous section. It will also help you evaluate your ability to apply several different grammar principles you have learned in performing the following function:

Asking About and Expressing a State of Being

- Nominative Case
- "To Be" (*Būt*, *Kļūt*)
- Accusative Case
- Asking Questions

Activities

A. Error Correction

On a separate sheet of paper, rewrite the paragraph below, correcting the 16 errors in it. Check your answers.

Daudzi prāto: „Kur mēs esam nākuši? Tādēļ mēs te esam? Kurš ir pēc tam?" Pestīšanas iecere sniedz mums atbildu uz šiem jautājumiem. Dievs ir mūsu gars Tēvs. Mums pavisam burtiski ir Viņa bērni, un Viņš mīl mēs. Pirms mēs nācām šajā pasaulē, mēs dzīvojām Debesīs kā mūsu Debesu Tēva gara bērni. Taču mēs nebijām tāds kā mūsu Debesu Tēvs un bez laicīgās dzīves pieredzes fiziskajā ķermenī nevarējām būt līdzīgi Viņam un baudīt visi tās svētības, kurš bauda Viņu.

Many people wonder, "Where did we come from? Why are we here? Where will we go?" The plan of salvation gives us the answers to these questions. God is the Father of our spirits. We are literally His children, and He loves us. We lived as spirit children of our Father in Heaven before we were born on this earth. We were not, however, like our Heavenly Father, nor could we ever become like Him and enjoy all the blessings that He enjoys without the experience of living in mortality with a physical body.

B. Error Correction

Each of the following sentences contains one or more errors. Write down the sentence correctly and say it to your companion. Check your answers. The answers section will refer you to the principle used in each sentence.

1. Dievs ir mūsu Tēvu un mēs ir Viņa gara bērni.
   God is our Father and we are His spirit children.
2. Kāds loma ir Mormona Grāmatai?
   What role does the Book of Mormon have?
3. Mēs esam šķirts no Dieva fiziskās klātbūtnes.
   We are separated from the physical presence of God.
4. Vai tevi kristīsies, lai būtu par Jēzus Kristus Baznīcas loceklis?
   Will you be baptized to become a member of Jesus Christ's Church?
5. Džozefs Smits bija pravietis, ko pārtulkoja Mormona Grāmata.
   Joseph Smith was the prophet that translated the Book of Mormon.
6. Dari viss, kas tavos spēkos, lai stiprinātu sevi un pārinieku.
   Do everything in your power to strengthen yourself and your companion.
7. Kas ir augstākais baušlis bauslībā?
   Which is the great commandment in the law?
8. Mormona Grāmata esi mūsu reliģijas noslēgakmenu.
   The Book of Mormon is the keystone of our religion.
9. Dievis aicina praviešiem vadīt Savus bērnus.
   God calls prophets to lead His children.
10. Mans Tēvs apmeklēja skola, lai kļūtu juristu.
    My father went to school to become a lawyer.
11. Ādams un Ievu kļuva mirstīgi.
    Adam and Eve became mortal.
12. Dievs ir mūsu mīlošo Tēvu.
    God is our loving Father.
13. Katri pati ir atbildīgs par to, lai pastāvētu līdz galam.
    Everyone is responsible themselves to endure to the end.
14. Es kļūt pacietīgāks savu grūtību dēļ.
    I will become more patient because of my hardships.
15. Dieva ieceres centrā ir Jēzu Kristu.
    Jesus Christ is the center of God's plan.
16. Ko vajadzētu ir vērstiem maniem mērķiem?
    What should be the focus of my goals?
17. Manam brālim patīk spēlēt volejbols.
    My brother likes to play volleyball.
18. Ka lai uzlabot savas mācīšanas prasmes?
    How can I improve my teaching skills?
19. Vai tu esi bijis Polijā?
    Have you (formal) been to Poland?
20. Kas tu šodien darīsi?
    What will you do today?

C. Translation

On a separate piece of paper, translate the words in parentheses into Latvian. Check your answers.

1. (*Is your teacher*) ir ļoti foršs?
2. (*What*) ir tavs mīļākais sporta veids?
3. Mormona Grāmata ir (*another testimony*) par Jēzu Kristu.
4. Viņš ir labākais (*daddy*) pasaulē.
5. Mēs atgriezīsimies pie Tēva, ja (*we*) ievērosim baušļus.
6. Es gribu (*to be a policeman*).
7. (*What*) Tas Kungs prasa no Saviem kalpiem?
8. (*My nephew and I*) braucam uz Liepāju.
9. (*Where*) tu vēlies dzīvot?
10. (*To be*) vai (*not to be*) - tāds ir jautājums.
11. Daudz cilvēku meklē (*for truth*).
12. Kā lai palīdzu gaisināt cilvēku (*doubts and concerns*)?
13. Man garšo (*sweet watermelons*).
14. Mēs mācīsim citiem (*a message*) par atjaunoto evaņģēļiju.
15. Man patīk lasīt (*the Book of Mormon*).
16. (*Tithing is*) paklausības likums.
17. (*What*) tu no manis vēlies?
18. (*How often*) man ir jāapmeklē (*church*)?
19. (*How to become*) veiksmīgu misionāru?
20. Šķistības (*law*) ir Dieva dots.

D. Companion Activity

The following situations provide opportunities for you to ask questions. Role-play with your companion or a native speaker the following scenarios. Ask them to give you feedback on the grammar and effectiveness of your questions. Then practice again, focusing on the feedback you receive.

1. Get to know someone on the train.
2. In a meeting with the mission leader, ask about a member of the ward whom you are planning to go visit.
3. Ask the member which of his friends or neighbors he will prepare to hear the gospel.
4. Call to set up the appointment with the member and the neighbor.
5. Begin teaching the neighbor in the member's home (see *Preach My Gospel* page 176).
6. Ask follow-up questions after sharing a scripture with the neighbor.
7. Find out and understand an investigator's concern about keeping the Sabbath day holy.
8. Follow up on an investigator's progress in keeping the Word of Wisdom.
9. Ask questions to figure out how well an investigator understands what you taught him or her about the plan of salvation.
10. Conduct the baptismal interview and "use follow-up questions to get a feeling for the strength of the person's testimony and the sincerity of the person's repentance" (*Preach My Gospel*, 205).

E. *Preach My Gospel* Activities

Complete the following activity from *Preach My Gospel*:

1. Make plans to meet with recent converts. Ask them to share how they were prepared for the gospel. Ask questions like *When did you first come in contact with the Church? What finally convinced you to meet with missionaries? What did you think the first time you read the Book of Mormon? and What was your opinion of Joseph Smith's account when you first heard it?* To prepare for these appointments, work with your companion and write down 10 questions that will help you better understand the conversion process of those you meet with. Ask the member to give you feedback on your questions as you ask them, and then restate the corrected question if necessary.

2. Read one or two of the following passages, and ponder what an investigator must feel to be converted.

2 Nephi 4:16–35; Enos 1; Mosiah 4–5, 18:7–14, 27–28; Alma 5, 17–22, 32, 36, 38

Design questions you can ask your investigators to help you understand what and how they feel about the things they've learned and the commitments they've kept. Make sure to give each other feedback on the questions and practice asking and answering them. Examples: *How has your relationship with God grown as you have read the scriptures? What changes have you made in your life as a result of the answer to your prayer?*

3. What might happen to an investigator's progress if he or she encountered the following situations and you never found out about them?

- Coworkers who regularly make fun of spiritual things
- A spiritual experience in reading the Book of Mormon
- Friends who believe that the Mormons are a non-Christian cult
- Family members who are strong members of another church

Think of a question that you would ask to learn more about each of the situations above. Write your questions in your study journal. Discuss with your companion how you might improve the questions each of you wrote for this activity.

F. Writing Activity

Think about some things you would like to share about yourself with members in your area. Write a short biography to share with them about who you are, what you like, why the gospel is important to you, and how you gained a testimony of the Book of Mormon and Joseph Smith. Pay attention to how you use the nominative and accusative cases. As you share about yourself, have members make corrections to your grammar and suggest how to improve it. Consider asking the members some of the questions you answered in your biography.

G. Reading Activity

Pick a chapter from the Book of Mormon that you will be sharing with one of your investigators in the coming week. Read through it and identify words in the nominative and accusative cases. Think of questions that you can ask your investigator to help them apply the chapter to themselves. Share your thoughts and ideas with your companion.

H. Teaching Activity

Choose one of the principles from the lesson "The Plan of Salvation." Have a native speaker or your companion play the role of your investigator. Teach the principle to them using only questions. They can reply with questions or statements, but you can only use questions to teach the principle. Ask the native speaker to pay attention to the grammar in your questions, especially the nomitive and accusative cases, and to give you feedback as you practice. Make corrections according to their feedback as you continue to teach.

I. Resolving Concerns

Practice door or street contacts with your companion or a native speaker. Have the missionary playing the investigator come up with a background, and choose a misconception or concern that you have encountered recently which they can role-play, such as *"All religions are the same," "I am already Christian; you should spend your time with those who are not," or "If you believe in God then you won't work hard and rely on yourself."* As the missionary, focus on clearly stating who you are and what your purpose is, as well as finding out who the people are and what is important to them. Get feedback on how well you used each of the grammar principles and how clear your introduction was. Be sure to practice again.

Asking About and Expressing Possession or Ownership

Purpose

This function will help you talk about to whom something belongs or what someone has; for example, whose baptism is coming up or what blessings you have in your life. The grammar principles in this section are targeted at helping you perform this function. Below are examples of the types of things you will be able to express with the grammar in this function.

- **Christ's** example shows us how we should act. ("Genitive Case")
- This is the gospel **of** Jesus Christ. ("Genitive Case")
- How have you felt **His** love in **your** life? ("Pronouns")

Application

Below is a list of doctrinal points that these grammar principles will help you teach, as well as some common missionary tasks that they will help you perform. This list is not comprehensive; it is meant to help you think about how you can use the grammar in real situations. In parentheses next to each point are some sample questions that you can ask yourself to help you think about how to apply the grammar.

Doctrines from the Lessons

- God Is Our Loving Father in Heaven (What is our relationship to God?)
- Our Life on Earth (What things do we have to help us in this life?)
- Baptism (What is our part of the baptismal covenant? What is God's part?)
- Study the Scriptures (Which characters in the Book of Mormon can I relate to? How do the scriptures bring you unto Christ?)
- Keep the Law of Tithing (Where does everything we have come from? What do we pay ten percent on?)
- Observe the Law of the Fast (For what can we fast? What do we abstain from while fasting?)
- Live the Law of Chastity (What blessings are ours when we live clean and virtuous lives? What does the law of chastity include?)

Tasks from the *Missionary Vocabulary and Phrases* Book

- Obtain Referrals (Who are their friends? What are their interests?)
- Offer a Prayer (How do we express our gratitude, thoughts, and desires to God?)
- Help People Resolve Their Concerns (From what source are their concerns coming?)
- Perform Priesthood Ordinances (In whose name is the ordinance being performed? How can I take His name upon me?)

Genitive Case

Examples

The Book of **Mormon** is the word of **God**.	**Mormona** Grāmata ir **Dieva** vārds.
We learn a lot from **our mission president**.	Mēs daudz ko mācāmies no **mūsu misijas prezidenta**.
I saw a pillar of **light**.	Es ieraudzīju **gaismas** stabu.
Will you live according to the teachings of **Christ**?	Vai tu dzīvosi saskaņā ar **Kristus** mācībām?

Explanation

Genitive case (*kā*) is most commonly used to express possession. In addition, genitive case also has other uses (lack, material construction, quantity) that will be explained later in this chapter.

Examples	Explanation
Dievs sagatavoja **laimes** ieceri. *God prepared a plan **of happiness**.*	English constructions using *of* are expressed using the genitive case in Latvian.
Mēs saņemam **Svētā Gara** dāvanu pēc **kristīšanās**. *We receive the gift **of the Holy Ghost** after baptism.*	*Svētā* is an adjective that matches *gars* in number, case (genitive because of possession), and gender. *Pēc* is a genitive preposition.
Kristus baznīca ir tikusi atjaunota uz **zemes**. ***Christ's** Church has been restored to the earth.*	Christ owns His Church. *Uz* is a genitive preposition meaning "on."

Genitive Case Endings

The following is an example of how *Dievs* ("God") is used in the genitive case:

Example	Nom		Gen
	Dievs *God*	→	Dieva *God's*

Sentence	Nom	Verb	Gen	Nom
	Es *I*	esmu *am*	**Dieva** *God's*	bērns. *child.*

Note: In English, "God's child" and "child of God" mean the same thing; both are translated into Latvian as *Dieva bērns*.

The following chart shows how each ending declines, with the genitive case endings highlighted:

Masculine	**I**		**II**		**III**	
	Sg	**Pl**	**Sg**	**Pl**	**Sg**	**Pl**
Nominative ***Kas***	-s	-i	-is	*-i	-us	-i
Accusative ***Ko***	-u	-us	-i	*-us	-u	-us
Genitive ***Kā***	-a	-u	*-a	*-u	-us	-u
Dative ***Kam***	-am	-iem	-im	*-iem	-um	-iem
Locative ***Kur***	-ā	-os	-ī	*-os	-ū	-os

Feminine	**I**		**II**		**III**	
	Sg	**Pl**	**Sg**	**Pl**	**Sg**	**Pl**
Nominative ***Kas***	-a	-as	-e	-es	-s	-is
Accusative ***Ko***	-u	-as	-i	-es	-i	-is
Genitive ***Kā***	-as	-u	-es	*-u	-s	*-u
Dative ***Kam***	-ai	-ām	-ei	-ēm	-ij	-īm
Locative ***Kur***	-ā	-ās	-ē	-ēs	-ī	-īs

* Indicates where softening takes place. See chapter 1, "Alphabet and Pronunciation," for softening patterns.

The following chart shows the endings for words in genitive case and an example for each ending:

Masc	**I**		**II**		**III**	
	Sg	**Pl**	**Sg**	**Pl**	**Sg**	**Pl**
Gen	-a	-u	*-a	*-u	-us	-u
Example	tēva	tēvu	brāļa	brāļu	tirgus	tirgu

Fem	**I**		**II**		**III**	
	Sg	**Pl**	**Sg**	**Pl**	**Sg**	**Pl**
Gen	-as	-u	-es	*-u	-s	*-u
Example	māsas	māsu	zemes	zemju	sirds	siržu

* Indicates where softening of the previous letter occurs.

Possession

In English, the genitive is expressed by either using the suffix -'s or the word "of." There is no word for "of" in Latvian, so all possession is expressed by using the genitive case and is placed before the thing it possesses.

Examples

Mātes mīlestība.
Mother's love.

Jēzus Kristus vārdā, Āmen.
*In the name **of Jesus Christ**, amen.*

Praviešu mācības palīdz mums izvēlēties pareizo.
*Teachings **of the prophets** help us to choose the right.*

Note: Chapter 16, "Dative Construction," is also used to express possession.

Genitive and Possessive Pronouns

All Latvian pronouns have a genitive case. In addition, there are three possessive pronouns—*mans, tavs,* and *savs*—which are used specifically to show possession. The chart below shows personal pronouns in nominative and how they decline into genitive case:

Nominative				→	Genitive			
Sg		**Pl**			**Sg**		**Pl**	
es *I*		mēs *we*			manis* *my*		mūsu *our*	
tu *you (informal)*		jūs *you (formal or plural)*			tevis* *you*		jūsu *your*	
viņš - viņa *he - she*		viņi - viņas *they (m-f)*			viņa - viņas *his - her*		viņu *their (m-f)*	
šis - šī *this (m-f)*	tas - tā *that (m-f)*	šie - šīs *these (m-f)*	tas - tā *those (m-f)*		šī - šīs *this (m-f)*	tā - tās *that (m-f)*	šo - šo *these (m-f)*	to - to *those (m-f)*

* These pronouns are used in genitive case but are not used to express possession.

The following chart shows pronouns that do not use the same word when expressing possession. These possessive pronouns decline as adjectives. See chapter 10, "Pronouns."

Genitive	Possessive
manis *me*	mans *mine*
tevis *you*	tavs *yours*
sevis -	savs -

The following chart shows examples of when genitive and possessive personal pronouns are used in a sentence:

Genitive	Possessive
Vai jūs varētu rīt atnākt pie **manis** ciemos? *Could you come visit **me** tomorrow?*	Dievs ir **mans** Debesu Tēvs. *God is **my** Heavenly Father.*
Vai šie cepumi ir no **tevis**? *Are these cookies from **you**?*	**Tava** ģimene dzīvos kopā mūžīgi. ***Your** family will live together forever.*
Es labāk paturēšu savu viedokli pie **sevis**. *I better keep my opinion to **myself**.*	Vai tu mīli **savu** ģimeni? *Do you love **your** family?*

Note: *Manis*, *tevis*, and *sevis* are usually only used after a genitive preposition. See chapter 10, "Pronouns."

Genitive Prepositions

The following chart shows prepositions that force genitive case with singular objects:

aiz *behind*	apakš *underneath*	ārpus *outside (of)*	bez *without*	iekšpus *inside*	kopš *since*	no *from*
pēc *after*	pie *next to*	pirms *before*	priekš *for*	uz *on*	virs *above*	zem *below*

In addition, there are two genitive postpositions (meaning that they come after the noun they affect):

dēļ	labad
because of/for (behalf of)	*for the good of*

Note: Genitive postpositions always force the genitive case, whether the object is singular or plural.

Examples

Kristus aicina ikvienu nākt **pie** Viņa.
*Christ invites everyone to come **unto** Him.*

Pirms šīs dzīves mēs dzīvojām ar Dievu.
***Before** this life, we lived with God.*

Bez Kristus neviens nevar tapt izglābts.
***Without** Christ, no one can be saved.*

Note: If the prepositional object is plural, then the object is forced into dative.

Other Genitive Uses

Lack

Genitive case is also used to express lack, or the absence of something. If you "do not have" something, genitive case is used.

Examples

Mums nav **laika**.
*We do not have **time**.*

Man nav ne **jausmas.***
*I have no **idea**.*

Mums šodien baznīcā **tevis** pietrūka.
*We missed **you** at church today.*

* This is a colloquial phrase that does not translate directly.

Note: See chapter 16, "Dative Construction," for more on *nav* and *trūkst.*

Material of Construction

Genitive case can be used to show the material something was made from, and it comes before the noun that it is describing. In English, the material of construction is often expressed with the suffix *-en*.

Genitive	Examples
zelt<u>a</u> plāksnes ***golden** plates*	Moronijs paslēpa **zelt<u>a</u>** plāksnes. *Moroni hid the **golden** plates.*
kok<u>a</u> karote ***wooden** spoon*	Es ēdu zupu ar **kok<u>a</u>** karoti. *I am eating soup with a **wooden** spoon.*
dzelz<u>s</u> nazis ***iron** knife*	Šis **dzelz<u>s</u>** nazis ir ļoti izturīgs. *This **iron** knife is very durable.*

Note: The source material always declines into genitive, but it does not decline to match the noun following it because it is not an adjective.

Quantity and Numbers

The following words describe quantity and force genitive case unless the affected word would otherwise be in dative case.

daudz	maz	cik (daudz)?	vairāk	daļa
many	*few*	*how many?*	*more*	*part*

Other words or units of measurement are also used with the genitive case (e.g., *glass of*, *pile of*). In addition, any number that ends with the letter *t* forces genitive. These uses of genitive case are weaker and can be overridden by other grammar principles or cases.

Examples

Cik jums ir bērnu?
How many *children do you have?*

Papildus tam tu saņemsi arī **daudz** citu svētību.
In addition to that, you will also receive ***many*** *other blessings.*

Kristīnei ir **kaudze** mājasdarbu, un nav laika, ko pavadīt kopā ar Andreju.
Kristine has a ***pile of*** *homework, and doesn't have time to spend with Andrew.*

Note: Several quantity words can also be used as adjectives. For example:

Quantity
Pirms apustuļu nāves radās **daudz** strīdu attiecībā uz doktrīnu. *Before the deaths of the Apostles,* ***many*** *conflicts concerning doctrine arose.*
Adjective
Atkrišana ar laiku noveda pie **daudzu*** baznīcu rašanās. *With time, the Apostasy led to the creation of* ***many*** *churches.*

* *Daudz*, when used as an adjective, must match the noun in number, case, and gender.

Activities

A. Declination

On a separate piece of paper, decline each of the following words into genitive case for both singular and plural. Also practice declining out loud. Check your answers.

1. patiesība *truth*	5. pravietis *prophet*	9. māte *mother*	13. ticība *faith*	17. lūgšana *prayer*	21. baznīca *church*
2. misionārs *missionary*	6. Grēku Izpirkšana *Atonement*	10. tēvs *father*	14. māceklis *disciple*	18. dzīve *life*	22. draugs *friend*
3. Dievs *God*	7. gars *spirit*	11. brālis *brother*	15. Amerika *America*	19. stāsts *story*	23. cerība *hope*
4. sapulce *meeting*	8. grāmata *book*	12. māsa *sister*	16. sirds *heart*	20. Nefijs *Nephi*	24. Džozefs Smits *Joseph Smith*

B. Translation Practice

Translate the following phrases on a separate piece of paper. Look up any words you don't know. Check your answers.

1. Son of God	7. power of the Holy Ghost	13. Christ's Atonement	19. mercy of God
2. Mary's son	8. priesthood authority	14. covenant of baptism	20. the work of salvation
3. heart's desire	9. Joseph Smith's prayer	15. the member's faith	21. God's will
4. purpose of life	10. miracle of Christmas	16. Savior of the world	22. kingdoms of glory
5. disciple of Christ	11. house of the Lord	17. words of the prophet	23. Articles of Faith
6. President of the Church	12. plan of salvation	18. tongue of angels	24. gifts of the Spirit

C. Prepositions

On a separate piece of paper, fill in the blanks in the following sentences with the correct preposition/prepositions. Check your answers.

1. Gaisma apstājās __ Džozefa Smita galvas.
   Light rested ***above*** *Joseph Smith's head.*
2. Mūsu mērķis ir palīdzēt citiem nākt __ Kristus.
   Our purpose is to help others come ***unto*** *Christ.*
3. Ādams bija pirmais pravietis __ zemes.
   Adam was the first prophet ***on*** *the earth.*
4. Neviens nevar uzzināt garīgās patiesības __ lūgšanas.
   No one can find spiritual truths ***without*** *prayer.*
5. Visi pravieši __ pasaules pirmsākumiem ir liecinājuši __ Kristu.
   All prophets ***since*** *the beginning of the world have testified* ***about*** *Christ.*
6. Pestīšanas iecere mums māca __ kurienes mēs nākam.
   The plan of salvation teaches us where we came ***from****.*
7. __ Kristus nāves ļauni cilvēki vajāja apustuļus.
   After *the death of Christ, wicked people persecuted the Apostles.*
8. Ādams un Ieva tika radīti __ Dieva tēla un līdzības.
   Adam and Eve were created ***after*** *the image and likeness of God.*

D. Pronouns

On a separate piece of paper, fill in the blanks with the correct pronoun. Check your answers.

1. Dievs ir ___ Debesu Tēvs.
   *God is **our** loving Heavenly Father.*
2. Es nevarētu bez ___ dzīvot.
   *I couldn't live without **you**.*
3. Kā tu varētu sekot __ piemēram?
   *How could you follow **their** example?*
4. ___ dzīve uz zemes ir pārbaudījumiem pilna.
   ***Our** life on earth is full of trials.*
5. Vai tu jūti, ka Dievs uzklausa __ lūgšanas?
   *Do you feel that God hears **your** prayers?*
6. "Tie tuvojas Man ar savām lūpām, bet viņu sirdis ir tālu no __."
   *"They draw near to me with their lips, but their hearts are far from **me**." (JS—H 1:19)*
7. Svētais Gars apgaismos __ sirdi un prātu ar patiesību.
   *The Holy Ghost will enlighten **your** heart and mind with truth.*
8. Dievs vēlas, lai visi __ bērni zinātu patiesību.
   *God wants all of **His** children to know truth.*

E. Scripture Activity

Read the following scriptures in Latvian. Pay attention to how genitive case is used. On a separate piece of paper, write each genitive word that you find and explain why it is genitive. Check your answers.

2.Nefija 31:21 „Un tagad, mani mīļotie brāļi, šis ir tas ceļš; un nav neviena cita ceļa vai vārda, dota zem debesīm, ar ko cilvēks varētu tikt izglābts Dieva valstībā. Un tagad, lūk, šī ir Kristus mācība un vienīgā un patiesā Tēva un Dēla, un Svētā Gara, kas ir viens mūžīgs Dievs, mācība. Āmen."

1.Nefija 11:25 „Un notika, ka es sapratu, ka marga no dzelzs, ko mans tēvs bija redzējis, bija Dieva vārds, kas ved uz dzīvā ūdens avotu jeb uz dzīvības koku; šis ūdens ir Dieva mīlestības attēlojums. Un es sapratu, ka arī dzīvības koks bija Dieva mīlestības attēlojums."

Jēkaba vēstule 1:5 „Ja kādam no jums trūkst gudrības, tas lai to lūdz no Dieva, kas visiem dod devīgi un nepārmezdams, un viņam taps dots."

F. *Preach My Gospel* Activity

Read the section "Ievēro desmitās tiesas likumu" (*Sludini Manu Evaņģēliju*, 90–91). Make note of the uses of genitive (there are over 20). Think of a current investigator you are teaching and prepare five to seven sentences you could use to teach tithing using the genitive case in each sentence. Teach it to your companion.

G. Writing Activity

Choose a lesson that you and your companion will be teaching soon. Write down six sentences that you could use while teaching a principle from that lesson. Have a native speaker look over your sentences and correct them, paying special attention to the genitive case. Ask for help to understand your mistakes.

H. Declining in Sentences (other uses)

Decline the bolded word(s) in the following sentences using the correct genitive case or possessive ending. Check your answers.

1. Mums nav **ēdiens.**
   We don't have food.
2. Viņš ir atpestījis **mans** dvēseli no **elle**. (2 Ne 33:6)
   He has redeemed my soul from hell.
3. Mēs varam priecāties Kristus veiktās **Izpirkšana** dēļ.
   Because of Christ's Atonement, we can rejoice.
4. Mēs tiksim tiesāti saskaņā ar **taisnība** un **žēlastība** likumiem.
   We will be judged in accordance with the laws of justice and mercy.
5. Cik tālu tas ir no **baznīca**?
   How far is it from the church?
6. Es ēdu brokastu pārslas ar **koks** karoti.
   I eat breakfast cereal with a wooden spoon.
7. Pirms **misija** es strādāju par oficiantu.
   Before my mission I was working as a waiter.
8. "Cilvēku starpā var būt pārāk daudz **nepacietība**, pārāk daudz **strīdi**, pārāk daudz **ķildas**, pārāk daudz **asaras**."
   *"There (among people) can be too much impatience, too much arguing, too many fights, too many tears."**

***** *(Thomas S. Monson, "Love—the Essence of the Gospel," April 2014 general conference).*

I. Companionship Activity

With your companion, practice forming phrases or sentences that indicate possession. First, choose a noun or pronoun. Then take turns forming sentences or phrases showing possession. Second, choose an object. Then take turns changing who or what the object belongs to.

(1) Examples	(2) Examples
mans tēvs *my father*	mana **grāmata** *my book*
mans ēdiens *my food*	baznīcas locekļa **grāmata** *the Church member's book*
mana mīļākā dziesma *my favorite song*	viņu **grāmata** *their book*
manā bērnībā *in my childhood*	Eldera **grāmata** *the elder's book*
mana liecība ir stipra *my testimony is strong*	viņa **grāmata** *his book*

J. Common Errors

The following sentences have bolded and starred errors. Correct and explain the errors to your companion. Check your answers.

1. Laba **laiks*** izmantošana!
   Good use of time!
2. **Pravieta*** pienākums ir liecināt par Kristu.
   A prophet's duty is to testify of Christ.
3. Kristus **Grēks*** Izpirkšana attiecas uz visiem cilvēkiem.
   Christ's Atonement applies to all people.
4. Vai tā grāmata ir no **tava*?**
   Is that book from you?
5. Man nav **nekāda vēlme*** iet uz skolu**.**
   I don't have any desire to go to school.
6. Dievs radīja Ādamu un Ievu un ievietoja viņus **Ēdenēs*** dārzā.
   God created Adam and Eve and placed them in the Garden of Eden.
7. **Lūgšana*** beigās mēs sakām "Jēzus Kristus vārdā, āmen."
   At the end of a prayer we say, "In the name of Jesus Christ, amen."
8. Es izlasīju **Mormonu*** Grāmatu.
   I read (finished reading) the Book of Mormon.
9. **Vārdi pravieša*** liecina par Kristu.
   The words of the prophet testify of Christ.
10. Kurš ir tavs mīļākais **svētie raksti*** pants?
    What is your favorite scripture verse?

K. Error Correction

With your companion, take turns reading the following sentences aloud. Start by giving the English translation and then say the sentence as it is written in Latvian. Then have the other companion identify errors, if any, and restate the sentence correctly. Check your answers.

1. Cik daudz laiks mums ir?
   How much time do we have?
2. Es esmu no Amerika.
   I am from America.
3. Baznīca ir ārpus mūsu rajonas.
   The church is outside of our area.
4. Kristus baznīca ir celta uz apustuļi un pravieti pamata.
   Christ's Church is built on a foundation of apostles and prophets.
5. Vai tu pazīsti viņam brāli?
   Do you know his brother?
6. Pašreiz mūsu Baznīcu vada mūsdienā pravietis.
   A prophet in our day currently leads the Church.
7. Cilvēki nav pilnīgu.
   People are not perfect.
8. Bez Kristus Grēku Izpirkšana šai dzīvei nebūtu jēgas.
   Without the Atonement of Christ, this life would be without purpose.

Pronouns

Explanation

This chapter will be divided into sections that explain the different kinds of pronouns in Latvian and how they function. Included will be demonstratives, personal pronouns, possessive pronouns, reflexive pronouns, emphatic pronouns, relative pronouns, definite pronouns, and negated pronouns.

Examples

That is my goal.	**Tas** ir mans mērķis.
Can you believe **that**?	Vai tu vari **tam** noticēt?
Agnese gave me **these cookies**.	Agnese man iedeva **šos** cepumus.
These shoes are better than **those shoes**.	**Šīs** kurpes ir labākas nekā **tās** kurpes.

Explanation

Tas ("that") and *šis* ("this") and their plurals are demonstratives. All demonstratives decline according to number, case, and gender. As a general rule, *tas* and *šis* follow the declension pattern of definite adjective endings, with a few exceptions, as seen in the following chart:

	Tas				**Šis**			
	Masculine		**Feminine**		**Masculine**		**Feminine**	
	Sg *that*	**Pl** *those*	**Sg** *that*	**Pl** *those*	**Sg** *this*	**Pl** *these*	**Sg** *this*	**Pl** *these*
Nom	tas	tie	tā	tās	šis	šie	šī	šīs
Acc	to	tos	to	tās	šo	šos	šo	šīs
Gen	tā	to	tās	to	šī	šo	šīs	šo
Dat	tam	tiem	tai	tām	šim	šiem	šai	šīm
	tajā	tajos	tajā	tajās	šajā	šajos	šajā	šajās
Loc	tanī	tanīs	tanī	tanīs	šinī	šinīs	šinī	šinīs
	tai	tais	tai	tais	šai	šais	šai	šais

Pronouns

Demonstrative pronouns take the place of a noun in the sentence.

Examples

Ko tev **tas** nozīmē?
*What does **that** mean to you?*

Debesu Tēvs svēta **tos**, kuri paklausa Viņa Dēlam.
*Heavenly Father blesses **those** who obey His Son.*

Mums **šo** dzīvi jānodzīvo laimīgi.
*We should live **this** life happily.*

Paņem **šos** līdzi!
*Take **these** with you!*

Adjectives

Demonstrative adjectives are also the words "this," "that," "these," and "those," and they clarify or describe the noun.

Examples

Tās meitenes acis ir gaismas pilnas.
***That** girl's eyes are full of light.*

Tas pants, kurā tu ar mani dalījies, bija tieši tas, kas man bija vajadzīgs.
***That** verse you shared with me was exactly what I needed.*

Mēs varam rast mieru **šajā** dzīvē, dzīvojot pēc evaņģēlija.
*We can find peace **in this** life by living the gospel.*

Pestīšanas iecere sniedz mums atbildes uz **šiem** jautājumiem.
*The plan of salvation offers us answers to **these** questions.*

Personal Pronouns

Will **you** come to church with **us** this Sunday?	Vai **tu** nāksi šo svētdien kopā ar **mums** uz baznīcu?
By the power of the Holy Ghost **you** can know the truth of all things.	Ar Svētā Gara spēku **jūs** varēsiet zināt patiesību par visu.
God loves **them** just as **He** loves **you**.	Dievs **viņus** mīl tāpat kā **Viņš tevi** mīl.
A desire to be baptized was awakened **in him**.	**Viņā** tika atmodināta vēlme kristīties**.**

Personal pronouns are used to replace people or things in a sentence. They determine how a verb is conjugated. Personal pronouns, like nouns, decline into different cases. The following chart shows how they decline and an approximate translation:

	1st Person		2nd Person		3rd Person Masc	3rd Person Fem	3rd Person Masc	3rd Person Fem	Reflexive
	Sg	Pl	Sg	Pl	Sg		Pl		
Nominative	es *I*	mēs *we*	tu *you*	jūs *you*	viņš *he*	viņa *she*	viņi *they*	viņas *they*	-
Accusitive	mani *me*	mūs *us*	tevi *you*	jūs *you*	viņu *him*	viņu *her*	viņus *them*	viņas *them*	sevi
Genitive	manis *my*	mūsu *our*	tevis *your*	jūsu *your*	viņa *his*	viņas *her*	viņu *their*	viņu *their*	sevis
Dative	man *to/for me*	mums *to/for us*	tev *to/for you*	jums *to/for you*	viņam *to/for him*	viņai *to/for her*	viņiem *to/for them*	viņām *to/for them*	sev
Locative	manī *in me*	mūsos *in us*	tevī *in you*	jūsos *in you*	viņā *in him*	viņā *in her*	viņos *in them*	viņās *in them*	sevī

Examples

Vai **viņam** jau ir Mormona Grāmata?
*Does **he** already have a Book of Mormon?*

Dažreiz **es** domāju tikai par **sevi**.
*Sometimes **I** only think about **myself**.*

Vai **viņa jūs** saprata?
*Did **she** understand **you**?*

Note: The common word order when using pronouns is to place the pronoun before the verb. *Viņas* is only used when all of the individuals in the group are women. Otherwise, use *viņi*.

Tu and *Jūs*

There are two ways to say "you" in Latvian:

(1) *Tu* is used when speaking to a single person and is informal and intimate. Use it when speaking with family, friends, and those who are younger than you. It is also used with God in prayer.

(2) *Jūs* is the formal and polite form of "you." Use it when addressing a stranger, with those older than you, or when someone has a higher status. It is also used when speaking to more than one person ("you all") both formally and informally.

Using the wrong pronoun can sound strange and possibly offensive to others. If unsure about which form of "you" to use, use *jūs* or ask the person which they prefer. When *jūs* is used in reference to one person, it matches nouns and adjectives as singular, but verbs conjugate the same as the plural *jūs.*

Possessive Pronouns

"This is **My** Beloved Son. Hear Him!"	Šis ir **Mans** mīļais Dēls. Uzklausi viņu!"
Our message is remarkably simple.	**Mūsu** vēstījums ir apbrīnojami vienkāršs.
The Holy Ghost will reveal truth in **your** mind and in **your** heart.	Svētais Gars atklās patiesību **tavā** prātā un **tavā** sirdī.
Jesus taught **His** gospel and organized **His** Church.	Jēzus mācīja **Savu** Evaņģēliju un nodibināja **Savu** Baznīcu.

Possessive pronouns are personal pronouns used to show possession. The following chart shows Latvian possessive pronouns:

Possessive Pronouns	
*mans *my*	mūsu *our*
*tavs *your*	jūsu *your (all's)*
viņa - viņas *his - her*	viņu *their*
*savs	

*Indicates declinable possessive pronouns; these follow the regular adjective declension pattern.

Possessive pronouns identify ownership of a noun. In Latvian, there are two types of possessive pronouns:

Type	Possessive Pronouns	Explanation
Declinable	mans, tavs, savs	These act as adjectives and must match the number, case, and gender of the noun they describe. See chapter 11, "Adjectives."
Indeclinable	mūsu, jūsu, viņa, viņas, viņu	Do not change to match the thing they possess.

Note: The pronouns *mūsu, jūsu, viņa, viņas,* and *viņu* are the same for both genitive and possessive and do not decline.

Examples

Sludini **Manu** Evaņģēliju
*Preach **My** Gospel*

Mūsu mērķis ir aicināt citus nākt pie Kristus.
***Our** purpose is to invite others to come unto Christ.*

Man ir **sav<u>a</u>** ticīb<u>a</u>.
*I have **my (own)** faith.*

Definite Ending Personal Pronouns

There is another form of possessive pronouns that is used when the noun is omitted. These pronouns use definite adjective endings:

manējais *mine*	mūsējais *ours*
tavējais *yours*	jūsējais *yours*
viņējais *theirs*	
savējais	

Examples

Tā ir **manējā.** Tas ir **manējais**.
*That is **mine**.*

Es jau **savējo** apēdu**.**
*I already ate **mine (my own)**.*

Tas ir mans ūdens, bet kur ir **tavējais?**
*That is my water, but where is **yours**?*

Reflexive Pronouns

How do you understand God's plan in relation to **your** family?	Kā tu izproti Dieva ieceri attiecībā uz **savu** ģimeni?
Joseph often asked **himself** which church was true.	Džozefs bieži **sev** jautāja, kura no visām baznīcām ir pareiza.
God loves all of **His** children.	Dievs mīl visus **savus** bērnus.
I search for imperfections **in myself**, not in others.	Es meklēju nepilnības **sevī**, nevis citos.

The reflexive pronoun reflects back on the subject (usually the thing in nominative case). When the subject is used again as a pronoun, the reflexive pronoun is used to avoid sounding repetitive. It is a declinable pronoun as seen in the following chart:

Nominative	--
Accusative	sevi
Genitive	sevis
Dative	sev
Locative	sevī

-- There is no pronoun for the nominative case because a reflexive pronoun cannot reflect itself.

Examples

Nožēlojot grēkus, mēs iegūstam jaunu skatījumu uz Dievu, **sevi** un pasauli.
*While repenting, we gain a fresh view of God, the world, and **ourselves**.*

"Netaisi **sev** elku tēlu vai kādu atveidu . . ." (2. Mozus 20:4)
*"[Do not] make unto **thee** any graven image, or any likeness . . ."*

Es klusi lūdzu pie **sevis,** lai zinātu, ko teikt.
*I quietly prayed to **myself** to know what to say.*

If the personal pronoun and subject refer to the same person, then the pronoun is replaced by the correct form of *sevi*.

What you want to say	Incorrect	Correct
I combed my hair.	Es **man** sukāju matus. *I combed hair to me.*	Es **sev** sukāju matus. *I combed my hair.*
He hit himself.	Viņš **viņu** sita. *He hit him.*	Viņš **sevi** sita. *He hit himself.*
Search in yourself.	Meklē **tevī**. *Search in you.*	Meklē **sevī**. *Search in yourself.*

Possessive Reflexive Pronouns

Savs, a possessive reflexive pronoun, is similar to *mans* and *tavs* and follows the adjective declension pattern. The following examples have the reflected subject underlined and the **possessive reflexive pronoun** bolded.

Examples

Pieņemot Svēto Vakarēdienu, mēs atjaunojam **savas** derības.
*By partaking of the sacrament, we renew **our** covenants.*

Vai tu nožēlosi **savus** grēkus?
*Will you repent of **your** sins?*

Es vēlos ar jums dalīties **savā** mīļākajā pantā.
*I want to share with you **my** favorite verse.*

If the possessive pronoun and the subject refer to the same person, then the object is replaced by the correct form of *savs*.

What you want to say	Incorrect	Correct
We express our love.	Mēs paužam **mūsu** mīlestību.	Mēs paužam **savu** mīlestību.
Will you repent of your sins?	Vai tu nožēlosi **tavus** grēkus?	Vai tu nožēlosi **savus** grēkus?
God sent His Son.	Dievs sūtīja **Viņa** Dēlu.	Dievs sūtīja **Savu** Dēlu.

Emphatic Pronouns

God is the **same** yesterday, today, and forever.	Dievs ir tāds **pats** vakar, šodien un mūžīgi.
You **yourself** have to decide whether you will follow God or not.	Tev **pašam** ir jāizlemj, vai tu sekosi Dievam, vai nē.
We can't overcome the consequences of sin **ourselves**.	Mēs nevaram pārvarēt grēka sekas **paši** saviem spēkiem.
Share the First Vision in Joseph Smith's **own** words.	Dalies pirmajā vīzijā ar **paša** Džozefa Smita vārdiem.

Pats is a word that emphasizes and can refer to the subject, location, or action. Other than masculine and feminine singular nominative, *pats* follows the adjective declension pattern as seen in the chart below:

Case	Masculine		Feminine	
	Sg	Pl	Sg	Pl
Nom	pats	paši	pati	pašas
Acc	pašu	pašus	pašu	pašas
Gen	paša	pašu	pašas	pašu
Dat	pašam	pašiem	pašai	pašām
Loc	pašā	pašos	pašā	pašās

Emphasizing Pats

Pats can be used to emphasize the person performing an action. *Pats* matches the person in number, case, and gender. The following examples have the subject that is being emphasized underlined and the **emphatic pronoun** bolded.

Examples

Katrs no mums **pats** ir atbildīgs par to, lai pastāvētu līdz galam.
*Each of us **(ourselves)** is responsible to endure to the end.*

Tava laime ir atkarīga no tevis **paša(s)**.
*Your happiness is dependent on you **(yourself)**.*

Pats in Superlatives

Pats can be used in superlatives to communicate "the best/most."

Examples

Es gribu nonākt **pašā** augstākajā debesu valstībā.
*I want to go to the **(very)** highest kingdom of heaven.*

Ģimene ir **pati** svarīgākā sociālā vienība gan tagad, gan mūžībā.
*Family is **the most** important social unit both now and in eternity.*

Pats can be used in a superlative sense with nouns instead of adjectives and would translate as "the very."

Examples

Mēs uzkāpām līdz **pašai** kalna augšai.
*We climbed to **the very** top of the mountain.*

Jau **pašā** stundas sākumā es zināju, ka viņš piekritīs kristīties.
*At **the very** beginning of the lesson, I already knew he would agree to be baptized.*

"Same" Pats

Pats can also be used to express the English word "same" when coupled with *tas*. Both of these words are adjectives that must be properly declined.

Examples

Patiesība paliek tā **pati** visos laikmetos un visās kultūrās.
*Truth remains **the same** at all times and in all cultures.*

Tad tiekamies rīt tajā **pašā** laikā un tajā **pašā** vietā!
*So let's meet tomorrow at **the same** time and place!*

Note: *Pat* is an adverb that is commonly confused with *pats*. See chapter 23, "Adverbs," to learn how to use *pat*.

Relative Pronouns

Faith is a gift **that** comes while living according to God's word.	Ticība ir dāvana, **kas** iegūstama, dzīvojot saskaņā ar Dieva vārdu.
Devote your time to help **those who** need it.	Velti savu laiku, lai palīdzētu tiem**, kam** tas nepieciešams!
I want to find a church **in which** families are important.	Es gribu atrast tādu baznīcu, **kurā** ģimenes ir svarīgas.
He created the **(kind of)** family he had always wanted.	Viņš izveidoja ģimeni, **kādu** viņš vienmēr bija vēlējies.

Relative pronouns connect a related idea or phrase to the main part of the sentence and provide additional information. English relative pronouns include "that," "which," "who," "whose," and "whom." The following are Latvian relative pronouns with approximate definitions:

kas	kurš/kura	kāds/kāda
what	*which (one)*	*what (kind of)*

The following examples have **relative pronouns** bolded with the connected clause underlined:

Examples

Dievs tev dos svētības, **kādas** tu vēlies, ja tu būsi paklausīgs.
*God will give you blessings **that** you want if you are obedient.*

Dievs mums palīdz izdarīt to**, ko** mēs nevaram izdarīt vieni paši.
*God helps us do **what** we cannot do alone.*

Viņa redzēja meiteni, **kurai** acīs bija Kristus gaisma.
*She saw a girl **who** had the light of Christ in her eyes.*

See chapter 13, "*Kas*, *Kurš*, *Kāds*."

Other Pronouns

You will receive **all** that the Lord has.	Tu saņemsi **visu**, kas ir Tam Kungam.
Everyone has the opportunity to choose the right or wrong.	**Ikvienam** ir iespēja izvēlēties labo vai slikto.
Our goal is to help **others** come unto Christ.	Mūsu mērķis ir palīdzēt **citiem** nākt pie Kristus.
There is **no** other way to God except through Jesus Christ.	Nav **neviena** cita ceļa pie Dieva, kā vien caur Jēzu Kristu.

Definite and Indefinite Pronouns

The following chart shows some additional pronouns and their approximate English translations. All of these words decline as adjectives.

Only Singular	Only Plural	Singular and Plural
ikviens *each one, everyone*	abi *both*	viss *everything, all*
katrs/ikkatrs *each and every one*		cits *another*
kaut kas *something*		dažs *some, several*

Examples

Abiem vecākiem kopā ir jāmāca bērniem par Jēzu Kristu.
***Both** parents together must teach their children about Jesus Christ.*

Ikkatrs no mums ir Dieva bērns.
***Every one** of us is a child of God.*

Mēs **kaut ko** aizmirsām.
*We **forgot** something.*

Desmit baušļi māca, kā mums jāizturas **citam** pret **citu**.
*The Ten Commandments teach us how we must treat **one another**.*

Negated Pronouns

Negated pronouns have the prefix *ne-* and are usually paired with a negated verb. Here are some examples of negated pronouns:

nekas	nekāds	neviens
nothing	*nobody*	*no one*

Examples

Nekas netīrs nevar dzīvot kopā ar Dievu. (1. Ne 10:21)
Nothing *unclean can live together with God.*

Neviens nevar ieiet Dieva valstībā bez kristīšanās.
No one *can enter the kingdom of God without baptism.*

Viņš **neko** negribēja dzirdēt par baznīcu.
He didn't want to hear ***anything*** *about the Church.*

Activities

A. Clause Identification

On a separate piece of paper, identify the relative pronoun and the clause it connects in the following sentences. Check your answers.

1. You are whom we have been looking for.
2. Scripture study is one thing that we should do every day.
3. The Book of Mormon, which testifies of Christ, is true.
4. I feel my Savior's love, which is unconditional love.
5. We are grateful for what our mission president taught us.
6. I know the Spirit, who is a member of the Godhead, teaches truth.
7. The gospel of Jesus Christ is what we need to return to God.
8. Today we learned what we have to do to be saved.
9. God's plan for families is what we will teach Sara about.
10. Do you believe what we have taught you today?

B. Fill In the Blank

The sentences from activity A are translated below. On a separate piece of paper, fill in the blanks with the correct relative pronouns. Check your answers.

1. Šodien mēs mācījāmies par __, __ mums ir jādara, lai tiktu glābti.
2. Svēto Rakstu studēšana ir viena lieta, __ mums vajadzētu darīt ikdienu.
3. Mormona Grāmata, __ liecina par Kristu, ir patiesa.
4. Es jūtu sava Glābēja mīlestību, __ ir beznosacījuma mīlestība.
5. Mēs esam pateicīgi par __, __ misijas prezidents mums mācīja.
6. Svētais Gars, __ ir Dievības loceklis, māca patiesību.
7. Jēzus Kristus evaņģēlijs ir __, __ kam mums vajag sekot, lai atgrieztos pie Dieva.
8. Jūs esat __, __ mēs meklējam.
9. Dieva iecere ģimenēm ir __, par __ mēs mācīsim Sārai.
10. Vai tu tici __, __ mēs tev šodien mācījām?

C. Demonstratives

On a separate piece of paper, fill in the blank with the correct form of *tas* or *šis*. In addition, write which number, case, and gender are used. Check your answers.

1. __ ir mana māsa.
   This is my sister.
2. Tiekamies rīt __ pašā laikā.
   Let's meet at that same time tomorrow.
3. Dzīves cikls uz __ Zemes ir īss.
   The circle of life on this earth is short.
4. __ ir Dieva likumi. (Desmit Baušļi)
   Those are laws of God. (The Ten Commandments)
5. __ pravieti sauc Nefijs.
   This prophet is called Nephi.
6. Debesu Tēvs uzklausa mūsu lūgšanas un atbild uz __.
   Heavenly Father hears our prayers and answers those.
7. Caur __ pieredzēm mīlestība kļūst stiprāka.
   Through these experiences, love becomes stronger.
8. Sekojot __ iecerei, mēs varam atgriezties pie Dieva.
   By following this plan, we can return to God.
9. Dievs dos mūžīgo dzīvi vienīgi __, kas paklausa Viņa evaņģēlijam.
   God will give eternal life to only those who obey His gospel.
10. __ ir iespējams vienīgi ar Dieva palīdzību.
    That is possible only with God's help.

D. Demonstrative Translation

Translate the following sentences into Latvian on a separate piece of paper, using the correct demonstratives. Check your answers

1. This book is true.
2. That is so cool!
3. I like that.
4. What is that book in your hands?
5. You are different than those over there.
6. This is God's restored Church on the earth today.
7. Can you please help me with this?
8. This man wants to learn more about that book.
9. Those people who believe in God strive to follow Him.
10. These words testify that Christ lives.

E. Possessive Pronouns

On a separate piece of paper, fill in the blank with the correct possessive pronoun. Be sure to decline if needed. Check your answers.

1. __ desmitā tiesa ir svēta Tam Kungam.
   ***Our** tithing is sacred to the Lord.*
2. Vai mēs pazīstam __ vecākus?
   *Do we know **your** parents?*
3. Vai tu jūti, ka Dievs uzklausa ___ lūgšanas?
   *Do you feel that God listens to **your** prayers?*
4. __ liecība turpina augt, kad viņa lūdz.
   ***Her** testimony continues to grow as she prays.*
5. __ māsa atrada __ kleitu.
   My sister found my dress.
6. Misionāri liecināja, ka es atkal redzēšu __ vecmāmiņu.
   *The missionaries testified that I will see **my** grandma again.*
7. Vai tu tici, ka Kristus evaņģēlijs un __ Baznīca ir atjaunota?
   *Do you believe that the gospel of Christ and **His** Church are restored?*
8. Debesu Tēvs zina __ vājības un ir ar mums pacietīgs.
   *Heavenly Father knows **our** weaknesses and is patient with us.*
9. Vecāki rūpējas par __ bērnu fiziskajām un garīgajām vajadzībām.
   *Parents care for **their** children's physical and spiritual needs.*
10. __ mērķis ir palīdzēt citiem nākt pie Jēzus Kristus.
    ***Your** purpose is to help others come unto Jesus Christ.*

F. *Pats*

Insert the correct form of *pats* in the following sentences. Check your answers.

1. Mēs __ esam atbildīgi par savām izvēlēm.
   We are responsible for our choices.
2. Vai tu __ uzrakstīji šo eseju?
   Did you write this essay yourself?
3. Es __ uzcepu šo maizi.
   I baked this bread myself.
4. Sāc lasīt no __ sākuma.
   Start reading from the very beginning.
5. Mums nav atkal un atkal jāpieļauj tās __ kļūdas.
   We don't need to make the same mistakes again and again.
6. Jums nav nepieciešams ēst tādu __ ēdienu katru dienu.
   You don't need to eat the same food every day.
7. Tu nevari izveidot ģimeni viens(a) __.
   You cannot form a family by yourself.
8. Caur Džozefu Smitu tika atjaunotas tās __ pilnvaras, kas tika dotas Kristus apustuļiem senatnē.
   Through Joseph Smith, the same authority that was given to Christ's Apostles in the old times was restored.

G. Reflexive Pronouns

Translate the following sentences into Latvian. Each sentence contains a reflexive pronoun. Check your answers.

1. She understood herself better after writing in her journal.
2. Do you believe in yourself?
3. You can only help yourself by keeping the commandments of God.
4. I like myself.
5. Agnese received a letter from herself.
6. She bought herself an ice cream.

H. Fill In the Blank

Fill in the blank with the correct pronoun in the correct case. You may use possessive, reflexive, or emphatic pronouns. Check your answers.

1. Es tos vārdus dzirdēju no viņa __ mutes.
   *I heard those words from his **own** mouth.*
2. Jēzus ir Kristus, kurš pasludina __ visām tautām.
   *Jesus is the Christ who proclaimed **Himself** to all people.*
3. Es __ personīgi sajūtu Svēto Garu caur mieru.
   *I, **myself,** personally feel the Holy Ghost through peace.*
4. Viņš nedomāja par __.
   *He wasn't thinking about **himself**.*
5. Prezidents Monsons mūs māca caur stāstiem no __ dzīves.
   *President Monson teaches us through stories from **his** life.*
6. Mēs ticam __ Glābējam, Jēzum Kristum.
   *We believe in **our** Savior, Jesus Christ.*
7. Man __ ir jāsaņem atbilde par to, vai Mormona Grāmata ir patiesa.
   *I must get an answer for **myself** that (if) the Book of Mormon is true.*
8. Katrs ir atbildīgs pats par __ glābšanu.
   *Everyone is responsible for his **own** salvation.*

I. Declining Indefinite and Definite Pronouns

Decline all the pronouns given in the "Indefinite and Definite Pronoun" section into nominative, accusative, genitive, dative, and locative in all their possible forms (singular/plural, masculine/feminine). Check your answers.

J. Translation with Indefinite and Definite Pronouns

Translate the following sentences into Latvian on a separate piece of paper. Then check your answers. For any answer you got wrong, explain to your companion why the correct answer is what it is.

1. God loves all people and wants them to know about Him.
2. She does not want to speak or pray in front of other people.
3. Some families don't have extra money, but they still pay tithing.
4. All of us have something that we have to learn from our missions.
5. Do you know all of the members in your branch?
6. Nobody knows your sins but God and yourself.
7. Both of us arrived in Latvia at the same time.
8. Each one of us has to decide what we will believe.
9. There were several people at church that I did not know.
10. Everyone wanted to help Eva.

K. Negated Pronouns

On a separate piece of paper, write the missing words needed to complete the sentence. Pay attention to the negation and proper conjugation and tense of the verbs. Check your answers.

1. Ja tu __ pateikt __ labu, tad __ __.
   If you can't say anything good, don't say anything.
2. Dievs __ par tevi __.
   God will never forget about you.
3. __ no mums __ atbilžu uz visiem jautājumiem.
   None of us has answers to all the questions.
4. Baznīcas vadītāji kalpo, __ __ finansiālu atlīdzību.
   Church leaders serve without receiving any kind of payment.
5. Man __ __, ko jums dot.
   I don't have anything to give you.
6. Pat ja tu man prasītu, es __ __.
   Even if you asked me, I wouldn't do it.
7. Mēs __ __ no tā, ko skolotājs(a) mācīja.
   We don't understand anything that the teacher taught.
8. __ gadījumā __ savu pārinieku.
   Never, under any circumstances, leave your companion.

L. Scriptures

Read the following verses and identify the pronouns. Try to understand the verse as much as you can first, and then use your English copy of the Book of Mormon to look for any words you do not know.

1. Nefijs 3:7	1. Nefijs 11:7	2. Nefijs 31:21	Jēkabs 3:2
Mosija 4:18	Alma 30:13	Alma 41:3	Moronijs 1:3

M. Common Errors

The following sentences have bolded and starred errors. Correct and explain the errors to your companion. Check your answers.

1. Es domāju par to, **ka*** mēs varētu darīt, lai kļūtu par labākiem(ām) misionāriem(ēm).
   I thought about what we could do to become better missionaries.
2. Visas **viņa*** māsas pievienojās baznīcai.
   All of her sisters joined the Church.
3. Es gribu palīdzēt **maniem*** brāļiem un māsām pastāvēt līdz galam.
   I want to help my brothers and sisters endure to the end.
4. Nekas man **ir*** palīdzējis vairāk kā Svēto Rakstu studēšana.
   Nothing has helped me more than scripture study.
5. Man ļoti patīk **viņi*** bērni.
   I really like their children.
6. Es lasu no **pats*** sākuma.
   I am reading from the very beginning.
7. **Mans*** dārgie brāļi un māsas.
   My dear brothers and sisters.
8. Man patīk **to***, ko Jūs teicāt.
   I like what you (formal) said.

N. Error Correction

With your companion, take turns reading the following sentences aloud. Start by giving the English translation, and then say the sentence as it is written in Latvian. Then have the other companion identify errors, if any, and restate the sentence correctly. Check your answers.

1. Vai tu turēsi manes pavēles?
   Will you keep my commandments?
2. Es paņemšu dažas no tām zemenēm.
   I will have some of those strawberries.
3. Nemirstība nav tas pats, kas mūžīgā dzīve.
   Immortality is not the same as eternal life.
4. Kā tu izproti Dieva ieceri priekš tevis?
   How do you understand God's plan for you?
5. Misionāri māca to, kas no mums sagaida Glābējs.
   Missionaries teach what the Savior expects of us.
6. Svētais Gars tev vajadzīgajā brīdī dos, kas tev jāsaka.
   The Holy Ghost will tell you what to say at the needed moment.
7. Vai tu tiksi kristīts no kādam ir priesterības pilnvaras?
   Will you be baptized by someone who has priesthood authority?
8. Misionāru stundiņas satur mācības un baušļus, pēc kuri tev jādzīvo.
   Missionary lessons contain teachings and commandments which you must live.

O. Sentence Formation

Create five sentences that you could use in an upcoming lesson for each of the following words. Make sure to use the correct case forms. Have a teacher, your companion, or a native speaker correct your sentences.

mans	mūsu	tavs	jūsu	viņa	viņas	viņu
my	*our*	*your*	*your*	*his*	*her*	*their*

Examples

Vai jūs vēlētos redzēt **manas** ģimenes bildi?
*Would you like to see a picture of **my** family?*

Kristus man dod mieru un cerību **manā** dzīvē.
*Christ gives me peace and hope in **my** life.*

Mana māte man iemācīja, kā lūgt.
***My** mom taught me how to pray.*

Manam tēvam ir stipra liecība par Jēzu Kristu.
***My** father has a strong testimony of Jesus Christ.*

Review: Possession or Ownership

This review will help you see how well you have learned the material in the previous section. It will also help you evaluate your ability to apply several different grammar principles you have learned in performing the following function:

Asking About and Expressing Possession or Ownership

- Genitive Case
- Pronouns

Activities

A. Error Correction

On a separate sheet of paper, rewrite the paragraph below, correcting the seven errors in it. Check your answers.

Svarīgākais Dievai mērķis — Viņš darbs un Viņa godība — ir palīdzēt katram no mūsu būt spējīgiem baudīt visas Viņa svētības. Lai īstenotu Sava mērķi, Viņa ir nācis klajā ar nevainojamu ieceri. Pirms nācām uz šo zemi, mēs guvām izpratni par Viņa ieceri un pieņēmām to. Svētajos Rakstos Dieva iecere tiek saukta par žēlastība ieceri, laime ieceri, pestīšanas ieceri vai glābšanas ieceri.

God's whole purpose—His work and His glory—is to enable each of us to enjoy all His blessings. He has provided a perfect plan to accomplish His purpose. We understood and accepted this plan before we came to the earth. In the scriptures God's plan is called a merciful plan, the plan of happiness, the plan of redemption, and the plan of salvation.

B. Error Correction

Each of the following sentences contains one or more errors. Write down the sentence correctly and say it to your companion. Check your answers. The answers section will refer you to the principle used in each sentence.

1. Dievs ir mums Tēvs Debesīs
   God is our Father in Heaven.
2. Pēc Jēzus Kristus nāve ļauni cilvēki vajāja apustuļus.
   After the death of Jesus Christ, wicked people persecuted the Apostles.
3. Es bieži sevi jautāju par tiem.
   I often ask myself about that.
4. Viņi ēd un tad pēc tā mēs mācīsim viņiem.
   They are eating and then after that we'll teach them.
5. Dievs atbildēs uz tavām lūgšanām Viņa pašu veidā un laikā.
   God will answer your prayers in His own way and time.
6. Augšāmcelšanās ir ķermenis un gars atkal apvieno šanās.
   Resurrection is the reuniting of body and spirit.
7. Ko mēs mācāmies šajā Svēto Rakstu pantos?
   What do we learn in these scripture verses?
8. Viņš ir Dievis pravietis.
   He is a prophet of God.
9. Mums būs nevainojams ķermenis no miesām un kauliem.
   We will have a perfect body of flesh and bone.
10. Ievērojot desmitā tiesa likumu, mēs atveram debesu logus.
    We open the windows of heaven as we observe the law of tithing.
11. Tev būs savu tuvāku mīlēt kā sevi pats.
    Thou shalt love thy neighbor as thyself.
12. Jānis ir manis tēvs.
    John is my father.
13. Mēs varam mācīties no viņš ticības piemērs.
    We can learn from his example of faith.
14. Katri no mums ir Dieva bērns.
    Each of us is a child of God.
15. Mums nav laiks, ko izšķiest.
    We don't have time to waste.
16. Iedodiet man ūdeņa pudeli, lūdzu!
    Could I have a bottle of water, please?
17. Ģimene ir paša svarīgākā sociālā vienība.
    Family is the most important social unit.
18. Katrs mēnesis pirmajā svētdienā ir gavēnis svētdiena.
    The first Sunday of every month is fast Sunday.
19. Aizmirsti par pašu un domā par citus.
    Forget yourself and think of others.
20. Jēzus nomira mums dēļ.
    Jesus died on our behalf.

C. Translation

On a separate piece of paper, translate the words in parentheses into Latvian. Check your answers.

1. (*That*) ir (*her*) Mormona Grāmata.
2. Jēzus Kristus ir (*God's*) Dēls.
3. Dievs vēlas, lai mēs kļūtu līdzīgi (*to Him*).
4. (*This*) ir (*my*) pirmā diena Liepājā.
5. (*Everyone*), (*who*) māci, jāizlemj (*for themselves*).
6. Dari (*all*), (*that*) vari, lai palīdzētu (*others*).
7. Dievs ir sagatavojis (*for us*) ceļu atgriezties pie (*Him*).
8. Dievam ir ķermenis no (flesh) un kauliem.
9. Nepaklausība attālina (us) no (Him).
10. Ja ticībai nav (works), tā (same) par sevi ir nedzīva.
11. (*The prophet's*) vārdi atklāj (*God's*) gribu.
12. (*Our*) dzīve uz (*earth*) ir iespēja un svētība.
13. (*This*) zināšanas dod (*me*) cerību un palīdz rast mieru.
14. Kā (*we*) varam atrast cilvēkus, (*which*) mācīt?
15. Māci (*other*) misionārus un kalpo (*them*)!
16. (*To us*) ir vēstījums par Jēzus Kristus (*gospel*) atjaunošanu.
17. Gatavo (*your*) klausītājus izpildīt (*baptismal*) priekšnoteikumus!
18. Šodien (we) mācīsimies par (our Savior's) laicīgo kalpošanu.
19. (We) receive (Holy) Gara dāvanu pēc (baptism).
20. (Those), (who) paklausa Dievam, baudīs laimi (spirit) pasaulē.

D. Companion Activity

Practice door or street teaching with your companion or a native speaker. Focus on using the genitive case and pronouns correctly as you talk about what you have to share with them and how it can bless their lives. Give constructive feedback to your companion and practice again, focusing on the advice given. Then switch roles.

E. Scripture Activity

Read Alma 43:9 and identify all the genitive uses and pronouns. Check your answers. How could you apply this scripture to one of your investigators? Create a lesson plan that incorporates this scripture. Talk about the things the Nephites had in their lives that they wanted to fight for. Describe the things you have that you are willing to fight for, and then use pronouns to personalize the scripture to your investigator. Practice your lesson plan with your companion, and get feedback on how well you incorporated the scripture and how you can improve your use of the genitive and pronouns.

> 9 Un tad nefijiešu nodoms bija aizstāvēt savas zemes un savas mājas, un savas sievas, un savus bērnus, lai viņi varētu aizsargāt tos no savu ienaidnieku rokām; un arī lai viņi varētu saglabāt savas tiesības un savas privilēģijas, jā, un arī savu brīvību, lai viņi varētu pielūgt Dievu atbilstoši savām vēlmēm.

F. Writing Activity

List 10 blessings that you have received through the Atonement of Jesus Christ. Write a paragraph in Latvian using each blessing in the list. Make sure you use pronouns and possession correctly. Have your companion or a native speaker check your paragraph. Then practice teaching the principle *"Caur Kristu mēs varam tikt attīrīti no grēka"* to your companion, incorporating what you wrote in your paragraph. Get feedback on how well you used these grammar principles.

G. Reading Activity

Read "Ģimene—Vēstījums Pasaulei" with your companion and identify times when genitive is used. Explain why it is in the genitive case to your companion. Also, identify when pronouns are used and why. Think of a member or investigator you are working with that needs to hear the truths outlined in this prophetic document. Plan a time to share a copy with them, and discuss in Latvian some of the points you'd like to emphasize. Consider asking a member who has a strong testimony of families to come with you and share their testimony.

Asking About and Describing Objects, People, and Their Characteristics

Purpose

This function will help you talk about what something is like; for example, talking about what God is like and what His characteristics are. The grammar principles in this section are targeted at helping you perform this function. Below are examples of the types of things you will be able to express with the grammar in this function.

- God is our **loving** Heavenly Father. ("Adjectives")
- We can live with our families **eternally**. ("Comparatives and Superlatives")
- I want to be the **kind** of person **that** God sees me as. ("*Kas*, *Kurš*, *Kāds*")
- Our goal is **to return** to our Heavenly Father. ("Reflexive Verbs")

Application

Below is a list of doctrinal points that these grammar principles will help you teach, as well as some common missionary tasks that they will help you perform. This list is not comprehensive; it is meant to help you think about how you can use the grammar in real situations. In parentheses next to each point are some sample questions that you can ask yourself to help you think about how to apply the grammar.

Doctrines from the Lessons

- God Is Our Loving Father in Heaven (What are God's characteristics? What is He like?)
- Pray to Know the Truth (What does the Spirit feel like? How will I change if I come to know this is true?)
- Our Life on Earth (How would I describe this life? What is your earthly family like?)
- The Gift of the Holy Ghost (Who is the Holy Ghost? What qualities does He possess?)
- Kingdoms of Glory (What are the differences between the three kingdoms of glory? How do they compare?)
- Temples and Family History (What kinds of blessings do we receive as we participate in family history? What is the temple like?)
- Service (Which people in my life can I serve today? What attributes of Christ can I develop to serve as He did?)
- Follow the Prophet (What kind of men lead this Church? How is your life better because we have a modern-day prophet?)

Tasks from the *Missionary Vocabulary and Phrases* Book

- Get to Know Someone (What kind of person are they? What is their family like?)
- Meet Someone (What do I want them to know about who we are? Can I describe them to someone else?)
- Make a Purchase (How would I describe what I want to buy?)
- Share an Experience (How did the experience prepare me for the future? How was I changed because of the experience?)

Adjectives

Examples

The Book of Mormon is **true**.	Mormona Grāmata ir **patiesa**.
My mother has a **strong** testimony.	**Manai** mātei ir **stipra** liecība.
God is **just** and **merciful**.	Dievs ir **taisnīgs** un **žēlīgs**.
It is necessary for us to make **sacred** covenants with God in order to receive **eternal** life.	Mums ir nepieciešams noslēgt **svētas** derības ar Dievu, lai mēs varētu iegūt **mūžīgo** dzīvi.

Explanation

Adjectives describe nouns. There are two types of adjectives in Latvian that communicate English articles:

Indefinite	**liela** grāmata ***a big*** *book*
Definite	**lielā** grāmata ***the big*** *book*

In Latvian, adjectives must agree or match the noun they describe in number, case, and gender:

Number	singular or plural
Case	nominative, accusative, genitive, dative, or locative
Gender	masculine or feminine

In Latvian, adjectives are usually placed right before the nouns that they describe. The following chart shows examples of how the adjective *labs* ("good") in both indefinite and definite matches the noun in number, case, and gender:

Indefinite	Definite	Match: Number, Case, Gender
labs zēns ***a good*** *boy*	**labais** zēns ***the good*** *boy*	Adjective matches noun: singular, nominative, masculine
labu meiteni ***good*** *girl*	**labo** meiteni ***the good*** *girl*	Adjective matches noun: singular, accusative, feminine
labiem zēniem *for* ***good*** *boys*	**labajiem** zēniem *for* ***the good*** *boys*	Adjective matches noun: plural, dative, masculine

There are many words, in addition to adjectives, that decline using adjective endings. For example, *kurš, kāds, tāds,* and *pats* are declinable possessive pronouns, numbers, and demonstrative pronouns (*tas* and *šis*).

Indefinite Adjective Endings

In Latvian, the ending of the adjective determines definiteness (*a* book vs. *the* book) for the nouns they describe. Indefinite adjective endings represent "a/an" and are shown in the following chart:

Case	Masculine		Feminine	
	Sg	Pl	Sg	Pl
Nom	-s	-i	-a	-as
Acc	-u	-us	-u	-as
Gen	-a	-u	-as	-u
Dat	-am	-iem	-ai	-ām
Loc	-ā	-os	-ā	-ās

The following chart shows examples of common Latvian adjectives:

labs *good*	slikts *bad*	foršs *cool*	laipns *kind*	ļauns *mean/wicked*
brīnišķīgs *wonderful*	šausmīgs *terrible*	laimīgs *happy*	iedvesmojošs *inspiring*	liels *big/great*

Examples

Svētā Gara dāvana ir **brīnišķīga** dāvana.
*The gift of the Holy Ghost is a **wonderful** gift.*

Grēks vienmēr padara mūs **nelaimīgus**.
*Sin always makes us **unhappy**.*

Tie, kuri ievēro Dieva likumus, saņem **lielas** svētības.
*Those who keep God's laws receive **great** blessings.*

Definite Adjective Endings

An adjective with a definite adjective ending is used to represent the article "the." The use of an article in English does not, however, directly determine whether an indefinite or definite adjective ending should be used. Adjectives will take definite adjective endings when using:

- Possessive nouns; *mans, tavs, savs, mūsu, jūsu, viņu, viņas, viņa, Tēva, Mammas, Santas, Dieva,* etc.
- Demonstrative pronouns; *šis* and *tas*
- Superlatives

The following chart shows the definite adjective endings for each case:

Case	Masculine		Feminine	
	Sg	Pl	Sg	Pl
Nom	-ais	-ie	-ā	-ās
Acc	-o	-os	-o	-ās
Gen	-ā	-o	-ās	-o
Dat	-ajam	-ajiem	-ajai	-ajām
Loc	-ajā	-ajos	-ajā	-ajās

Examples

Pēdējo Dienu **Svēto** Jēzus Kristus Baznīca.
*The Church of Jesus Christ of **Latter**-day **Saints**.*

Kristīšanās ir mūsu **pirmā** derība.
*Baptism is our **first** covenant.*

Dievs ir mūsu **mīlošais** Debesu Tēvs.
*God is our **loving** Heavenly Father.*

Mēs pateicamies par šo **skaisto** pasauli.
*We are thankful for this **beautiful** world.*

Jēzus Kristus evaņģēlijs ir **vienīgais** ceļš uz **mūžīgo** dzīvi.
*The gospel of Jesus Christ is **the only** way to **eternal** life.*

Viņš ir **vislabākais** piemērs.
*He is **the best** example.*

Word Building

There are common word endings for adjectives in Latvian, as seen in the following charts:

Endings	-īgs(a)	-ains(a)	-gans(a)	-isks(a)	-āds(a)	-ens(a)
Examples	laimīgs *happy*	saulains *sunny*	zilgans *bluish*	maģisks *magical*	citāds *different*	varens *mighty*

Endings	-ējs(a)	-išķs(a)	-iņš(a)	-ans(a)	-ots(a)
Examples	kopējs *common*	dievišķs *divine*	maziņš *little one*	sarkans *red*	krāsots *colored*

The following chart shows examples of how these endings can be used to build adjectives:

Examples				
paklausība *obedience*	+	īgs	=	paklausīgs *obedient*
lietus *rain*	+	ains	=	lietains *rainy*
zaļš *green*	+	gans	=	zaļgans *greenish*
liels *big*	+	isks	=	lielisks *great*

Note: Learn by listening to native speakers or looking up in the dictionary words that form with these endings. Participles are adjectives formed from verbs. See chapter 25, "Participles."

Activities

A. Declining Adjectives

On a separate piece of a paper, decline the following adjectives for each number, case, and gender. It may help to draw a table. Check your answers. Think of a noun to describe in each case, and try creating a sentence to go along with each declination.

1. labs *good*
2. laimīgs *happy*
3. jautrs *fun*
4. pazemīgs *humble*
5. brīnišķīgs *wonderful*
6. lielisks *great*
7. skaists *beautiful*
8. vienkāršs *simple*
9. svētais *holy*
10. pirmais *first*

Labs— masculine, singular

Examples			
nom	labs	Man ir labs tēvs. *I have a good father.*
acc	labu	Es redzēju labu filmu. *I saw a good film.*
gen	laba	Viņš ir no labas valsts. *He is from a good country.*
dat	labam	Man ir jābūt labam pāriniekam. *I have to be a good companion.*
loc	labā	Mēs dzīvojam labā dzīvoklī. *We live in a good apartment.*

B. Translation

Translate the following sentences into Latvian. Check your answers.

1. I testify that the Bible is a holy book.
2. We believe that this is the only true Church on the earth.
3. My companion is a humble and diligent missionary.
4. I feel the Holy Ghost through a good and warm feeling.
5. God will give you the Holy Spirit after your baptism.
6. The Great Apostasy was followed by spiritual darkness.
7. The ancient prophets taught people to be kind to each other.
8. You will find these eternal truths in the scriptures.
9. I know that President Monson has a strong testimony.
10. In different cultures, there are different views about what sin is.

C. Indefinite vs. Definite

For the following sentences, determine whether an indefinite or a definite adjective would be used in Latvian. Check your answers.

1. The Living Christ.
2. I am grateful for a living prophet.
3. This is my beautiful home.
4. Why are you (formal) so happy?
5. He is a kind man.
6. They are the best members in the world.
7. I saw a tall woman.
8. Eternal life is the greatest gift of God.

D. Common Errors

The following sentences have bolded and starred errors. Correct and explain the errors to your companion. Check your answers.

1. Viņi būs **prieks*** tevi redzēt.
   They will be happy to see you.
2. Kristus bija **Veca*** Derības Dižais Jehova.
   Christ is the Great Jehovah of the Old Testament.
3. **Personīgi*** atklāsmes nāk caur Svēto Garu.
   Personal revelation comes through the Holy Ghost.
4. Mums patīk iepazīt **visi cilvēki***.
   We like to get to know all people.
5. Kaut man būtu **ātrs*** mašīna!
   I wish I had a fast car.
6. Kristus bija **pirms***, kurš uzcēlās no mirušajiem.
   Christ was the first to rise from the dead.
7. Viņa uzcepa **garšīgu*** cepumiņus.
   She baked delicious cookies.
8. Vai jūs esat dzirdējuši **labas*** ziņas?
   Have you heard the good news?
9. Latviešiem ļoti garšo **rudzi*** maize.
   Latvians really like rye bread.
10. Džozefa Smita **pēdējo*** liecība par Kristu ir, ka "Viņš dzīvo!"
    Joseph Smith's last testimony about Christ is that "He lives!"

E. Error Correction

With your companion, take turns reading the following sentences aloud. Start by giving the English translation and then say the sentence as it is written in Latvian. Then have the other companion identify errors, if any, and restate the sentence correctly. Check your answers.

1. Mane māte ir laipne.
   My mother is kind.
2. Priecīgi Ziemassvētki.
   Merry Christmas!
3. Mums ir jābūt paklausīgi misionāri.
   We need to be obedient missionaries.
4. Nefijam bija stipram ticība.
   Nephi had strong faith.
5. Mans mīļākais Svētie Raksti pants ir . . .
   My favorite verse of scripture is . . .
6. Mēs dzīvojam pēdējos dienās.
   We live in the last days.
7. Viņi dzīvē ir laimīgs.
   They are happy in life.
8. Mēs palīdzējām trokšņaina sievietei.
   We helped the noisy lady.
9. Viņa redzēja ilgu vīrieti.
   She saw a tall man.
10. Viņiem ir labs izpratne par Dieva ieceri.
    They have a good understanding about God's plan.

F. Companionship Activity

With your companion, look around and name some objects or people that you see. Using the word bank below, describe to your companion what you see, making sure to decline the adjectives into the proper cases.

jauns *new*	vecs *old*	jauns *young*	mierīgs *calm*	drosmīgs *courageous*	draudzīgs *friendly*	godīgs *honest*
skaists *beautiful*	neglīts *ugly*	smieklīgs *funny*	traks *crazy*	pacietīgs *patient*	stiprs *strong*	pašaizliedzīgs *selfless*
mīlošs *loving*	karsts *hot*	auksts *cold*	čakls *diligent*	devīgs *generous*	mūžīgs *eternal*	zaļš *green*

Examples

Es redzu godīgu cilvēku.
I see an honest person.

Es redzu jaunu māti.
I see a young mother.

G. Reading

Select two or three scriptures you will use in your lessons today. Read through the verses and make note of the adjective endings used. Identify the gender and case that each adjective ending correlates with. Confirm with your companion if you are unsure about any of the endings.

H. Resource Activity

Look up a topic that you will be teaching today (for example, faith) in the missionary resources you are given (*True to the Faith*, *Liahona*, *Preach My Gospel*). Identify 5–10 adjectives and noun pairs from the article that are used in teaching this topic. Notice how nouns and adjectives agree one with another. Check with your companion to make sure you understand how to use these new adjectives, and set a goal to use them in your teaching appointment today.

I. Language Study Plan (*Preach My Gospel,* chapter 7)

Read the second and third bullet points under "Ask others to help you" (131). Apply these suggestions throughout your day by asking your companion and other native speakers to correct you on your use of adjective endings. Ask for explanations of cases you do not understand, or make note of these cases and review them with your companion in your next language study.

J. District Activity

Choose or look up a useful adjective that missionaries may not know in your district each week as an "adjective of the week." Present the adjective each week at district meeting, and at the start of each district meeting have some missionaries tell one way they used last week's adjective correctly during a missionary experience.

K. Prepare for Your Investigator

Select one of your investigators whom you will be visiting in the near future, and consider one of his or her main concerns. Think of an example from your own life or from the scriptures when you or the scriptural person faced a similar challenge. Describe this event in your own words in one to a few paragraphs. Ask your companion or a native speaker to review the story and give you feedback, particularly on your use of adjective endings. Practice sharing the story with your companion. If appropriate, share the story with your investigator during an upcoming visit.

L. Practice Describing

Open one of the pamphlets for the lessons and use as many adjectives as you can to describe each picture in the pamphlet to your companion as if he or she were seeing the pictures for the first time as an investigator.

Comparatives and Superlatives

Examples

I am young**er than** you.	Es esmu jaun**āks(a) nekā** tu.
Satan is not strong**er than** you.	Sātans nav spēcīg**āks par** tevi.
God does not love me **more than** you.	Dievs mani **ne**mīl vair**āk kā** tevi.
God is **the very best** Father.	Dievs ir **pats** lab**ākais** Tēvs.

Explanation

Comparatives and superlatives are adjectives or adverbs used to compare or show the difference between two things. The following charts summarize and give examples of comparatives and superlatives and how they are formed.

Degree	Adjective	Adverb	Translation
Adjective	labs	labi	good
Comparative	labāks	labāk	better
Superlative I	labākais	-	best
Superlative II	vislabākais	vislabāk	the very best
Superlative III	pats labākais	-	the best of all

Note: Superlatives II and III can be used interchangeably and are equal in strength. Superlative II is more frequently used.

Adjective	Comparative	Superlative I	Superlative II	Superlative III
Construction	adj(-s) +āk +adj ending	adj(-s) +āk + def adj ending	vis + adj(-s) +āk + def adj ending	pats adj(-s) +āk + def adj ending
liels *big*	lielāks *bigger*	lielāk<u>ais</u> *biggest*	vislielāk<u>ais</u> *the very biggest*	pats lielāk<u>ais</u> *the biggest of all*
mazs *small*	mazāks *smaller*	mazāk<u>ais</u> *smallest*	vismazāk<u>ais</u> *the very smallest*	pats mazāk<u>ais</u> *the smallest of all*
agrs *early*	agrāks *earlier*	agrāk<u>ais</u> *earliest*	visagrāk<u>ais</u> *the very earliest*	pats agrāk<u>ais</u> *the earliest of all*
vēls *late*	vēlāks *later*	vēlāk<u>ais</u> *latest*	visvēlāk<u>ais</u> *the very latest*	pats vēlāk<u>ais</u> *the latest of all*

In comparative statements the conjunction "than" is necessary. The following chart shows how to express this in Latvian:

Word	Example	Explanation
nekā	Viņas māja atrodas tālāk, **nekā** es atceros. *Her house is farther **than** I remember.*	This comparative conjunction ("than") is used if the verb is not negated.
kā	Tu <u>ne</u>esi gārāks, **kā** es. *You are not taller **than** I am.*	This comparative conjunction ("than") is used if the verb is negated.
par	Es ieraudzīju gaismas stabu, spožāku **par** sauli. *I saw a pillar of light brighter **than** the sun.*	*Par* is a preposition that is interchangeable with *nekā* and *kā*, and it means "than" when used in this context. It forces accusative in singular and dative in plural.

Comparatives

In order to compare between two things in Latvian, the suffix *-āks* is added to an adjective and *-āk* is added to an adverb. This is similar to adding the English suffix *-er* or the word *more*.

Case Agreement

Whenever two things in a sentence are being compared, they are expressed in the same case unless *par* is used:

Examples

Tu esi devīgāks(a) nekā **es**.
***You** are more generous than **I** am.*

Tava ģimene ir lielāka nekā **manējā.**
***Your** family is bigger than **mine** is.*

Kas var būt labāks par **šo**?
***What** could be better than **this**?*

Omītei darzā ir skaistākas puķes nekā **jeburam citam** visā ciematā.
***Grandma** has prettier flowers in her garden than **anyone else** in the whole village.*

Adjectives

When a noun is being compared in a sentence, the suffix *-āks* is added and an adjective ending is used. The comparative adjective must match the noun in number, case, and gender.

Example	Comparative Adjective Construction
Mana liecība ir stiprā**ka nekā** iepriekš. *My testimony is strong**er than** before.*	stipr(-s) + āk +a = stiprāka
Bībele ir biezā**ka nekā** Mormona Grāmata. *The Bible is thick**er than** The Book of Mormon.*	biez(-s) + āk + a = biezāka
Viņš ir stiprā**ks** un garā**ks nekā** viņa tēvs. *He is strong**er** and tall**er than** his father is.*	gar(-š) + āk + s = garāks, stipr(-s) + āk + s = stiprāks

Adverbs

When a verb is being compared in a sentence, the suffix *-āk* is added to the adverb. No adjective ending is used.

Example	Comparative Adverb Construction
Es dejoju labā**k nekā** es staigāju. *I dance bett**er than** I walk.*	lab(-i) + āk = labāk
Vai tu vari atrast vairā**k** brīvprātīgos? *Can you find **more** volunteers?*	vair(-s) + āk = vairāk* *(only used for quantity)*
Viņa dzied skaistā**k nekā** putni. *She sings **more beautifully than** birds.*	skaist(-i) + āk = skaistāk

* Note that the adverb *vairāki* means **several**; don't get these confused.

In some English comparatives we use the word *more* instead of adding the suffix *-er*. In Latvian, it is always right to add the suffix *-āk*. For example:

Right	Wrong
svarīgāk *more important*	vairāk svarīgi *importanter* daudzāk svarīgi *importanter*

Example Ir **svarīgāk** būt paklausīgam nekā upurēt.
*It is **more important** to be obedient than to sacrifice.*

Note: *Daudz svarīgāk* is used to say "much more important."

Negation

A negated comparative sentence splits the word *nekā*. To do this, first negate the verb (add the prefix *ne-* to the beginning of the verb). Then, instead of using *nekā* to compare, simply use *kā*.

Example	Explanation
Es **ne**pamodos agrāk **kā** brālis. *I did **not** wake up earlier **than** my brother.*	*Agrāk* does not have an adjective ending because it is an adverb. The verb is negated, so *kā* is used.
Es **ne**esmu garāka **par** savu māsu. *I am **not** taller **than** my sister.*	In this example, the preposition *par* is replacing *kā* and the postpositional phrase is changed into accusative. You could also say, *"Es neesmu garāka kā mana māsa."*
Nekas **nav** labāks **kā** šis saldējums. *There is **nothing** better **than** this ice cream.*	The first part of the sentence is negated because of *nav* (negated form of *ir*), so *kā* is used in comparative.

Superlatives

In Latvian, the suffix *-āk* with the definite adjective ending ("the") is used for superlatives. English superlatives commonly have the suffix *-est* or are preceded with "most." Remember that the nouns must agree in case.

Examples

Tomass Monsons ir Augst**ākā** Prezidija Prezidents.
*Thomas Monson is President of the **First** (highest) Presidency.*

Kas ir svarīg**ākais** bauslis?
*What is the **most important** commandment?*

Mana māsa ir jaun**ākā** mūsu ģimenē.
*My sister is **the youngest** in our family.*

Additional Superlatives

Two additions can be made to give greater emphasis to the superlative. The first is the prefix *vis-*, and the second is the addition of the adjective *pats*.

Examples

Trešdien būšot šī gada **vis**aukst**ākā** diena.
*Wednesday will supposedly be **the coldest** day of this year.*

Jūs esat **vis**laimīg**ākie** cilvēki, ko es pazīstu.
*You are **the happiest** people I know.*

Jēzus Kristus ir **pats** žēlīg**ākais**.
*Jesus Christ is **the most merciful** of all.*

Activities

A. Fill In the Blank

On a separate piece of paper, fill in the blank to complete the sentence. Make sure the noun agrees with the case of the thing it is being compared to. Check your answers.

1. Mēs jūtamies drošāk, esot ārā pa dienu nekā _ ___.
   We feel safer being outside during the day than at night.
2. ___ ir lētākas nekā džemperis.
   The shoes are cheaper than the sweater.
3. Jūtas štatā gaiss ir sausāks nekā ___.
   In the state of Utah, the air is dryer than in Liepaja.
4. ___ ir jābūt stiprākai nekā Sātanam.
   Anna must be stronger than Satan.
5. Viņi bija pacietīgāki ar draugiem nekā _ ___ ___.
   They were more patient with their friends than their brothers.
6. Man patīk mūzika vairāk nekā ___ ___.
   I like music more than my sister does.
7. ___ ___ ir spēcīgāks nekā zobens.
   The word of God is more powerful than the sword.
8. ___ ___ ir vērtīgāki nekā zelts.
   The scriptures are worth more than gold.
9. Laicīgās lietas ir mazsvarīgākas nekā ___.
   Worldly things are less important than the gospel.
10. Viņa justos ērtāk ar tevi nekā _ __.
    She would feel more comfortable with you than with me.

B. Practice

Take each of the adjective-noun combinations in the following chart and practice changing the adjective to the comparative and superlative degrees. Conjugate the adjective endings to match the given noun. Check your answers.

1. skaistas dziesmas — *beautiful songs*
2. godīgs pārbaudījums — *fair test*
3. ērti krēsli — *comfortable chairs*
4. pieejama iespēja — *available opportunity*
5. zils ezers — *blue lake*
6. maiga balss — *soft voice*

Example:	foršs zēns *cool boy*	foršāks zēns *cooler boy*	foršākais zēns *coolest boy*	visforšākais zēns *the coolest boy of all*	pats foršākais zēns *the very coolest boy*

C. Adjective or Adverb

Determine if the comparison is an adjective or an adverb and use the appropriate endings to translate the following sentences into Latvian. Check your answers.

1. I feel the Holy Ghost stronger when I pray.
2. I can sing louder than a whole choir.
3. We are happier when we have the gospel.
4. He more gratefully expressed love for his family.
5. I am faster than you.
6. The Spirit is stronger when I pray.
7. I am louder than a whole choir.
8. We live happier when we have the gospel.
9. He is more grateful for his family.
10. I run faster than you.

D. "More" Examples

Translate the following sentences on another piece of paper. Pay attention to the word "more." Remember *vairāk* and *daudz* are only used if comparing quantity. Check your answers.

1. Do you feel more peaceful about your decision to be baptized?
2. It is more important to be kind than to be the one who is right.
3. Would you *(pl.)* like more information about what we believe?
4. She was more excited to go to the temple after our lesson.
5. Through repentance, our thoughts become more like Christ's.
6. I am more confused now than before.
7. I always want more hours in the day.
8. We will study the scriptures more diligently.
9. Lessons should not last more than 45 minutes.
10. Dace does not need a more difficult job.

E. Translate

Translate the following sentences into Latvian on a separate piece of paper. Check your answers.

1. The prophet's most important duty is to testify of Jesus Christ.
2. Christ's doctrine includes the most vital principles of the gospel.
3. The most important thing Christ did was complete the Atonement.
4. Parents must be the best examples to their children.
5. While praying, you *(tu)* can share your deepest feelings with God.
6. The best way to teach is by the Spirit.
7. Salvation is the greatest gift of God.
8. Sunday is my favorite day of the week.
9. Family is the most important unit now and forever.
10. What is your *(Jūs)* favorite Bible story?

F. Common Errors

The following sentences have bolded and starred errors. Correct and explain the errors to your companion. Check your answers.

1. Tu esi pats **labāks*** misionārs.
   You are the best missionary.
2. Viņš ir ātrāks **kā*** es.
   He is faster than me.
3. Esi **vislabāk*** piemērs citiem!
   Be the best example to others.
4. Sātans nav stiprāks **nekā*** tu, ja tu paļaujies uz Dievu.
   Satan is not stronger than you if you rely on God.
5. Dāvis ir **vissportiskāks*** zēns savā skolā.
   Davis is the most athletic boy in his school.
6. Tas, kas tur Dieva baušļus, sajūt **vislielu*** laimi.
   He who keeps God's commandments feels the greatest happiness.

G. Error Correction

With your companion, take turns reading the following sentences aloud. Start by giving the English translation and then say the sentence as it is written in Latvian. Then have the other companion identify errors, if any, and restate the sentence correctly. Check your answers.

1. Jēzus Kristus ir mūsu vecāks brālis.
   Jesus Christ is our Elder Brother.
2. Viņa ir pati jaukākā cilvēks pasaulē.
   She is the kindest person in the world.
3. Mans tētis ir pats foršākais tētis pasaulē.
   My dad is the greatest dad in the world.
4. Mans pārinieks ir garīgāks kā es.
   My companion is more spiritual than me.
5. Es neesmu garāks nekā viņš.
   I am not taller than him.
6. Usains Bolts ir visātrāks skrējējs pasaule.
   Usain Bolt is the fastest runner in the world.

H. Scripture

Read the following verse. Identify all of the comparisons and explain to your companion why each ending is used.

Almas Grāmata 32:42

"Un dēļ jūsu uzcītības un jūsu ticības, un jūsu pacietības, kopjot vārdu, lai tas varētu iesakņoties jūsos, lūk, ar laiku jūs plūksit tā augļus, kas ir paši dārgākie, kas ir saldāki par visu saldo un kas ir baltāki par visu balto, jā un tīrāki par visu, kas ir tīrs; un jūs mielosities ar šiem augļiem, līdz jūs būsit paēduši, ka jūs nebūsit nedz izsalkuši, nedz izslāpuši."

Kas, Kurš, Kāds

Examples

Christ is the only one **who** could complete the Atonement.	Kristus ir vienīgais, **kurš** spēja paveikt Grēku Izpirkšanu.
What role do you have as missionaries?	**Kāda** ir jūsu loma kā misionāriem(ēm)?
In which city do you live?	**Kurā** pilsētā jūs dzīvojat?
There is only one way **that** can make us truly happy.	Ir tikai viens veids, **kas** mūs var darīt patiesi laimīgus.

Explanation

Kas, *kurš*, and *kāds* are conceptually distinct Latvian pronouns. For more information on how these words are used in questions, see chapter 8, "Asking Questions." The following chart shows the approximate meanings of *kas*, *kurš*, and *kāds*:

kas		***kurš/kura***		***kāds/kāda***	
Question	**Statement**	**Question**	**Statement**	**Question**	**Statement**
what, *who*	***that***, *what, who, which*	***which*** *(one), who*	*that,* ***which****, who*	***what kind***, *what, someone(body), anyone(body)*	*any, which, what, some, certain, one, someone(body), anyone(body)*

Kas

Each Latvian case is associated with a declined form of the question word *kas. Kas* declines depending on how it is used in a sentence:

Nom	kas *who/what*
Acc	ko *what*
Gen	kā *whose/what (gen)*
Dat	kam *to whom*
Loc	kur *where*

The following examples use *kas* as a relative pronoun:

Example	Explanation
Es atbalstīšu pravieti, **ko** Dievs ir aicinājis. *I will sustain the prophet (whom) God has called.*	The accusative pronoun *ko* is used because it is the direct object of the person God is calling. (God has called the prophet.)
Es mīlu tos, **kam** es kalpoju. *I love those whom I serve.*	The verb in the second part of the sentence is a verb that forces dative, so the dative relative pronoun is used.

Kas with Demonstratives

There are many ways to combine demonstratives (*tas*, *šis*) with relative pronouns such as *kas*. Here are some examples:

Examples

Es esmu **tas, kas** es esmu.
I am who I am.

Mēs piekrītam darīt **to, ko** Dievs prasa.
We agree to do what (that which) God asks.

Man vajag noskaidrot **to, pie kā** es atstāju savu maku.
I need to find out (that) whom I left my wallet with.

Palīdzi man ieraudzīt **tos, kam** vajag manu palīdzību!
Help me to see those who need my help.

Viņš jūt mīlestību **tur, kur** ir viņa ģimene.
He feels love (there) where his family is.

Kurš/Kura

Kurš/Kura refers to a specific selection from a defined or previously mentioned group. It follows the normal adjective declension pattern:

Case	Masculine		Feminine	
	Sg	Pl	Sg	Pl
Nom	kurš	kuri	kura	kuras
Acc	kuru	kurus	kuru	kuras
Gen	kura	kuru	kuras	kuru
Dat	kuram	kuriem	kurai	kurām
Loc	kurā	kuros	kurā	kurās

Kurš usually implies "one from a group" (of people or things), so there needs to be a reference group in order for the sentence to make sense. The following examples show when either *kurš* or *kas* would be more appropriate:

Examples	Explanation
Es rakstīju savu liecību Mormona Grāmatā, **kuru** viņai iedevu. *I wrote my testimony in the Book of Mormon which I gave her.*	*Kurš* is used to specify a particular Book of Mormon (out of a larger selection).
Kas zvana? *Who is calling?*	*Kurš* wold be wrong to use because there is no reference group (anybody could be calling).
Kurš/Kas noskaitīs lūgšanu? *Who will say the prayer?*	Both *kas* and *kurš* can be used, because it implies "who" or "who out of those who are here."

The following examples show how *kurš* is changed to match in number, case, and gender:

Examples

Mīli cilvēkus, **kurus**$_{\text{MP acc}}$ māci!
*Love the people **whom** you teach.*

Svētais Gars dod mums spēku, ar **kura**$_{\text{MS gen}}$ palīdzību mēs varam mācīt un mācīties.
*The Holy Ghost gives us power by **which** we can teach and learn.*

Džozefs apmeklēja vairākas baznīcas, nezinot, **kurai**$_{\text{FS dat}}$ no tām pievienoties.
*Joseph attended several churches, not knowing **which** of them to join.*

Kristīšana ir jāveic kādam, **kuram**$_{\text{MS dat}}$ ir attiecīgas priesterības pilnvaras.
*Baptism must be performed by someone **who** has the appropriate priesthood authority.*

Manām māsām, **kuras**$_{\text{FP acc}}$ es ļoti mīlu, patīk dziedāt.
*My sisters, **whom** I really love, love singing.*

Kāds/Kāda

Kāds/Kāda means "someone/-body." The following chart shows how to decline *kāds,* which follows the regular adjective declension pattern.

Case	Masculine		Feminine	
	Sg	Pl	Sg	Pl
Nom	kāds	kādi	kāda	kādas
Acc	kādu	kādus	kādu	kādas
Gen	kāda	kādu	kādas	kādu
Dat	kādam	kādiem	kādai	kādām
Loc	kādā	kādos	kādā	kādās

Kāds differs from *kas* and *kurš* in that it means or implies "the kind of" or "the way (something is)" (e.g., "the kind of blessings" or "the kind of life"). Many uses of *kāds* do not translate directly—notice the implied meaning in the following examples:

Examples

Es gribu būt tāda, **kāds** esi tu.
*I want to be the way (**that**) you are.*

Ģetzemenes dārzā Jēzu pārņēma ciešanas, **kādas** mēs nemaz nevaram iedomāties.
*In the Garden of Gethsemane, Jesus was overtaken by suffering (**which**) we cannot even imagine.*

Paaugstināšana nozīmē pazīt Dievu un dzīvot tādu dzīvi, **kādu** bauda Viņš.
*Salvation means to know God and live the life **that** He enjoys.*

Iedod savu desmito tiesu **kādam** no draudzes prezidija!
*Give your tithing to **someone** from the branch presidency.*

Pēc **kāda** laika Dievs atjaunoja evaņģēliju uz zemes.
*After **some** time, God restored the gospel on the earth.*

Vai **kāds** ir redzējis manus Svētos Rakstus?
*Has **anyone** seen my scriptures?*

Relative Pronouns

Kas, *kurš*, and *kāds* can be pronouns that are used to form complex sentences by connecting phrases and clauses to the main part of the sentence. These relative pronouns are often omitted in English, but in Latvian, they must be used.

Complex Sentences

The following examples show how clauses can be connected by a relative pronoun to form complex sentences:

Viņš man **ar to** palīdzēja.
*He helped me **with that**.*
\+
Man **tas** bija jādara.
*I had to do **that.***

Viņš man palīdzēja **ar to, kas** man bija jādara.
*He helped me **with what** I had to do.*

Rīcības brīvība ir viena no lielākajām dāvanām.
***Agency** is one of the greatest gifts.*
\+
Dievs Saviem bērniem ir devis **rīcības brīvību**.
*God has given His children **agency**.*

Rīcības brīvība ir viena no lielākajām dāvanām, **ko** Dievs ir devis Saviem bērniem.
*Agency is one of the greatest gifts **that** God has given His children.*

Mēs **to** gribam uzzināt.
*We want to find **that** out.*
\+
Tu **tam** tici.
*You believe **that.***

Mēs gribam uzzināt **to, kam** tu tici.
*We want to find out **what** you believe.*

Relative pronouns are also used to connect nonessential clauses. These are clauses that further describe a noun but if removed would still leave a complete sentence.

Baušļi ir norādījumi no Dieva.
***The commandments** are rules from God.*
\+
Baušļi ir doti mūsu labumam.
***The commandments** are for our good.*

Baušļi, **kas** ir doti mūsu labumam, ir norādījumi no Dieva.
*The commandments, **which** are for our good, are rules from God.*

Es esmu pateicīgs par **saviem draugiem**.
*I am grateful for **my friends**.*
\+
Mani draugi dzīvo pēc evaņģēlija.
***My friends** live the gospel.*

Es esmu pateicīgs par saviem draugiem, **kas** dzīvo pēc evaņģēlija.
*I am grateful for my friends **who** live the gospel.*

Cienīgi tēvi var dot svētības saviem bērniem.
***Worthy fathers** can give blessings to their children.*
\+
Cienīgiem tēviem ir Melhisedeka priesterība.
***Worthy fathers** have the Melchizedek Priesthood.*

Cienīgi tēvi, **kuriem** ir Melhisedeka priesterība, var dot svētības saviem bērniem.
*Worthy fathers **who** have the Melchizedek Priesthood can give blessings to their children.*

Note: When clauses are connected by a relative pronoun, a comma is used before the pronoun and the sentence is reset.
Complex sentences can also be formed with conjunctions. See chapter 33, “Conjunctions.”

Activities

A. Fill In the Blank

The following sentences need to be completed with the correct declension of *kas, kurš* or *kāds*. Check your answers.

1. Viņš nezināja, __ pieder tā grāmata.
   *He didn't know **to whom** that book belongs.*
2. Vai tu tici __, __ mēs tev šodien esam mācījuši(as)?
   *Do you believe **what** we have taught you today?*
3. Mormona Grāmata, __ liecina par Kristu, ir patiesa.
   *The Book of Mormon, **which** testifies of Christ, is true.*
4. Es jūtu sava Glābēja mīlestību, __ ir nebeidzama.
   *I feel my Savior's love, **which** is unending.*
5. __, __ mani dara laimīgu, nāk no Dieva.
   That which makes me happy comes from God.
6. Es zinu, ka Svētais Gars, __ ir dievības loceklis, māca patiesību.
   *I know the Spirit, **who** is a member of the Godhead, teaches truth.*
7. Kristus evaņģēlijs ir __, __ mums vajag, lai atgrieztos pie Dieva.
   *The gospel of Christ is **what** we need to return to God.*
8. Mēs esam pateicīgi par __, __ misijas prezidents mums mācīja.
   *We are grateful for **what** our mission president taught us.*
9. Svēto Rakstu studēšana ir lieta, __ mums vajadzētu darīt katru dienu.
   *Scripture study is something **that** we should do every day.*
10. Dieva iecere ģimenēm ir __, par __ mēs mācīsim Sārai.
    *God's plan for families is **what** we will teach Sara about.*

B. Translation

Translate the following sentences into English. Check your answers.

1. Kristīšana jāveic **kādam**, **kuram** ir attiecīgās priesterības pilnvaras.
2. **Tas, ko** mēs darām sabatā, parāda mūsu apņemšanos sekot Dievam.
3. Lūdz padomu misijas prezidentam, **kurš** dos norādījumus!
4. No **tā, kā** mēs izmantojam izvēles brīvību, ir atkarīga mūsu mūžīgā pilnveidošanās.
5. Mājas ir labākā vieta, **kur** mācīt un mācīties evaņģēlija principus.
6. Noskaidro, kā cilvēks, **kuru** māci, izprot pravieša lomu!
7. Kristoties tu piekrīti darīt **to, ko** Dievs no tevis prasa.
8. Mēs paļaujamies uz ticību, nevis uz **to, kas** redzams.
9. Kā tev šķiet, **kāda** ir Kristus loma, ņemot vērā **to, ko** mēs mācījām?
10. **Kāds** ir jūsu dzīvoklis?

C. *Kas, Kurš, Kāds*

The story of Joseph Smith is filled with the words *kas*, *kurš*, and *kāds*. Read Joseph Smith History 1:8–19; notice when each of the words is used and why it would be used. In addition, throughout the day pay special attention to when and how natives use *kas*, *kurš*, and *kāds*.

D. Asking Questions

With your companion, practice asking aloud the following questions by filling in the blank with the correct question word. Practice responding in the correct case by giving a possible answer. In the answer's section there is an example sentence, although there are many possible ways to answer.

1. Ar __ mamma sarunājas?
   ***Whom** is mom talking to?*
2. __ šodien mācīs svētdienas skolu?
   ***Who** will teach Sunday School today?*
3. __ tev patika baznīcā?
   ***What** did you like about the Church?*
4. Uz __ Kristus īpašību tu šonedēļ koncentrējies?
   ***Which** Christlike attribute are you focusing on this week?*
5. __ paņēma manu somu?
   ***Who** took my bag?*
6. __ ir tavs mīļākais pants?
   ***What** is your favorite scripture?*
7. __ no jums gribētu atgriezties pie Debesu Tēva?
   ***Which** of you would like to return to Heavenly Father?*
8. ___ baznīcas locekļi pieteicās mums palīdzēt ar stundiņām?
   ***Which** members said they can help us with the lessons?*
9. ___ jūs vēlaties no manis nopirkt?
   ***What** do you want to buy from me?*
10. __ tagad ir pravietis?
    ***Who** is the prophet now?*

E. Answering Questions

On a separate piece of paper, write a possible answer to the questions given below. Pay special attention to the case in which the answer is given. Have your companion, a teacher, or a native correct your work.

1. **Kuram** bija jāiet četros?
   ***Who** had to leave at four?*
2. **Kas** man jādara, lai justu mieru?
   ***What** do I need to do to feel peace?*
3. **Kurš** no jums grib lasīt šo pantu?
   ***Which** of you wants to read this verse?*
4. **Kādas** filmas tev patīk?
   ***What kind/type** of movies do you like?*
5. Pie **kā** mēs braucam?
   ***Whose** home are we going to?*
6. **Kādas** ir jūsu domas par to, ko mēs šodien mācījām?
   ***What** are your thoughts about what we taught today?*
7. **Kam** ir kārta lūgt?
   ***Whose** turn is it to pray?*
8. **Kurš** māk runāt krieviski un varētu mums tulkot?
   ***Who** can speak Russian and could translate for us?*
9. Uz **kuru** Kristus īpašību mēs šonedēļ koncentrēsimies?
   ***Which** attribute of Christ will we focus on this week?*
10. **Kāds** ir tavs iemesls nekristīties?
    ***What** is your reason for not being baptized?*

F. Common Errors

The following sentences have bolded and starred errors. Correct and explain the errors to your companion. Check your answers.

1. Plāksnes tika nodotas Džozefam, **kāds*** tās pārtulkoja ar Dieva dāvanu.
   The plates were given to Joseph, who translated them with the gift of God.
2. Pāri, **kādi*** ir neprecēti un dzīvo kopā, nedrīkst kristīties.
   Couples who are not married and live together cannot be baptized.
3. Džozefs vēlējās uzzināt, **kurš*** no reliģijām bija patiesa.
   Joseph Smith desired to find out which of the religions was correct.
4. Tie, **ko*** pastāvēs līdz galam, saņems svētības.
   *Those **who** endure to the end will receive blessings.*
5. Patiesība ir zināšanas par lietām, **kas*** tās ir, bija un būs.
   Truth is knowledge of things as they really are, were, and will be.
6. Mēs satiekam daudz cilvēku, **kuri*** nav ne jausmas, kas mēs esam.
   We meet a lot of people who have no idea who we are.
7. Tevi kristīs **kāds**, **kuru*** ir priesterības pilnvaras.
   Someone who has the priesthood will baptize you.
8. **Kas*** ir Tā Kunga griba attiecībā uz mani?
   What is the Lord's will for me?
9. Pravieši rakstīja par lietām, **kuri*** ir patīkamas Dievam.
   The prophets wrote things that are pleasing to God.
10. Tomēr es zinu, **ko*** es esmu uzticējies.
    Nevertheless, I know in whom I have trusted.

G. Error Correction

With your companion, take turns reading the following sentences aloud. Start by giving the English translation and then say the sentence as it is written in Latvian. Then have the other companion identify errors, if any, and restate the sentence correctly. Check your answers.

1. Cienīgi baznīcas locekļiem, kādiem ir rekomendācija, var ieiet templī.
   Worthy Church members who have a recommend can go in the temple.
2. Pravieši ir Dieva aicināti vīri, kuri Kristus piešķīris priesterību.
   Prophets are men called of God to whom Christ has given the priesthood.
3. Mēs dalāmies evaņģēlijā ar tos, kuri to vēl nav pieņēmuši.
   We share the gospel with those who still have not accepted it.
4. Pirmdienas vakars ir laiks, kurām ir ģimenēm, lai to pavadītu kopā.
   Monday nights are a time which families have to spend together.
5. Kristoties mēs apsolām palīdzētu tam, kas tas nepieciešams.
   When we are baptized, we promise to help those who are in need.
6. Man patīk tas, ko tu teici par gavēšanu.
   I like what you said about fasting.
7. Es gribu kļūt tādu, kādu ir Kristus.
   I want to become like Christ is.
8. Kurš padalīsies to, ko tu ir iemācījies?
   Who will share what they have learned?
9. Man būs jāstudē tas, ko pravieši ir rakstījuši.
   I will have to study what the prophets wrote.
10. Tas, ko mēs ticam, ir rakstīts Svētajos Rakstos.
    (That) what we believe is written in the scriptures.

H. Complete the Sentence

Complete the sentences below by writing a clause connected by a relative pronoun.

1. Jēzus Kristus evaņģēlijs palīdzēs tam, . . .
2. Kristīšanās ir derība, . . .
3. Cilvēki, . . . , daudz labāk izprot garīgās patiesības.
4. Man patīk tas, . . .
5. Dievs sola bagātīgi svētīt tos, . . .
6. Mēs sekojam Svētā Gara ietekmei, . . .
7. Tēva vadībā Kristus radīja zemi, . . .
8. Sabata dienā es cenšos darīt to, . . .
9. Škīstības likums, . . . , prasa būt uzticīgiem gan domās, gan rīcībā.
10. Mums bija jābrauc uz Rīgu, . . .

I. In the Scriptures

Read through the verses in the following chart and look for examples of when *kas, kurš,* and *kāds* are used. Decide how one of these verses could be used in an upcoming lesson and practice explaining the verse to your companion.

1. Nefija Grāmata 8:21	Mosijas Grāmata 3:5	Almas Grāmata 32:21	3. Nefija Grāmata 27:16
2. Nefija Grāmata 31:12	Mosijas Grāmata 18:9	Helamana Grāmata 5:12	Moronija Grāmata 7:12

J. Indentify and Explain

Identify all of the uses of *kas, kurš*, and *kāds* in the verse below. Explain to your companion the case each is in and how each is being used in the sentence. Write down in a journal your thoughts about this verse, paying special attention to the use of these words. Consider whom you could share this verse and your thoughts with, and then do it.

> „Kurš no jūsu vidus, kam ir simts avis un kas vienu no tām ir pazaudējis, neatstāj visas deviņdesmit deviņas tuksnesī, lai ietu pakaļ pazudušajai, līdz kamēr tas to atradīs?
> Un, to atradis, tas prieka pilns to ceļ uz saviem pleciem." Lūkas 15:4–5

Reflexive Verbs

Examples

We **thank** Thee for a prophet.	Mēs tev **pateicamies** par pravieti.
I **try to learn** something new every day.	Es katru dienu **cenšos iemācīties** ko jaunu.
Church **starts** at nine every Sunday.	Baznīca **sākas** deviņos katru svētdienu.
When we **share** the gospel, God blesses us with joy.	Kad mēs **dalāmies** evaņģēlijā, Dievs mūs svētī ar prieku.

Explanation

A reflexive verb is a verb in which the action of the verb is "reflected" back onto the subject. In other words, the subject of the sentence performs an action that is directed at itself. A reflexive verb is formed by adding *-ies* to the end of the regular verb form.

Verb Form	Verb	Example
Regular	kristīt *to baptize*	Es kristu. *I baptize.*
Reflexive	kristīties *to be baptized*	Es kristos. *I am (being) baptized.*

Conjugation

To conjugate a reflexive verb:

(1) Determine the tense (past, present, or future).
(2) Find the verb stem (past, present, or future) and remove *-ies.* See chapter 19, "Verbs."
(3) Add the ending that matches the subject.

The following charts show the endings for reflexive verbs:

	Past		Present		Future	
	Sg	**Pl**	**Sg**	**Pl**	**Sg**	**Pl**
1st	-os	-āmies	-os	-amies*	-šos	-simies
2nd	-ies	-āties	-ies	-aties*	-sies	-sieties⁺
3rd	-ās		-as*		-sies	

Note: If a stem ends in a vowel (e.g., ***veseļo****~~ties~~*) and the conjugation ending starts with a vowel (*-os*), then a "*j*" is added between the stem and the ending. (*Es veseļojos.*)

Here is an example of conjugating the reflexive verb *mācīties*:

	Stem		Endings			Conjugated Verb	
PAST	mācīj-	+	-os	-āmies	=	es mācījos *I learned*	mēs mācījāmies *we learned*
			-ies	-āties		tu mācījies *you learned*	jūs mācījāties *you (pl.) learned*
			-ās			(viņi) mācījās *they/he/she learned*	

	Stem		Endings			Conjugated Verb	
PRESENT	māc-	+	-os	-amies*	=	es mācos *I learn*	mēs mācāmies *we learn*
			-ies	-aties*		tu mācies *you learn*	jūs mācāties *you (all) learn*
			-as*			(viņi) mācās *they/he/she learn*	

	Stem		Endings			Conjugated Verb	
FUTURE	mācī-	+	-šos	-simies	=	es mācīšos *I will learn*	mēs mācīsimies *we learned*
			-sies	-sities/sieties		tu mācīsies *you will learn*	jūs mācīsieties⁺ *you (all) will learn*
			-sies			viņš(a)/viņi(as) mācīsies *they/he/she will learn*	

*In present-tense third conjugation verbs (with endings *-īties* and *-ināties* in infinitive) the ending uses "*ā*" instead of "*a.*"
⁺ - *sieties* can be shortened to *-sities.*

Reflexive Verb Functions

Reflexive verbs generally reflect back on the subject of the sentence (intransitive function). However, in Latvian, reflexive verbs have several other functions (descriptive, reciprocal) and can completely change the meaning of a regular verb. Here are some examples:

Example	Explanation
Uz **redzēšanos**. *Good-bye (till we **see** each other again).*	This is an example of a reflexive verb taking on the reciprocal function.
Es **ceļos** agri no rīta. *I **get up** early in the morning.*	*Celties* here is intransitive and simply reflects back to the subject—"I lift myself."
Pirms šīs dzīves mēs **izvēlējāmies** sekot Dievam. *Before this life we **chose** to follow God.*	*Izvēlēties,* meaning "to choose," is always a reflexive verb.
Kristoties jūs **uzņemsieties** Jēzus Kristus vārdu uz sevis. *By being **baptized**, you **will take upon** yourself the name of Jesus Christ.*	The reflexive verbs *kristīties* and *uzņemties* make the action become intransitive.
Dievs mūs stiprinās, lai mēs varētu **pretoties** kārdinājumiem. *God will strengthen us so we can **resist** temptation.*	The verb *pretoties* ("to resist") is always a reflexive verb.

Intransitive Function

Intransitive reflexive verbs are used when the action is reflected back to the doer of the action. Regular transitive verbs can be used intransitively in the reflexive form. Note that since these reflexive verbs are intransitive, they will not be used with an accusative direct object. The following are some examples with the **verb** bolded and transitive object underlined:

Transitive	Intransitive
Es **beidzu** darbu piecos. *I **stop** working at five.*	Man darbs **beidzas** piecos. *My job **ends** at five.*
Es **mazgāju** traukus. *I **am washing** the dishes.*	Es katru rītu **mazgājos** dušā. *I **wash myself** every day in the shower.*
Viņš **sāka** lasīt Mormona Grāmatu katru dienu. *He **began** reading the Book of Mormon every day.*	Apgabala sapulce **sāksies** pēc stundas. *District meeting **will begin** in an hour.*

Descriptive Function

Reflexive verbs can also describe the situation or the person:

Verb	Example
justies *to feel like*	Es **jūtos** laimīgs(a), kad dzīvoju pēc baušļiem. *I **feel** happy when I follow the commandments.*
atrasties *to be (located)*	Mēs nezinām, kur mēs **atrodamies**. *We don't know where we **are (located)**.*
	Es **atrados** bīstamā situācijā. *I **was** in a dangerous situation.*
izskatīties *to look like*	Kā tava mamma **izskatās**? *What does your mom **look like**?*
	Tu **izskaties** pēc slavenības. *You **look** like a celebrity.*

Reciprocal Function

Reflexive verbs can also describe an action that is mutual or reciprocal:

Verb	Example
runāties *to converse, to talk*	Mēs **runājāmies** ar mūsu klausītāju stundām ilgi. *We **talked** with our investigator for hours.*
sacensties *to compete*	Mums nevajag **sacensties**, bet gan atbalstīt vienam otru. *We don't need to **compete** but to support each other.*
saprasties *to get along, to understand each other*	Mūsu klausītājs labi **saprotas** ar baznīcas locekļiem. *Our investigator **gets along** well with the Church members.*

Changing the Meaning

Many reflexive verbs change the meaning of the verb completely when it is turned into a reflexive verb. Be aware of this and study the meanings of the verbs in both regular and reflexive forms. Here are some examples:

Regular	Reflexive
mācīt *to teach*	mācīties *to learn*
klausīt *to obey*	klausīties *to listen*
sarunāt *to negotiate, to arrange*	sarunāties *to converse*
atrast *to find*	atrasties *to be (somewhere), to be situated*
dot *to give*	doties *to go*
vēlēt *to elect*	vēlēties *to desire*

Some verbs can only be reflexive and some are used only in the regular form. Here are some verbs that are reflexive only:

Verb	Example
pretoties *to resist*	Dievs mums var palīdzēt **pretoties** Sātana kārdinājumiem. *God can help us resist Satan's temptations.*
veseļoties *to recover from illness*	Cerams, ka tu drīz **izveseļosies**! *I hope you **will get better** soon!*
censties *to strive*	Mēs **cenšamies** būt labi(as) misionāri(es). *We **strive** to be good missionaries.*
priecāties *to rejoice, to be glad about smth*	Zane **priecājās**, ka mēs viņu apmeklējām. *Zane **was glad** that we visited her.*

Prefixes on Reflexive Verbs

Prefixes can also change the meaning of the verb significantly. Some verbs can be formed as reflexive verbs only with a prefix. Here are some examples of reflexive verbs with a prefix and their meanings:

Verb	Example
atcerēties *to remember*	Tu **atceries**, kā sauca to vīrieti, ko mēs satikām veikalā? *Do you **remember** the name of the man we met at the store?*
pastaigāties *to take a walk*	Iesim **pastaigāties** pa parku? *Shall we **go for a walk** in the park?*
atpūsties *to rest*	Septītajā dienā Dievs **atpūtās** no saviem darbiem. *On the seventh day, God **rested** from all His labors.*

Activities

A. Reflexive Verb Conjugation

On a separate piece of paper, conjugate the following reflexive verbs for each person and tense. Check your answers.

1. atgriezties *to return*
2. censties *to strive*
3. priecāties *to rejoice*
4. atcerēties *to remember*
5. pastaigāties *to go for a walk*
6. rīkoties *to act*
7. apmesties *to settle down*
8. doties *to go*
9. mācīties *to learn*
10. atpūsties *to rest*

B. Reflexive Verbs in a Sentence

The following sentences contain underlined verbs in the infinitive. Conjugate the verbs based on the subject and tense. Then translate the sentences into English. Check your answers.

1. Es sazināties ar savu ģimeni katru nedēļu. **(present)**
2. Ja Jūs rīkoties, Jūs zināsiet, ka šī ir patiesība. **(future)**
3. Vakar viņa atcerēties lasīt savus Svētos Rakstus.**(past)**
4. Nefija stāsts attiekties arī uz manu dzīvi. **(present)**
5. Baznīcas locekļi draudzēties ar to ģimeni. **(past)**
6. Vai Jūs izvēlēties sekot Jēzum Kristum? **(present)**
7. Vai Jūs vēlēties mainīties? **(present)**
8. Ja jūs paļauties uz Dievu, viņš jums parādīs, kas jādara. **(future)**

C. Regular or Reflexive

Fill in the blank with the correct conjugated verb form. Decide from the context whether the regular or reflexive verb would be most appropriate. Check your answers.

1. Viņš __ Svēto Gāru.
   *He **feels** the Holy Ghost.*
2. Viņam jā__.
   *He needs **to hurry** (himself).*
3. Es pats(i) __ lasīt.
   *I **taught myself** to read.*
4. Cikos man vajadzētu __ klasi?
   *What time should I **start** class?*
5. Es __ ar māsu Krūmiņu un mēs ilgi __.
   *I **met up** with sister Krūmiņa and we **talked** for a long time.*
6. Es __ savas prasmes runāt latviešu valodā, bieži trenējoties.
   *I **will improve** my skills to speak Latvian by practicing often.*
7. Viņas bažas par nāvi __ tad, kad mēs mācījām par Dieva eceri.
   *Her concern about death was **resolved** once we taught about God's plan.*
8. Mēs ilgi __ par to, kas mums palīdz saprast evaņģēliju.
   *We **talked** for a long time about what helps us understand the gospel.*
9. Draudzes pasākums mums palīdzēja vienam otru labāk __.
   *The branch helped us **get to know** one another better.*
10. Evaņģēlijs __ cilvēku dzīves, kad viņi ir paklausīgi.
    *The gospel **improves** people's lives when they are obedient.*

D. Translation

Translate the following sentences. Check your answers.

1. Will you kneel and pray tonight?
2. This life is the time to prepare to meet God.
3. I can't even imagine how hard that would be.
4. She is worried about her family.
5. Their family learned together about the Restoration.
6. Heavenly Father and Jesus Christ appeared to Joseph Smith.
7. We promise to always remember Christ.
8. He listened to the Spirit and was prompted.
9. Living the commandments will prepare us to return to God.
10. I feel so blessed that I can be a missionary!

E. Common Errors

The following sentences have bolded and starred errors. Correct and explain the errors to your companion. Check your answers.

1. Vai mēs **satiksamies*** arī piektdien?
   Will we also meet on Friday?
2. Mēs **dalījas*** Jēzus Kristus Evaņģēlijā.
   We share the gospel of Jesus Christ.
3. **Es*** atgriezāties mājās.
   You returned home.
4. Ja Jūs ievērosiet baušļus, Jūs **tuvināmies*** Dievam.
   If you (pl.) will keep the commandments, you will come closer to God.
5. **Rīkoiet*** saskaņā ar to, kas tev ir mācīts.
   Act according to what has been taught to you.
6. Viņš nākamreiz **mācījās*** par pestīšanas ieceri.
   He will teach about the plan of salvation next time.
7. Jūs esat **pārliecināties*** par to, kas ir patiesība.
   You (formal) are convinced of what is true.
8. Es **mācīsu*** no Svētā Gara.
   I will learn from the Holy Ghost.
9. Caur grēku nožēlošanu mēs varam **pilnveidojamies**.*
   Through repentance we can improve.
10. Es **centšos*** lasīt Svētos Rakstus katru dienu.
    I will strive to read the scriptures every day.

F. Error Correction

With your companion, take turns reading the following sentences aloud. Start by giving the English translation and then say the sentence as it is written in Latvian. Then have the other companion identify errors, if any, and restate the sentence correctly. Check your answers.

1. Es uztrautos sniegt runu baznīcā.
   I'm worried to give a talk at church.
2. Mēs piekdien sazvanīsies.
   We will get in touch (over the phone) on Friday.
3. Pēc šīs dzīves jūs dosies garu pasauli.
   After this life, you will go to the spirit world.
4. Ko tu vēlēties?
   What do you want?
5. Mums vajag gatavojamies Svēto Vakarēdienu sapulci.
   We need to prepare for the sacrament meeting.
6. Mēs skatīsim filmu par Atjaunošanu.
   We will watch the movie about the Restoration.
7. Katru dienu mēs pamostamies pusseptiņos.
   Every day we wake up at six thirty.
8. Lūdzu, apsēdies!
   Please, sit down!
9. Viņš mani neklausīties.
   He is not listening to me.
10. Viņi censtas atrast jaunu baznīcu, ko apmeklēt.
    They are trying to find a new church to attend.

G. Language Study Plan Activity

Read the third and fourth bullet points under "Actively Listen" (*Preach My Gospel*, 130). Throughout the day, pay attention to how native speakers use reflexive verbs, and try to identify why they used them the way they did. Make note of any instances you do not understand, and review them with your companion during your next companion language study.

H. Conjugation Practice

Pick five reflexive verbs you would like to learn how to use. Write out the conjugations of each in past, present, and future on a separate piece of paper. Throughout the day try to incorporate these words as much as possible in your conversations with your companion and with others you meet.

I. Speed Conjugation

Practice quickly conjugating verbs with your companion. First, choose a reflexive verb. Then one companion will use the verb with a pronoun in English and the other will quickly translate into Latvian. Pick a new verb and switch roles. The following is an example of this activity with the verb *mācīties.*

First Companion - English	**Second Companion -** Latvian
We learn	Mēs mācāmies
You will learn	Jūs mācīsieties or Tu mācīsies
He learned	Viņš mācījās
She is learning	Viņa mācās
I learned	Es mācījos
I will learn	Es mācīšos
They will learn	Viņi mācīsies

J. Making Verbs Reflexive

Rewrite the sentences below to use a reflexive verb by taking the direct object and making that the **subject** of the sentence you are writing. Check your answers.

Example Mēs pabeidzām kristīšanās interviju. *We finished the baptismal interview.* **Kristīšanās intervija** beidzās. *The baptismal interview ended.*

1. Es **uzlaboju** savas valodas prasmes.
   *I **improved** my language skills.*
2. Vācijā tiek **celts** jauns templis.
   *They **are building** a new temple in Germany.*
3. Elderi **izmainīja** savus plānus.
   *The elders **changed** their plans*
4. Prezidents **turpināja** mācīt stundiņu.
   *President **continued** to teach the lesson.*
5. Viņš **savāks** elderus kopā uz sapulci.
   *He **will gather** the elders together for a meeting.*
6. Juris **paslēpa** savu kaķi.
   *Juris **hid** his cat.*

K. *Preach My Gospel* Activity

The following excerpt comes from the section "Ticība Jēzum Kristum" in the third lesson of *Preach My Gospel*. Identify each verb as either normal or reflexive. Look up any verbs you do not know the meaning of and add them to your vocabulary list. Pay careful attention to when and how reflexive verbs are used and conjugated. Check your answers.

> "Pirmais evaņģēlija princips ir ticība Tam Kungam Jēzum Kristum. Ticība Kristum ietver nešaubīgu pārliecību, ka Viņš ir vienpiedzimušais Dieva Dēls un pasaules Glābējs un Pestītājs. Mēs atzīstam, ka varam atgriezties un dzīvot ar mūsu Debesu Tēvu, vienīgi paļaujoties uz Viņa Dēla labvēlību un žēlastību. Ja mēs ticam Kristum, mēs pieņemam un pielietojam Viņa veikto Grēku Izpirkšanu un Viņa mācības. Mēs uzticamies Viņam un tam, ko Viņš saka. Mēs zinām, ka Viņš spēj turēt Savus solījumus. Debesu Tēvs svētī tos, kuri ticot paklausa Viņa Dēlam.
>
> Ticība Kristum vedina rīkoties. Tā vedina uz patiesu un pastāvīgu grēku nožēlošanu. Ticība liek mums mācīties par mūsu Glābēju un no visas sirds censties kļūt līdzīgākiem Viņam. Mēs vēlamies uzzināt Viņa baušļus un paklausīt tiem. Kaut arī mēs tik un tā turpinām pieļaut kļūdas, mēs izrādām savu mīlestību pret Viņu, cenšoties pildīt Viņa baušļus un vairoties
> no grēka."

Review: Describing Objects and People

This review will help you see how well you have learned the material in the previous section. It will also help you evaluate your ability to apply several different grammar principles you have learned in performing the following function:

Asking About and Describing Objects, People, and Their Characteristics

- Adjectives
- Comparatives and Superlatives
- *Kas, Kurš, Kāds*
- Reflexive Verbs

Activities

A. Error Correction

On a separate sheet of paper, rewrite the paragraph below, correcting the 13 errors in it. Check your answers.

Ģimenes attiecības var kļūt par vislielāku laimes avotu šeit, uz zemes. Sātans uzbrūk ģimenēm no visdažādāk pozīcijām, un pārāku daudz ģimeņu šis pūliņu rezultātā izirst. Vēstījums par atjaunoto Jēzus Kristus evaņģēliju dāvā ģimenēm iespēju būt vienotas gan tagad, gan mūžībā. Dzīvojot pēc evaņģēlija principiem, ģimenes locekļi var baudīties mierpilns un priekpilns dzīvi, apzināt savo identitāti un rast piederības izjūtu. Centi atrast un mācīt ģimenes — tēvu, māti un bērnus —, kurš var atbalstīt cits citu, dzīvojot pēc evaņģēlija, lai beigu beigās tiktu saistīti ar atjaunotās priesterības pilnvarām, kļūstot par mūžīgi ģimeni.

On earth, family associations can be the source of some of our greatest joy. Satan is attacking the family on many fronts, and too many families are being destroyed by his efforts. The message of the restored gospel of Jesus Christ makes it possible for families to be united now and in eternity. By living the principles of the gospel, families can experience peace, joy, and a sense of belonging and identity in this life. Strive to find and teach families—a father, mother, and children—who can support one another in living the gospel and eventually be sealed as a family unit by restored priesthood authority.

B. Error Correction

Each of the following sentences contains one or more errors. Write down the sentence correctly and say it to your companion. Check your answers. The answers section will refer you to the principle used in each sentence.

1. Es gribu ar tevi dalīties tajās lietās, kas esmu mācījusies.
   I want to share with you the things I have learned.
2. Vissvarīgāks lieta, ko Kristus darīja, bija tā, ka Viņš īstenoja Grēku Izpirkšanu.
   The most important thing Christ did was complete the Atonement.
3. Renārs un Ilze gatavoja dosies uz templi.
   Reinars and Ilze prepared to go to the temple.
4. Ticība Kristum ietver nešaubīgi pārliecību, ka Viņš ir Glābējs.
   Faith in Christ includes a firm testimony that He is the Savior.
5. Džozefs redzēja gaismu, kas bija spožāk par sauli.
   Joseph saw a light which was brighter than the sun.
6. Liels atkrišanas laikā priesterība pilnvaras nebija uz zemes.
   During the Great Apostasy, priesthood authority wasn't on the earth.
7. Kristoties mēs slēdzam svēto derību ar Dievu.
   By being baptized we make a holy covenant with God.
8. Desmitā tiesa ir bauslis, ko stiprina ticību.
   Tithing is a commandment which builds faith.
9. Mums vajag no viss sirds censties mācīt un pilnveido ties.
   With all our hearts we need to strive to learn and progress.
10. Tie, kuri nenožēlo grēkus, saņems vietu zemā valstībā.
    Those who don't repent will receive the lowest kingdom.
11. Kā misionāri, mēs dālamies evaņģēlijā, to es mīlu.
    As missionaries, we share the gospel, which I love.
12. Mums ir jāsagatavoies saņemt Svētā Gara apliecinājumu.
    We need to prepare to receive a confirmation of the Holy Ghost.
13. Nošķir svēto sabata dienu no pasaulīgēm aktivitātēm!
    Separate the holy Sabbath day from worldly activities.
14. Mozum bija īsts zināšanas, ka Dievam ir ķermenis.
    Moses had a real knowledge that God has a body.
15. Mēs sekojam praviešiem, kāds vada baznīcu.
    We follow the prophets who lead the Church.
16. Tu vari piedalies glābšanas priekšrakstu veikšanā.
    You can participate in ordinances of salvation.
17. Dieva priesterība ir dāvana, ka es esmu saņēmis.
    The priesthood of God is a gift I have received.
18. Apspriesties ar pārinieku par cilvēkiem, kurus jūs mācāt!
    Consult with your companion about the people you teach.
19. Dievs nevar raudzīties uz grēku pat ar vismazāki atlaidi.
    God can't look at sin with the least degree of allowance.
20. Lūdzot Dievu, izpaud viņam savas dziļās jūtas!
    While praying to God, express your deepest thoughts to Him.

C. Translation

On a separate piece of paper, translate the words in parentheses into Latvian. Check your answers.

1. *(That, which)* Džozefs tulkoja, ir Mormona Grāmata.
2. Katru rītu misionāriem vajadzētu *(kneel)* un dedzīgi lūgt.
3. Dievs cilvēkiem deva priesterību, *(which)* es esmu saņēmis.
4. Tev vajadzīga ticība, *(which)* ir pirmais evaņģēlija princips.
5. Ģimenēs cilvēki piedzīvo dzīves *(greatest)* priekus un bēdas.
6. Lūdz un *(sink in)* pārdomās par Svētajiem Rakstiem!
7. Iegaumē *(most important)* Svēto Rakstu pantus latviešu valodā!
8. Baznīcas locekļi kalpo *(those who)* vajadzīga palīdzība.
9. Rivo ar *(his small)* ģimenīti nāk katru svētdienu uz baznīcu.
10. Kā *(most useful)* izmantot ģimenes vēsturi, lai mācītu evaņģēliju?
11. *(It's best)* izrādīt mīlestību pret savu tuvāko.
12. Kā es varu palīdzēt citiem *(accept)* saistības?
13. Kādu iespaidu tu atstāsi uz *(future)* paaudzēm?
14. *(My)* pāriniece ir *(happy)* un *(kind).*
15. Grēku Izpirkšana ir *(necessary)* mūsu glābšanai.
16. *(Practice)* izmantot Mormona Grāmatu ar pārinieku.
17. Debesu Tēvs ļoti *(is proud)* ar Savu Dēlu.
18. Kā misionāri mēs dalāmies *(that, which)* es mīlu.
19. Viņai ir *(six)* mazbērni, viņa ir ļoti *(rich)*.
20. Toms ir *(content)* ar savu dzīvi.

D. Companion Activity

Prepare together or look over the progress record that you will use to report on the progress of your investigators and new members in your next missionary coordination or ward council meeting. Discuss the following question together: *"Do ward leaders really understand who these individuals are and the progress they are making in their lives?"* Write out several sentences of description about each investigator or new member and their progress, sentences that can help ward leaders see these people as individuals. Include comparisons that show progress, such as *"The Kalnins family is more excited to read the scriptures together than they were before."* Give each other feedback on your grammar. Attach your descriptions to the progress record, and practice saying them so that you can use them to describe the people you are working with in the upcoming meeting.

E. Scripture Activity

Read 1 Nephi 8:10–12 and Alma 32:42, two passages that describe the fruit of the tree of life. Write down each description of the fruit, as well as comparatives and superlatives. Then read Alma 36:20–21. How do the feelings that Alma describes in these verses parallel the descriptions of the fruit of the tree of life? (You may also want to read 3 Nephi 19:25 and note the similar comparisons in that verse.) Finally, read 1 Nephi 11:22–23 where Nephi says what the tree of life represents. What two comparative statements does Nephi make about God's love, and what do they mean? Prepare a description of the fruit of the tree of life, what it represents, and how we can obtain it that you would be able to share with one of your current investigators. Use the language of the scriptures as appropriate. Practice sharing with your companion and get his or her feedback, especially on your use of the principles in this review.

F. Writing Activity

Write a thank you letter to your branch president. Pay special attention to using adjectives and *Kas, Kurš,* and *Kāds* correctly in your letter. Have your companion or another missionary read your letter and suggest changes that could be made. Give your letter to the branch president.

G. Reading Activity

Read the following passage from President Dieter F. Uchtdorf. Identify each of the adjectives and which number, case, and gender is used for each adjective.

> Jebkuros apstākļos mūsu pateicības sajūtas tiek stiprinātas ar daudzām svētām patiesībām, kuras mēs zinām: ka mūsu Debesu Tēvs ir devis Saviem bērniem dižo laimes ieceri; ka caur Viņa Dēla, Jēzus Kristus, Izpirkšanu mēs varam dzīvot mūžīgi ar saviem mīļotajiem; ka beigās mums būs brīnišķīgs, pilnīgs un nemirstīgs ķermenis, kas nebūs nomākts ar slimībām vai nespēju un ka mūsu bēdu un zaudējumu asaras tiks aizstātas ar laimes pārpilnību un prieku, „pilnu, saspaidītu, sakratītu un pārpārim ejošu."
>
> *In any circumstance, our sense of gratitude is nourished by the many and sacred truths we do know: that our Father has given His children the great plan of happiness; that through the Atonement of His Son, Jesus Christ, we can live forever with our loved ones; that in the end, we will have glorious, perfect, and immortal bodies, unburdened by sickness or disability; and that our tears of sadness and loss will be replaced with an abundance of happiness and joy—"good measure, pressed down, and shaken together, and running over."*

H. District Activity

Each week at district meeting, assign a different companionship or missionary to share an experience from the week. Have them tell the story in Latvian and be as descriptive as possible, using many adjectives and comparisons. Provide feedback on how to improve the use of the principles contained in this review.

I. 20 Questions

With your companion, take turns thinking of a gospel-related person, place, or thing. Ask up to 20 yes or no questions about the mystery object to try to figure out what it is. Ask specific questions that use comparisons, such as "*Is this object smaller than my scripture case?*" The companion that thought of the object must answer the questions with complete sentences: *"No, it is larger than your scripture case."* Then switch roles.

Asking About and Expressing Desire, Need, Preference, Intention, or Purpose

Purpose

This function will help you talk about what we need or want to do; for example, what we need to repent of or what God wants for us. The grammar principles in this section are targeted at helping you perform this function. Below are examples of the types of things you will be able to express with the grammar in this function.

- The Family: A Proclamation to the World. ("Dative Case")
- We need to pray with "real intent." ("Dative Construction")
- We must have faith that God has a plan for us. ("Debitive Mood")
- Pray for help to stop smoking. ("Imperative Mood")

Application

Below is a list of doctrinal points that these grammar principles will help you teach, as well as some common missionary tasks that they will help you perform. This list is not comprehensive; it is meant to help you think about how you can use the grammar in real situations. In parentheses next to each point are some sample questions that you can ask yourself to help you think about how to apply the grammar.

Doctrines from the Lessons

- God Is Our Loving Father in Heaven (What does God want for us?)
- Heavenly Father Reveals His Gospel in Every Dispensation (Why did God call prophets? Why do we need them?)
- The Book of Mormon: Another Testament of Jesus Christ (What do we have to do to gain a testimony of the Book of Mormon? For what purpose was it written?)
- Repentance (What do we need to do in order to repent? What are the steps of repentance?)
- The Atonement (What would happen if Christ didn't perform the Atonement? Why do we need the Atonement in our lives?)
- Missionary Work (Why should we desire to do missionary work as members? Why do missionaries need the help of the members?)
- Obedience (What does God require of us? How would your life be different if you didn't live the gospel?)

Tasks from the *Missionary Vocabulary and Phrases* Book

- Extend Commitment Invitations (Why does God give us commandments? How can I show encouragement and support?)
- Give Directions (How do I tell someone how to get somewhere?)
- Help People Resolve Their Concerns (What do they need? How can the gospel of Jesus Christ help them?)
- Talk with Everyone (What must we do to invite everyone to learn about Christ?)

Dative Case

Examples

The missionaries gave **(to) Velga** a Book of Mormon.	Misionāri iedeva **Velgai** Mormona Grāmatu.
God allows **us** to learn from **our mistakes**.	Dievs **mums** ļauj mācīties no **savām kļūdām.**
I like how the sun shines.	**Man** patīk, kā spīd saule.
In order to receive eternal life, **we must** endure until **the end**.	Lai saņemtu mūžīgo dzīvi, **mums** ir jāpastāv līdz **galam.**

Explanation

The Latvian dative case (*kam?*) is used most commonly to express the indirect object ("to whom/for whom") as seen in the following chart:

Examples	Explanation
Mēs varam lūgt **Dievam**, lai Viņš **mums** palīdz. *We can ask **God** to help **us**.*	*Dievam* is an indirect object (*ask [to] whom?)* and so is *mums* (*whom God helps*).
Ko tas **tev** dod, ka **tev** ir priesterība? *What good does it do **you** that **you** have the priesthood?*	The first *tev* is an indirect object (*give to whom?*); the second is part of dative construction (see chapter 16).
Mans pārinieks ir vienmēr **man** blakus, kad **man** ir vajadzīga palīdzība. *My companion is always with **me** when **I** need help.*	*Blakus* is a dative preposition that is used as a postposition in this case because a pronoun is being affected. The second *man* is part of a dative construction.

Dative Case Endings

The following is an example of the word "God" used in dative case. "Blessings" is also in dative case because it is a plural prepositional object:

Example	Nom		Dat
	Dievs *God*	→	Dievam *to God*

Sentence	Nom	Verb	Dat	Prep	Dat
	Mēs *We*	pateicamies *thank*	**Dievam** ***(to) God***	par *for*	**svētībām.** ***blessings**.*

The following chart shows how each ending declines with the dative case endings highlighted:

Masculine	**I**		**II**		**III**	
	Sg	**Pl**	**Sg**	**Pl**	**Sg**	**Pl**
Nominative ***Kas***	-s	-i	-is	*-i	-us	-i
Accusative ***Ko***	-u	-us	-i	*-us	-u	-us
Genitive ***Kā***	-a	-u	*-a	*-u	-us	-u
Dative ***Kam***	-am	-iem	-im	*-iem	-um	-iem
Locative ***Kur***	-ā	-os	-ī	*-os	-ū	-os

Feminine	**I**		**II**		**III**	
	Sg	**Pl**	**Sg**	**Pl**	**Sg**	**Pl**
Nominative ***Kas***	-a	-as	-e	-es	-s	-is
Accusative ***Ko***	-u	-as	-i	-es	-i	-is
Genitive ***Kā***	-as	-u	-es	*-u	-s	*-u
Dative ***Kam***	-ai	-ām	-ei	-ēm	-ij	-īm
Locative ***Kur***	-ā	-ās	-ē	-ēs	-ī	-īs

* Indicates where softening takes place. See chapter 1, "Alphabet and Pronunciation," for softening patterns.

The following chart shows the endings for words in dative case and an example for each ending:

Masc	**I**		**II**		**III**	
	Sg	**Pl**	**Sg**	**Pl**	**Sg**	**Pl**
Dat	-am	-iem	-im	*-iem	-um	-iem
Example	tēvam	tēviem	brālim	brāļiem	tirgus	tirgiem

Fem	**I**		**II**		**III**	
	Sg	**Pl**	**Sg**	**Pl**	**Sg**	**Pl**
Dat	-ai	-ām	-ei	-ēm	-ij	-im
Example	māsai	māsām	mātei	mātēm	sirdij	sirdim

* Indicates where softening of the previous letter occurs.

Personal Pronouns

The chart below shows personal pronouns in nominative and how they decline into dative case:

Nominative				Dative			
Sg		**Pl**		**Sg**		**Pl**	
es *I*		mēs *we*		man *to me*		mums *to us*	
tu *you (informal)*		jūs *you (formal or plural)*	→	tev *to you*		jums *to you*	
viņš - viņa *he - she*		viņi - viņas *they (m-f)*		viņam - viņai *to him - to her*		viņiem - viņām *to them (m-f)*	
šis - šī *this (m-f)*	tas - tā *that (m-f)*	šie - šīs *these (m-f)*	tas - tā *those (m-f)*	šim - šai *to this (m-f)*	tam - tai *to that (m-f)*	šiem - šīm *to these (m-f)*	tiem - tām *to those (m-f)*

Indirect Object

Indirect objects are put into dative case. The indirect object in a sentence is a noun or pronoun that is the recipient of the action but is not the primary object. It answers the question "to whom/what" or "for whom/what" the action of a verb is done. In the following examples, the indirect object (the recipient) is bolded and the direct object (the primary object) is underlined:

Examples

Es **viņam** lasīju grāmatu.
*I read the book **to him**.*

Kristus **man** dod cerību.
*Christ gives hope **to me**.*

Viņš **jums** prasīs naudu.
*He will ask **you** for money.*

All verbs can be used with an indirect object, but the following verbs are almost always used with an indirect object:

palīdzēt	pateikties	atbildēt	atgādināt	jautāt
to help	*to thank*	*to answer*	*to remind*	*to ask*

Mācīt and *Lūgt*

The indirect object that the verbs *mācīt* and *lūgt* affect are put into dative if there is both a direct object and an indirect object in the sentence. However, if the sentence only has a direct object, it will be in accusative. The following examples demonstrate this principle:

Dative	Accusative
Vecāki māca **saviem bērniem** evaņģēliju. *Parents teach **their children** the gospel.*	Vecāki māca **savus bērnus.** *Parents teach **their children**.*
Es lūdzu **Dievam** palīdzību. *I ask/pray to **God** for help.*	Es lūdzu **Dievu**. *I pray to **God**.*

Additional Uses of Dative Case

In addition to expressing the indirect object, dative case is used:

- With dative constructions. See 16, "Dative Construction."
- With certain verbs, prepositions, adjectives, and questions.
- To express debitive mood. See 17, "Debitive Mood."
- With all prepositional objects that are plural.

The following chart shows an example for each of these uses:

Examples	Explanation
Mums vajag atcerēties paļauties uz Jēzu Kristu. ***We** need to remember to rely on Jesus Christ.*	*Mums* is in dative due to the dative construction with the word *vajadzēt*.
Jums ir jātur Tā Kunga baušļi visās lietās. ***You** (pl.) must keep the commandments of the Lord in all things.*	This sentence is an example of debitive mood. This is used to express necessity with the word *must*.
Kam tu tici? ***What** do you believe?*	*Ticēt* is a dative verb, meaning that the direct object is expressed in dative. Thus, *kam* is used.
Mēs ar pārinieku(ci) saņemam palīdzību no baznīcas **locekļiem**. *My companion and I receive lots of help from the Church **members**.*	*Locekļiem* is a plural prepositional object of *no*, so it is expressed in dative. Notice that *pārinieku(ci)* is in accusative because it is the object of *ar* and is singular.

Dative Verbs

Dative verbs force the direct object (who or what is being acted upon by the verb) into dative case. Some examples of dative verbs include:

kalpot *to serve*	gatavoties *to prepare*	derēt *to suit*	piekrist *to agree*	ticēt *to believe*	sekot *to follow*
uzticēties *to trust*	aplaudēt *to applaud*	piederēt *to belong to*	simpatizēt *to sympathize*	piezvanīt *to call*	pieskarties *to touch*

Examples

Es **ticu** Bībelei.
*I **believe** in the Bible.*

Zvaniet policijai!
***Call** the police!*

Mēs **kalpojam** citiem.
*We **serve** others.*

Zēni **aplaudē** savai komandai.
*The boys **clapped** for their team.*

Adjectives

Like verbs, there are specific adjectives that force dative case:

līdzīgs similar	derīgs valid/useful	kaitīgs harmful	pateicīgs thankful

Examples

Viņš ir līdzīgs **savam tēvam.**
*He is similar **to his father.***

Šis piens vairs nav derīgs **dzeršanai.**
*This milk is not good **for drinking** anymore.*

Alkohols un cigaretes ir kaitīgi mūsu **ķermeņiem.**
*Alcohol and cigarettes are harmful for our **bodies.***

Es esmu pateicīgs(a) **saviem vecākiem** par viņu atbalstu un mīlestību pret mani.
*I am thankful **to my parents** for their support and love for me.*

Dative Prepositions

There are several dative prepositions. Dative prepositions can sometimes be used (often with a pronoun) as postpositions, meaning that they follow the pronoun they affect. The exception to this rule is līdz. It cannot be used as a postposition. The following chart shows prepositions that force dative case:

līdz	pāri	garām	pretī	līdzi	cauri	blakus
until, by	*over, across*	*along, past*	*across, opposite*	*with*	*through*	*next to*

Examples

Lai nokļūtu **līdz baznīcai**, tev ir jāiet **tiltam pāri**.
*To get **to the church**, you need to cross **over the bridge.***

Kristus zina, ka mēs ejam **cauri grūtībām**, un vēlas mums palīdzēt.
*Christ knows that we are going **through difficult times** and wants to help us.*

Zanes brālis atnāca **viņai līdzi** uz stundiņu.
*Zane's brother came **with her** to the lesson.*

Mums pretī nāk viens no baznīcas locekļiem. Nedrīkst **viņam** paiet **garām,** viņu nepasveicinot!
*One of the Church members is **coming towards us**. We cannot **pass him** without saying "hi!"*

Remember, ALL **plural** prepositional objects (the noun being affected by the preposition) go into dative case. See chapter 24, "Prepositions."

Questions

Kam ("to whom") is used to ask a question in dative case. The answer will also be given in dative case.

Question	Answer
Kam tu tici? ***Whom** do you believe?*	Es ticu **Dievam**. *I believe in **God**.*
Kam mēs šodien palīdzēsim? ***Whom** will we help today?*	Mēs šodien palīdzēsim **Ilzei**. *We will help **Ilze** today.*
Kam tu aizdevi gramatikas grāmatu? ***Whom** did you lend the grammar book to?*	Es to aizdevu **Māsai Biedriņai**. *I lent it **to Sister Biedrina**.*

See chapter 8, "Asking Questions."

Activities

A. Dative Declension

On a separate sheet of paper, decline the following nouns into singular and plural versions of the dative case. Check your answers.

1. māsa	5. roka	9. Dievs	13. zivs (f.)	17. zeme
2. derība	6. grāmata	10. brālis	14. zieds	18. evaņģēlijs
3. jaka	7. dēls	11. sanāksme	15. putns	19. apustulis
4. zobens	8. gars	12. sirds	16. ledus	20. ģimene

B. Fill In the Blank

Insert the appropriate dative personal pronouns. Check your answers.

1. Māsas ____ aiznesa cepumus.
   *The sisters brought cookies **to them (f.)**.*
2. Dievs ____ dod daudz svētību.
   *God gives **us** many blessings.*
3. Vai misijas prezidents ____ daudz aizrāda?
   *Does the mission president correct **you** (pl.) a lot?*
4. ____ ir līdzi "Sludini Manu Evaņģēliju."
   I have Preach My Gospel ***with me**.*
5. ____ patika baznīca. Viņa teica, ka nāks vēl.
   ***She** liked the Church. She said she will come again!*
6. Cilvēkiem uz lielas parasti nepatīk ____ atstāt savus telefona numurus.
   *People on the street usually don't like to leave their phone numbers **(with us)**.*
7. Vai tavs pārinieks ____ izsaka daudz komplimentu?
   *Does your companion compliment **you** a lot?*
8. Kad mēs lūdzam Dievu, mēs ____ pasakāmies par svētībām.
   *When we pray to God, we thank **Him** for the blessings.*
9. Roberts atnāca uz baznīcu, un ____ līdzi atnāca viņa dēls.
   *Roberts came to church, and his son came **with him**.*
10. Māras bērni ir slimi. Aiziesim pie ____, lai iedotu ____ svētību!
    *Mara's children are sick. Let's visit (go to) **them** to give **them** a blessing.*

C. Dative Verbs

Fill in the blank accompanying the dative verb with the appropriate noun or pronoun. Check your answers.

1. Mātes mācīja ____ _____ (savi dēli), ka viņiem ir jāpaļaujas uz To Kungu.
   *Mothers taught **their sons** that they need to rely on the Lord.*
2. Mēs palīdzējām ____ ____ nopļaut zāli.
   *We helped the **Kalnins family** to mow the grass.*
3. Mēs ticam ____, mūžīgajam _____, un viņa ____ Jēzum _____, un Svētajam _____.
   *We believe in **God**, the Eternal **Father**, and in His **Son**, Jesus **Christ**, and in the Holy **Ghost**.*
4. Jānis ____ stāstīja, ka Jūs esat ārsts.
   *Janis told **us** that you (formal) are a doctor.*
5. Dievs _____ ir atbildējis uz visām viņas lūgšanām.
   *God has answered **(to her)** all of her prayers.*
6. ___ tikko piezvanīja Emīls un teica, ka viņš grib mācīties par evaņģēliju!
   *Emils just called **me** and said he wants to learn about the gospel!*
7. Vai tu sekosi Jēzus Kristus _____ un kristīsies?
   *Will you follow **the example** of Jesus Christ by being baptized?*
8. Es vēlos kalpot ___ _____ ar visu savu sirdi, spēku, prātu un izturību.
   *I want to serve **the Lord** with all my heart, might, mind, and strength.(See D&C 4:2.)*
9. Pajautā ____, vai viņš ir lasījis Mormona Grāmatu!
   *Ask **him** if he has read the Book of Mormon.*
10. Vai tu ____ uzticies?
    *Do you trust **me**?*

D. Direct vs. Indirect Object

Identify the direct and indirect objects in the following sentences. Check your answers.

1. Mēs nedzeram kafiju.
   We don't drink coffee.
2. Misijas prezidents mums deva padomu būt paklausīgiem.
   The mission president gave us counsel to be obedient.
3. Ilze saņēma vēstuli no savas ģimenes.
   Ilze received a letter from her family.
4. Mēs ar pārinieci palīdzējām Ilonas tantei sagrābt lapas.
   My companion and I helped Ilona's aunt to rake leaves.
5. Eņģelis parādījās Džozefam un deva viņam norādījumus, kā vadīt baznīcu.
   An angel appeared to Joseph and gave instructions on how to lead the Church.
6. Man ļoti garšo latviešu ēdieni.
   I really like Latvian food.
7. Mana ģimene tev atsūtīja dāvanu.
   My family sent you a present.
8. Vai tu spēlē klavieres?
   Do you play the piano?
9. Šī kleita tev ļoti piestāv.
   This dress really suits you!
10. Ziemā ir grūti brist cauri sniegam.
    In winter it is hard to trudge through the snow.

E. Preposition Practice

On a separate piece of paper, fill in the blanks in the following sentences with the correct preposition. In addition, decline the word(s) in parentheses appropriately. Check your answers.

1. Apgabala sapulcē mēs runājām ___ (tas), kā palīdzēt (baznīcas locekļi).
   *In district meeting we talked **about** how to help Church members.*
2. Lehija ģimene ceļoja ____ (tuksnesis) __ (apsolītā zeme).
   *Lehi's family traveled **across** the desert **to** the promised land.*
3. Desertā es vēlētos saldējumu __ (augļi).
   *For dessert, I would like ice cream **with** fruit.*
4. Vai tu esi __ (mēs) dusmīgs?
   *Are you angry **at** us?*
5. Haralds dzīvo ____ (baznīca), ____ (iela) no ķīmiskās tīrītavas.
   *Haralds lives **next to** the church, **across** the street from the dry cleaners.*
6. Liepiņu ģimene ir izgājusi ____ (bēdas un grūtības), bet tagad bauda svētības.
   *The Liepini family has gone **through** sorrows and hardships but now are enjoying blessings.*
7. Mēs sestdien brauksim uz Liepāju. Brauc (mēs) ____!
   *We are going to Liepaja on Saturday. Come **with** us!*
8. Šis vējš pūš __ (ziemeļi) __ (dienvidi).
   *This wind is blowing **from** north **to** south.*
9. (Mēs) ____ tikko pabrauca Latvijas Prezidents!
   The Latvian president just passed us!
10. Jānis Bērziņš uzcēla māju, kurā viņš dzīvo, pats __ (savas rokas).
    *Janis Berzins built the house he lives in **with** his own hands.*

F. Translation

Translate the following sentences into Latvian. Check your answers.

1. Will you help me?
2. I started preparing for my mission when I was eight years old.
3. Do you (formal) believe in ghosts?
4. God gives power to priesthood holders to act in His name.
5. God gives us commandments so we can be happy.
6. God allows us to choose.
7. He told me that he is sick.
8. Let's write a card to Linda for her birthday!
9. Have you (pl.) taught him all the lessons?
10. I have a gift for you.

G. Common Errors

The following sentences have bolded and starred errors. Correct and explain the errors to your companion. Check your answers.

1. **Kāds*** ir jautājumi?
   Who has questions?
2. Es **tevi*** palīdzēšu ar ģimenes vēsturi.
   I will help you with family history.
3. Vai **Jūs*** šķiet, ka varēsiet apmeklēt pasākumu?
   Do you think you will be able to come to the activity?
4. Kā **misionārs*** tev ir pienākums mācīt ar Svētā Gara spēku.
   As a missionary, you have the duty to teach with the power of the Holy Ghost.
5. Sadarbojies cieši ar baznīcas **locekļi***!
   Work closely with Church members.
6. **Mārtiņš*** ļoti garšo pankūkas.
   Martins really likes pancakes.
7. No **Svētā Raksta*** viņi(as) mācījās par ticību.
   From the scriptures they learned about faith.
8. Mums jābūt **pacietīgi***.
   We must be patient.
9. Es **viņu*** dodu savu grāmatu.
   I give her my book.
10. Vai varam tikties ap **vieni***?
    Can we meet at about one?

H. Error Correction

With your companion, take turns reading the following sentences aloud. Start by giving the English translation and then say the sentence as it is written in Latvian. Then have the other companion identify errors, if any, and restate the sentence correctly. Check your answers.

1. Viņš sāp galva.
   His head hurts. (He has a headache.)
2. Ko tu mācījies no tam?
   What did you learn from that?
3. Dievs visu atklāj saviem pravietiem.
   God reveals everything to His prophets.
4. Vai Jūs esat kalpojis misijai?
   Have you (formal) served a mission?
5. Tu vari lūgt palīdzībai Dievu.
   You can ask God for help.
6. Es tevi došu iespēju liecināt par tavas kristības.
   I will give you an opportunity to testify of your baptism.
7. Mēs sekojam Jēzus Kristus mācības.
   We follow the teachings of Jesus Christ.
8. Ko tu tici?
   What do you believe?
9. Man patīk papļāpāt ar draugus.
   I like to chat with friends.
10. Es bija jāskrien autobusu.
    I had to run to the bus.

I. Scripture Activity

Read the following verses from the scriptures in Latvian. Pay attention to how the dative case is used in these passages:

James 1:5	Alma 37:6–7	Ephesians 4:11–14	Mosiah 2:17	2 Timothy 3:15–17
1 Corinthians 15:40–42	1 Nephi 2:7	2 Thessalonians 2:1–3	Alma 18:37	JS—H 1:8

In addition, look up two or three scriptures that you will use to teach today. Make a list of the indirect objects and discuss your list with your companion. Practice using the scriptures to teach your companion about an applicable principle. Be sure to use the nouns in the dative case correctly and ask for feedback.

J. Companion Practice Activity

Practice declining these words (or add your own) as fast as you can with your companion. Companion 1 will state a noun and companion 2 will state that noun in dative case and then quickly state a new noun for Companion 1 to decline. Do this back and forth for several minutes, trying to incorporate different noun endings in your practice. Check the conjugations in answers.

1. Dievs	4. brālis	7. kuģis	10. paklausība	13. miers	16. zāles
2. sirds	5. zemene	8. ķiploks	11. rieksti	14. upe	17. mērķis
3. māsa	6. lapas	9. rudens	12. zars	15. tēja	18. pazemība

Companion 1:	“Dievs”
Companion 2:	“Dievam. sirds”
Companion 1:	“sirdij. māsa”
Companion 2:	“māsai. brālis” etc.

Dative Construction

Examples

God *has* a plan for us.	**Dievam** priekš mums *ir* plāns.
She *likes* the feelings that come from the Holy Ghost.	**Viņai** *patīk* sajūtas, kas nāk no Svētā Gara.
We *need* to receive forgiveness to return to God.	**Mums** *vajag* saņemt piedošanu, lai atgrieztos pie Dieva.
Oskars *lacks* hope.	**Oskaram** *trūkst* cerības.

Explanation

In Latvian, there are several constructions which put the subject of the sentence into the dative case. These dative constructions are used especially when expressing possession, preference, and need.

Possession

There is no verb for "to have" in Latvian, so in order to express ownership, *būt* ("to be") is used in a dative construction. For example, "I have a great family" in Latvian literally translates as "To me is a great family." The following is the basic formula and word order used in possessive dative constructions; the literal translation is given in parentheses:

Dative Subject	3rd Person *Būt*	Nominative
Man	ir	ticība.
I (to me)	*have (is)*	*faith.*

In order to change the tense, conjugate *būt* according to its past, present, or future third-person form.

Past Man **bija** grāmata.
*I **had** a book.*

Present Man **ir** grāmata.
*I **have** a book.*

Future Man **būs** grāmata.
*I **will have** a book.*

Examples

Draudzes prezidentam **bija** pietiekami daudz ticības, lai pieņemtu aicinājumu.
*The branch president **had** enough faith to accept the calling.*

Tev **nebūs** saprašanas bez Svētā Gara.
*You **will not have** understanding without the Holy Ghost.*

Gatim **bija** darbs, tādēļ viņš nevarēja apmeklēt draudzes pasākumu.
*Gatis **had** work; that's why he could not attend the branch activity.*

Piederēt is a verb that also expresses belonging and is constructed in a similar way.

Past Man **piederēja** kamera.
*The camera **belonged** to me.*

Present Man **pieder** kamera.
*The camera **belongs** to me.*

Future Man **piederēs** kamera.
*The camera will **belong** to me.*

Example

Man **piederēs** suns.
*The dog **will belong** to me.*

Viņam **pieder** mašīna.
*The car **belongs** to him.*

Lietussargs **piederēja** Andrim.
*The umbrella **belonged** to Andris.*

Negation

There are two rules to remember when showing lack of possession:

(1) Negated *būt* in past tense conjugates as ***nebija***, in present tense as ***nav***, and in future tense as ***nebūs***.
(2) Lack of possession ("have not") forces the **genitive** case.

Past Man **nebija** bail(ļ)u).*
*I **didn't have** fear.*

Present Man **nav** bail(ļ)u).*
*I **don't have** fear.*

Future Man **nebūs** bail(ļ)u).*
*I **won't have** fear.*

* In this example, the *u* is usually dropped.

Examples

Mums **nav** zināšanu par visu.
*We **do not have** knowledge about everything.*

Agitai **nav** laika šodien ar mums tikties.
*Agita **does not have** time to meet with us today.*

Viņam **nebija** vēlmes lasīt Mormona Grāmatu.
*He **had no** desire to read the Book of Mormon.*

Trūkst is a verb that expresses lack of possession, and it uses dative construction and forces the object into genitive.

Dative Subject	3rd Person *Trūkst*	Genitive
Man *I (to me)*	trūkst *don't have (is lacking)*	naudas. *money.*

Past Man **trūka** vadības.
*I **lacked** direction.*

Present Man **trūkst** vadības.
*I **lack** direction.*

Future Man **trūks** vadības.
*I **will lack** direction.*

Examples

Jums **trūka** pacietības.
*You (formal) **lacked** patience.*

Viņiem **pietrūkst** mājas.
*They **miss** home.*

Preference

There is no verb meaning "to like" in Latvian, so the verb *patikt* ("to be pleasing") is used in dative constructions. The translation of "I like hymns" would literally be "To me is pleasing hymns" or "Hymns are pleasing to me." *Garšot* means "to like the taste of."

Dative Subject	3rd Person *Patīk*	Nominative
Man *I (to me)*	patīk *like (is pleasing)*	mūzika. *music.*

Dative Subject	3rd Person *Patīk*	Infinitive Verb
Man *I (to me)*	patīk *like (is pleasing)*	dziedāt. *to sing.*

Past

Man **patika** koncerts.
*I **liked** the concert.*

Man **patika** dziedāt.
*I **liked** to sing.*

Man **garšoja** medus.
*I **liked** (the taste of) honey.*

Present

Man **patīk** koncerts.
*I **like** the concert.*

Man **patīk** dziedāt.
*I **like** to sing.*

Man **garšo** medus.
*I **like** (the taste of) honey.*

Future

Man **patiks** koncerts.
*I **will like** the concert.*

Man **patiks** dziedāt.
*I **will like** to sing.*

Man **garšos** medus.
*I **will like** (the taste of) honey.*

Examples

Es domāju, ka, ja Inga lasīs Mormona Grāmatu, viņai tā **patiks**.
*I think that if Inga will read the Book of Mormon, she **will like** it.*

Jānim **garšos** šī maize.
*Jānis **will like** this bread.*

Man **nepatika** zivju smaka.
*I **didn't like** the stench of the fish.*

Note: If a person is being liked (nominative object), then *patikt* is conjugated according to the person being liked.

Examples

Tu man **patīc.**
***I like** you. (You are pleasing to me.)*

Vai **mēs** jums **patīkam**?
*Do you **like us**? (You are pleasing to me.)*

Negation

Like most verbs, verbs of preference can be negated by adding the prefix *ne-* to the beginning of the verb.

Examples

Viņam **nepatiks** būt apjukušam.
*He **will not like** to be confused.*

Man **negaršo** tomāti.
*I **don't like** tomatoes.*

Man **nepatika** zivju smaka.
*I **didn't like** the stench of the fish.*

Make sure that the emphasis of the word remains on the first syllable. So the pronunciation will change from *PAtīk* to *NEpatīk*.

Need

The verb *vajadzēt* is used to express necessity and means "to be needful." The construction is similar to the previous formulas, except the object is put into accusative.

Dative Subject	3rd Person *Patīk*	Accusative
Man *I (to me)*	vajag *need (is needful)*	ticību. *faith.*

The tense of *vajadzēt* determines whether the sentence is in past, present, or future.

Past Man **vajadzēja** ēdienu.
*I **needed** food.*

Present Man **vajag** ēdienu.
*I **need** food.*

Future Man **vajadzēs** ēdienu.
*I **will need** food.*

Examples

Vai **jums** vajag palīdzību?
*Do **you** (pl.) need help?*

Ingum vajag atmest smēķēšanu, lai viņš varētu kristīties.
***Ingus** needs to quit smoking in order to be baptized.*

Dzīve ir grūta, tāpēc **mums** vajag Svēto Garu.
*Life is hard; that is why **we** need the Holy Ghost.*

Note: Need can also be expressed using debitive mood. See chapter 17, "Debitive Mood."

Negation

Negation is expressed by adding the prefix *ne-* to the conjugated form of *vajadzēt*.

Examples

Diānai **nevajadzēja** mēteli, jo ārā bija silta diena.
*Diana **did not need** a coat because it was a warm day outside.*

Jums **nevajag** uztraukties par mani.
*You **do not need** to worry about me.*

Man **nevajadzēs** braukt uz Jelgavu.
*I **will not need** to travel to Jelgava.*

Other Dative Constructions

Changing the construction of a sentence alters the meaning. Usually dative construction expresses an internal feeling, while the nominative construction is more of an external view. To say "I am doing well," use *Man iet labi,* not *Es esmu labi*.

Nominative Construction	Dative Construction
Es eju labi. *I walk well.*	Man iet labi. *I am doing well.*
Santa salst. *Santa is freezing—literally, as in turning to ice.*	Santai salst. *Santa is cold.*
Viņš ir ļoti vēss. *He is very cold (in temperament).*	Viņam ir ļoti vēsi. *He is really chilly.*

There are a number of other dative constructions used in Latvian. Here are a few examples:

Construction	Infinitive Verb
Man ir labi. *I feel well.*	būt
Man ir bēdīgi. *I feel sad.*	būt
Man ir slikti. *I feel sick. / I am doing badly.*	būt
Man ir auksti. *I feel cold.*	būt
Man ir karsti. *I feel hot.*	būt
Man ir žēl. *I feel sorry.*	būt
Man ir (20) gadu. *I am (20) years old.*	būt
Man vajag (kaut ko). *I need (something).*	vajadzēt
Man patīk (kaut kas). *I like (something).*	patikt
Man garšo (kaut kas). *I like (the taste of something).*	garšot
Man trūkst (kaut kā). *I am lacking (something).*	trūkt

Construction	Infinitive Verb
Man liekas, ka . . . *It seems to me that . . .*	likties
Man škiet, ka . . . *It seems to me that . . .*	šķist
Man slāpst. *I am thirsty.*	slāpst
Man gribas . . . *I want . . .*	gribēties
Man ir atļauts . . . *I am allowed . . .*	atļaut
Man pietrūkst (kaut kā). *I miss (something).*	pietrūkt
Man salst. *I am freezing.*	salt
Man pietiek. *(It is) enough for me.*	pietikt
Man sāp (galva). *My (head) hurts.*	sāpēt
Man skauž. *I am jealous.*	skaust
Man iet labi. *I am (doing) well. (It's going well.)*	iet

Activities

A. Declension

On a separate piece of paper, write the correct declension of the word in parentheses in order to form a dative construction. Then translate the sentence into English. Check your answers.

1. (Es) šodien bija auksti, jo es aizmirsu paņemt jaku.
2. (Viņš) patīk spēlēt futbolu kopā ar draugiem.
3. (Mēs) ir iespēja nožēlot savus grēkus caur Jēzus Kristus Izpirkšanu.
4. Vai es (tu) vēl patīku, pat ja es aizmirsu tavu vārdu?
5. (Inese) trūkst divu eiro.
6. Cik (jūs) ir gadu?
7. (Ivars) ļoti garšoja vistas gaļa ar kartupeļiem.
8. (Es) ir liecība par Mormona Grāmatu.
9. (Līga) nav Garīgo Dziesmu grāmatas.
10. (Mēs) pirmdien vajadzēs atjaunot e-talonus.

B. Translation

Translate these sentences with a dative construction. Check your answers.

1. I like pizza.
2. Does God have a plan for us?
3. We do not have time.
4. My mom has five children.
5. His brother liked our lesson.
6. You will have lots of joy if you live the gospel.
7. They like learning about Jesus Christ.
8. We need to pray every day.
9. She has a strong testimony of the Word of Wisdom.
10. Do you have a favorite scripture?

C. Preference

Look at page 68 of your Latvian board display book. Practicing asking questions of preference by writing five questions on a separate piece of paper. Then write both the positive and negative response to those questions. Show your work to your companion or teacher and have them help you correct it.

Examples

Vai Jums patīk sports?
Do you like sports?

Jā, man patīk sports.
Yes, I like sports.

Nē, man nepatīk sports.
No, I don't like sports.

D. Possession

When expressing possession in Latvian, both genitive case and dative construction can be used. Practice differentiating between the two by translating the following sentences. Check your answers.

1. That is my book. I have that book.
2. I had a big problem to solve. That is your problem.
3. My answers aren't always right. I don't have all the answers.
4. Her two children are very nice. She will have two children soon.
5. That is not your dog. You do not have a dog.
6. I have a letter from Dad. Dad's letter is on the table.
7. He has a wonderful mom. His mom is wonderful.
8. I will not have time. My time is precious.

E. Need

Translate the following sentences from English to Latvian or from Latvian to English. Check your answers.

1. Vai jums vajag mašīnu?
2. Viņai nevajag zīmuli, jo viņai ir pildspalva.
3. We will need more copies of the Book of Mormon.
4. Vai mums vajag nopirkt pārtiku?
5. No, thank you, I do not need your (formal) umbrella.
6. Jēzum vajadzēja pieredzēt visas grūtības, lai Viņš varētu mums palīdzēt.
7. You need strength that comes through the Atonement.
8. My companion and I need to see and hear each other.
9. Tev nevajadzēja gaismu, lai aizietu uz mājām.
10. Man vienmēr vajadzēs iespēju saņemt grēku piedošanu.
11. Jāņa dēlam vajag uzzināt par pestīšanas ieceri.
12. Peter needed to be humble so he could receive an answer to his prayer.

F. Common Errors

The following sentences have bolded and starred errors. Correct and explain the errors to your companion. Check your answers.

1. **Es esmu*** divdesmit gadi.
   I am 20 years old.
2. Viņiem nav Mormona **Grāmata.***
   They don't have a Book of Mormon.
3. Vai **tu*** patīk lasīt?
   Do you like to read?
4. Mums **vajadzējām*** viņu aicināt kristīties.
   We needed to invite him to be baptized.
5. Kā **jūs esat***?
   How are you?
6. **Viņi*** nepatīk ziemā iet uz baznīcu.
   They do not like to attend church in the winter.
7. **Es esmu*** karsti.
   I am hot.
8. Annai vajadzēja **ēdiens.***
   Anna needed food.
9. Man **likties***, ka mums drīz jāiet.
   I think that soon it will be time (for us) to go.
10. Vai **Jūs patīkat*** dziedāt garīgās dziesmas?
    Do you (formal) like to sing hymns?

G. Error Correction

With your companion, take turns reading the following sentences aloud. Start by giving the English translation and then say the sentence as it is written in Latvian. Then have the other companion identify errors, if any, and restate the sentence correctly. Check your answers.

1. Man neir nekādu jautajumu.
   I do not have any questions.
2. Tev ir grāmatu.
   You have a book.
3. Vai kāds patika stundiņu?
   Did anyone like the lesson?
4. Mums nevajag ūdens.
   We do not need water.
5. Mana jaunākā māsa ir septiņpadsmit gadi.
   My younger sister is 17 years old.
6. Kas tev vēl vajag šodien izdarīt?
   What do you still have to do today?
7. Prezidents Monsons ir daudz stāsti, ko stāstīt.
   President Monson has many stories to tell.
8. Es esmu auksti.
   I am cold.
9. Ko taviem brāļiem patīk?
   What do your brothers like?
10. Vai es jums patīk?
    Do you like me?

H. Companion Activity

With your companion, have a conversation using dative construction. Practice asking each other questions and answering in complete sentences about who you have in your family, what you like and don't like, and the things you need. Modify the questions to ask about parents, siblings, friends, and one another. Also practice asking in past, present, and future tenses.
Here are some example questions:

Questions	**Responses**
Do you have a brother?	I have a brother.
How old is he?	He is __ years old.
Does he like soccer?	He does not like soccer.
Does he have a wife?	He does not have a wife yet.
Does he have a car?	No, he does not have a car.
Does he need a job?	He does need a job.
Does he need money for school?	Yes, that is why he needs a job.
Do you miss him?	I miss him.
Do you think he is kind?	Yes, I think that he is a good brother.

I. Conversation

The following is a conversation between Arnis and Anita. There are blanks where a dative construction needs to be used to complete the sentence or where noun endings are missing. Fill in the blanks to complete the conversation, and then check your answers. Be sure to use the correct tense and conjugation of the verb. Check your answers.

Arnis

Sveika!
Hello!

Kā $_{1}$__ $_{2}$__?
How are you doing?

Arī labi, paldies. $_{6}$__ $_{7}$__ jautājum$_{8}$_.
I am good too, thanks. I have a question.

$_{9}$__ $_{10}$__ palīdzīb$_{11}$_ aizbraukt pie saviem radiniekiem šajā nedēļas nogalē. Vai tu varētu viņu aizvest uz turieni?
Elina needs help to travel to her relatives this weekend. Could you drive her there?

Anita

Čau, Arni!
Hey Arnis!

$_{3}$__ $_{4}$_labi, un $_{5}$__?
It's going well for me; and for you?

Kā varu palīdzēt?
How can I help?

$_{12}$__ žēl, bet es nevaru. $_{13}$__ $_{14}$__ laik$_{15}$_. $_{16}$__ $_{17}$__ darb$_{18}$_, un pēc tam$_{19}$__ $_{20}$__mācīties eksāmenam.
I am sorry; I can't. I don't have time. I have work, and after that I have to study for an exam.

Nekas, es atradīšu kādu citu.
That's OK. I will find someone else.

Varbūt mans brālis varētu palīdzēt.$_{21}$ ___ šodien $_{22}$___laik$_{23}$_ un $_{24}$___ $_{25}$___ kaut $_{26}$___ darīt. $_{27}$___ $_{28}$___ kalpot $_{29}$___.
Maybe my brother could help. He has time today and he will need something to do. He likes serving others.

Foršī! Vai $_{30}$___ $_{31}$___ mašīn$_{32}$_?
Cool! Does he have a car?

Ak, $_{33}$___ $_{34}$___mašīn$_{35}$___. Bet $_{36}$___ $_{37}$___ $_{38}$___.
Oh, he does not have a car. But my mom does.

Super, $_{39}$___ $_{40}$___ priek$_{41}$_. $_{42}$___ $_{43}$___ viņ$_{44}$_ tant$_{45}$_. $_{46}$___ $_{47}$___, ka Elīna sen viņu nav redzējusi.
Great, Elina will have joy. She misses her aunt. I think she has not seen her in a while.

$_{48}$___ $_{49}$___ arī $_{50}$___ prieks palīdzēt. $_{51}$___ vēl $_{52}$___viņam piezvanīt un pārliecināties, ka viņš var viņu aizvest, bet $_{53}$___ $_{54}$___, ka viņš varēs. Vai $_{55}$___ $_{56}$___telefon$_{57}$_?
My brother will also be happy to help. I still need to call him and confirm that he can drive her, but it seems to me that he will be able to. Does Elina have a telephone?

Jā, $_{58}$___ $_{59}$___mobilais telefons.
Yes, she has a cell.

Kāds ir viņas numurs? Es iedošu brālim un viņš var visu ar viņu sarunāt. $_{60}$___ ļoti $_{61}$___ $_{62}$___, ka $_{63}$___ $_{64}$___viņas numur$_{65}$_.
What is her number? I will give it to my brother and he can arrange everything with her. He will really like that, (that) he has her number.

Kāpēc? Vai $_{66}$___ $_{67}$___ Elīn$_{68}$_?
Why? Does he like Elina?

$_{69}$___ $_{70}$___ $_{71}$___ nepatīk?! $_{72}$___ $_{73}$___lab$_{74}$_ sird$_{75}$_ un viņa ir ļoti jautra.
Who doesn't like her?! She has a good heart and she is really fun.

$_{76}$___ $_{77}$___taisnīb$_{78}$_. Te ir viņas numurs. Paldies par visu.
You're right. Here is her number. Thanks for everything.

Protams. Atā!
Of course. Bye!

Debitive Mood

Examples

I **had to try** harder.	Man **bija** vairāk **jācenšas**.
They **must pray** in faith to receive an answer.	Viņiem(ām) **ir jālūdz** ticībā, lai saņemtu atbildi.
We **need to be** humble.	Mums **ir jābūt** pazemīgiem(ām).
You **will have to take** your scriptures with you.	Tev **būs jāņem** līdzi savi Svētie Raksti.

Explanation

Debitive mood is used to express necessity ("have to" or "must"). The construction for this mood is similar to dative construction in that it uses a dative subject combined with the third-person form of *būt*. See chapter 16, "Dative Construction." Debitive mood is distinctive in its "*jā*+ third-person form of verb" construction.

Dative Subject	3rd Person *būt*	jā + 3rd Person Verb	Object
Man *I*	bija *had to*	jālūdz *pray*	pēc miera. *for peace.*
Mums *We*	ir *have to/must*	jāapciemo *visit*	Ieva. *Ieva.*
Tev *You*	būs *will have to*	jālasa *read*	grāmata. *the book.*

Debitive Mood

To express debitive mood, the following pattern is used:

Dative Subject	+	3rd Person Form of *būt*	+	jā +3rd Person Present-Tense Verb

Man ir jālūdz.
I must pray.

The following chart shows dative subjects, as well as how the tense can change based on the tense of the verb *būt*.

	Subject	*būt*	*jā*+Verb
Past	man tev mums jums viņiem	bija	jālūdz

	Subject	*būt*	*jā*+Verb
Present	man tev mums jums viņiem	ir*	jālūdz

	Subject	*būt*	*jā*+Verb
Future	man tev mums jums viņiem	būs	jālūdz

* In present tense, *ir* is often dropped.

jā + Verb

To put a verb into debitive mood, the prefix jā- is added to the third-person present conjugation of any verb. The following chart shows how to create a "jā + verb":

jā-		3rd Person Present		*jā*+Verb
jā-	+	lūdz	=	jālūdz *must pray*
jā-	+	mācās	=	jāmācās *must learn*
jā-	+	lasa	=	jālasa *must read*

Here is a brief example with *lūgt* of how to conjugate a third-person present verb:

Verb		Present Stem		1st Conjugation Endings				3rd Person Present
lūgt[1st]	→	lūdz-	+	1st	-u	-am	=	lūdz
				2nd	-i/--	-at		
				3rd	--			

For more examples and instructions on finding the present-tense stem, see chapter 19, "Verbs."

Examples

Mums būs **jāmāca** par Svēto Garu.
*We will **have to teach** about the Holy Ghost.*

Lai uzzinātu, vai Mormona Grāmata ir patiesa, tā ir **jālasa**, **jāapdomā** un par to **jālūdz**.
*In order to find out if the Book of Mormon is true, (one) **must read**, **ponder**, and **pray** about it.*

Misionāriem (ir) **jāliecina** par Jēzu Kristu.
*Missionaries **must testify** of Jesus Christ.*

Objects

The object of a debitive mood construction is almost always in nominative case. Exceptions include certain personal pronouns, prepositional objects, and verbs that force a case besides accusative.

Object in Nominative

If the verb in debitive mood is transitive (requiring an object after it), then the object remains in nominative.

Examples

Viņiem (ir) jānožēlo savi **grēki.**
*They need to repent of their **sins**.*

Mums (ir) jātur **baušļi.**
*We must keep the **commandments**.*

Tev (ir) jāatmet **slikti ieradumi**, ja tu vēlies kristīties.
*You must stop **bad habits** if you want to be baptized.*

Personal Pronouns

When first-person, second-person, and reflexive (*sevis*) personal pronouns are used as the object of a debitive mood construction, they go into accusative. Third-person personal pronouns (*viņš, viņa, viņi, viņas*) remain in nominative.

Examples

Man būs **tevi** jāatceras.
*I will have to remember **you**.*

Mums **jūs** (ir) jāatrod**.**
*We have to find **you**.*

Tev **viņa** (ir) jāatbalsta, lai paradītu savu mīlestību.
*You must support **her** to show her your love.*

Prepositional Objects

Prepositional objects are forced into the usual case for the specific preposition. See chapter 24, "Prepositions."

Examples

Tev būs jāiet uz **baznīcu,** lai redzētu, kas tur notiek.
*You will have to go to **church** to see what happens there.*

Mums pēc stundas (ir/būs) jātiekas ar **klausītāju**.
*In an hour we have to meet with an **investigator**.*

Man bija jālūdz pēc Dieva **spēka** un **palīdzības**.
*I had to pray for God's **strength** and **help**.*

jā + Case-Specific Verbs

Verbs that always force a case other than accusative continue to force that case when using debitive mood. These verbs can be found in chapters 15, "Dative Case," and 29, "Locative Case." In addition, any object in locative is still expressed in locative, or as prepositional phrases require.

Examples

Misionāriem ir jākalpo **Dievam** ar visu savu sirdi, spēku, un prātu.
*Missionaries must serve **God** with all their heart, strength, and mind.*

Mums (ir) jābūt **mājās** pēc stundas.
*We have to be **at home** in an hour.*

Man (ir) jāseko Kristus **piemēram**.
*I have to follow the **example** of Christ.*

Man bija **sev** jāatgādina katru dienu lasīt Svētos Rakstus.
*I had to remind **myself** every day to read the scriptures.*

"Have"

Remember that there is no verb directly translatable as "to have" in Latvian. Therefore, different constructions using *būt* are used to express necessity, possession, and perfect tense. The following sentence shows these different usages of "have" and labels their function:

Perfect Tense		Possession	Necessity	
Es esmu lasījis *I **have** read*	Bībeli, un tagad, kad *the Bible, and now that*	**man ir Mormona Grāmata,** *I **have** the Book of Mormon,*	**man ir jālasa** *I **have** to read*	arī tā. *it also.*

Be sure to use the right construction to convey the correct meaning of "have" in Latvian.

"Have to Be"

Debitive mood is used to communicate "have to be" by using *būt*. *Būt* is an exception to the regular debitive mood pattern. Instead of using the third-person present verb conjugation (*ir*), *būt* remains infinitive and becomes *jābūt,* NOT ~~jāir~~. Because *būt* acts as an equalizer, the object goes into dative in order to match the dative subject:

Dative Subject	*būt*	*jā*+Verb	Dative Object
Man *I*	ir *have*	jābūt *to be*	paklausīgam(ai). *obedient.*
Pionieriem *The pioneers*	bija *had*	jābūt *to be*	drosmīgiem. *brave.*
Mums *We*	būs *will have*	jābūt *to be*	tīriem(ām). *clean.*

Dative Subject	*būt*	*jā*+Verb	Dative Object
man tev viņam(ai) mums jums viņiem(ām)	bija ir būs	jābūt	ticīgam(ai). ticīgiem(ām).

"Have to Have"

To express the English "have to have," use debitive mood or the adjectives *vajadzīgs* and *nepieciešams*, which are more or less interchangeable. A dative construction with *vajadzēt* can also be used to express this idea. See chapter 16, "Dative Construction."

Examples

Tev ir **nepieciešams** draugu atbalsts.
*You **have to have** friends' support.*

Viņiem bija **vajadzīga** cerība.
*They **had to have** hope.*

Man **vajadzēs** palīdzību.
*I will **need** help.*

Tev **jābūt** ticībai**.**
*You **have to have** faith.*

Activities

A. Practice Conjugation

Conjugate the following verbs into a *jā+verb* on a separate piece of paper. Make sure to use the right conjugation group. Check your answers.

1. mīlēt *to love*
2. strādāt *to work*
3. redzēt *to see*
4. domāt *to think*
5. palīdzēt *to help*
6. dot *to give*
7. atbildēt *to answer*
8. liecināt *to testify*
9. darīt *to do*
10. saņemt *to receive*
11. mācīt *to teach*
12. lūgt *to pray*
13. lasīt *to read*
14. apsolīt *to promise*
15. runāt *to speak*
16. varēt *to be able*

B. Have, Have, Have

On a separate piece of paper, identify which form of "have" is being used (necessity, possession, or perfect tense). Then translate each sentence into Latvian. Check your answers.

1. I have to go.
2. They have been to church before.
3. Christ has broken the bands of death.
4. Our investigators have strong testimonies.
5. We have to go to church each Sunday.
6. You have the ability to choose for yourself.
7. We have shared what we know to be true.
8. They have had the opportunity to go to the temple.
9. I have to have peace in my life.
10. Missionaries have to be obedient.

C. Translations

On a separate piece of paper, translate the following sentences using debitive mood. Check your answers.

1. We will have to pray about this.
2. On the Sabbath, we have to rest from our labors.
3. You have to have faith in Jesus Christ.
4. Investigators must sincerely repent before baptism.
5. I had to be at church an hour early.
6. Jesus had to suffer for our sins.
7. You (formal) must ask in faith.
8. We must be grateful for our blessings.
9. I have to share my testimony.
10. They will have to understand.

D. Common Errors

The following sentences have bolded and starred errors. Correct and explain the errors to your companion. Check your answers.

1. Man būs **jāir*** atvērtam pret apkārtējiem.
   I will have to be open to those around me.
2. Tev jāseko Dieva **baušļi***!
   You have to follow God's commandments.
3. Mums būs **jāuzstādīt*** labi mērķi.
   We will have to set good goals.
4. Jums ir jābūt pacietīgiem **man***!
   You (pl.) have to be patient with me.
5. Man ir **daudzāk*** jāmīl apkārtējie.
   I have to love those around me more.
6. Mums **jādzīvot***, paļaujoties uz ticību, nevis uz to, kas redzams.
   We must live relying on faith and not on that which is seen.
7. Man **biju*** čakli jāstudē.
   I had to study diligently.
8. Tev ir jābūt **laipns***!
   You have to be kind.
9. Viņiem ir jāpalīdz **mūs***.
   They have to help us.
10. Man ir **jāvingrot*** katru dienu.
    I have to exercise daily.

E. Error Correction

With your companion, take turns reading the following sentences aloud. Start by giving the English translation and then say the sentence as it is written in Latvian. Then have the other companion identify errors, if any, and restate the sentence correctly. Check your answers.

1. Man ir jālasa Mormona Grāmatu.
   I have to read the Book of Mormon.
2. Mums ir jāseko Jēzus Kristus lai saņemtu mūžīgo dzīvi.
   We have to follow Jesus Christ in order to receive eternal life.
3. Nefijam bija jābūt labs piemērs saviem brāļiem.
   Nephi had to be a good example to his brothers.
4. Jums būs jāatmet smēķēšanu.
   You will have to give up smoking.
5. Viņi ir jāmācas, kā mainīties.
   They have to learn how to change.
6. Mums katram pašam ir jāzināt, kas ir patiess.
   We have to know for ourselves what is true.
7. Viņa ir drīz jābūt mājās.
   She has to be home soon.
8. Mums ir jādara to, ko māca pravietis.
   We have to do what the prophet teaches.
9. Tev biji jāizvēlas dzīvot saskaņā ar Dieva likumiem.
   You had to choose to live according to God's laws.
10. Mums ir tagad jānolemjam, kam mēs sekosim.
    We have to decide now whom we will follow.

F. Reading

Read the following section, "Lūdz, lai uzzinātu patiesību caur Svēto Garu," from *Preach My Gospel* aloud. Pay special attention to how debitive mood is used.

> Ir tikai divas iespējas — vai nu šis vēstījums par Atjaunošanu ir patiess vai nav. Tu vari uzzināt, ka tas ir patiess, pateicoties Svētajam Garam, kā tas apsolīts Moronija 10:3-5. Ikvienam, kas vēlas uzzināt patiesību, ir jāizlasa Mormona Grāmatas vēstījums, jāapdomā tas un jālūdz Debesu Tēvam Jēzus Kristus Vārdā, vai šī grāmata ir patiesa. Lai to izdarītu, tev jāvēršas pie mūsu Debesu Tēva. Tev jāpateicas par savām svētībām un jāprasa Viņam, vai Mormona Grāmatas vēstījums ir patiess. Neviens nevar izzināt garīgās patiesības bez lūgšanas.

G. Rapid Conjugation

With your companion, make a list of verbs you want to work on using in debitive mood. From that list, practice conjugating as a companionship. The first companion chooses a verb and a person (*es, tu, mēs*); the second companion then conjugates the verb in past, present, and future. Then switch and have the second companion choose a verb and a person for the first companion to conjugate in past, present, and future. For example:

Companion 1	**zināt- es.**
Companion 2	man bija jāzina, man ir jāzina, man būs jāzina. **darīt- mēs.**
Companion 1	mums bija jādara, mums ir jādara, mums būs jādara. **mīlēt- tu.**
Companion 2	tev bija jāmīl, tev ir jāmīl, tev būs jāmīl. **apsolīt- jūs...**

Imperative Mood

Examples

Keep the commandments.	**Ievēro** baušļus!
Come unto Christ.	**Nāciet** pie Kristus!
Let's go to church early.	**Ejam** laikus uz baznīcu!
Let him pray to God for help.	**Lai viņš lūdz** Dievam pēc palīdzības!

Explanation

Imperative mood, or command form, is used when requesting or telling someone to do something. There are several different forms of imperative mood, which will be explained in this chapter.

Tu and *Jūs* Commands

There are two different command forms in Latvian, *tu* and *jūs*:

Form	Explanation	Construction
Tu Command	Use when commanding one person informally.	Use present-tense *tu* conjugation of the verb, but omit *tu*.
Jūs Command	Use when commanding one person formally or more than one person.	Use the present-tense *tu* conjugation of the verb, then add the suffix *-iet,* or *-ieties* for reflexive.

The following table shows *tu* and *jūs* commands:

Verb		*Tu* Command		*Jūs* Command
lūgt *to pray*	→	lūdz! *pray!*	*+iet*	lūdziet! *pray!*
sekot *to follow*	→	seko! *follow!*	*+iet*	sekojiet! *follow!*
paklausīt *to obey*	→	paklausi! *obey!*	*+iet*	paklausiet! *obey!*
klausīties *to listen*	→	klausies! *listen!*	*+ieties*	klausieties! *listen!*
būt *to be*	→	esi! *be!*	*+iet*	esiet! *be!*
iet *to go*	→	ej! *go!*	*+iet*	ejiet! *go!*

Note: If the last letter of the stem is a vowel other than *i*, then add a *j* when forming *jūs* command form. If the stem ends in an *i*, then it is dropped before adding the suffix *-iet*.

Mēs Commands ("Let's")

The *mēs* command form is more of a suggestion than a command. This construction communicates "let's." To form a *mēs* command, use the future-tense *mēs* conjugation of the verb without saying *mēs*. The following table shows *mēs* commands:

Verb		*Mēs* Command
lūgt *to pray*	→	lūgsim *let's pray*
sekot *to follow*	→	sekosim *let's follow*
paklausīt *to obey*	→	paklausīsim *let's obey*
klausīties *to listen*	→	klausāmies* *let's listen*
būt *to be*	→	būsim *let's be*
iet *to go*	→	ejam* *let's go*

* If the desired action is wanted immediately, the command can be expressed in the present tense.

Examples

Ejam apciemot Zani!
***Let's go** visit Zane!*

Paskatīsimies, vai mums tam būs laiks!
***Let's see** if we have time for that!*

Palasām kopā Mormona Grāmatu?
***Shall we read** the Book of Mormon together?*

Note: *Mēs* commands or suggestions can be expressed either as a statement or as a question.

Lai Commands

When you want to command someone to let a third party do something, a *lai* command is used. This command may also be implied generally, not towards a specific person or group, in which case the subject is omitted or a general subject (*viņš/tas*) is used. The following table shows how to form *lai* commands: *lai* + third-person pronoun + third-person present verb conjugation.

Lai	**3rd Person**	**Verb → 3rd Person Present**	***Lai* Command**
Lai	viņa	lūgt → lūdz *to pray*	Lai viņa lūdz! *Let her pray.*
Lai	viņi(as)	sekot → seko *to follow*	Lai viņi(as) seko! *Let them follow.*
Lai	suns	paklausīt → paklausa *to obey*	Lai suns paklausa! *Let the dog obey.*
Lai	viņš	klausīties → klausās *to listen*	Lai viņš klausās! *Let him listen.*
Lai	misionāri(es)	iet → iet *to go*	Lai misionāri(es) iet! *Let the missionaries go.*
Lai	(general)	notikt → notiek *to happen*	Lai notiek! *Let it happen.*

Public Commands

When commands are given to the public (on signs), the infinitive verb is used:

Examples

Stāvēt aizliegts!
No Parking!

Nesmēķēt!
No Smoking!

Negated Commands

The prefix *ne-* is used to negate imperative verbs.

Examples

Neejiet!
Don't go!

Neskaties!
Don't look!

Nekavēsimies!
Let's not be late.

Exclamation Points

Exclamation points in writing are used more frequently in Latvian than in English, but they carry the same general meaning. Exclamation points are used when:

- Using command form.
- Using salutations (e.g., "Have a good day!").
- Expressing excitement, surprise, or another strong emotion.

Examples

Neaizmirsti lūgt!
Don't forget to pray.

Priecīgus Ziemassvētkus!
Merry Christmas!

Ak, cik skaists saulriets!
The sunset is so beautiful!

Activities

A. Conjugation

The following sentences contain a **bolded** unconjugated verb. On a separate piece of paper, write each verb in command form for *tu*, *jūs*, and *mēs*. Check your answers.

1. **Lūgt** Dievam pēc palīdzības!
   ***Pray** to God for help.*
2. **Lasīt** Mormona Grāmatu katru dienu!
   ***Read** the Book of Mormon every day.*
3. **Atcerēties** turēt sabata dienu svētu!
   ***Remember** to keep the Sabbath day holy.*
4. Vienmēr **izvairīties** no ļauna!
   ***Always** avoid evil.*
5. Cītīgi **studēt** svētos rakstus!
   ***Study** the scriptures diligently.*
6. **Nākt** šurp!
   ***Come** here!*
7. **Būt** laipns(a)!
   ***Be** nice.*
8. **Sekot** pravietim!
   ***Follow** the prophet.*
9. **Griezties** pie Manis katrā domā!
   ***Turn** unto Me in every thought.*
10. **Nešaubīties**, **nebaidīties**!
    ***Doubt** not, **fear** not. (D&C 6:36)*

B. *Lai* Commands

The following sentences contain a **bolded** unconjugated verb. On a separate piece of paper, write each verb in *lai* command form. Check your answers.

1. Lai viņš pats to **iemācīties**!
   Let him learn for himself.
2. Lai viņa **lasīt** Mormona Grāmatu!
   Let her read the Book of Mormon.
3. Lai viņi(as) **atcerēties** turēt sabata dienu svētu!
   Let them remember to keep the Sabbath day holy.
4. Lai viņi(as) vienmēr **izvairīties** no ļauna!
   Let them always avoid evil.
5. Lai **notikt**!
   Let it happen.
6. Lai svētie cītīgi **studēt** Svētos Rakstus!
   Let the Saints study the scriptures diligently.
7. Lai suns **nākt** šurp!
   Let the dog come here.
8. Lai viņs **būt** laipns!
   Let him be kind.
9. Lai viņa **sekot** pravietim!
   Let her follow the prophet.
10. Tas lai to **lūgt** no Dieva!
    Let him ask of God.

C. Common Errors

The following sentences have bolded and starred errors. Correct and explain the errors to your companion. Check your answers.

1. Ak **atcerēties***, **atcerēties***!
   Oh remember, remember. (plural "you")
2. **Darī*,** kas labs, un Dievs tevi svētīs.
   Do what is right, and the Lord will bless you.
3. **Ir*** līksmi!
   Be joyous. (formal "you")
4. Lai viņa **dari*** to, ko viņa vēlas!
   Let her do what she wants.
5. **Lai mēs dalīsimies*** šai pantā ar Olgu!
   Let's share this scripture with Olga.
6. **Negriez*** pa kreisi, **griez*** pa labi!
   Don't turn left; turn right.
7. **Lūdzi*** šovakar Dievam pēc palīdzības!
   Pray to God tonight, asking for help.
8. **Censties*** vairāk!
   Try harder. (plural "you")
9. **Lasiet*** no Mormona Grāmatas!
   Let's read from the Book of Mormon.
10. **Neaizmirst*** savu solījumu!
    Don't forget your promise.

D. Error Correction

With your companion, take turns reading the following sentences aloud. Start by giving the English translation and then say the sentence as it is written in Latvian. Then have the other companion identify errors, if any, and restate the sentence correctly. Check your answers.

1. Mēs esam klāt, nebaidīties!
   We are here; fear not. (plural "you")
2. Lai mēs aizejam rītvakar pie Santas!
   Let's go to Santa's tomorrow night.
3. Atvērt viņai durvis!
   Open the door for her.
4. Ielaž viņš iekšā!
   Let him in.
5. Pieklauvēiet pie Artura durvja!
   Knock on Artur's door.
6. Izvēlas pareizo!
   Choose the right.
7. Lūdzu, palīdz man atrast Dumbrāja ielu 24a!
   Please help me find Dumbrāja Street 24a. (formal "you")
8. Mekliet pēc iespējām kalpot un palīdziet tiem, kas ir jums apkārt!
   Look for opportunities to serve and help those around you. (formal "you")
9. Lūdz, tad jums taps dots! (Lūkas Evaņģēlijs 11:9)
   Ask and you shall be given. (plural "you")
10. Mīlēt cits citu!
    Love one another. (plural "you")

E. Translation Activity

Translate the following sentences using the command form. Check your answers.

1. Let the baby sleep.
2. Stop!
3. Let's not sing that song.
4. Talk to everyone.
5. Let's wait and see.
6. Let other people choose for themselves.
7. Don't forget!
8. Tell him not to leave!
9. Look to the future with faith in Christ.
10. Please, show me where the church is.

F. Reading Activity

Look for and identify when and how command form is used from the following passages:

- 2. Mozus 20. nodaļa (desmit baušļi)
- Section headings in *Sludini Manu Evaņģēliju* 3. nodaļa 4. stunda
- Nefija 11. nodaļa
- M&D 6. nodaļa
- Jēkaba 1:5

G. Writing Activity

Think of five things you want to do better this week, and write down instructions to yourself using command form. Keep the list somewhere where you can see it.

H. Simon Says

Practice giving commands by playing "Simon Says" with your companion. Companion 1 starts as "Simon" and gives commands until companion 2 obeys a command without "Simon" giving the command. Then switch who is "Simon."

Example

Companion 1	Saimons saka: "Pacel savu roku!" *Simon says, "Raise your hand."*
Companion 1	Saimons saka: "Pasmaidi!" *Simon says, "Smile."*
Companion 1	"Nosauc savu vārdu!" *"Say your name." (Switch "Simon" if companion does the action.)*
Companion 2	Saimons saka: "Atver muti!" *Simon says, "Open your mouth."*
Companion 2	Saimons saka: "Pieskaries savam degunam!" *Simon says, "Touch your nose."*
Companion 2	"Pieskaries savai šiltītei!" *"Touch your name tag." (Keep playing by making up new sentences.)*

Review: Expressing Desire, Need, Preference, etc.

This review will help you see how well you have learned the material in the previous section. It will also help you evaluate your ability to apply several different grammar principles you have learned in performing the following function:

Asking About and Describing Desire, Need, Preference, Ability, Intention, or Purpose

- Dative Case
- Dative Construction
- Debitive Mood
- Imperative Mood

Activities

A. Error Correction

On a separate sheet of paper, rewrite the paragraph below, correcting the 21 errors in it. Check your answers.

Manei pāriniecei bija daži jautājumi par to, ko mēs jāmācīt lai palīdzētu klausītājus dzīvot pēc baušļus. Ceturtā stunda ietver baušļus, kas misionāri ir jāmāca saviem klausītājiem. Baušļi tiek mācīti ar mērķi palīdzēt cilvēki dzīvot saskaņā ar evaņģēliju. Daži baušļi ceturtajā stundā ir: būt paklausīgs, bieži lūdz Dievu, turēt sabata dienu svēts, sekoji pravietim un ievēro Gudrības Vārdu. Mūsu mērķis ir ne vien pasniegt visas misionāru stundas, bet arī palīdzēt citiem nākt pie Kristus caur ticību Jēzu Kristu, grēku nožēlošanu, kristīšanos, Svētā Gara saņemšanu un pastāvēšanu līdz galai. Ja cilvēki dzīvos pēc šos baušļus, viņiem būs gatavi kristīties. Ņemt vērā klausītāju vajadzības un Svētā Gara pamudinājumus, izvēloties, ko mācīt. Nepārtraukti domāt un lūg par to, kā palīdzēt saviem klausītājiem dzīvot saskaņā ar evaņģēliju!

My companion had some questions about what we have to teach in order to help investigators live the commandments. The fourth lesson contains commandments which missionaries need to teach. The commandments are taught with the purpose to help people live the gospel. Some commandments in the fourth lesson are be obedient, pray to God often, keep the Sabbath day holy, follow the prophet, and observe the Word of Wisdom. Our purpose is to not only to teach all the missionary lessons, but also to help others come unto Christ through faith in Jesus Christ, repentance, baptism, receiving the Holy Ghost, and enduring to the end. If people will live these commandments, they will be ready to be baptized. Take into consideration the needs of the investigators and the promptings of the Holy Ghost when choosing what to teach. Constantly think and pray about how to help investigators live the gospel.

B. Error Correction

Each of the following sentences contains one or more errors. Write down the sentence correctly and say it to your companion. Check your answers. The answers section will refer you to the principle used in each sentence.

1. Ādamam un Ievai jāgodā kā visas cilvēces vecāki.
   We should honor Adam and Eve as the parents of all mankind.
2. Tev ir jālasīt, jāapdomāt un jālūgt par Mormona Grāmatu.
   You have to read, ponder, and pray about the Book of Mormon.
3. Vilhemlam rodas vēlme atmest grēkus un kalpot Dievu.
   William has a desire to forsake sin and serve God.
4. Uzsākot misiju, tu vajadzēt iepazīt misionāru vēstījumu.
   Starting your mission, you will need to know the missionary message.
5. Lai dzīvotu Dieva klātbūtnē, mums jātiek attīrīti no grēka.
   To live in the presence of God, we must be cleansed from sin.
6. Cilvēkiem jānemaksā nauda, lai saņemtu grēku piedošanu.
   People don't have to pay money in order to receive forgiveness.
7. Sludinā evaņģēlija pamatprincipus, sludinā tos atkal un atkal!
   Preach (pl.) the first principles of the gospel—preach them again and again!
8. Pāvils trūkst pārliecības par to, kā uzsākt dalīties evaņģēlijā.
   Paul is unsure about how to begin to share the gospel.
9. Ko cilvēki Lehija vīzijā vajadzēja darīt, lai nobaudītu augli?
   What did people in Lehi's vision need to do to enjoy the fruit?
10. Priecājies savās sirdīs un atceriet, ka jūs esat brīvi!
    Rejoice in your heart and remember that you are free!
11. Dievam nepatīk, ja mēs grēkojam.
    God doesn't like it if we sin.
12. Mums jāticēt Kristum kā pasaules Glābējs.
    We must believe in Christ as the Savior of the world.
13. Kas tu mūsu baznīcas sanāksmēs patika?
    What did you like about our Church meeting?
14. Jums vajadzētu droši mācīt savus vārdus.
    You should teach boldly in your own words.
15. Viņiem vajad izjust prieku, ko nes pestīšana.
    They need to experience the joy of redemption.
16. Lai katru lūdza par Dieva darbu no visas sirds!
    Let everyone pray for the work of God with all their heart!
17. Priesterībai nepieciešama cilvēces glābšanai.
    The priesthood is necessary for the salvation of mankind.
18. Piesauk To Kungu! Viņš tev atbildēs.
    Call upon the Lord! He will hear you.
19. Lūdzu, palīdz man pabeigt! Es drīz jāeju.
    Please help me finish; I have to go soon.
20. Stundiņam nevajadzēt ilgt vairāk par 45 minūtēm.
    Lessons shouldn't last longer than 45 minutes.

C. Translation

On a separate piece of paper, translate the words in parentheses into Latvian. Check your answers.

1. (*Invite*) citus nākt pie Kristus caur kristīšanos!
2. (*Listen pl.*) uzmanīgi Svētā Gara norādījumos!
3. (*I*) tevis ļoti (*miss*).
4. (*Several prophets*) ir redzējuši Kristu.
5. Kas tev (*must do*) kā (*missionary*)?
6. (*Madara likes*) braukt uz Jūrmalu.
7. Man jābrauc misijā uz *(Taiwan)*.
8. (*Think pl.*), cik lielas ir Dieva svētības!
9. Kā vislabāk kalpot savam *(companion)*?
10. Viņai (*likes you*).
11. (*Pay attention to commitments*), ar kuriem viņiem radušās grūtības!
12. Jums (*must press*) uz priekšu ar nelokāmību Kristū.
13. Dievs (*each of us*) dāvāja iespēju baudīt nemirstību un mūžīgo dzīvi.
14. Visu savu dzīvi (*must continue*) pielietot ticība Kristum.
15. (*We needed*) iegūt ķermeni un tikt (*tested*) šajā laikā uz zemes.
16. Kristus apsola piedot (*us our sins*), ja mēs Viņu pieņemam.
17. (*Keep in mind*), ka šis ir Dieva, nevis tavs darbs!
18. Lasot kopā ar (*children*), laiku pa laikam (*stop and discuss*) izlasīto!
19. Kādēļ (*would I have to teach*) ar spēku un pilnvarām?
20. Tu tajā neatradīsi atbildes uz (*all your questions*).

D. Imperative Mood

Put the following verbs into *tu*, *jūs*, and *mēs* command form. Check your answers.

1. lūgt *to pray*
2. palīdzēt *to help*
3. lasīt *to read*
4. sekot *to follow*
5. atcereties *to remember*
6. apstaties *to stop*
7. paklausīt *to obey*
8. ticēt *to believe*
9. gaidīt *to wait*
10. rakstīt *to write*

E. Sentence Construction

Translate the following sentences into Latvian in past, present, and future tenses. Check your answers.

1. We need to serve others.
2. You follow the prophet.
3. I thank God for blessings.
4. Ilze wrote to Janis.

F. *Preach My Gospel* Activity

Fill in the blanks in these sentences taken from *Preach My Gospel*'s lesson four, "Be Obedient." Check your answers.

Dievs dod baušļus mūsu pašu labum__1. Tie ir mīloša Debesu Tēva norādījumi, ko Viņš devis, lai palīdzētu ___2(us) būt laimīg__3. Viņš dāvā __4(us) arī rīcības brīvību jeb spēju un iespēju izvēlēties starp labu un ļaunu. Ja mēs paklausām Diev__5, mēs sekojam Svētā Gara ietekm__6 un izvēlamies rīkoties saskaņā ar Viņa gribu. Paklausība baušļ__7 dāvā mieru šajā dzīvē un mūžīgo dzīvi pēc nāves. Paklausība apliecina, ka mēs mīlam Dievu. Nepaklausīb__8 seko ciešanas. Debesu Tēvs zina mūsu vājības un ir ar ___9(us) pacietīgs. Ja cenšamies klausīt Viņa baušļ__10, Viņš mūs svētī. Viņš gaida, ka mēs Viņ__11 paklausīsim, lai Viņš varētu mūs svētīt.

G. Companionship Activity

Share with your companion how old your family members and friends are. Then share what they like to do, using *patikt*. Also share what they need to do in order to come closer to Christ, using *vajadzēt* or debitive mood.

Asking About and Describing Actions and Events

Purpose

This function will help you talk about what has happened or what will happen. This function will also help you express sequence and use nouns as indirect objects. The grammar principles in this section are targeted at helping you perform this function. Below are examples of the types of things you will be able to express with the grammar in this function.

- Christ **appeared** to the people in America. ("Verbs")
- Heavenly Father **knows** and **loves** us completely. ("Verb Prefixes and Synonyms")
- You **have been promised** inspiration to know how to serve His children. ("Perfect Tense")
- **Prophets are called** by God to bless His children. ("Passive Voice")
- Joseph saw a light **exactly** over his head that descended **gradually**. ("Adverbs")
- The Atonement of Jesus Christ frees us **from** sin. ("Prepositions")

Application

Below is a list of doctrinal points that these grammar principles will help you teach, as well as some common missionary tasks that they will help you perform. This list is not comprehensive; it is meant to help you think about how you can use the grammar in real situations. In parentheses next to each point are some sample questions that you can ask yourself to help you think about how to apply the grammar.

Doctrines from the Lessons

- Heavenly Father Reveals His Gospel in Every Dispensation (What is the pattern of gospel dispensations? What does God do to reveal the gospel to His children?)
- Pray to Know the Truth Through the Holy Ghost (To whom do we pray? How will we receive answers from God?)
- The Spirit World (Where will we go when we die? How do our actions on earth determine where we will go in the spirit world?)
- Baptism, Our First Covenant (What happens during a baptism? How will being baptized change your life?)
- Obedience (What actions does God require of us? What steps have you made to show God your obedience?)
- Keep the Ten Commandments (What makes keeping the Ten Commandments hard? How are you blessed because you keep the commandments of God?)
- Teaching and Learning in the Church (What does the Church do for us? What events in the Church have helped you to learn more about the Savior?)

Tasks from the *Missionary Vocabulary and Phrases* Book

- Conduct a Meeting (What will happen during the meeting?)
- Explain Priesthood Ordinances (How was the priesthood restored?)
- Extend Commitment Invitations (What does my invitation really ask them to do? How will I know if they fulfilled the commitment?)
- Follow Up on Commitments (What actions did you take to show God your faith?)
- Obtain Referrals (What can members do to prepare their friends to hear the gospel?)
- Teach Others How to Pray (How do we pray?)

Verbs

Examples

She **is reading** the Book of Mormon.	Viņa **lasa**[3rd] Mormona Grāmatu.
We **pray** to God in order **to know** the truth.	Mēs **lūdzam**[1st] Dievu, lai **uzzinātu**[3rd] patiesību.
Oksana **plans** to **help** us with the lesson tomorrow.	Oksana **plāno**[2nd] rīt mums **palīdzēt**[2nd] ar stundu.
I **like to serve** others.	Man **patīk**[1st] **kalpot**[2nd] citiem**.**

Explanation

This chapter will focus on how to conjugate verbs, or action words. In Latvian, verbs receive different endings depending on the subject, tense, and mood. The process of changing verb endings is called conjugation. There are three verb conjugation patterns: first conjugation, second conjugation, and third conjugation. The following chart gives examples and the definition of each conjugation pattern:

	Examples	Definition
1st Conjugation	lūgt, ņemt, patikt, nest, nākt, rast	consonant *-t* ending (e.g., *-gt, -st*)
	skriet, aizstāt, kļūt, iegūt, justies	one syllable (excluding prefix or suffix)
2nd Conjugation	lidot, dejot, elpot, izskaidrot, dzīvot	*-ot* ending
	eksistēt, organizēt, fotografēt, jokot	cognates (borrowed from English)
	runāt, domāt, strādāt, meklēt	some *-ēt* and *-āt* endings
3rd Conjugation	gribēt, ticēt, atbildēt, mīlēt, dziedāt	some *-ēt* and *-āt* endings
	lasīt, apsolīt, mierināt, dziedināt	*-īt* and *-ināt* endings

Note: In Latvian, there is no progressive tense (-ing). "I am reading" and "I read" are both expressed as *"es lasu."*

Verb Stems

Verbs consist of two parts: stem and ending. The stem remains the same and the ending is conjugated according to the subject. The following chart shows how to find the stem from first-, second-, and third-conjugation infinitive verbs:

Conjugation	Past Stem	Present Stem	Future Stem
1st	look up	look up	drop *-t*
2nd	drop *-t*	drop *-t*	drop *-t*
3rd	drop *-t*	drop *-āt*, *-ēt*, *-īt*	drop *-t*

Verbs are found in the dictionary in their infinitive form. In English, this translates as "to ___ verb" (e.g., "to eat," "to see"). The following chart shows how verbs consist of a stem and an infinitive ending:

Infinitive Verb		Present Verb Stem		Infinitive Ending
ņemt [1st] *to take*	=	ņem-	+	-t
domāt [2nd] *to think*	=	domā-	+	-t
varēt [3rd] *to be able to*	=	var-	+	-ēt

Once you have the correct stem, you can conjugate any verb by adding a personal conjugation ending:

Infinitive Verb		Present Verb Stem		Ending		Conjugated Verb
just [1st] *to feel*	→	jūt-	+	-u*	=	jūtu *I feel*
domāt [2nd] *to think*	→	domā-	+	-ju*	=	domāju *I think*
varēt [3rd] *to be able to*	→	var-	+	-u*	=	varu *I can*

* The endings used in this example are for the first-person singular (*es*) present tense.

Verb Conjugation

Verbs receive different endings depending on the **subject** (noun or pronoun), **tense** (past, present, or future), and **mood** (imperative, debitive, relative, conditional). The process of changing the ending on a verb stem is called conjugation. To conjugate a verb, first find the verb stem (based on the tense), then add the right verb ending (based on the person). Verb ending conjugation charts are based off the following pronoun chart:

	Sg	Pl
1st Person	es *I*	mēs *we*
2nd Person	tu *you (informal)*	jūs *you (formal or plural)*
3rd Person	viņš-viņa *he-she*	viņi-viņas *they (m-f)*

The following charts show the conjugation endings for first, second, and third conjugation verbs in past, present, and future:

	Past		Present		Future	
1st	-u	-ām	-u	-am	-šu	-sim
	-i	-āt	-i/--	-at	-si	-siet*
	-a		--		-s	

	Past		Present		Future	
2nd	-ju	-jām	-ju	-jam	-šu	-sim
	-ji	-jāt	---	-jat	-si	-siet*
	-ja		--		-s	

	Past		Present *-āt* & *-ēt*		Present *-īt* & *-ināt*		Future	
3rd	-ju	-jām	-u	-am	-u	-ām	-šu	-sim
	-ji	-jāt	-i	-at	-i	-āt	-si	-siet*
	-ja		--		-a		-s	

-- indicates no ending added to stem.
* *-sit* may also be used as the ending for future *jūs* conjugations, but it is older and less commonly used.

Note: Perfect Tense is an additional tense; see chapter 21, "Perfect Tense." For more information on verb moods, see chapters 17, "Debitive Mood"; 18, "Imperative Mood"; 32, "Conditional Mood"; and 34, "Relative Mood."

First Conjugation Verbs

First conjugation verbs are usually one syllable (prefixes and suffixes are not counted) and often end with a consonant *-t* ending. You can often find the stem of a first conjugation verb by simply removing the *-t* ending. However, there are many unpredictable verb stems, so it is best to learn the verb stems for each tense as you learn new verbs.

Here are some examples of stems for first conjugation verbs:

Infinitive Verb	nākt *to come*	saukt *to call*	aizmirst *to forget*	pirkt *to buy*	ēst *to eat*	dzert *to drink*	pabeigt *to finish*	pateikt *to say*	iegūt *to gain*	kļūt *to become*
Past Stem	nāc-	sauc-	aizmirs-	pirk-	ēd-	dzēr-	pabeidz-	pateic-	ieguv-	kļuv-
Present Stem	nāk-*	sauc-	aizmirst-	pērk-*	ēd-	dzer-	pabeidz-	pasak-	iegūst-	kļūst-
Future Stem	nāk-	sauk-	aizmirsī-	pirk-	ēdī-	dzer-	pabeig-	pateik-	iegū-	kļū-

* indicates softening for second person singular (*tu nāc*).

The following chart shows how the first conjugation verb *mēgt* ("to tend to") is conjugated in past, present, and future. Notice that it always needs another verb following it. *Mēgt* is a good word to use whenever you forget how to conjugate another verb.

	Stem		Endings			Conjugated Verb	
Past	mēdz-	+	-u	-ām	=	es mēdzu *I tended to*	mēs mēdzām *we tended to*
			-i	-āt		tu mēdzi *you tended to*	jūs mēdzāt *you tended to*
			---			viņi mēdza *they tended to*	
Present	mēdz-	+	-u	-am	=	es mēdzu *I tend to*	mēs mēdzam *we tend to*
			-i/---	-at		tu mēdz *you tend to*	jūs mēdzat *you tend to*
			---			Viņi mēdz *they tend to*	
Future	mēg-	+	-šu	-sim	=	es mēgšu *I will tend to*	mēs mēgsim *We will tend to*
			-si	-siet		tu mēgsi *you will tend to*	jūs mēgsiet *you will tend to*
			-s			viņi mēgs *they will tend to*	

Second Conjugation Verbs

Second conjugation verbs are unique in that their present and past tense conjugations are very similar. These verbs include cognates, *-ot* endings, and some *-ēt* and *-āt* endings. Below is an example of how to conjugate *jautāt* ("to ask") in each tense and person:

	Stem		Endings			Conjugated Verb	
Past	jautā-	+	-ju	-jām	=	es jautāju *I asked*	mēs jautājām *we asked*
			-ji	-jāt		tu jautāji *you asked*	jūs jautājāt *you asked*
			-ja			viņi jautāja *they asked*	
	Stem		**Endings**			**Conjugated Verb**	
Present	jautā-	+	-ju	-jam	=	es jautāju *I ask*	mēs jautājam *we ask*
			---	-jat		tu jautā *you ask*	jūs jautājat *you ask*
			---			viņi jautā *they ask*	
	Stem		**Endings**			**Conjugated Verb**	
Future	jautā-	+	-šu	-sim	=	es jautāšu *I will ask*	mēs jautāsim *We will ask*
			-si	-siet		tu jautāsi *you will ask*	jūs jautāsiet *you will ask*
			-s			viņi jautās *they will ask*	

Third Conjugation Verbs

In present tense, the conjugation of *-īt* and *-ināt* verbs is slightly different than *-ēt* and *-āt* ending verbs. All third conjugation verbs in past and future follow the same pattern. The following charts show these slight differences with the conjugation of *redzēt* ("to see") and *lasīt* ("to read") in each tense and person.

	Stem		Endings			Conjugated Verb	
Past	redzē-	+	-ju	-jām	=	es redzēju *I saw*	mēs redzējām *we saw*
			-ji	-jāt		tu redzēji *you saw*	jūs redzējāt *you saw*
			-ja			viņi redzēja *they saw*	
	Stem		**Endings**			**Conjugated Verb**	
Present *-ēt* and *-āt*	redz-	+	-u	-am	=	es redzu *I see*	mēs redzam *we see*
			-i	-at		tu redzi *you see*	jūs redzat *you see*
			---			viņi redz *they see*	
	Stem		**Endings**			**Conjugated Verb**	
Future	redzē-	+	-šu	-sim	=	es redzēšu *I will see*	mēs redzēsim *we will see*
			-si	-siet		tu redzēsi *you will see*	jūs redzēsiet *you will see*
			-s			viņi redzēs *they will see*	

	Stem		Endings			Conjugated Verb	
Past	lasī-	+	-ju	-jām	=	es lasīju *I read*	mēs lasījām *we read*
			-ji	-jāt		tu lasīji *you read*	jūs lasījāt *you read*
			-ja			viņi lasīja *they read*	
	Stem		**Endings**			**Conjugated Verb**	
Present *-īt and -ināt*	las-	+	-u	-ām	=	es lasu *I read*	mēs lasām *we read*
			-i	-āt		tu lasi *you read*	jūs lasāt *you read*
			-a			viņi lasa *they read*	
	Stem		**Endings**			**Conjugated Verb**	
Future	lasī-	+	-šu	-sim	=	es lasīšu *I will read*	mēs lasīsim *we will read*
			-si	-siet		tu lasīsi *you will read*	jūs lasīsiet *you will read*
			-s			viņi lasīs *they will read*	

Irregular Verbs

There are three official irregular verbs in Latvian: *būt* ("to be"), *iet* ("to go"), and *dot* ("to give"). The following charts show how these conjugate:

	būt		**iet**		**dot**	
Past	biju	bijām	gāju	gājām	devu	devām
	biji	bijāt	gāji	gājāt	devi	devāt
	bija		gāja		deva	
Present	esmu	esam	eju	ejam	dodu	dodam
	esi	esat	ej	ejat	dod	dodat
	ir		iet		dod	
Future	būšu	būsim	iešu	iesim	došu	dosim
	būsi	būsiet	iesi	iesiet	dosi	dosiet
	būs		ies		dos	

Negation

All verbs are negated by adding the prefix *ne-* to the beginning of the verb. The only time more than one prefix is used on one verb is when *ne-* is used in combination with another prefix. Here are some examples of negated verbs:

Verb	Negated Verb
Es zinu *I know*	Es **ne**zinu *I do **not** know*
viņiem patīk *they like*	viņiem **ne**patīk *they do **not** like*
mēs redzējām *we saw*	mēs **ne**redzējām *we did **not** see*
tu būsi *you will be*	tu **ne**būsi *you will **not** be*
viņš paklausīja *he obeyed*	viņš **ne**paklausīja *he **didn't** obey*

Activities

A. Practice Conjugation

Conjugate the following verbs for each person and tense on a separate piece of paper. Make sure to use the right conjugation group. Check your answers.

1. mīlēt *to love*
2. palīdzēt *to help*
3. ēst *to eat*
4. lasīt *to read*
5. strādāt *to work*
6. atbildēt *to answer*
7. redzēt *to see*
8. saņemt *to receive*
9. mācīt *to teach*
10. dot *to give*
11. apsolīt *to promise*
12. runāt *to speak*
13. varēt *to be able to*
14. liecināt *to testify*
15. lūgt *to pray*

B. Translation

Translate the following sentences. Check your answers.

1. Christ paid for our sins.
2. Do you understand what we are saying?
3. The Atonement allows us to overcome sin and weakness.
4. You (pl.) will promise to remember Christ always.
5. The Book of Mormon testifies that Jesus is the Christ.
6. The Spirit helped me when I forgot how to say that word.
7. They know how to knit.
8. I know Helvis.
9. After baptism, you will receive the gift of the Holy Ghost.
10. Your (formal) testimony really touched me.

C. Common Errors

The following sentences have bolded and starred errors. Correct and explain the errors to your companion. Check your answers.

1. Mēs **runājam*** ar visiem.
   We talked with everyone.
2. Es **lūgu*** katru dienu.
   I pray every day.
3. Vai tu **dzīvi*** Rīgā?
   Do you live in Riga?
4. Kur Jūs **apmeklēt*** baznīcu?
   Where do you attend church?
5. Mēs **kalpam*** cilvēkiem.
   We serve people.
6. Ko viņš vakar **saka***?
   What did he say yesterday?
7. Viņi šorīt **gāj*** uz skolu.
   They went to school this morning.
8. Ko jūs šodien **mācījāt***?
   What did you learn today?
9. Mēs ar Jāni **bija*** templī.
   Jānis and I were in the temple.
10. Vai tu **dodi*** Ženijai Mormona Grāmatu?
    Did you give Zenija the Book of Mormon?

D. Error Correction

With your companion, take turns reading the following sentences aloud. Start by giving the English translation and then say the sentence as it is written in Latvian. Then have the other companion identify errors, if any, and restate the sentence correctly. Check your answers.

1. Es to pierakstīšu, citādi es to aizmiršu.
   I will write that; otherwise I will forget.
2. Viņš lūga, lai uzzinātu patiesību.
   He prayed to find out the truth.
3. Kristus esat mūsu brālis.
   Christ is our Brother.
4. Viņi patīk, kad spīd saule.
   They like when the sun shines.
5. Kristus dziedāja tos, kam bija ticība Viņam.
   Christ healed those who had faith in Him.
6. Mēs runam ar Svēta Gara spēku.
   We speak by the power of the Holy Ghost.
7. Vai tu nožēlo savus grēkus?
   Will you repent of your sins?
8. Vakar mēs ejam uz Liepāju.
   Yesterday we went to Liepāja.
9. Šis pants atteicas uz visiem.
   This scripture relates to everyone.
10. Mūsu vēstījums atnes mieru un gaismu jūsu dzīvēs.
    Our message will bring peace and light into your lives.

E. Conjugation Practice

The following sentences contain unconjugated verbs (bolded). Conjugate them to match their pronouns. The English translation shows what the speaker intends to say. Check your answers.

1. Kristus **saprast**, kā jūs **justies**.
   Christ understands how you feel.
2. Vai Jūs **ticēt** Dievam?
   Do you (formal) believe in God?
3. Es **mīlēt** savu ģimeni.
   I love my family.
4. Dievs **atbildēt** uz maniem jautājumiem caur Svēto Garu.
   God answers my questions through the Holy Ghost.
5. Kā jūs **rast** mieru savā dzīvē?
   How do you find peace in your life?
6. Viņš vakar **atgriezties** mājās.
   He returned home yesterday.
7. Dievs mūs **svētīt** saskaņā ar mūsu paklausību.
   God blesses us according to our obedience.
8. Pravieši mums **mācīt** Dieva gribu.
   Prophets teach us the will of God.
9. **Iet** rīt agrāk uz baznīcu!
   Let's go to church earlier tomorrow!
10. Svētais Gars **apstirpināt** patiesību.
    The Spirit confirms truth.

F. Companion Practice Activities

With your companion, play a game of "Conjugation Battleship." Take a piece of paper and draw a table with six rows and six columns. Write a verb at the top of each column and a personal pronoun at the left of each row, as in the table below:

	ticēt	**domāt**	**saprast**	**mācīt**	**palīdzēt**
es	--		--		
tu					
mēs	X				--
jūs		--			
viņi					

Once the board is drawn, shade in five of the cells to place your ship. To shoot at your companion's word, conjugate a verb for one of the pronouns. For example, if you were to say, "Mēs ticam," your shot would land in the space marked by an X above. The first one to hit all five shaded cells wins.

G. Learning New Verbs

1. Choose three verbs and memorize their conjugations.
2. Have your companion quiz you. Conjugate each verb for each pronoun. Quiz each other a few times each day until you are comfortable using these verbs.
3. Set the verbs you have memorized aside; go back a week later and review them to make sure you have not forgotten them.
4. Repeat this to expand your vocabulary. Use the words you have memorized in sentences.

H. Language Study Plan Activity (*Preach My Gospel*, chapter 7)

1. Using bullet number two under "Memorize Vocabulary and Phrases" (page 129), write down as many unfamiliar verbs as you hear today; then practice writing and conjugating them. Get feedback from your companion and set a goal to use these in upcoming lessons you teach.
2. "Actively Listen": Choose a tense to focus on and listen carefully to how native speakers use that tense. When they say something differently than you would have said, write it down. Imitate the way that the natives talk about events in the past, present, or future.

I. Rapid Conjugation (Person)

With your companion, make a list of verbs that you want to practice conjugating. The first companion chooses a verb and a person (*es, tu, mēs, . . .*); the second companion then conjugates the verb in past, present, and future. Then switch and have the second companion choose a verb and person for the first companion to conjugate in past, present, and future. For example:

Companion 1	**zināt- es.**
Companion 2	es zināju, es zinu, es zināšu. **dzīvot- viņi.**
Companion 1	viņi dzīvoja, viņi dzīvo, viņi dzīvos. **ēst- mēs.**
Companion 2	mēs ēdām, mēs ēdam, mēs ēdīsim. **apsolīt- jūs.**

J. Rapid Conjugation II (Tense)

With your companion, make a list of verbs you want to work on conjugating. From that list, practice conjugating as a companionship. The first companion chooses a verb and a tense (past, present, future), the second companion then conjugates the verb for each person (*es, tu, mēs, jūs, viņi*). Then switch and have the second companion choose a verb and a tense for the first companion to conjugate for each person. For example:

Companion 1	**zināt- present.**
Companion 2	es zinu, tu zini, mēs zinām, jūs zināt, viņi zina. **dzīvot- future.**
Companion 1	es dzīvošu, tu dzīvosi, mēs dzīvosim, jūs dzīvosiet, viņi dzīvos. **ēst- past.**
Companion 2	es ēdu, tu ēdi, mēs ēdām, jūs edāt, viņi ēda. **apsolīt- jūs...**

K. Story Time (Past)

1. Past tense is frequently used when recounting experiences or telling stories. Practice using past tense by teaching your companion five things that Jesus did while He was on the earth.

2. Read through 3 Nephi 11 and write down all the regular past-tense verbs describing Christ's actions. Check your answers. Use these verbs to tell your companion what Christ did in His visit to the Americas.

3. Read Joseph Smith's account of when he first saw the gold plates in JS—H 1:51–52. Retell the story in detail to your companion as if he or she were an investigator, but from a third-person point of view, not the first-person view that Joseph uses. Get feedback from your companion about how clear the story would have been to an investigator.

L. Commitments (Future)

Think of a commitment that you will be extending in an upcoming lesson. With your companion, practice teaching the principle, extending the commitment, and promising blessings. Think about specific blessings that you will promise to the investigator to whom you will extend the commitment. Focus on your use of the future tense.

M. Tenses

1. Teaching the plan of salvation is an excellent way to practice using past, present, and future.
2. Practice using future tense as you set daily goals and past tense as you account for those goals each night.

Verb Prefixes and Synonyms

Examples

Christ promises **to forgive** us of our sins.	Kristus apsola **piedot** mums mūsu grēkus.
By following Jesus Christ we **will be successful**.	Sekojot Jēzum Kristum, mums viss **izdosies**.
When I **moved** to Riga, the branch helped **move** my things.	Kad **pārcēlos** uz Rīgu, draudze man palīdzēja **pārvietot** manas mantas.
Do you **know** how to speak German? I don't **know** how to.	Vai tu **proti** runāt vācu valodā? Es **nezinu** kā.

Explanation

This chapter will explain how prefixes are used with verbs, as well as common verbs and their similar variations.

Prefixes

Prefixes are added to the beginning of verbs and can completely change the verb's meaning. Adding a prefix does not change the way you conjugate verbs. The following chart shows the 12 Latvian prefixes, examples of each, and a general definition of each:

Prefix	Examples			
aiz- *away, behind*	aiziet *to leave*	aizdot *to lend*	aizkavēt *to delay*	aizņemties *to borrow*
ap- *around, about*	apiet *to go around*	aptvert *to grasp*	apzināties *to realize*	apdomāt *to think about*
at- *back*	atvest *to take back*	atdot *to give back*	atbraukt *to travel back*	attiekties *to apply*
ie- *in*	ieiet *to go in*	ietvert *to contain*	ieteikt *to recommend*	ienākt *to come in*
iz- *out, through, thoroughly*	iziet *to go out*	izdot *to hand out, to issue*	izdzīvot *to survive*	izlasīt *to read thoroughly*
ne- *negation*	neiet *to not go*	neredzēt *to not see*	nezināt *to not know*	nekaitināt *to not annoy*
no- *from, down*	nonākt *to come down*	noraidīt *to reject*	noģībt *to faint*	notīrīt *to clean off*
pa- *to do for a little while*	paturēt *to keep*	padoties *to give in*	panest *to carry*	palasīt *to thumb through*
pār- *specific, over, across*	pāriet *to cross over*	pārrunāt *to discuss*	pārdot *to sell*	pārņemt *to take over*
pie- *at, by, next to*	piedot *to forgive*	pielūgt *to worship*	piedzīvot *to experience*	pieņemt *to receive*
sa- *together, infers relationship and connection*	sanākt *to come together*	saņemt *to receive*	sazināties *to communicate*	sarunāt *to agree (upon)*
uz- *on, up*	uzrunāt *to address*	uzdot *to instruct*	uzzināt *to find out*	uzņemties *to take upon oneself*

In the process of learning verbs, it may be helpful to identify and learn different variations of verb prefixes and their definitions. Here are a few examples of how prefixes can change the meaning of the verb:

Prefix	Verb	Meaning	Example
--	iet	to go, to walk	Mēs pēc pusdienām **iesim** uz parku. *We **will go** to the park after lunch.*
uz-	uziet	to go up, to discover, to detect	Es **uzgāju** piecas kļūdas savā vēstulē. *I **discovered** five mistakes in my letter.*
ie-	ieiet	to enter	Mums jātiek kristītiem, lai **ieietu** debesu valstībā. *We must be baptized in order **to enter** the kingdom of God.*
pār-	pāriet	to cross, to cease, to pass	Manas bailes **pārgāja**. *My fears **ceased**.*
ap-	apiet	to walk around, to evade the law	Viņa **apgāja** likumu, bet ne sekas. *She **evaded** the law but not the consequences.*
sa-	tvert	to seize, to embrace, to grasp	**Satver** un izbaudi šo dzīvi! ***Embrace** and enjoy this life!*
ie-	tvert	to include, to contain	"Sludini Manu Evaņģēliju" **ietver** stundas, ko mācīt klausītājiem. Preach My Gospel ***includes** lessons to teach investigators.*
--	turēt	to hold, to keep	Vai tu **turēsi** sabata dienu svētu? *Will you **keep** the Sabbath day holy?*
sa-	turēt	to contain	Mormona Grāmata **satur** evaņģēlija pilnību. *The Book of Mormon **contains** the fulness of the gospel.*
--	ņemt	to take (something)	Vari **ņemt** savu brāli līdzi. *You can **take** your brother with you.*
uz-	ņemties	to take upon oneself (reflexive)	Misionāri palīdz citiem **uzņemties** saistības. *Missionaries help others **take** commitments upon themselves.*
aiz-	ņemt	to be busy	Viņi Ziemassvētku laikā ir **aizņemti**. *They are **busy** during Christmastime.*
--	prast	to know (how to do something)	Dita **prot** runāt četrās valodās. *Dita **can** speak four languages.*
iz-	prast	to comprehend (something)	Ir svarīgi, ka jūsu klausītāji **izprot** ticību. *It's important for your investigators **to comprehend** faith.*
sa-	prast	to understand	Vai mūsu baznīcas sanāksmēs bija kaut kas, ko tu **nesaprati**? *Was there something in our Church meeting that you didn't **understand**?*
--	dot	to give	Rīcības brīvība jeb spēja izvēlēties **deva** mums iespēju pilnveidoties. *Agency, or the ability to choose, **gave** us the opportunity to progress.*
pie-	dot	to forgive	Mums ir jālūdz Dievam, lai Viņš mums **piedotu**. *We have to pray to God in order for Him **to forgive** us.*
pār-	dot	to sell	Lai Rivo būtu pietiekami daudz naudas savai misijai, viņš **pārdeva** savu mašīnu. *So that Rivo would have enough money to go on a mission, he **sold** his car.*
iz-	dot	to give out, to issue, to expend	Četras reizes gadā baznīca **izdod** žurnālu "Liahona." *Four times a year the Church **issues** the journal* Liahona.
--	lasīt	to read	Vai tu **lasīsi** Svētos Rakstus ikdienu gan individuāli, gan kopā ar ģimeni? *Will you **read** the scriptures daily by yourself and with your family?*
iz-	lasīt	to read thoroughly or completely	Es esmu **izlasījusi** Bībeli dažas reizes un es joprojām turpinu mācīties ko jaunu katru reizi, kad to lasu. *I have **completely read** the Bible many times, and still I continue to learn something new every time I read it.*
pār-	lasīt	to read over	Pirms stundas sākuma, Verners ātri **pārlasa** stundiņu. *Before the lesson begins, Verners **skims** through the lesson.*
no-	lasīt	to read out loud	Dace **nolasīja** savu mīļāko pantu un aiz prieka sāka raudāt. *Dace **read** her favorite verse aloud and started crying out of joy.*

Note: The prefix *ne-* can be used in front of any verb, even if it already has another prefix.

Similar Verbs

Many English verbs can be expressed multiple ways in Latvian. The following tables will give examples and explanations for some common verbs that may be confusing.

Verbs for "To Say"

Verb	Example
stāstīt *to tell*	Kurš var mums **pastāstīt** stāstu par Lehija ģimeni? *Who can **tell** us the story of Lehi's family?*
teikt* *to say*	Roberts pagājušo reizi **teica**, ka viņš gribētu uzzināt vairāk par Džozefu Smitu. *Robert **said** last time that he wants to know more about Joseph Smith.*
sacīt* *to say*	Vai tu dzirdi, ko viņi **saka**? *Do you hear what they are **saying**?*
runāt *to speak*	Pravieši **runā** ar Svētā Gara spēku. *Prophets **speak** with the power of the Holy Ghost.*

* *Teikt* is the perfective form and is used in past and future tenses; *sacīt* is the imperfective form and is only used in present.

Verbs for "To Know"

Verb	Example
zināt *to know (a fact)*	Es **zinu**, ka šī baznīca ir patiesa. *I **know** that this Church is true.*
pazīt *to know (a person), to be familiar with*	Vai tu **pazīsti** Elderu Putniņu? *Do you **know** (are you acquainted with) Elder Bird?*
prast *to know how (same as* mācēt*)*	Vai tu **proti** spēlēt klavieres? *Do you **know** how to play the piano?*
mācēt *to know how to do something (same as* prast*)*	Ilona **māk** šūt un adīt drēbes. *Ilona **can (knows how to)** sew and knit clothing.*
saprast *to understand*	Farizeji **nesaprata** Jēzus mācību. *The Pharisees **did not understand** the teachings of Jesus.*

Verbs for "To Ask"

Verb	Example
jautāt *to ask in general*	Es vienmēr **jautāju** saviem klausītājiem, vai viņi nāks uz baznīcu. *I always **ask** my investigators if they will come to church.*
paprasīt *to request, to ask (for permission)*	Mana māsiņa **paprasīja** tētim, vai viņa drīkst nopirkt saldējumu. *My little sister **asked** our dad if she could buy an ice cream.*
lūgt *to plea, to pray*	Ja kādam no jums trūkst gudrības, tas lai to **lūdz** no Dieva. *If any of you lack wisdom, let him **ask** of God. (James 1:5)*
palūgt *to ask for help or a favor*	Linda man **palūdza** novadīt svētdienas skolas stundiņu. *Linda **asked** me to teach the Sunday School lesson.*
vaicāt *to ask (an older form of* jautāt*)*	Ja jūs **vaicāsiet** sirsnīgi un ar patiesu nolūku, jūs varēsiet zināt patiesību par visu! *If you **ask** sincerely, you will know the truth of all things. (Moroni 10:5)*
uzdot jautājumu *to ask a question*	Mēs viņiem **uzdevām** daudz jautājumu. *We **asked** them many questions.*

Verbs for "To Be Able"

Verb	Example
spēt *to be capable of doing something*	Es **nespēju** saprast viņa domu gājienu. *I **cannot** understand his thought process.*
varēt *to be able to (interchangeable with* spēt*)*	Mēs **varam** izdarīt visu, ko Tas Kungs mums pavēl, ja mēs uz Viņu paļaujamies. *We **can** do everything the Lord commands us if we rely on Him.*
drīkstēt *to be allowed to*	Misionāri **nedrīkst** pamest savus pāriniekus. *Missionaries **cannot (are not allowed to)** leave their companions.*

Verbs for "To Touch"

Verb	Example
aiztikt *to touch (general)*	**Neaiztiec**! ***Don't touch that**!*
pieskarties *to touch (fast or gently)*	**Nepieskaries** karstai pannai! ***Don't touch** a hot pan!*
aizskart *to touch (come in contact with)*	Jēzus juta, ka kāds **aizskāra** viņa drēbes. *Jesus felt that someone **touched** His clothes.*
taustīt *to touch, to check something (e.g., temperature)*	**Patausti**, vai ūdens jūrā ir silts! ***Check** if the water in the sea is warm!*

Verbs for "To Move"

Verb	Example
pārvietot *to move something (e.g., object); (transitive)*	Palīdzi man **pārvietot** šo galdu uz citu istabu! *Help me **to move** this table to another room!*
kustēties *to move (body)*	Muskuļi producē siltumu un ļauj mums **kustēties**. *Muscles produce warmth and enable us **to move**.*
kustināt *to move something (e.g., leg); (transitive)*	Prezidents Monsons māk **kustināt** ausis. *President Monson can **wiggle** (**move**) his ears.*
aizkustināt *to move (emotionally)*	Tavs pievēršanās stāsts mani dziļi **aizkustināja**. *Your conversion story **touched** me deeply.*
pārcelties *to move (change places of living)*	Mani vecāki **pārcēlās** uz citu pilsētu. *My parents **moved** to another city.*

Verbs for "To Listen"

Verb	Example
klausīt *to obey*	Es **klausu** Dievam un Viņa baušļiem. *I **obey** God and His commandments.*
uzklausīt *to hear someone out*	Misijas prezidents **uzklausa** visas misionāru problēmas un rūpes. *The mission president **listens** to all missionaries' problems and worries.*
klausīties *to listen to (acc - listen to something, loc - listen to someone)*	Kādu mūziku tev patīk **klausīties**? *What kind of music do you like **to listen** to?*
	Mums ir jāmācās **ieklausīties** rāmajā, klusajā Svētā Gara balsī. *We must learn **to listen** to the still, quiet voice of the Holy Ghost.*
dzirdēt *to hear*	Es **nedzirdu**, ko viņš saka. *I **don't hear** what he's saying.*

Verbs for "To Doubt"

Verb	Example
šaubīties *to doubt (intransitive)*	Es **nešaubos**, ka Dievs man palīdzēs. *I **do not doubt** that God will help me.*
apšaubīt *to doubt something (transitive)*	Mozus **neapšaubīja** Dieva spēku un varenību. *Moses **did not doubt** God's power and majesty.*

Verbs for "To Realize"

Verb	Example
atzīt *to admit, to acknowledge (transitive)*	Jānis **atzina** savu vainu un lūdza piedošanu. *Jānis **admitted** his fault and asked for forgiveness.*
atpazīt *to recognize*	Es **atpazīstu** tikai dažus no cilvēkiem šajā bildē. *I **recognize** only some of the people in this picture.*
apzināties *to realize, to be aware*	Es **apzinos**, ka es nespēju neko paveikt bez Tā Kunga palīdzības. *I **know (am aware)** that I cannot do anything without the Lord's help.*
atzīties *to confess (intransitive)*	Pirmais solis, lai saņemtu grēku piedošanu, ir **atzīties** savos grēkos. *The first step to receive forgiveness is **to confess** your sins.*
aptvert *to realize, to be conscious of, to grasp*	Mēs pat nespējam **aptvert** visas svētības, ko Dievs mums ir devis. *We cannot even **comprehend** all the blessings God has given us.*
saprast *to realize, to understand (see 'Verbs for "To Know"')*	Es tikko **sapratu**, ka esmu aizmirsis(usi) mājās Svētos Rakstus. *I just **realized** that I left the scriptures at home.*

Activities

A. "To Ask"

On a separate piece of paper, fill in the missing word with the correct word for "to ask." Check your answers.

1. Ko Dievs no mums __?
   What does God expect of us?
2. ___ šo jautājumu Ivitai!
   Ask Ivita this question.
3. Jēzus cieta tik ļoti, ka viņš asiņoja katrā porā un___, vai šis slogs nevarētu tikt noņemts no Viņa.
   Jesus suffered so much that He bled at every pore and asked if this burden could not be taken from Him.
4. __ klausītājiem neapspriest savus grēkus!
   Ask investigators not to discuss their sins.
5. Jānis __, "Kā tev šķiet, kāpēc mums vajag nožēlot grēkus?"
   "Why do you think we need to repent?" Janis asked.
6. Kāds vīrs __ Kristum, „Mācītāj, kurš ir augstākais bauslis bauslībā?"
   A man asked Christ, "Master, which is the highest of all the commandments?"

B. Common Errors

The following sentences have bolded and starred errors. Correct and explain the errors to your companion. Check your answers.

1. Viņš **sacīja***, ka Dievs ir žēlīgs.
   He said that God is merciful.
2. Vai tu **zini*** Zani?
   Do you know Zane?
3. Šodien mēs **aprunāsim*** par Džozefu Smitu.
   Today we will talk about Joseph Smith.
4. Es **varu*** spēlēt klavieres.
   I am able to play the piano.
5. Vai jūs **klausīsiet*** mūsu vestījumā?
   Will you listen to our message?
6. Mēs **jautājām*** viņam labus jautājumus.
   We asked him good questions.
7. Es esmu **palasījis*** Mormona Grāmatu un zinu, ka tā ir Dieva vārds.
   I have read the Book of Mormon and know that it is the word of God.
8. **Iesim*** uz Lietuvu!
   Let's go to Lithuania.
9. **Saturiet*** pratā, ka ir pretstats visās lietās.
   Keep in mind that there is opposition in all things.
10. Es **kustināšu*** uz Venstpilu.
    I will move to Ventspils.

C. Error Correction

With your companion, take turns reading the following sentences aloud. Start by giving the English translation and then say the sentence as it is written in Latvian. Then have the other companion identify errors, if any, and restate the sentence correctly. Check your answers.

1. Vai tu pazīsti par Džozefu Smitu?
   Do you know about Joseph Smith?
2. Mormona Grāmata tver Dieva vardu.
   The Book of Mormon contains the word of God.
3. Beigu beigās mums ir jāiztur līdz galam.
   In the end, we have to endure to the end.
4. Es labi aizgulēju.
   I slept well.
5. Jūs labi teicat angļu valodā.
   You speak English well.
6. Mēs zvanījām Edgaram atpakaļ.
   We called Edgar back.
7. Vai tu aizņemsi šo izaicinājumu?
   Will you accept this challenge?
8. Es apzinājos, ka es savā jaunībā biju nomaldījies.
   I recognize that I went astray in my youth.
9. Viņi aizkavēs baznīcu.
   They will be late for church.
10. Es noprotu, ka upuris nes svētības.
    I understand that sacrifice brings blessings.

D. Reading

Read over a section in *Sludini Manu Evaņģēliju* chapter 3, underlining each verb. Look up the meanings in a dictionary for any verb you don't know. In addition, find the verb meaning when different prefixes are added, and see how the prefix effects the meaning. Set a goal to use each new verb you learn. Check your answers.

E. Prefixes

Translate the following sentences into English. Check your answers.

1. Jēzus izpirka visu cilvēku grēkus.
2. Uzmanību! Durvis aizveras.
3. Lūdzu ieslēdz gaismu!
4. Salīdzināsim sēklu ar ticību.
5. Kā pareizi izrunā šo vārdu?
6. Mēs varam sazināties ar Dievu caur lūgšanu.
7. Ienāciet lūdzu!
8. Kā tu iedomājies, kādas būs debesis?
9. Mēs pieredzam grūtas lietas, lai mēs varētu augt.
10. Es svētdien baznīcā uzstājos.

Perfect Tense

Examples

Have you heard of the Book of Mormon?	Vai tu **esi dzirdējis(usi)** par Mormona Grāmatu?
They **have been** to church three times.	Viņi **ir bijuši** baznīcā trīs reizes.
How **long have you believed** in God?	Cik ilgi tu **esi ticējis(usi)** Dievam?
We **have learned** so much.	Mēs **esam mācījušies(ās)** tik daudz.

Explanation

Perfect tense is used to express a completed action, when someone "has/have/had" done something. Perfect tense can be expressed in past, present, future, and conditional. It is formed by conjugating būt according to the subject in nominative and then adding the correct ending.

Nominative Subject	Būt	Verb: Past Stem + Perfect Tense Ending
Es *I*	esmu *have*	redzējis(usi). *seen.*
Viņi *They*	ir *have*	lasījuši(ušas). *read.*

Perfect Tense Endings

Perfect-tense verb endings change according to the subject of the sentence (number and gender):

Regular Verbs*	Sg	Pl
Masculine	-is	-uši
Feminine	-usi	-ušas

Reflexive Verbs*	Sg	Pl
Masculine	-ies	-ušies
Feminine	-usies	-ušās

* If two vowels will be next to each other when adding the ending, add a *j* between the past stem and perfect ending.

Verb		Past Stem		MS Perfect Ending		Perfect Verb
lasīt	→	lasī-	+	-is	=	lasījis

The following chart shows how to form perfect tense for each person in each tense with the verb *lasīt* ("to read"):

	Subject	*būt*	Perfect Verb
Past	Es *I*	biju *had*	lasījis.$_{MS}$ *read*
	Tu *You*	biji *had*	lasījusi.$_{FS}$ *read*
	Mēs *We*	bijām *had*	lasījuši.$_{MP}$ *read*
	Jūs *You*	bijāt *had*	lasījušas.$_{FP}$ *read*
	Viņi *They*	bija *had*	lasījuši.$_{MP}$ *read*
	Viņas *They*	bija *had*	lasījušas.$_{FP}$ *read*

	Subject	*būt*	Perfect Verb
Present	Es *I*	esmu *have*	lasījis.$_{MS}$ *read*
	Tu *You*	esi *have*	lasījis.$_{FS}$ *read*
	Mēs *We*	esam *have*	lasījuši.$_{MP}$ *read*
	Jūs *You*	esat *have*	lasījušas.$_{FP}$ *read*
	Viņi *They*	ir *have*	lasījuši.$_{MP}$ *read*
	Viņas *They*	ir *have*	lasījušas.$_{FP}$ *read*

	Subject	*būt*	Perfect Verb
Future	Es *I*	būšu *will have*	lasījis.$_{MS}$ *read*
	Tu *You*	būsi *will have*	lasījusi.$_{FS}$ *read*
	Mēs *We*	būsim *will have*	lasījuši.$_{MP}$ *read*
	Jūs *You*	būsiet *will have*	lasījušas.$_{FP}$ *read*
	Viņi *They*	būs *will have*	lasījuši.$_{MP}$ *read*
	Viņas *They*	būs *will have*	lasījušas.$_{FP}$ *read*

Note: Perfect tense endings are the same as the past active-participle endings in nominative case. See chapter 25, "Participles."

Past Perfect

Past perfect tense describes an action started and finished in the past. In English this is expressed as "had verbed."

Examples

Man bija bijuši* daudzi pārbaudījumi.
I had had *many trials.*

Tu biji atmaksājis savu parādu, kad tu nopirki jaunu mašīnu.
You had paid *your debt when you bought a new car.*

Pēteris bija saņēmis priesterību no Jēzus.
Peter had received *the priesthood from Jesus.*

***** This ending is matching *pārbaudījumi* (masculine, plural).

Present Perfect

An action that started in the past but may still be continuing is expressed using the present tense. "Have verbed" is used to express this in English.

Examples

Es esmu apspriedies ar savu misijas prezidentu šajā jautajumā.
I have discussed *this matter with my mission president.*

Jūs esat svētīti ar iespēju dalīties evaņģēlijā.
You have been blessed *with an opportunity to share the gospel.*

No kurienes **mēs esam nākuši**?
Where ***have we come*** *from?*

Future Perfect

When an action will start and end in the future, the future tense is used. In English this is expressed as "will have verbed."

Examples

Es būšu kalpojis Latvijā divus gadus.
I ***will have served*** *in Latvia for two years.*

Tu jau **būsi kristījusies,** tādēļ tu varēsi ar mums braukt uz templi.
You will have been baptized, *so you can go with us to the temple.*

Viņi būs mācījušies trīs menešus.
They will have been learning *for three months.*

Conditional Perfect

Conditional perfect is used when an action "would have" started in the past.

Examples

Es būtu pajautājis, bet es aizmirsu.
I would have asked*, but I forgot.*

Viņas nebūtu zinājušas, ko teikt.
They would not have known *what to say.*

Viņi būtu tikuši svētīti līdzīgi Nefijam, bet viņi nepaklausīja.
They would have been *blessed like Nephi, but they didn't obey.*

Activities

A. Conjugation

On a separate piece of paper, conjugate each of the verbs into perfect tense. For each verb, write the conjugations with *es*, *tu*, *mēs*, *jūs*, *viņš*, *viņa*, *viņi*, and *viņas* as the subjects. Then use it in a sentence. Check your answers.

1. būt	4. domāt	7. atcerēties	10. darīt	13. sacīt
2. tikt	5. dzirdēt	8. mācīties	11. sajust	14. lūgt
3. zināt	6. redzēt	9. censties	12. nākt	15. kristīties

B. Fill In the Blank

Complete the sentence by writing the verb in perfect tense on a separate piece of paper according to the verb, gender, and number given in parentheses. Check your answers.

1. Vai tu esi (lūgt-FS), lai uzzinātu, vai šīs lietas ir patiesas?
   Have you prayed to know that these things are true?
2. Vai jūs esat (domāt-MS) par to, kāpēc mēs esam šeit uz zemes?
   Have you thought about why we are here on earth?
3. Es ceru, ka jūs esat (sajust-FP) Dieva mīlestību savā dzīvē.
   I hope you have felt God's love in your life.
4. Dievs ir (teikt-MS), ka nekas netīrs nevar ieiet Viņā Valstībā.
   God has said that nothing unclean can enter His kingdom.
5. Ko mēs šodien esam (darīt-MP)?
   What have we done today?
6. Pravieši ir (liecināt-MP), ka Kristus nāks.
   The prophets have testified that Christ would come.
7. Es esmu (saņemt-FS) daudzas svētības no Dieva.
   I have received many blessings from God.
8. Es zināju, ka es biju (veikt-MS) pareizo izvēli.
   I knew I had made the right choice.

C. Translation

Translate the following sentences using perfect tense. Check your answers.

1. Thousands of people have received a testimony of the Book of Mormon.
2. I had thought that might happen.
3. How has your life changed since we met you?
4. Why has God given us prophets in our day?
5. We believe all that God has revealed.
6. They have become more open to learning.
7. You have lived a long life.
8. You have learned so much.

D. Common Errors

The following sentences have bolded and starred errors. Correct and explain the errors to your companion. Check your answers.

1. **Mums** jau trīs mēnešus **ir*** bijuši pārinieki.
   We have been companions for three months.
2. Vai tu esi **dzirdēji*** par mūsu baznīcu?
   Have you heard about our Church?
3. Kad tu būsi **lūgis***, tad tu saņemsi palīdzību.
   When you have prayed then you will receive help.
4. Kā tu esi **redzējuši*** Dieva roku savā dzīvē?
   How have you seen God's hand in your life?
5. Viņš ir divreiz **izlasījusi*** Mormona Grāmatu.
   He has read the Book of Mormon two times.
6. Kādas ir Jūsu domas par to, ko mēs esam **mācījušies***?
   What are your (formal) thoughts about what we have taught?
7. Vai tu **biji*** bijis Stokholmas templī?
   Have you been to the Stockholm temple?
8. Mēs **ir jālūdz*** katru dienu.
   We have prayed every day.

E. Error Correction

With your companion, take turns reading the following sentences aloud. Start by giving the English translation and then say the sentence as it is written in Latvian. Then have the other companion identify errors, if any, and restate the sentence correctly. Check your answers.

1. Es jau esmu šeit bijuši piecus mēnešus.
   I have been here five months.
2. Vai tu esi nogaršojuši pastu?
   Have you tried spaghetti?
3. Tas Kungs ir aicināja pravieti, lai vadītu Viņa baznīcu.
   The Lord has called a prophet to lead His Church.
4. Ko Jēzus darīja?
   What would Jesus have done?
5. Vai viņas ir kristījuši?
   Have they been baptized?
6. Vai jūs esat dzirdējusi labo ziņu?
   Have you (MP) heard the good news?
7. Man liekas, ka es esmu pieredzējis kaut ko līdzīgi tam.
   I (FS) think that I have experienced something similar to that.
8. Vai tu esi mācījis par desmit baušļus?
   Have you (MS) learned about the Ten Commandments?

F. Language Study Plan Activity

Read the third and fourth bullet points under "Actively Listen" (*Preach My Gospel*, 130). Throughout the day, pay attention to how native speakers use perfect tense, and try to identify why they used them the way they did. Make note of any instances you do not understand, and review them with your companion during your next companion language study.

G. Scriptures

Read Mateja 25:34–40 out loud. Pay special attention to how perfect tense is used:

34 "Tad Ķēniņš sacīs tiem, kas pa labo roku: nāciet šurp, jūs Mana Tēva svētītie, iemantojiet Valstību, kas jums ir sataisīta no pasaules iesākuma.
35 Jo Es biju izsalcis un jūs esat Mani paēdinājuši; Es biju izslāpis un jūs esat Mani dzirdinājuši; Es biju svešinieks un jūs esat Mani uzņēmuši.
36 Es biju pliks un jūs esat Mani apģērbuši; Es biju slims un jūs esat Mani apmeklējuši; Es biju cietumā un jūs esat nākuši pie Manis.
37 Tad taisnie atbildēs Viņam un sacīs: Kungs, kad mēs esam Tevi redzējuši izsalkušu un Tevi paēdinājuši? Vai izslāpušu un Tevi dzirdinājuši?
38 Kad mēs esam Tevi redzējuši kā svešinieku un Tevi uzņēmuši? Vai pliku un Tevi apģērbuši?
39 Kad mēs esam Tevi redzējuši slimu vai cietumā un nākuši pie Tevis?
40 Tad Ķēniņš tiem atbildēs un sacīs: patiesi Es jums saku: ko jūs esat darījuši vienam no šiem Maniem vismazākajiem brāļiem, to jūs esat Man darījuši."

H. Speed Conjugation

Practice quickly conjugating verbs with your companion. This exercise will help you practice conjugating the different perfect tense endings. One companion chooses a verb and a tense. The second companion then conjugates viņš, viņa, viņi, and viņas with that verb in the specified tense. Then switch roles. The following is an example of this activity with the verb mācīties. See how many times you can go back and forth in 60 seconds.

Companion 1	**redzēt- past**
Companion 2	Viņš bija redzējis. Viņa bija redzējusi. Viņi bija redzējuši. Viņas bija redzējušas. **mācīties- present**
Companion 1	Viņš ir mācījies. Viņa ir mācījusies. Viņi ir mācījušies. Viņas ir mācījušās. **zināt- conditional**

Passive Voice

Examples

Through Joseph the fulness of the gospel **was** restored.	Caur Džozefu **tika** atjaunota Jēzus Kristus evaņģēlija pilnība.
You came into the world **to be** tested.	Tu nāci pasaulē, lai **tiktu** pārbaudīts.
Milda **was** forgiven of her sins.	Mildai **tika** piedoti viņas grēki.
Tithing **will be** used to help the poor.	Desmitā tiesa **tiks** izmantota, lai palīdzētu nabagiem.

Explanation

Passive voice is used to emphasize the person or object that receives the action, rather than the person performing the action. (Active voice is used when the subject is performing the action.) This chapter explains how to form sentences using passive voice.

Subject Omission

Occasionally, the subject in nominative case will be omitted from a sentence and the direct object in accusative case will be placed at the beginning of the sentence. This construction is the English passive voice, but not technically Latvian passive voice:

Active Voice	Subject Omission
Mans tēvs mani kristīja manā dzimšanas dienā. *My father baptized me on my birthday.*	Mani kristīja manā dzimšanas dienā. *I was baptized on my birthday.*
Kā cilvēki tevi sauc? *How do people call you?*	Kā tevi sauc? *How are you called?*
Dievs aicināja Džozefu Smitu kļūt par pravieti. *God called Joseph Smith to be a prophet.*	Džozefu Smitu aicināja kļūt par pravieti. *Joseph Smith was called to be a prophet.*

Tikt

Tikt is a helping verb and also translates as "to be" in English. The difference between *būt* and *tikt* is that *būt* describes a state of being and *tikt* describes an action. The following chart shows how *tikt* is conjugated:

Tikt	**Past**		**Present**		**Future**	
	tiku	tikām	tieku	tiekam	tikšu	tiksim
	tiki	tikāt	tiec	tiekat	tiksi	tiksiet
	tika		tiek		tiks	

Adjectives are usually used with *būt* because it describes a state of being. Verbs are used with *tikt* because it describes an action. The following sentences contain both *būt* and *tikt*:

Examples	Explanation
Es **esmu** nelokāms, lai gan es **tieku** kārdināts. *I **am** steadfast, although I **am** tempted.*	*Būt* is used with *nelokāms* because a quality or state of being is being described. ("The kind of person I am.") *Tempted* is not a state of being but is a verb describing an action done to *me*, so passive voice is used.
Viņa **tika** aicināta tāpēc, ka viņa **bija** uzticīga. *She **was** called because she **was** faithful.*	Passive voice is used because the subject is being acted upon; she is being called. *Uzticīga* describes her state of being, so *būt* is used.

Note: It may be helpful to think of *tikt* as "to get" (e.g., "I get tempted" or "She got called").

Tikt + Past Passive Participle

Tikt is used in passive voice and is conjugated according to the person or thing being acted upon. *Tikt* is always paired with a past passive participle; see chapter 25, "Participles." For example:

Subject	*Tikt*	Past Passive Participle
Viņi	tiks	augšāmcelti.
They	*will be*	*resurrected.*

Examples

Tie, kas nožēlos savus grēkus, **tiks** attīrīti caur Kristus veikto Izpirkšanu.
*Those who will forsake their sins **will be** cleansed through the Atonement of Christ.*

Līdz ar apustuļu nāvi, priesterības atslēgas **tika** paņemtas prom no Zemes.
*With the death of the Apostles, priesthood keys **were** taken from the earth.*

Ādams un Ieva **tika** radīti pēc Dieva tēla un līdzības.
*Adam and Eve **were** created in the image and likeness of God.*

* Like *būt*, *tikt* acts as an equal sign, meaning that the adjective ending on the participle must match the subject's ending.

Tapt

Tapt is another form of *tikt.* Both verbs are used the same way. The conjugation chart below can help you recognize when it is used:

Tapt	Past		Present		Future	
	tapu	tapām	topu	topam	tapšu	tapsim
	tapi	tapāt	top	topat	tapsi	tapsiet
	tapa		top		taps	

Activities

A. Identification

In the following paragraph from *Preach My Gospel*, identify where passive voice is being used. Then translate the paragraph into English. Check your answers.

> "Pēc augšāmcelšanās, kad mūsu ķermenis un gars no jauna tiks apvienoti, mēs tiksim atvesti Dieva klātbūtnē, lai tiktu tiesāti. Mēs pilnībā atminēsimies gan savus taisnīgos darbus, gan vainu. Ja būsim nožēlojuši grēkus, mēs saņemsim žēlastību. Mēs tiksim atalgoti par mūsu darbiem un mūsu vēlmēm."

B. Conjugation

In the following sentences, *tikt* in the infinitive form is bolded. On a separate piece of paper, write the correct conjugation of *tikt*. Determine the correct adjective ending to complete the past passive participle, and write that on your paper as well. Then check your answers.

1. Priesterības pilnvaras **tikt** pazaudēt_.
   Priesthood authority was lost.
2. Es **tikt** atbalstīt_ savā lēmumā kristīties.
   I was supported in my decision to be baptized.
3. Austris grib **tikt** saistīt_ ar savu ģimeni.
   Austris wants to be sealed with his family.
4. Lamonijs un viņa tēvs **tikt** pievērst_.
   Lamoni and his father were converted.
5. Ilze **tikt** aicināt_ par skolotāju.
   Ilze will be called to be a teacher.
6. Viņas **tikt** atbrīvot_ no savu grēku nastas.
   They are freed from the burdens of their sins.
7. Glābējs mīl visus cilvēkus un vēlas, lai visi **tikt** glābt_.
   The Savior loves all people and wants them to be saved.
8. Pēc Jēzus nāves evaņģēlija mācības **tikt** sagrozīt_ vai aizmirst_.
   Teachings of the gospel were corrupted or forgotten after Jesus died.
9. Mājas, kas **tikt** balstīt_ uz evaņģēlija principiem, kļūst par svētām vietām.
   Homes, which are based on gospel principles, become holy places.
10. Kristus **tikt** noraidīt_ un sist_ krustā.
    Christ was rejected and hung on the cross.

C. Fill In the Blank

Use the words in parentheses to fill in the blanks on a separate piece of paper. Then translate the rest of the sentence. Check your answers.

1. Viņš __ ___*(was sacrificed)* mūsu dēļ.
2. Ikkatrs __ ___*(are invited)* nākt pie Kristus.
3. Mana liecība __ ___*(is strengthened)* katru dienu.
4. Džozefs Smits __ ___*(was called)* kļūt par pravieti.
5. "Topiet kristīti Manā Vārdā, lai jūs varētu __ ___*(be blessed)*."
6. Mani ___*(was asked)* palīdzēt ar Jauno Vīriešu biedrību.
7. Mēs __ ___*(are saved)* Jēzus Kristus Grēku Izpirkšanas dēļ.
8. Mums misionāru skolā ___*(were taught)* latviešu valodas gramatiku.

D. Translation

Translate the following sentences that use passive voice into either English or Latvian using *tikt*. Check your answers.

1. Es tieku stiprināta caur savu cerību Kristū.
2. Jēzus Kristus baznīca ir tikusi atjaunota.
3. Mums jātiek saprastiem, lai efektīvi mācītu.
4. Mēs stāvēsim Dieva priekšā, lai tiktu tiesāti.
5. Vīzija tika atklāta Džozefam Smitam.
6. Our investigator will be baptized this week on Saturday.
7. Their questions are answered through prayer and study.
8. The Book of Mormon has been translated into many languages.
9. The truth is confirmed though the Holy Ghost.
10. I testify that our prayers are heard.

E. Changing from Passive to Active Voice

For each of the sentences in activity D, practice changing the passive voice to active voice. The person or thing performing the action (the subject) is given below. Check your answers.

1. Jesus Christ
2. Joseph Smith
3. Investigators
4. God
5. Heavenly Father and His Son
6. Branch president
7. The Holy Ghost
8. Our Church
9. The Holy Ghost
10. God

F. Changing from Active to Passive Voice

The following sentences are written in active voice. Rewrite the sentences so they are expressed in passive voice using *tikt.* To continue practicing, have one companion say a sentence in active voice and let the other companion restate the sentence using passive voice. Then switch roles. Check your answers.

1. The prophet called us to serve our missions in Latvia.
2. Members offer their testimonies during sacrament meeting.
3. Agita will introduce two new investigators in Sunday School.
4. Mankind will not lose the power of God from the earth again
5. Our heavenly parents sent us to earth to learn and grow.
6. Joseph Smith found the gold plates in the ground.
7. Jesus gave John the Baptist authority to baptize.
8. Wicked people killed the Apostles.
9. God saved Alma and Amulek from death.
10. She will show him the Book of Mormon.

G. Common Errors

The following sentences have bolded and starred errors. Correct and explain the errors to your companion. Check your answers.

1. Alberts un Dainis tika **aicināts*** būt par misionāriem.
   Alberts and Dainis were called to be missionaries.
2. Mormona Grāmata **izlasīja*** daudzas reizes.
   The Book of Mormon was read many times.
3. Jums jātiek **attrīrīti*** no grēkiem, lai dzīvotu ar Dievu.
   You (pl.) must be cleansed of sin in order to live with God.
4. Pravietis **ir*** sadzirdēts visā pasaulē.
   The prophet was heard in the whole world.
5. Kristoties jums **tikt*** piedotas jebkādas nešķīstības.
   By being baptized, you (formal) will be forgiven of any uncleanliness.
6. Viņa tiek ļoti **svētības*** savas ticības dēļ.
   She is given huge blessings because of her faith.
7. Ģimenes tiek **saistītes*** kopā mūžīgi.
   Families are sealed together forever.
8. Man tiks **atklāts*** visa patiesība.
   All truth will be revealed to me.
9. Jēzus Otrās Atnākšanas laikā evaņģēlijs **tikt pieņemti***.
   The gospel will be accepted at Jesus's Second Coming.
10. Maldīgi uzskati tika **pasniegts*** kā patiesība.
    False views were offered as truth.

H. Error Correction

With your companion, take turns reading the following sentences aloud. Start by giving the English translation and then say the sentence as it is written in Latvian. Then have the other companion identify errors, if any, and restate the sentence correctly. Check your answers.

1. Tie, kas izvēlas paklausīt, tikt svētīti.
   Those who choose to obey are blessed.
2. Derības tiek noslēgt caur priekšrakstiem.
   Covenants are made through ordinances.
3. Baznīcas vadītāji tika publiski atbalstīts baznīcā.
   Church members are sustained publicly at church.
4. Praviešus ir aicina un izvēlas.
   Prophets are called and chosen.
5. Tie, kas tic Viņam un nožēlo grēkus, tiek atpestīts.
   Those who believe in Him and repent are saved.
6. Gavēņa ziedojumus tiek lietotus, lai palīdzētu nabadzīgiem cilvēkiem.
   Fast offerings are used for helping the poor.
7. Augšāmcelti būtni vairs netiks pakļauti slimībām, sāpēm, un nāvei.
   Resurrected beings won't be subject to sickness, pain, or death anymore.
8. Svētajos Rakstos Dieva iecere ir saukt par laimes ieceri.
   In the scriptures God's plan is called the plan of happiness.
9. Caur Kristu tikt pārvarētas gan laicīgās, gan garīgās nāves sekas.
   The consequences of physical and spiritual death were overcome with Christ.
10. Mēs tiks atalgoti par mūsu darbiem un mūsu vēlmēm.
    We will be rewarded for our works and our desires.

I. Companion Activity

With your companion, take turns asking and answering the following questions using passive voice constructions. Ask each other for feedback on how to improve.

1. Kāpēc evaņģēlijs tiek pasludināts?
   Why is the gospel preached?
2. Kā mēs varam tikt piedoti?
   How can we be forgiven?
3. Kas tiks mācīts baznīcā?
   What will be taught at church?
4. Kur uz Zemes ir atrodami baznīcas locekļi?
   Where on earth are Church members found?
5. Kādas svētības saņem tie, kas tiek kristīti?
   What blessings are received by those who are baptized?
6. Kā pravietis tiek izvēlēts?
   How is the prophet chosen?
7. Kas man ir jādara, lai es tiktu glābts(a)?
   What do I have to do to be saved?
8. Ko tas nozīmē, ka mēs tiksim svētīti?
   What does it mean that we will be blessed?

J. Teaching Activity

Use the pictures at the beginning of the Book of Mormon to practice introducing the Book of Mormon, with your companion, to someone you will meet today. Discuss possible uses of passive voice and use them in your explanation.

K. Scripture Activity

Read Mosiah 18:16–17 out loud, paying special attention to the passive voice. Then practice applying these verses to your companion, acting as if he or she is one of your investigators. Think of one of your investigators that could benefit from hearing these verses, and make plans about when you will teach them.

> **16** Un tādā veidā viņš kristīja katru, kas devās uz to vietu Mormonu; un pēc skaita viņi bija ap divi simti un četrām dvēselēm; jā, un viņi tapa kristīti Mormonas ūdeņos un tika piepildīti ar Dieva labvēlību.
> **17** Un no tā laika turpmāk viņi tika saukti par Dieva baznīcu jeb par Kristus baznīcu. Un notika, ka jebkurš, kas tika kristīts ar Dieva spēku un pilvarām, tika pieskaitīs Viņa baznīcai.

Adverbs

Examples

Marta **entirely** forgot about our meeting.	Marta **galīgi** aizmirsa par mūsu tikšanos.
I **strongly** and **often** pray for my family.	Es **stipri** un **bieži** lūdzu par savu ģimeni.
The dog barks **loudly** every time we visit Skaidrite.	Suns **skaļi** rej katru reizi, kad mēs apciemojam Skaidrīti.
She **quickly** ran down the stairs.	Viņa **ātri** noskrēja lejā pa kāpnēm.

Explanation

Adverbs are used to describe or modify verbs, adjectives, and other adverbs. They answer the questions "where," "when," and "how." They do not decline because they are used with verbs, not nouns.

Forming Adverbs from Adjectives

Adverbs are formed by adding the suffix *-i* and occasionally *-u* or *-am/-ām* to the end of an adjective stem (remove the *-s*). For example:

Adjective	Adjective Stem		Adverb Suffix		Adverb
skaists *beautiful*	skaist-	+	-i	→	**skaisti** *beautifully*
ātrs *fast*	ātr-	+	-i	→	**ātri** *quickly*
dusmīgs *anger*	dusmīg-	+	-i	→	**dusmīgi** *angrily*
tāls *far, distant*	tāl-	+	-u	→	**tālu** *far*
lēns *slow*	lēn-	+	-ām	→	**lēnām** *slowly*

Adverbs are typically expressed directly before the verb they modify or at the end of the sentence.

Examples

Dievs mūs **ļoti** mīl.
*God loves us **very** much.*

Mums ir jābut tīriem, kas panākams **vienīgi** caur paklausību.
*We have to be clean, which is achieved **only** though obedience.*

Viņa **klusu** dzīvoja pēc evaņģēlija.
*She **quietly** lived the gospel.*

Ja tu **sirsnīgi** lasīsi svētos rakstus, tu saņemsi liecību par tiem!
*If you **sincerely** read the scriptures, you will receive a testimony about them.*

Comparitives and Superlatives

Adverbs, like adjectives, can be comparatives. The suffix *-āk* is added to the stem without an adjective ending.

Adverb Stem		Comparative Suffix		Adverb
skaist-	+	-āk	→	**skaistāk** *more beautifully*
ātr-	+	-āk	→	**ātrāk** *more quickly*
dusmīg-	+	-āk	→	**dusmīgāk** *angrier*
tāl-	+	-āk	→	**tālāk** *farther*
lēn-	+	-āk	→	**lēnāk** *slower*

The prefix *vis-* can also be added to the adverb to make it stronger. See chapter 12, "Comparatives and Superlatives."

Examples

Vislabāk ir pašam pazemoties Dieva priekšā, nevis tikt piespiestam pazemoties.
*The **best** is to humble yourself in front of God, not to be humbled.*

Visbiežāk uzdotais jautājums mums ir, "Kas ir Mormona Grāmata?"
*The **most common** question asked us is "What is the Book of Mormon?"*

Other Adverbs

Some adverbs are not formed from adjectives and thus do not follow the above rules. Here are a few examples:

Pat

Pat (not *pats)* is used to emphasize verbs and can express the English word "even."

Examples

Esi pateicīgs **pat** tad, kad dzīvē iet grūti.
*Be grateful **even** when life is hard.*

Es **pat** nevaru iedomāties, kā būtu dzīvot bez evaņģēlija
*I cannot **even** imagine what it would be like to live without the gospel.*

Gan

Gan is commonly used for emphasis and has a broad meaning. It can mean "totally," "really," "indeed," or "however."

Examples

Viņu ideja **gan** bija laba.
*Their idea **really** was good.*

Tu nemaz neesi lasījis. Es **gan** lasīju!
*You have not read at all. I **totally** have!*

Pēterim **gan** pašam jāizlemj, vai viņš vēlas kristīties.
*Peteris must **certainly** choose for himself whether he wants to get baptized.*

Location Adverbs

These are some of the adverbs used to answer the questions *kur? uz kurieni?* and *no kurienes*?

tur *there*	šeit *here*	tālu *far*	nekur *nowhere*	apakšā *below*	vidū *middle*
ārā *outside*	lejā *down*	augšā *above*	priekšā *in front of*	atpakaļ *back*	tuvu *close*

Time Adverbs

Time adverbs answer the question *kad?* Here are some examples:

tad *then*	jau *already*	sen *long ago*	brīžiem *sometimes*	arvien *more*	vienmēr *always*
tagad *now*	tūlīt *immediately*	reiz *once*	dažreiz *sometimes*	šad *now*	nekad *never*

Placement Adverbs

Placement adverbs answer the questions *kā?* and *kādā veidā?* Here are a few common examples:

ātri *quickly*	divatā *couple (two people)*	nejauši *accidentally*	pēkšņi *suddenly*	lēni *slowly*
tiešām *really*	tāpat *likewise*	vienkārši *simply*	jauki *lovely*	veiksmīgi *successfully*

Measuring Adverbs

Measuring adverbs answer the questions *cik? cik lielā?* and *cik lielā mērā?* Here are a few common examples:

daudz	gandrīz	reti	gluži	diezgan	ļoti	tik	visai
many	*almost*	*rarely*	*really*	*not really*	*really*	*so*	*quite*

Activities

A. Forming Adverbs

Form an adverb from each of the adjectives given below. Then write a sentence using the adverb. Ask your companion, your teacher, or a member to correct your sentences and help you know how to improve. Check your answers.

1. vienīgais *the only*
2. tumšs *dark*
3. bēdīgs *sad*
4. lēns *slow*
5. pacietīgs *patient*
6. nejaušs *accidental/random*
7. slinks *lazy*
8. stingrs *firm/strict*
9. bezgalīgs *infinite*
10. patīkams *pleasant*

B. Identify the Adverb

Find the adverb and write it on a different piece of paper; then translate the sentence into English. Check your answers.

1. Vienīgi caur Glābēja labvēlību mēs varam kļūt tīri no grēka.
2. Ir ļoti būtiski lasīt, apdomāt un lūgt par Mormona Grāmatu.
3. Dievs atjaunoja gadsimtiem ilgi zudušo Jēzus Kristus evaņģēliju.
4. Kādēļ ir tik svarīgi, lai tu kristītos un saņemtu Svēto Garu?
5. Ievērojot Gudrības Vārdu, es daudz labāk izprotu garīgās patiesības.
6. Īpaši smagus grēkus mēs izsūdzam baznīcas vadītājiem.
7. Uzticīgi pildi savu aicinājumu!
8. Mēs apsolām vienmēr būt par Dieva lieciniekiem.
9. Abiem vecākiem kopīgi jāmāca bērni.
10. Dievs apsola, ka pastāvīgi mūs vadīs.

C. Translation

On a separate sheet of paper, translate each of the following sentences. Check your answers.

1. I like teaching a lot.
2. I know our investigators well.
3. I pray daily to have the Spirit.
4. We taught the gospel clearly and to the point.
5. Renars suddenly stood up and left the room.
6. We should courageously follow the guidance of the Spirit.
7. We should attend the temple regularly.
8. God blesses us temporally and spiritually.
9. They want our investigators to feel comfortable.
10. You (pl.) are greatly appreciated.

D. Fill In the Blank

Use an adverb to complete the sentence. English translations may not be exact. Check your answers.

1. __ grūtību laikā mēs varam būt līksmi un slavēt Dievu.
   Even in affliction we can be joyous and praise God.
2. Dzīvojot pēc evaņģēlija, mūsu ģimenes attiecības kļūst __ tuvākas un tuvākas.
   By living the gospel, our family relationships become (more) closer and closer.
3. Zaks __ mācās ķīmiju, lai atrastu labu darbu.
   Zach dilligently studies chemistry to find a good job.
4. Tikties divpadsmitos būtu __ __.
   Meeting at 12 would be even better.
5. Lūdzu __ __ __ izskaidro man, ko nozīmē ticība!
   Please explain to me what faith means, word for word.
6. Šodien ir __ karsts!
   Today is very hot!
7. Vakar es lūdzu __ nekā jebkad iepriekš.
   Yesterday I prayed differently than ever before.
8. Es __ gavēju, lai saņemtu palīdzību no Dieva.
   I humbly fasted in order to receive help from God.
9. Gundega __ piekrita uzstāties baznīcā.
   Gundega willingly agreed to speak in church.
10. Aivars __ brauca uz baznīcu ar savu velosipēdu.
    Aivars rode his bike a long time to church.

E. Common Errors

The following sentences have bolded and starred errors. Correct and explain the errors to your companion. Check your answers.

1. Es **neseni*** atradu savas vecmāmiņas dienasgrāmatu.
   I recently found my grandma's journal.
2. Mēs **svinīgiem*** apsolām uzņemties Jēzus Kristus Vārdu.
   We solemnly promise to take the name of Jesus Christ upon us.
3. Mēs **regulārs*** atjaunojam derības, ko esam noslēguši kristoties.
   We regularly renew our covenents that we made at baptism.
4. Lilita **drosmīga*** liecināja par Jēzus Kristus Grēku Izpirkšanu.
   Lilita testified courageously of the Atonement of Jesus Christ.
5. Nefijs **pilnīgu*** piedeva saviem brāļiem visu, ko viņi bija darījuši.
   Nephi completely forgave his brothers everything they had done.
6. Man tiek dota iespēja uzstāties baznīca **biežam***.
   I am given the opportunity to speak in church often.
7. Katru dienu mums **cītīgs*** jālasa **Svētos Rakstos**.
   Every day we must read the scriptures diligently.
8. Mums **vairāk*** nav laika uzkavēties.
   We don't have any more time to stay.
9. Viņi dzīvo **netāli*** no Jelgavas.
   They don't live far from Jelgava.
10. Mans brālis piektdien **negaidīts*** mani apciemoja.
    My brother unexpectedly visited me on Friday.

F. Error Correction

With your companion, take turns reading the following sentences aloud. Start by giving the English translation and then say the sentence as it is written in Latvian. Then have the other companion identify errors, if any, and restate the sentence correctly. Check your answers.

1. Vai tu atceries dienu, kad tu tiki kristīts(a) vēl?
   Do you still remember the day you were baptized?
2. Esmu pietiekami skumjas redzējusi savā mužā.
   I have seen enough sadness in my life.
3. Baznīcas locekļi īslaicīga dzīvoja pēc daudzsievības.
   Church members temporarily practiced polygamy.
4. Man steidzams vajag runāt ar Rihardu.
   I urgently need to speak with Rihards.
5. Ivars visdrīzākais drīz dosies misijā.
   Ivars will possibly leave very soon on his mission.
6. Mēs nevaram kļūt pilnīgiem vienā dienā, bet gan pakāpenisks.
   We can't become perfect in one day, but we can gradually.
7. "Rīkojies taisns, spried taisnīgs un dari labu nepārtraukts."
   "Deal justly, judge righteously, and do good continually." (Almas 41:14)
8. Es cenšos precīzs sekot katram pamudinājumam no Svētā Gara.
   I try to exactly follow every prompting of the Holy Ghost.
9. Viņš grib mācīties par evaņģēliju, īpaši par dzīvi pēc nāves.
   He wants to learn more about the gospel, especially about life after death.
10. Pamatīgs apgūsti doktrīnas, ko tu mācīsies!
    Thoroughly learn the doctrines you will teach.

G. Companion Activity

Ask and answer the following questions with your companion. Make sure you use adverbs in all of your answers. After each answer, evaluate whether you could use that sentence in a teaching situation that you have coming up.

Example

Kā mums vajadzētu izturēties vienam pret otru?
How should we treat others?

Mums vajadzētu laipni izturēties vienam pret otru.
We need to treat others kindly.

1. Kā mēs lūdzam?
   How do we pray?
2. Kā mums vajadzētu strādāt?
   How should we work?
3. Kā viņa runā?
   How is she speaking?
4. Kā mums vajadzētu nožēlot grēkus?
   How should we repent?
5. Kā mēs lasām Svētos Rakstus?
   How do we read the scriptures?
6. Kā mēs sniedzam liecību?
   How do we bear testimony?
7. Kā mums vajadzētu sekot Kristum?
   How should we follow Christ?
8. Kā mēs paklausām?
   How do we obey?
9. Kā mums vajadzētu maksāt desmito tiesu?
   How should we pay tithing?
10. Kā Jēzus paveica Grēku Izpirkšanu?
    How did Jesus complete the Atonement?

H. Writing

In Latvian, write the story of Joseph Smith's First Vision in your own words. For every verb in the story (praying, walking, talking, etc.), use an adverb to describe how Joseph did it. Ask a native to help correct errors and make plans to use some of the adverbs you wrote the next time you teach about Joseph Smith.

I. Scripture Activity

Read the following verses out loud. Pay close attention to any adverbs and write a list of the ones you find on a piece of paper. Then write a sentence using each of the adverbs on your list.

Jēkaba Grāmata 5:55	Almas Grāmata 9:24	Helamana Grāmata 12:8	M&D 46:5	M&D 90:24
Mosijas Grāmata 24:15	Almas Grāmata 30:17	Moronija Grāmata 7:36	M&D 88:78	Džozefs Smits—Vēsture 1:15

Prepositions

Examples

Teach **from** your heart and **with** the Holy Ghost.	Māci **no** savas sirds un **ar** Svētā Gara spēku!
The Savior invited all to come **unto** Him.	Glābējs aicina visus nākt **pie** Viņa.
Juris is sitting **next to** the investigators.	Juris sēž **blakus** klausītājiem.
Prophets **since** the world's beginning have testified **about** Jesus.	Pravieši **kopš** pasaules pirmsākumiem ir liecinājuši **par** Jēzu.

Explanation

Prepositions are words that help explain actions, nouns, and relationships. A preposition would be used to fill the blank in the sentence "The dragon flew ___ the clouds." The object being affected by the preposition (e.g., clouds) is known as a prepositional object. Following are some general preposition rules:

- All **plural** prepositional objects decline into **dative** case.
- Nouns following prepositions change case depending on the preposition used. They can force accusative, genitive, or dative.
- The definitions given for prepositions are fairly general because the meaning changes depending on context and prepositions usually do not translate directly.
- Prepositions never go at the end of a sentence.
- They often answer both physically or metaphorically the questions "how," "when," "where," and "which."
- When the preposition is acting on a clause, replace the clause with a pronoun to express the entire clause. See chapter 13, "*Kas, Kurš, Kāds*."

Accusative Prepositions

The following prepositions force singular prepositional objects into accusative and plural prepositional objects into dative.

Preposition	Explanation	Example
ap/apkārt *around*	Used physically (apkārt) or to estimate (ap).	Mēs apgājām **apkārt** mūsu mājai. *We went **around** our house.*
		Tiksimies **ap** vieniem. *We will meet **around** one.*
ar *with, by means of*	"By means of" is instrumental case.	**Ar** mazām un vienkāršām lietām. ***By** small and simple things.*
		Vai tu šosvētdien **ar** mums kopā apmeklēsi baznīcu? *Will you attend church **with** us this Sunday?*
caur *through*	Both physical and metaphorical.	Dievs runā **caur** praviešiem. *God speaks **through** prophets.*
		Cilvēks var tikt izglābts **caur** ticību Jēzum Kristum. *Man, **through** faith in Christ, can be saved.*
gar *along [side of]*	Usually only physical.	Mēs staigājām **gar** pludmali. *We walked **along** the beach.*
		Uzmanīgi staigā **gar** šo malu! *Carefully step **along** this edge.*
pa *at, through, on, by means of, by*	Defines a place where an action occurrs.	Mēs staigājām **pa** ielu. *We walked **on** the street.*
		Viņi iet **pa** šauro jo šauru taku. *They are going **on** the straight and narrow path.*
par *about*	Rarely used as "for."	Vēl viena liecība **par** Jēzu Kristu. *Another testament **about** Jesus Christ.*
		Mēs pateicamies **par** pravieti. *We are thankful **for** a prophet.*
pār *over, across*	Both physical and metaphorical.	Sātanam nav varas **pār** tevi. *Satan doesn't have power **over** you.*
		Es pārgāju **pār** tiltu. *I crossed **over** the bridge.*

pret *against*	Used especially with emotions.	Jēzum ir mīlestība **pret** mums. *Jesus has love **for** us.*
		Nenostājies **pret** mani! *Don't go **against** me.*
starp *between*	If used between two things, both are affected.	Lūgšana ir saziņa **starp** Dievu un cilvēku. *Prayer is communication **between** God and man.*
		Mums ir spēja izvēlēties **starp** labu un ļaunu. *We have the ability to choose **between** good and evil.*
uz *to, towards*	Do not confuse with the genitive *uz,* which means "on."	Mēs ejam **uz** baznīcu. *We go **to** church.*
		Dievs atbild **uz** lūgšanām. *God answers (**to**) prayers.*

Genitive Prepositions

Genitive prepositions force genitive case when combined with singular prepositional objects, and they force dative case when combined with plural prepositional objects:

Preposition	Explanation	Example
aiz *behind*	Can mean physically behind, a cause or reason, or a place of connection.	Viņš ir **aiz** tevis. *He is **behind** you.*
		Viņa smējās **aiz** prieka. *She laughed **with** joy.*
ārpus *outside of*	Usually only physical.	Tas ir **ārpus** mūsu rajona. *That is **outside** of our area.*
bez *without*	Often used with time.	Šis stāsts ir **bez** gala. *This story is **without** end.*
kopš *since*	Used just as in English.	Es esmu bijis baznīcas loceklis jau **kopš** bērnības. *I have been a Church member **since** childhood.*
no *from*	Can mean "from," or to make something "out of" something.	Es esmu **no** Amerikas. *I am **from** America.*
		Es uztaisīju šo **no** sniega. *I made this **out of** snow.*
pēc *after*	Used in time, to long/desire "after" something, or to go "after" something.	Mēs ēdīsim **pēc** studēšanas. *We will eat **after** studying.*
pie *next to, onto*	Used when one thing is next to another or when something is stuck onto another.	Baznīca atrodas **pie** parka. *The church is **by** the park.*
		Es pielīmēju bildi **pie** sienas. *I glued the picture **to** the wall*
pirms *before*	Used when one thing occurs before another; also use in sense of time ("ago").	Viņš kalpoja **pirms** manis. *He served **before** me.*
		Mēs ēdām **pirms** stundas. *We ate an hour **ago**.*
priekš *before, for*	Taken from Russian. Only means "for" in about 1/3 of English uses.	Dari to **priekš** manis! *Do that **for** me.*
uz *on*	Do not confuse with the accusative *uz,* which means "to/towards."	Nesēdi **uz** galda! *Don't sit **on** the table.*
virs *above, on top of*	Generally not physically touching "on top of" but simply over.	Tieši **virs** savas galvas. *Exactly **over** one's head.*
zem *under*	Generally directly under.	**Zem** gultas nav briesmoņu. *There are no monsters **under** the bed.*

Genitive Postpositions

Additionally, there are two genitive postpositions which come after (post) the noun they affect:

Postposition	Explanation	Example
dēļ *because of*	Used when someone does something "for" us.	Jēzus nomira mūsu **dēļ**. *Jesus died **for** us.*
labad *because of, for the good of*	Most commonly seen in the scriptures.	Jēzus cieta mūsu **labad**. *Jesus suffered **on** our **behalf**.*

Dative Prepositions

All prepositions force dative case when the prepositional object is plural. The following chart shows prepositions that force dative case even with a singular prepositional object:

Preposition	Explanation	Example
līdz *until, by*	Both definitions are related to time.	Ēdīsim **līdz** desmitiem. *We will eat **until** 10.*
līdzi *"withly," along*	Meaning "together" or "at the same time." Someone with something or vice versa.	Nāc man **līdzi**! *Come **with** me.*
blakus *next to*	Physical location.	Rihards dzīvo **blakus** baznīcai. *Rihards lives **next to** the church.*
		Sēdi man **blakus**! *Sit **next to** me.*
cauri *"throughly"*	Completely "through," similar to *caur*.	Mēs ceļojām **cauri** mežam. *We traveled **through** the forest.*
pāri *overly*	Completely "over," similar to *pār*.	Baznīca ir **pāri** tiltam. *The church is **over** the bridge.*
pretī *"againstly"*	Completely "against," similar to *pret*.	Nerunā man **pretī**! *Don't argue with me.*
		Mēs tiksimies **pretī** Makdonaldam. *We will meet **across** from McDonald's.*
garām *"alongly"*	Usually only physical.	Mēs gājām **garām** veikalam. *We passed a store.*

Note: When dative prepositions are used with a pronoun, they become postpositions. This means they come after the pronoun that is affected. *Līdz* is an exception and is always a preposition.

Preposition Combinations

Verb + Preposition

Verbal phrases often use a particular verb + preposition combination. Try to learn these as you learn and hear verbs. Latvian dictionaries are a great resource to learn phrases or expressions that involve prepositions. Here are some examples:

piederēt pie *belong to a category/class*	atbildēt uz (acc) *to answer to*	lūgt par *to pray for*	aicināt par *to call (someone as something)*	tikt galā ar *to deal with*
neskatoties uz (acc) *regardless of*	paļauties uz *rely on*	kļūt par *become*	izvairīties no *to avoid*	glābt no *to save from*
noņemt no *to take from*	atbrīvoties no *to free yourself of*	attālināties no *to distance oneself from*	atteikties no *to refuse*	izliet pār *to pour over*
norādīt uz (acc) *to point at*	novest pie *to lead to*	vadīties pēc *to follow after*	atšķirties ar (ko) *to be different (in what way)*	Koncentrēties uz (gen) *to concentrate on*

Activities

A. Translate

On a separate piece of paper, translate the following sentences with bolded prepositions. Check your answers.

1. The Book of Mormon testifies **about** Christ.
2. What did you learn **from** this scripture?
3. Express your love **toward** God and others.
4. We must endure **to** the end.
5. Go forward **with** faith in Christ.
6. Let's walk **around (on)** the park.
7. We all need God's mercy **because** of our sins.
8. There really is life **after** death.
9. **Little by little** we improve each day.
10. Faith **without** works is dead.

B. Fill in the blank

On a separate piece of paper, write the preposition that would complete each sentence. Check your answers.

1. Nefijs bija dzimis __ krietniem vecākiem.
   Nephi was born of (from) goodly parents.
2. Policija satvēra viņu ___ matiem.
   The police grabbed him (by) the hair.
3. __ mazām un vienkāršām lietām.
   By (with) small and simple things.
4. Kas notika ___ Kristus nāves?
   What happened (after) Christ's death?
5. Jūs varat lasīt ___ Kristu Mormona Grāmatā.
   You can read (about) Christ in the Book of Mormon.
6. Lūdzu, paņem ____ maizi!
   Please bring the bread with you (along).
7. Intīmās attiecības ____ likumīgas laulības nav harmonijā ar Dieva plānu.
   Intimate relationships (outside) of marriage are not in harmony with God's plan.
8. Šis ir viens __ maniem mīļākajiem pantiem.
   This is one of (from) my favorite verses.

C. Prepositional Object

Decline the prepositional object in parentheses to match the preposition. Check your answers.

1. Grāmata ir uz (galds).
   The book is on the table.
2. Tiksimies ap (viens)
   Let's meet around one.
3. Mēs mācām ar baznīcas (locekļi).
   We teach with Church members.
4. Vai tu lūgsi no (sirds)?
   Will you pray from your heart?
5. Laulība starp (vīrietis) un (sieviete) ir Dieva noteikta.
   Marriage between a man and a woman is ordained of God.
6. Mēs gājām cauri (mežš).
   We went through the forest.
7. Vai tu vari man palīdzēt ar (šis)?
   Can you help me with this?
8. Viņi piektdien brauks uz (Liepāja).
   They will be traveling Friday to Liepāja.
9. Mēs dzīvojām ar (Dievs) pirms (šī dzīve).
   We lived with God before this life.
10. Dievs radīja šo zemi (mēs) dēļ.
    God created this earth for us.

D. Common Errors

The following sentences have bolded and starred errors. Correct and explain the errors to your companion. Check your answers.

1. Paldies **priekš*** visu, ko jus darat.
   Thank you for all that you do.
2. Vai tu tici **iekš Dieva***?
   Do you believe in God?
3. Mēs rītdien iesim **uz Santu***.
   We will go to Santa's tomorrow.
4. Mēs mācīsimies **soli pa soli***.
   Step by step we will learn.
5. **Bez apustuļi*** uz Zemes, mācība tika izmainīta.
   Without the Apostles on the earth, the doctrine was changed.
6. Man patīk liecināt **par Kristum***.
   I like to testify of (about) Christ.
7. Mums jādzīvo **saskaņā uz*** Dieva baušļiem.
   We must live according to (with) the commandments of God.
8. Gavēšana ir cieši saistīta **ar lūgšana***.
   Fasting is closely connected with prayer.
9. Kristus baznīca tika atjounota **caur Džozefs Smits***.
   Christ's Church was restored through Joseph Smith.
10. Atslēgas ir **blakus ledusskapis***.
    The keys are next to the fridge.

E. Error Correction

With your companion, take turns reading the following sentences aloud. Start by giving the English translation and then say the sentence as it is written in Latvian. Then have the other companion identify errors, if any, and restate the sentence correctly. Check your answers.

1. Ir laiks priekš mums doties.
   It's time for us to go.
2. Nāc man līdz!
   Come with me.
3. Mūsu baznīca ir saukta Pēdējo Dienu Svēto Jēzus Kristus Baznīcu.
   Our Church is called The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints.
4. No to, ko mēs zinām par tavas pieredzes, mēs domājam, ka tu esi stipra.
   From what we know about your experiences, we think you are strong.
5. Kristus atjaunoja Savu baznīcu mums dēļ.
   Christ restored His Church for us.
6. Dievs sūtīja mūs uz šīs Zemes.
   God sent us to this earth.
7. Mēs varam tikt attirīti caur kristīšanās.
   We can become clean through baptism.
8. Es esmu pateicīgs priekš jūsu palīdzības.
   I am thankful for your help.
9. Baznīca ir pāri ielu no Rimi.
   The church is across the street from Rimi.
10. Priesterība nāk no Dievs.
    The priesthood comes from God.

F. Nightly Planning

Speak Latvian with your companion during your nightly planning. Discuss where you will be going and who you will be meeting with the next day. Use the appropriate prepositions in your discussion. Ask your companion for feedback and help.

G. The First Vision

Read and memorize the following account. Pay attention to the prepositions used and the cases that they force.

> "Es ieraudzīju gaismas stabu, spožāku par sauli tieši virs savas galvas, kas pakāpeniski nolaidās līdz krita man pāri... Kad gaisma apstājās virs manis, es ieraudzīju divas Personas, stāvam virs manis gaisā, kuru spožumu un slavu nav pat iespējams aprakstīt. Viena no viņām uzrunāja mani, nosaucot mani vārdā un, norādot uz otro, sacīja—Šis ir Mans Mīļais Dēls. Uzklausi viņu!" (Džozefs Smits—Vēsture 1:16–17).

H. I Spy

Read the section *Debesu Tēvs atklāj Savu evaņģēliju katrā evaņģēlija atklāšanas laikmetā* (*Sludini Manu Evaņģēliju*, 44). As you read this section, look for prepositions and how they are used with cases. See how many prepositions you can find. On a separate piece of paper, write each preposition that you find, the **type of preposition,** and what case the prepositional object is in (acc-acc, acc-dat, gen-gen, gen-dat, or dat-dat). Check your answers. For example:

Jēzus Kristus evaņģēlija atjaunošana **caur** Džozefu Smitu	caur: **acc**-acc
Kura **no** visām šīm grupām ir pareiza	no: **gen**-dat

Review: Actions and Events

This review will help you see how well you have learned the material in the previous section. It will also help you evaluate your ability to apply several different grammar principles you have learned in performing the following function:

Asking About and Expressing Actions and Events

- Verbs
- Verb Prefixes and Synonyms
- Perfect Tense
- Passive Voice
- Adverbs
- Prepositions

Activities

A. Error Correction

On a separate sheet of paper, rewrite the paragraph below, correcting the 13 errors in it. Check your answers.

Mēs aicināt tevi un visus pārējos papildināt patiesās garīgās zināšanas, ko tu saturi augstā vērtē. Uzklausi mūsu minētos pierādījumus tam, ka mūsu Debesu Tēvs un Viņa Dēls Jēzus Kristus ir no jauns mīlošs vērsušies uz Dieva bērniem un atklājis evaņģēlija pilnību pravietim. Džozefs Smits tikt aicināts kļūt par pravietis un caur viņu, evaņģēlijs tika atjaunota. Pierādījums šai brīnišķīgajai patiesībai ir Mormona Grāmata, un tu vari to lasīt, domāt un lūgt par to. Ja tu lūgsi sirsnīgs, ar patiesu nolūku un ticot Kristum, Dievs un Svētā Gara spēks pavēstīs tev, ka tā ir patiesa.

Our invitation to you and all people is to add to the truths you already treasure. Consider our evidence that our Heavenly Father and His Son, Jesus Christ, have again reached out to God's children in love and revealed the fulness of the gospel to a prophet. Joseph Smith was called to be a prophet and through him the gospel was restored. The evidence of this glorious truth is found in a book—the Book of Mormon—which you can read, ponder, and pray about. If you pray with a sincere heart, with real intent and faith in Christ, God will tell you by the power of the Holy Ghost that it is true.

B. Error Correction

Each of the following sentences contains one or more errors. Write down the sentence correctly and say it to your companion. Check your answers. The answers section will refer you to the principle used in each sentence.

1. Uz zemes ir tikusi atjaunots patiesā baznīca.
   The true Church has been restored to the earth.
2. Visu tagadējo apustuļu pilnvaras ir nākt no Kristus.
   All of the current Apostles' authority has come from Christ.
3. Es Dievam pateicos par svētības, ko esmu saņēmis.
   I thank God for blessings which I have received.
4. Atklāsme var tik dots caur Kristus gaismu vai Svēto Garu.
   Revelation can be given through the Light of Christ or the Holy Ghost.
5. Tavs mērķis ir dzīvot cienīgs, dedzīgs lūgt un atpazīt Svēto Garu.
   Your goal is to live worthily, pray fervently, and recognize the Holy Ghost.
6. Gars skars mūs pietiekam spēcīgam, lai mēs Viņam pievērstos.
   The Spirit touches us strongly enough that we will heed Him.
7. Tev tika piešķirtas tiesības un privilēģija pārstāvi To Kungu.
   You were given the right and privilege to represent the Lord.
8. Svētais Gars vadīs un palīdzēs mums zināt patiesību.
   The Holy Ghost will lead us and help us find out truth.
9. Būt lepnam nozīmē paļauties pie sevis vairāk, nekā uz Dievu.
   To have pride means to rely more on yourself than on God.
10. Dievs ir prasījusi, lai Viņa bērni stātos ar Viņu derībā.
    God has asked that His children enter into a covenant with Him.
11. Es biežos jūtos, ka eņģeļi man palīdz.
    I often feel that angels are helping me.
12. Marta beigās viņa izlasījusi Bībeli.
    By the end of March she will have completely read the Bible.
13. Kristus paveica Grēku Izpirkšanu un augšāmceļas.
    Christ completed the Atonement and was resurrected.
14. Viss tiks Viņa noliktajā laikā.
    Everything will happen in His appointed time.
15. Caur Kristu cilvēki tik pacelti, lai stātos Viņa priekšā.
    Through Christ, people will be raised up to stand before Him.
16. Cerība kalpoja par enkuru mūsu dvēselēm.
    Hope serves as the anchor to our souls.
17. Glābēja apustuļi pareģoja par lielo atkrišanu.
    The Savior's Apostles foresaw the Great Apostasy.
18. Tikumīgi cilvēki ir šķīsti un garīgs apskaidroti.
    Virtuous people are clean and pure spiritually.
19. Zane tika zvanīta kļūt par draudzes pianistu.
    Zane was called to be the branch pianist.
20. Viņam izmisīga nepieciešama palīdzība.
    He desperately needs help.

C. Translation

On a separate piece of paper, translate the words in parentheses into Latvian. Check your answers.

1. Visi cilvēki (with) Dieva (grace) tiks (saved) no laicīgās nāves.
2. Nefijs caur grūtībam (gained) dažādas pieredzes.
3. Praviešu primārais pienākums ir (testify) par Kristu.
4. Uz zemes mēs esam šķirti (from) Dieva fiziskās (presence).
5. Viņi (would have) šeit (been), bet man viņus vajadzēja.
6. Pateicoties Izpirkšanai, mēs visi (will be) augšāmcelti.
7. Tie, kas (have not repented), ir nelaimīgi garu pasaulē.
8. Nemirstība ir iespēja (to live forever) kā augšāmceltām būtnēm.
9. Ikviens no mums (is) pārbaudīts šajā laikā uz zemes.
10. Viņi (have worshiped) saskaņā ar to gaismu, kas viņiem piemita.
11. Ādams un Ieva (chose) nobaudīt aizliegto augļi.
12. Jēzus samaksāja (for our sins).
13. Mēs (become) līdzīgāki Viņam, paklausot Viņam.
14. Mūsu ķermenis un gars no jauna (will be united).
15. Vai tu jebkad esi (met) Daini?
16. (After death) mēs dosimies (to the spirit world).
17. Mēs (entirely literally) esam Dieva bērni.
18. Mums jāpastāv (to the end).
19. Jēzus aicina visus cilvēkus: "Nāciet (unto me)!"
20. Arvis (was rewarded) par savu sasniegumu skolā.

D. Companion Activity

Choose a block of time when you will be street teaching to do this activity. Each time you talk to an individual or family, pay close attention to what they are doing and how they react to your message. Afterwards, each of you create two sentences in Latvian using the grammar principles in this function to describe what they were doing or how they acted. Try to be as detailed as possible. Give each other feedback on your grammar and correct any mistakes you made. Take note of words you don't know, and look them up or ask a native speaker later. Most importantly, see what you can learn from each person's actions and body language. Is there something you could have done to meet their needs better? You could also practice doing this activity after lessons, describing what each person present did and how they acted.

E. Scripture Activity

Read "Ēnosa Grāmata" with your companion, paying special attention to how verbs, adverbs, and prepositions are used. If there are any ways these parts of speech are used that are unclear, pause and discuss them together. After you finish reading the chapter, answer the following questions together in Latvian: "What actions did Enos take in this chapter? How did he pray? What can we learn from his actions? How can we apply this chapter to our investigators?"

F. Writing Activity

Write about an event in your life or on your mission that has been especially impactful. Ponder why you think that experience happened to you, what you learned from it, and what actions occurred building up to the experience or as a result of it. Pay special attention to when and how you used present tense and passive voice. For every verb, add an adverb describing how the action was done. Share your sentences with your companion or a member, and ask for help on how to improve the grammar or make the story more clear. Make improvements as needed.

G. Listening Activity

Choose a three- to five-minute clip from a Church video that you can watch together with your companion. Mute the video and describe what the people in the clip are doing as you watch. You may want to pause often to allow more time to describe the characters' actions and reactions to events in the movie. You can choose to watch and describe the actions of one character, or you can take turns describing small segments of the clip. Give each other feedback on how well you used the grammar principles that make up this review.

H. District Activity

After setting up the obstacle course, write down instructions on a small piece of paper in English. For example, "walk around the hymn book, sit on the chair, jump over the planner on the ground, then crawl under the whiteboard." Have one companionship come in at a time to complete the obstacle course. One missionary will look at the paper and translate the directions for their companion who will be doing the obstacle course. The companionship with the fastest time wins.

Narrating Experiences and Telling Stories

Purpose

This function will help you to tell stories and recount events; for example, what happened to Joseph Smith when he prayed or what you did to find out the Book of Mormon was true. The grammar principles in this section are targeted at helping you perform this function. Below are examples of the types of things you will be able to express with the grammar in this function.

- God is our **loving** Heavenly Father. ("Introduction to Participles")
- **While** the Savior prayed, his Apostles slept. ("Adverb Participles")

Application

Below is a list of doctrinal points that these grammar principles will help you teach, as well as some common missionary tasks that they will help you perform. This list is not comprehensive; it is meant to help you think about how you can use the grammar in real situations. In parentheses next to each point are some sample questions that you can ask yourself to help you think about how to apply the grammar.

Doctrines from the Lessons

- The Savior's Earthly Ministry (What did Christ do while on the earth? What is your favorite story about Christ?)
- The Great Apostasy (What happened during the Apostasy? What caused it to happen?)
- The Restoration of the Gospel of Jesus Christ through Joseph Smith (What were the circumstances surrounding the Restoration of the Church? How was God preparing Joseph to be a prophet?)
- Pre-Earth Life (What happened before we came to earth? How was Christ chosen as the Savior of the world?)
- Agency and the Fall of Adam and Eve (What did God command Adam and Eve to do? Why did they fall? What happened as a result?)
- Obey the Word of Wisdom (Why was the Word of Wisdom revealed? How did you gain a testimony of the Word of Wisdom?)

Tasks from the *Missionary Vocabulary and Phrases* Book

- Follow Up on Commitments (Did they keep the commitment? Why or why not?)
- Share an Experience (What has happened in your life to help you know the truth?)
- Conduct a Meeting (Who can I thank for their help? What did they do?)
- Testify (What do you know to be true?)

Participles

Examples

The **blessed** bread and water remind us of Christ.	**Iesvētītā** maize un ūdens atgādina mums par Kristu.
The Holy Ghost can be felt **(is feelable)** in this room.	Svētais Gars ir **sajūtams** šajā istabā.
Jesus Christ is the Only **Begotten** Son of the Father.	Jēzus Kristus ir Tēva **vienpiedzimušais** Dēls.
I can feel the **strengthening** power of the Holy Ghost.	Es varu sajust Svētā Gara **stiprinošo** spēku.

Explanation

Adjective participles are adjectives formed from a verb. This chapter will explain four different constructions to describe nouns in the past and present with both the active and passive voice. A summary of the four participles is found in the following chart:

	Past	Present
Passive	infinitive verb + adjective ending	verb present stem + *am* + adjective ending
Active	verb past stem + perfect tense ending	verb present stem + *oš* + adjective ending
	↙ **Past Active**	↘ **Past Passive**
		↘ **Present Passive** ↘ **Present Active**

Bijušo praviešu vārdi ir Dieva **iedvesmoti**, bet daudziem tie šķiet **neizprotami** un **apmulsinoši**.
*The words of the **former** prophets are **inspired** of God, but to many they seem **incomprehensible** and **confusing**.*

Note: All adjectives will match the noun they describe in number, case, and gender. When a definite adjective ending is used, the participles can be nouns.

Past Passive

Past passive participles show that the described word was the affected recipient of an action completed in the past. Transitive verbs are used. See chapter 35, "Transitive and Intransitive." These participles correspond with the English endings *-en* and *-ed*. (e.g., the Anointed One). To form a past passive participle, use the infinitive of the verb with a definite or indefinite adjective ending that matches in number, case, and gender. The following chart shows how to form past passive participles:

Noun	Verb		Adjective Ending	Examples
ābols	noplūkts	+	-s	Noplūkts ābols. *A plucked apple.*
grāmata	pārtulkot	+	-a	Pārtulkota grāmata. *A translated book.*
Glābējs	apsolīt	+	-ais	Apsolītais Glābējs. *The promised Savior.*
zīme	sagaidīt	+	-ā	Sagaidītā zīme. *The expected sign.*

Examples

Dievs vienmēr atklāj indivīdiem and ģimenēm Savu **paredzēto*** laimes ieceri caur praviešiem.
*God always reveals His **intended** plan of happiness for individuals and families through prophets.*

Mūsu Tēva ieceres centrā ir Kristus **veiktā** Grēku Izpirkšana.
*At the center of our Father's plan is Christ's **completed** Atonement.*

Atjaunotais evaņģēlijs svētī ģimenes.
*The **restored** gospel blesses families.*

* All participles will decline to match the noun they are describing if it is not the subject of the sentence.

Passive Voice vs. Past Passive

The past passive participle is sometimes used in conjunction with the passive voice. Passive voice describes an action, and the past passive participle is an adjective describing a noun. For example:

Passive Voice	Past Passive Participle
Baznīca tika atjaunota. *The Church was restored.*	Atjaunotā baznīca. *The restored Church.*
Grēks tika piedots. *The sin was forgiven.*	Piedots grēks. *A forgiven sin.*

Present Passive

Present passive participles are similar to past passive participles, except they are used to describe nouns acted upon in the present tense (it is thus *being* acted upon, *can* thus be acted upon, or *tends to be* thus acted upon). Transitive verbs are used. These participles are equivalent to the English suffixes *-able* and *-ible* (e.g., unforgettable moment). Form present passive participles by adding *-am* (*-ām* for *-īt* or *-ināt* verbs) with either a definite or an indefinite adjective ending to the present stem of the verb. The following table shows how these participles are formed:

Noun	Verb Present Stem		-am/ām		Adjective Ending	Examples
rokraksts	salas-	+	-ām	+	-s	Salasāms rokraksts. *Readable handwriting.*
bauslis	saprot-	+	-am	+	-s	Saprotams bauslis. *A reasonable commandment.*
lieta	ēd-	+	-am	+	-a	Ēdama lieta. *Edible thing.*
doma	netic-	+	-am	+	-a	Neticama doma. *The unbelievable thought.*

Examples

Svētais Gars ir **sajūtams** šajā istabā.
*The Holy Ghost is "**feelable**" in this room.*

Dievam ir **nevainojams** ķermenis no miesas and kauliem.
*God has a **flawless** body of flesh and bone.*

Svētības, kas seko paklausībai, ir **pieejamas** gan tagad, gan mūžībā.
*Blessings that come from obedience are **available** now and forever.*

Past Active

Past active participles are used to denote a verb (acting as an adjective) that was completed by the described noun in the past. Intransitive verbs are usually used with active participles, but transitive or intransitive verbs can be used. The English participle endings that are associated with this concept are *-en* and *-ed*. Past active participles are formed the same way as perfect tense, but the participle declines as an adjective. See chapter 21, "Perfect Tense."

Verb Past Stem		Perfect Tense Ending	Examples
saplīs-	+	-is	Saplīsis krekls *A torn shirt*
atkrit-	+	-usi	Atkritusi baznīca *The fallen church*
bij-	+	-ušie	Bijušie misionāri *The former missionaries*
pazud-	+	-ušās	Pazudušās aitas *The lost sheep*

Examples

"Jo tik ļoti Dievs pasauli mīlējis, ka Viņš devis Savu **vienpiedzimušo** Dēlu."
*"For God so loved the world, that he gave his only **begotten** Son."*

Cienīgi **pieauguši** vīrieši var saņemt Melhisedeka jeb augstāko priesterību.
*Worthy adult (**grown**) men can receive the Melchizedek, or highest, Priesthood.*

Mēs kristāmies templī par **mirušajiem**.
*In the temple, we baptize for **those who have already died**.**

* Often, active participles are constructed in Latvian when in English a clause with the word "who" is used.

Present Active

Present active participles form nouns (used as adjectives) which describe a noun in terms of what it *inherently, constantly, or characteristically* does. It specifies that the noun is currently doing or consistently does the verb. In English this participle looks the same as its present continuous conjugation (*-ing*), although they are conceptually different. To form this participle, use the present stem of the verb and add *-oš* plus an adjective ending. The following chart shows how to form past passive participles:

Verb Present Stem		-oš	+	Adjective Ending	Noun	Latvian
apmulsin-	+	-oš	+	-i	vārdi	Apmulsinoši vārdi. *Confusing words.*
aug-	+	-oš	+	-a	liecība	Augoša liecība. *A growing testimony.*
(Latviešu valodā) runā(j)-	+	-oš	+	-ais	misionārs	Latviešu valodā runājošais misionārs. *The smiling missionary.*
piedod-	+	-oš	+	-a	sieviete	Piedodoša sieviete. *The forgiving woman.*

Examples

Mūsu Debesu Tēvs sūtīja Savu Dēlu, lai uzņemtos visu **dzīvojošo** cilvēku uz šīs Zemes grēkus.
*Our Heavenly Father sent His Son to take upon Himself all the sins of the **living** people on this earth.*

Ja tu saņemsi evaņģēlija priekšrakstus un ievērosi no tā **izrietošās** derības, tu tiksi glābts.
*If you receive the ordinances of the gospel and keep the **associated** covenants, you will be saved.*

Mums pastāvīgi jāpilnveidojas un jāattīsta Kristum **piemītošās** īpašības.
*We constantly need to progress and need to develop Christlike (**characteristic** of Christ) qualities.*

Activities

A. Past Passive Participles

For each of the following verbs, form a past passive participle to match the given noun. Then write a sentence using the participle. Check your answers.

iesvētīt - maize

Example

iesvētītā maize

Iesvētītā maize un ūdens atgādina mums par Kristu.
The blessed bread and water remind us of Christ.

1. apsolīt - svētības
2. dot - palīdzība
3. veikt - upuris
4. izdzīvot - pieredze
5. radīt - zeme
6. gaidīt - atbilde
7. salauzt - sirdis
8. mīlēt - brālis
9. pārtulkot - pieraksts
10. nolīgt - zēns
11. apslēpt - jūtas
12. uzaicināt - klausītājs

B. Present Passive Participles

For each of the following verbs, form a present passive participle to match the given noun. Check your answers. Then write a sentence using the participle.

izdziedināt - sirds

Example

izdziedināma sirds

Dažreiz mēs jūtamies, it kā mūsu sirdis nav **izdziedināmas**.
Sometimes we feel like our hearts aren't healable.

1. darīt - darbs
2. nākt - nedēļa
3. dzert - ūdens
4. piedot - grēki
5. baudīt - ēdiens
6. neiedomāties - dzīve
7. zināt - patiesības
8. neapdzīvot - sala
9. nemainīt - cilvēks
10. ticēt - stāsts
11. saprast - stunda
12. neaizmirst - brīdis

C. Past Active Participles

For each of the following verbs, form a past active participle to match the given noun. Check your answers. Then write a sentence using the participle.

nokrist - ābols

Example

nokritušais ābols

Es salasīju zemē nokritušos ābolus.
I picked up the apples that had fallen to the ground.

1. lauzt - derība
2. piedzērties - vīrietis
3. dzimt - Latvietis
4. pacelt - roka
5. beigties - filma
6. būt - klausītāji
7. pieaugt - bērni
8. būt - jurists
9. krist - pravietis
10. apjukt - zēni
11. pazust - suns
12. uzcept - cālis

D. Present Active Participles

For each of the following verbs, form a past active participle to match the given noun. Check your answers. Then write a sentence using the participle.

stiprināt - spēks

Example

stiprinošais spēks

Es varu sajust Svētā Gara **stiprinošo** spēku.
I can feel the strengthening power of the Holy Ghost.

1. domāt - bērniņš
2. kliegt - balss
3. raudīt - pāris
4. dziedāt - koris
5. nākt - autobuss
6. gaidīt - studenti
7. kārdināt - kafija
8. zināt - tēvi
9. lūgt - misionāres
10. braukt - mašīna
11. apmeklēt - māsas
12. krist - lietus

E. Translation

For each of the following sentences, first determine which participle should be used, and then translate the sentence into Latvian on a separate piece of paper. Check your answers.

1. We are given agency to accept or reject the prophets' and apostles' taught gospel.
2. Inspiring and confirming thoughts will come into your mind through the Holy Ghost.
3. It was difficult to read the handwritten letter from my mom.
4. During the Apostasy, God took from people the conferred priesthood power to perform ordinances.
5. Satan tempted Adam and Eve to eat the forbidden fruit.
6. In the parable of the lost son, we can learn about the love God has for us.
7. It is important to teach according to the needs of the one being taught.
8. I testify that the restored Church of Jesus Christ is found on the earth today.
9. "I, Nephi, having been born of goodly parents . . . "
10. Commandments are a loving Heavenly Father's instructions to help us be happy.

F. Common Errors

The following sentences have bolded and starred errors. Correct and explain the errors to your companion. Check your answers.

1. Kristus ir Dieva vienpiedzimušie* Dēls.
   Christ is the Only Begotten Son of God.
2. Atgriežis* misionārs runāja baznīcā.
   The returned missionary spoke in church.
3. Jēzus atrāda zustusī* aitas.
   Jesus found the lost sheep.
4. Dievs atjaunoja pazaudēts* patiesības Džozefam Smitam.
   God restored lost truths to Joseph Smith.
5. Līgas ilgi gaidīti* diena pienāca, kad viņa tika kristīta.
   Liga's long-awaited day came when she was baptized.
6. Mierinoša* Svēta Gara spēks deva man cerību.
   The calming power of the Holy Ghost gave me hope.
7. Apjukusītais* klausītājs nesaprata Grēku Izpirkšanu.
   The confused investigator did not understand the Atonement.
8. Pievērsies apmācāmi* vajadzībām!
   Pay attention to the needs of those who are being taught.

G. Error Correction

With your companion, take turns reading the following sentences aloud. Start by giving the English translation and then say the sentence as it is written in Latvian. Then have the other companion identify errors, if any, and restate the sentence correctly.

1. Izvēloties atbilstošu pieeju, ņem vērā cilvēka šaubu un bažu pamatu.
   When choosing an appropriate approach, take into consideration the basis of the person's doubts and concerns.
2. Desmitās tiesas maksāšana ir uzskatīts apliecinājums tam, ka mēs ticam Dievam.
   Tithing is a demonstrative affirmation that we believe in God.
3. Tas Kungs jums palīdzēs pat tad, ja tas prasīs zināto laiku.
   The Lord will help you, even if it takes some time.
4. Lūgošam zēnam vajadzēja zināt to, kāda bija Dieva griba pret viņu.
   The praying boy needed to know what God's will was for him.
5. Mormona Grāmata is pārliecināms pierādījums tam, ka Atjaunošana tiešām notika.
   The Book of Mormon is the convincing evidence that the Restoration really happened.
6. "Lūk, šis ir Mans mīlošs Dēls."
   Behold, this is My Beloved Son.
7. Mēs ticam atjaunotais evaņģēlijam.
   We believe in the restored gospel.
8. Lehijs ar savu ģimeni kuģoja uz apsolīt zemi.
   Lehi and his family sailed to the promised land.

Adverb Participles

Examples

While teaching Sunday School, I learned more about myself.	**Mācot** svētdienas skolu, es mācījos vairāk par sevi.
Sofie went shopping **while** Ester went for a walk.	Sofija gāja iepirkties, Esterei **pastaigājoties**.
Did you see the missionaries **teaching**?	Vai jūs redzējāt misionārus **mācāmi**?
Apparently the new Church film for families was really good.	**Acīmredzot** jaunā baznīcas filma ģimenēm bija ļoti laba.

Explanation

This participle is formed when a verb is changed to become a new part of speech—in this case, an adverb. There are three different adverb participle constructions used in sentences that have two actions. Below is an overview of the three adverb participle constructions that will be explained in this chapter.

Principle	Explanation	Example
-ot / -dams	Used when 1 subject is performing 2 actions simultaneously. Commonly expressed using "while" or "by" in English.	**Braucot** tramvajā, es runāju ar māmiņu par ticību. ***While** traveling on the tram, I talked with a mom about faith.*
Dative Absolute*	Used when 2 subjects are performing 2 different actions at the same time. Also uses "while," "when," or "as" in English.	Es gatavoju pusdienas, pārieciecei **dziedot**. *I prepared lunch **while** my companion sang.*
-am	Also used when 2 subjects are performing different actions, but the first is "sensing" or "perceiving" the second.	Es dzirdēju tevi **runājam** angļu valodā. *I heard you **speaking** English.*

* It is more common for Latvians to use *kamēr* (see below) than a dative absolute construction.

Note: "While" can also be translated as *kamēr.* The verb is then conjugated according to the subject.

Examples

Bērniem nevajag kristīties, **kamēr** viņi nav sasnieguši atbildības vecumu, kas ir astoņi gadi.
*Children must not be baptized **while** they have not reached the age of accountability, which is eight years old.*

Kamēr vecāki gulēja, mēs ar māsiņu spēlējāmies savā istabā.
***While** our parents slept, my little sister and I played in our room.*

-ot / -dams

-ot or -oties

This adverb participle allows you to express **one subject** performing **two actions** at the same time. The suffix *-ot,* or *-oties* for reflexive verbs, is added to the present stem of the verb following "while" or "by" in English to become an adverb that describes the other verb which is still conjugated according to the subject.

Verb		Present Stem		***-ot* or *-oties***		adverb ***-ot* participle**
strādāt[2nd] *to work*	→	strādā-	+	-ot	=	strādājot* *while working*

* If the last letter of the stem is a vowel, a *j* is added to separate the vowels.

Sentence

Subject	Verb
Mēs *We*	dziedājām. *sang.*
Bērni *The children*	spēlējās. *played.*

→ ***-ot* participle**

Subject	Verb	Participle
Mēs *We*	dziedājām *sang*	**strādājot.** *while working.*
Bērni *The children*	spēlējās *played*	**gaidot.** *while waiting.*

Examples

Atcer<u>oties</u> savu Glābēju, mēs varam turēt savas derības.
***By remembering** our Savior, we can keep our covenants.*

Es klausos savā pārinieka, **vērojot** klausītāju.
*I listen to my companion **while** I watch the investigator.*

Misionārs(e), **paskaidrojot** par augšāmcelšanos, uzdeva jautājumu.
*The missionary ***explaining** about the Resurrection asked a question.*

* This principle is still used in sentences that omit "while" in English.

-dams

This participle is used by adding the suffix -dams to the infinitive verb without the -t. This is another way of forming the same sentences as above. The participle ending must decline to match the subject in number, case, and gender. For reflexive verbs, -damies is added if masculine or -damās if feminine.

Verb	Infinitive Stem (-t)	*-dams(a) or -damies*	adverb *-dams* participle
strādāt[2nd] *to work* →	strādā-	+ -dams(a)	= strādādams(a) *while working*

Sentence

Subject	Verb
Es *I*	dziedāju**.** *sang.*
Bērni *The children*	spēlējās. *played.*

→ ***-dams* participle**

Subject	Verb	Participle
Es *I*	dziedāju *sang*	**strādā<u>dams(a)</u>.** *while working.*
Bērni *The children*	spēlējās *played*	**gaidī<u>dami</u>.** *while waiting.*

Examples

Skrie<u>dami(as)</u>, cik vien ātri iespējams, misionāri(es) centās paspēt uz autobusu.
*Missionaries tried to catch a bus **while running** as fast as possible.*

Aleksejs, **apdomā<u>dams</u>** jautājumu, dalījās pieredzē no savas misijas.
*Aleksejs, **while pondering** the question, shared an experience from his mission.*

Lūg<u>dami</u> pēc Dieva palīdzības, misionāri spēja satikt cilvēkus, kas meklē patiesību.
***By praying** to God for help, the missionaries were able to meet the people looking for truth.*

Nomez<u>damies(a)</u>* ceļos, <u>es</u> lūdzos Dievam, lai saņemtu atbildes.
***Kneeling** down, I pleaded to God to receive answers.*

* There are a few exceptions when the infinitive verb without the *-t* requires a vowel change. In this example, *mest* → *mez*.

Dative Absolute

When there are **two actions** in a sentence and **different** people are performing them, a dative absolute participle construction can be used. The verb following "while" is modified in the same way, by the addition of *-ot,* or *-oties* for reflexive verbs. The subject associated with that verb is put into the dative case.

Sentence

Subject	Verb
Es *I*	raudāju**.** *cried.*
Arturs *Arthur*	lasīja. *read.*

→ **dative absolute**

Subject	Verb	Dative	Participle
Es *I*	raudāju, *cried*	**viņai** *while she*	**liecino<u>t</u>.** *testified.*
Arturs *Arthur*	lasīja, *read*	**man** *while I*	**vingrojo<u>t</u>.** *exercised.*

Examples

Man uzaugo<u>t</u>, mani vecāki mācīja man evaņģēliju.
***As I grew up**, my parents taught the gospel to me.*

Viņa tīrīja māju, **bērniņam guļot**.
*She cleaned **while the baby slept**.*

Manam pāriniekam uzstājo<u>ties</u> baznīcā, es lūdzu par viņu.
***While my companion spoke** in church, I prayed for him.*

* It is more common to use *kamēr* when forming a sentence with two different people performing two different actions.

-am

This adverb participle is used when the subject is perceiving or sensing (seeing, hearing, feeling, etc.) a second subject performing an action. To construct this participle, the present stem of the verb following the direct object is used with the suffix *-am,* or *-amies* for reflexive verbs.

Verb		Present Stem		*-am* or *-amies*		adverb *-am* participle
raudāt[3rd] *to cry*	→	raud-	+	-am	=	raudam "crying"

Sentence

Subject	Verb	Direct Object
Viņa *She*	dzirdēja *heard*	bērniņu. *the baby.*
Es *I*	sajutu *felt*	Svēto Garu. *the Holy Ghost.*

→ ***-am* participle**

Subject	Verb	Direct Object	Participle
Viņa *She*	dzirdēja *heard*	bērniņu *the baby*	**raudam.** *crying.*
Es *I*	sajutu *felt*	Svēto Garu *the Holy Ghost*	**liecinām.*** *testifying.*

* With *-īt* and *-ināt,* as well as *-īties* and *-ināties* verbs, the participle ending requires a long sign: *-ām* or *-āmies*.

Examples

Es ieraudzīju savu brāli **rakstām** vēstuli draugam.
*I saw my brother **writing** a letter to a friend.*

Dari tās lietas, ko tu redzi Mani **darām**!
*Do the things you see Me **doing**.*

Velma redzēja mani **klausāmies.**
*Velma saw me **listening**.*

Note: This participle will almost always look like the *mēs* present-tense form of the verb.

Common Adverb Participles

There are a few common adverbs that are formed using these principles. Below are examples of some of the most common:

Adverb Participle		Examples
beidzot *finally*	**Beidzot** šodien ir Indras kristības. *Indra's baptism is **finally** today.*	Es **beidzot** atcerējos paņemt savu lietussargu. *I **finally** remembered my umbrella.*
izņemot *except*	Šodien mēs visi tur būsim, **izņemot** Jāni. *We will all be there today **except** Janis.*	Mēs vingrojam katru dienu, **izņemot** svētdienās. *We exercise every day **except** Sunday.*
acīmredzot *obviously, apparently*	Tā **acīmredzot** ir kļūda. *That **obviously** is a mistake.*	**Acīmredzot** tas bija pārpratums. ***Apparently** there was a misunderstanding.*
apmēram *approximately*	Baznīcā bija **apmēram** simt cilvēku. *At church there were **approximately** 100 people.*	Lai nokļūtu līdz Jelgavai, tas aizņem **apmēram** stundu. *To get to Jelgava, it takes **about** an hour.*
pagaidām *for the time being*	**Pagaidām** mums nav mašīnas. ***For the present time,** we don't have a car.*	Viņi **pagaidām** dzīvo Anglijā. *They are living in England **for the time being**.*

Quick Review

***-ot* Participle** *1 subject, 2 actions*	**Present Stem + *-ot* or *-oties***
-dams* Participle *1 subject, 2 actions*	**Infinitive Stem (-t) + *-dams(a) or -damies***
Dative Absolute *2 subjects, 2 actions*	**Subject (I) Verb + Dative Subject (II) -ot participle**
***-am* Participle** *2 subjects. Subject 1 sensing subject 2 doing something.*	**Present Stem + *-am* or *-amies*** **Subject (I) Verb + Accusative Subject (II) -am participle**

* The *-dams* suffix is added to the infinitive stem. All other adverb participles are formed by adding the suffix to the present stem.

Activities

A. Conjugate

Practice conjugating the following verbs to form the *-ot*, *-dams*, and *-am* adverb participles. Check your answers.

1. redzēt	4. parādīt	7. pilnveidoties	10. sekot	13. atcerēties	16. dzīvot
2. mēģināt	5. atstāt	8. ņemt	11. dalīties	14. lūgt	17. gulēt
3. cerēt	6. tuvoties	9. pielietot	12. kļūt	15. nākt	18. iet

B. Complete the Sentence

The bolded verbs in the following sentences are in infinitive form. On a separate piece of paper, rewrite the verb to form the correct adverb participle. Check your answers.

1. Man **runāt** ar Vinetu, viņa man pastāstīja par savu ģimeni.
   While I was speaking with Vineta, she told me about her family.
2. Es zvanu mūsu klausītājam, pāriniekam **rakstīt** rajona grāmatā.
   I call our investigator while my companion writes in the area book.
3. Viņa nedzirdēja mani **klauvēt**, tādeļ viņa neatvēra mums durvis.
   She didn't hear me knocking, so she didn't answer the door.
4. Džozefs dzirdēja Kunga balsi **sacīt,** kura baznīca ir patiesa.
   Joseph heard the voice of the Lord saying which church was true.
5. **Būt** misionārs(a), es būšu pacietīgs(a) un paklausīgs(a).
   While being a missionary, I will be patient and obedient.
6. Tēvam **iet** uz darbu, mēs ar māsām dodamies uz skolu.
   While my dad goes to work, my sisters and I go to school.
7. Brālis Džonsons cenšas skaidri runāt **mācīt**.
   Brother Johnson tries to speak clearly while teaching.
8. Mēs vakar redzējām tevi **lasīt** Svētos Rakstus parkā.
   We saw you reading your scriptures in the park yesterday.
9. Kristus izrādīja mīlēstību bērniem, **dziedināt** viņus.
   Christ showed love for the children by healing them.
10. Juris, **būt** priesterības pilnvarām, svētīja maizi.
    Juris, having the priesthood power of God, blessed the bread.

C. Translation

Practice translating the following sentences into Latvian with your companions. Check your answers.

1. After seeking the will of God, Vita finally decided to be baptized.
2. While I studied Moroni's promise, I pondered our investigators' needs.
3. We saw Janis talking to his mom while we waited for the bus.
4. The sisters felt confused as they tried to find truth.
5. They felt the Spirit clearly prompt them as they prayed for guidance.
6. We heard Brother Klints coming into the church.
7. Juris was working while going to school.
8. He sang beautifully while she played the piano.
9. Ivars remembered his mom teaching by example.
10. I ask questions as I teach, to better understand.

D. Combining Sentences

In this activity, two parts of a sentence will be given. Combine them to write a sentence using an adverb participle. Check your answers. Then rewrite the sentence again, this time switching the part that uses an adverb participle. The following is an example:

Example

I served the Lord. I thought of others.

Kalpojot Tam Kungam, es domāju par citiem.
While serving the Lord, I thought of others.

Es kalpoju Tam Kungam, **domājot** par citiem.
I served the Lord while thinking of others.

1. She waited patiently.	Her brother finished working.	5. I told a story.	I taught a lesson.
2. I watched her.	She prayed.	6. They raise their family.	They live in Sweden.
3. Oksana drove.	She listened to music.	7. Toms ate lunch.	Toms walking in the park.
4. We went to church.	They went to the beach.	8. Diana taught Sunday School.	Her mom taught Primary.

E. Common Errors

The following sentences have bolded and starred errors. Correct and explain the errors to your companion. Check your answers.

1. **Kalpot***, Viņš dzirdēja klusu balsi.
   While serving, he heard a quiet voice.
2. Es jūs redzēju **gājam*** uz veiklalu vakar vakarā.
   I saw you going to the store yesterday in the evening.
3. Kad es **gavējot***, es saņemu atbildes.
   When I fast, I receive answers.
4. Es redzēju **viņai*** cauri logam, spēlējam ar savu dēliņu.
   I saw her through the window playing with her son.
5. Vecāki piedzīvo prieku, **bērni*** paklausot.
   Parents experience joy when their children obey.
6. Paturi prātā klausītāju vajadzības, **studēt*** par tiem.
   Keep in mind investigators' needs when studying for them.
7. Liecini par patiesību, **paustot*** savu personīgo pārliecību!
   Testify about truth by expressing your own personal conviction.
8. Vai tu lūgsi par mani, man **uzstāšanās*** baznīcā?
   Will you pray for me while I speak in church?
9. Lilita **spēlējot*** klavieres, mums dziedot Garīgas Dziesmas.
   Lilita played the piano while we sang hymns.
10. Mums tiek pavēlēts kalpot citiem **varot***.
    We are commanded to serve others whenever we can.

F. Error Correction

With your companion, take turns reading the following sentences aloud. Start by giving the English translation and then say the sentence as it is written in Latvian. Then have the other companion identify errors, if any, and restate the sentence correctly. Check your answers.

1. Lūdzu, svētī mūs, plānodams rītdienu!
   Please bless us as we plan tomorrow.
2. Viņš redzēja es runājam ar kādu par evaņģēliju.
   He saw me talking with someone about the gospel.
3. Acīmredzēt viņai vajag palīdzību, kamēr viņas vīrs ir Anglijā.
   Obviously she needs help while her husband is in England.
4. Kamēr mēs ejot pie Pētersoniem, mēs iegaumējām pantu.
   While we walked to the Petersons, we memorized a verse.
5. Es raudāju, manam pāriniekam liecinājot.
   I cried while my companion testified.
6. Lūgtdams Jēzus svētīja maizi.
   Praying, Jesus blessed the bread.
7. Mēs saņemam atbildes, klausīdams Svētajā Garā.
   We receive answers while listening to the Spirit.
8. Viņš ģērbties, es zvanīju mūsu klautītājiem.
   While he was getting dressed, I called our investigators.
9. Es redzu viņš palīdzam sievietei nest viņas pārtikām.
   I see him helping a woman with her groceries.
10. Eva redzēja Svēto Vakarēdienu tikt iesvētītu.
    Eva saw the sacrament being blessed.

G. Creating Sentences Using the *-ot* and *-dams* Participles

On a separate piece of paper, create five sentences using both the *-ot* and *-dams* participles. Use the following verbs to describe what the subject does at the same time. Come up with five additional sentences using verbs of your choice that can be used in your lessons today.

Verbs							
lūgt *to pray*	lasīt *to read*	sajust *to feel*	pieņemt *to partake*	darīt *to do*	saņemt *to receive*	atcerēties *to remember*	cerēt *to hope*

Examples

Es sajutu mieru **lūgdams**.
I feel peace while praying.

Mēs atceramies Glābēju, **pieņemot** Svēto Vakarēdienu.
We remember the Savior while partaking of the sacrament.

H. Creating Dative Absolute Sentences

On a separate piece of paper, create five sentences using dative absolute. Use the following verbs to describe what both subjects do at the same time. Come up with five additional sentences using verbs of your choice that can be used in your lessons today.

Verbs							
klausīt *to listen*	dziedāt *to sing*	sēdēt *to sit*	ticēt *to believe*	darīt *to do*	rakstīt *to write*	domāt *to think*	jautāt *to ask*

Examples

Es domāju, tev$_{Dat}$ **dziedot**
I was thinking while you sang.

Mēs dziedājām, viņiem$_{Dat}$ **klausoties**.
We sang while they listened.

I. Creating Sentences Using the *-am* Participle

On a separate piece of paper, create five sentences using the *-am* participle. Use the verbs under subject one to describe what they sense subject two doing. Come up with five additional sentences using verbs of your choice that can be used in your lessons today.

Subject 1		Subject 2					
redzēt *to see*	dzirdēt *to hear*	**lūgt** *to pray*	**ēst** *to eat*	**meģināt** *to try*	**dziedāt** *to sing*	**smieties** *to laugh*	**liecināt** *to testify*

Examples

Es redzeju klausītaju$_{Acc}$ **lūdzam**.
I saw the investigator praying.

Eņģeļi dzirdēs tevi$_{Acc}$ **liecinām**.
Angels will hear you testifying.

Review: Narrating Experiences and Telling Stories

This review will help you see how well you have learned the material in the previous section. It will also help you evaluate your ability to apply several different grammar principles you have learned in performing the following function:

Narrating Experiences and Telling Stories

- Participles
- Adverb Participles

Activities

A. Error Correction

On a separate sheet of paper, rewrite the paragraph below, correcting the six errors in it. Check your answers.

> Atbilde uz lūgšanu, Svētais Gars atklās mums patiesību, uzrunāja mūsu sirdi un prātu. Sajūto, ka tas, ko mēs apgūstam, ir patiesība, mums parādīsies vēlme uzzināt par Atjaunošanu pēc iespējas vairāk.
> Noskaidro, ka Mormona Grāmata ir patiesa, mēs varam būt pārliecināts, ka Džozefs Smits bija pravietis un ka caur viņu tika atjaunota Jēzus Kristus evaņģēlijs.
>
> *In answer to our prayers, the Holy Ghost will teach us truth through our feelings and thoughts. As we begin to feel that what we are learning is true, we will desire to know all that we can about the Restoration.*
> *Knowing that the Book of Mormon is true leads to a knowledge that Joseph Smith was called as a prophet and that the gospel of Jesus Christ was restored through him.*

Each of the following sentences contains one or more errors. Write down the sentence correctly and say it to your companion. Check your answers. The answers section will refer you to the principle used in each sentence.

1. Es mācījos, ka labi cilvēki ir atrodams visur.
   I learned that good people are found everywhere.
2. Ģimene ir Dieva noteikts.
   The family is ordained of God.
3. Viņam ir salauzts sirds un nožēlas pilns gars.
   He has a broken heart and a contrite spirit.
4. Mēs viņu satikām, staigot cauri parkam.
   We met her while we were walking through the park.
5. Kā misionāres mēs esam aicināti kalpot Dievam.
   As missionaries we are called to serve God.
6. Viņi redzēja māti meklēja viņas meitu.
   They saw a mother looking for her daughter.
7. Tā stundiņa bija apmulsinoši.
   That lesson was confusing.
8. Mēs sagatavojāmies, lai mūsu stunda būtu neaizmirsta.
   We prepared so that our lesson would be unforgettable.
9. Nefiješi palīdzēja atkrituši lamaniešiem.
   The Nephites helped the fallen Lamanites.
10. Dievam nekas nav neiespējami.
    Nothing is impossible with God.
11. Man lasu Svētos Rakstus, Svētais Gars apstiprināja patiesību.
    While I was reading the scriptures, the Holy Ghost confirmed the truth.
12. Templī mums ir iespēja paveikt priekšrakstus par mirušiem.
    In the temple we have the opportunity to perform ordinances for the dead.
13. Garīgās dziesmas ir iedvesmojušas un aicina Garu.
    Hymns are inspiring and invite the Spirit.
14. Staigā, labu darīdams, izmantot katru iespēju kalpot līdzcilvēkiem!
    Go about doing good and serving people at every opportunity.
15. Es sajutot Svēto Garu liecinot par mūžīgajām ģimenēm.
    I felt the Holy Ghost as I testified about eternal families.
16. Garu pasaule nav redzami mūsu pašreizējā stāvoklī.
    We can't see the spirit world in our current state.
17. Es dzirdēju viņus runām par Mormona Grāmatu.
    I heard them speaking about the Book of Mormon.
18. Baznīcas locekļi stiprināja mūsu klausītaju, viņiem apmeklējot baznīcu.
    Church members strengthened our investigator as he came to church.
19. Es biju pazudis, bet tagad esmu atrasts, pateikties Di evam.
    I was lost, but now am found, thanks to God.
20. Kādi labi darbi ir minētus par Kristu Svētajos Rakstos?
    What good works are mentioned about Christ in the scriptures?

C. Translation

On a separate piece of paper, translate the words in parentheses into Latvian. Check your answers.

1. Kurš zina, kur atrodas *(lost)* Izraēla ciltis?
2. Lehija ģimene dzīvoja *(promised)* zemē.
3. Es dzirdēju viņu *(yelling)* pēc palīdzības.
4. Viņas pievēršanās stāsts ir *(unbelievable)*.
5. Man ir liecība par priesterības *(healing)* spēku.
6. Mums jādzīvo, *(relying)* uz ticību, nevis uz to, kas (seen).
7. *(Obviously)*, viņš vēl ir *(growing)* zēns.
8. Es viņu redzēju ārā pa logu, *(walking)* uz baznīcu.
9. Mēs lasījām Svētos Rakstus, *(while praying)* pēc palīdzības.
10. Man patīk skatīties *(dancing)* sniegpārsliņas.
11. *(Hopefully)*, viņi atpazīs baznīcā *(feeling)* Svēto Garu.
12. Pravieši ir *(chosen)* vadīt Dieva valstību uz zemes.
13. Likumi ir *(established)*, lai saglabātu kārtību.
14. *(Repenting)* grēkus, mums tiek (forgiven).
15. Viņa sieva ir *(dead).*
16. Mēs varam mācīties no pioneriem, kuri, *(while going)* uz Ciānu, dziedāja dziesmas.
17. Kristus *(while praying)* pateicās.
18. Paula, misionāriem *(serving)*, sajuta Dieva mīlestību.
19. Mirušie priecājas, mums *(doing)* ģimenes vēstures darbu.
20. Viņi bija *(inspired)* strādāt ar *(former)* klausītājiem.

D. Companion Activity

Have your companion play the role of a new investigator. Practice telling him or her when and how you came to know that the Book of Mormon is true and that Joseph Smith was a prophet. How has your life changed since gaining that knowledge? Tell the investigator/your companion how he or she can come to know these things as well. Ask for his or her feedback, practice again, and then switch roles.

E. *Preach My Gospel* Activity

Relating a story is more than just directly translating what you would say in English. Translate the story on *Preach My Gospel* pages 157–158 into Latvian. Compare your translation to the Church's translation in *Sludini Manu Evaņģēliju* 169–170. Choose three new expressions or ways of describing things from this story, and memorize the structures used. Practice saying them to your companion, then use them in an upcoming teaching situation.

F. Speaking Activity

Meet with a native speaker and share a personal experience relating to one of the principles in the missionary lessons. Have them ask you questions to clarify anything they didn't understand from your story. Then have them retell your experience in their own words as if they were sharing it with another native. Write down the vocabulary and grammar they use that are different from your own, then practice retelling those parts of your story. Set a goal to share your story with an investigator.

G. Writing Activity

Choose one of your favorite scripture stories. Think of an investigator or less-active member who could benefit from hearing the story. Write the story in your own words, focusing on describing the action and the sequence of events clearly. Have your companion or a native speaker check your story for correctness. Then practice telling your story to a native speaker or your companion in the role of the investigator or member you chose earlier. Get feedback on how well you used the grammar principles in this review, and set goals to share the story with your investigator.

H. District Activity

Assign a topic (such as diligence, faith, teaching according to investigators' needs, or finding through members) for each missionary to practice sharing a short personal experience at district meeting. Divide the missionaries up into groups of two. Within each group of two, have one missionary tell their story. While one missionary is telling their story, the other missionary should listen carefully. Then give feedback to the storyteller and suggest ways they could better express their ideas or ask questions about any parts that weren't clear. Switch and have the other missionary tell their story and then receive feedback. If time allows, have the missionaries rotate and share their story again and give feedback with another missionary.

Asking and Answering Questions of Time, Date, and Location

Purpose

This function will help you talk about when and where things happen; for example, when is church and how you get there. The grammar principles in this section are targeted at helping you perform this function. Below are examples of the types of things you will be able to express with the grammar in this function.

- Our Father **in Heaven** hears and answers our prayers. ("Locative Case")
- Our appointment is at **three o'clock** on Thursday. ("Telling Time")
- **On Sundays** we go to church. ("Days, Dates, Years")

Application

Below is a list of doctrinal points that these grammar principles will help you teach, as well as some common missionary tasks that they will help you perform. This list is not comprehensive; it is meant to help you think about how you can use the grammar in real situations. In parentheses next to each point are some sample questions that you can ask yourself to help you think about how to apply the grammar.

Doctrines from the Lessons

- The Restoration of the Gospel of Jesus Christ (When was the First Vision? When did Joseph Smith receive the priesthood? When was the Church restored?)
- The Spirit World (Where do we go when we die? How long are we there?)
- The Great Apostasy (How long did the Great Apostasy last? When did it end?)
- Baptism and Confirmation (On what date will your investigators be ready to be baptized? What can you help them do each day to be ready on that date?)
- Eternal Marriage (Where do I need to be married to have an eternal marriage? How frequently can I attend the temple?)
- Priesthood and Auxiliaries (At what age do boys receive the priesthood? What time do our Church meetings begin?)
- Pray Often (How often should I pray? When should I pray?)

Tasks from the *Missionary Vocabulary and Phrases* Book

- Conduct a Meeting (When does each part of the meeting happen?)
- Make Appointments (When are they free? Where is the appointment?)
- Give Directions (Where is a certain place located?)
- Plan Daily and Weekly Activities (What will we be doing on each day of the week?)
- Use the Scriptures (How do I give scripture references?)

Telling Time

Examples

Church starts at **nine o'clock**.	Baznīca sākas **deviņos**.
We will meet you tomorrow at **11**.	Tiksimies rītdien **vienpadsmitos**.
It is **four o'clock**.	Pulkstenis ir **četri**.
The bus leaves at **12:52**.	Autobuss atiet **divpadsmitos piecdesmit divās.**

Explanation

This chapter will explain how to tell time in Latvian. Time is usually expressed using a 24-hour clock.

Asking About Time

You can use the following phrases to ask about time:

Question	Answer
Cik ir pulkstenis? *What time is it?*	Pulkstenis ir divi. *It is two*.
Cikos? *At what time?*	Piecos. *At five.*

Note: *Cikos* is *cik* in locative. When answering these questions, the answer is always given in the same case as the question.

Exact Time

In Latvian, the time can be stated by saying the numbers in nominative, exactly as they are written.

5:23	pieci divdesmit trīs
11:15	vienpadsmit piecpadsmit

On the Hour

In order to express time on the hour, say the number in either nominative or locative, depending on the question or context:

	Pulkstenis	Cikos?
1:00	viens*	vienos
5:00	pieci	piecos
7:00	septiņi	septiņos

* The number *viens* ("one") declines as if it were plural.

On the Half Hour

In order to express time on the half hour, use the prefix '*pus*' (*puse*—"half") with the next hour to come. 4:30 would be *puspieci* ("half five").

	Pulkstenis	Cikos?
1:30	pusdivi	pusdivos
2:30	pustrīs	pustrijos
9:30	pusdesmit	pusdesmitos

Time Prepositions

When telling time, prepositions are often used. See chapter 24, "Prepositions." The following chart shows the prepositions commonly used when telling time and how they are used:

Preposition	Example	Explanation
pēc *in, after*	Mēs būsim **pēc** vienas minūtes. *We will be there **in** one minute.*	Forces genitive if the prepositional object is singular and dative if it is plural.
pirms *ago, before*	Viņi bija parkā **pirms** desmit minūtēm. *They were in the park 10 minutes **ago**.*	Forces genitive if the prepositional object is singular and dative if it is plural.
bez *to, before, without*	Tagad ir **bez** trijām/trim minūtēm divi. *It is now three minutes to two.*	Forces genitive if the prepositional object is singular and dative if it is plural.
pāri *past, after*	Pulkstenis ir trīs minūtes **pāri** vieniem. *It is three minutes past one.*	Forces the prepositional object into dative.
ap *around*	Redzēsimies **ap** vieniem! *We'll see you around one.*	Forces accusative if the prepositional object is singular and dative if it is plural.

Note: All numbers are plural.

After the Hour

In order to say the time "after" the hour, the preposition *pāri* is used:

pāri __^{NOM} (minūtes) **pāri** __^{DAT} (hour)

7:18 astoņpadsmit minūtes **pāri** septiņiem
2:22 divdesmit divas minūtes **pāri** diviem

Before the Hour

In order to say "before" the hour, the prepositions *bez* and *pirms* are used:

pirms __^{NOM} (minūtes) **pirms** __^{DAT} (hour)

8:56 četras minūtes **pirms** deviņiem
22:55 piecas minūtes **pirms** vienpadsmitiem

bez **bez** __^{DAT} (minūtēm) __^{NOM} (hour)

1:50 **bez** desmit minūtēm divi
7:48 **bez** divpadsmit minūtēm astoņi

Quarter Hours

In Latvian, quarter hours are expressed with the word *ceturksnis* ("quarter hour") or with *piecpadsmit minūtes* ("15 minutes").

1:45	ceturksnis pirms diviem	bez ceturkšņa divi	bez piecpadsmit minūtēm divi
3:15	ceturksnis pēc trijiem	certurksnis pāri trijiem	piecpadsmit minūtes pāri trijiem

Times of Day

The following chart shows how to express times of the day in Latvian:

rīts *morning*	no rīta *during the morning*	rītos *in the mornings*
diena *day*	pa dienu *during the day*	dienā *during the day*
vakars *evening*	vakarā *in the evening*	vakaros *in the evenings*
nakts* *night*	pa nakti *during the night*	naktī *during the night*

* Note: *Šonakt* carries a meaning that is much later than *Šovakar*. Any time before 23:00, use *vakar*.

Time Phrases

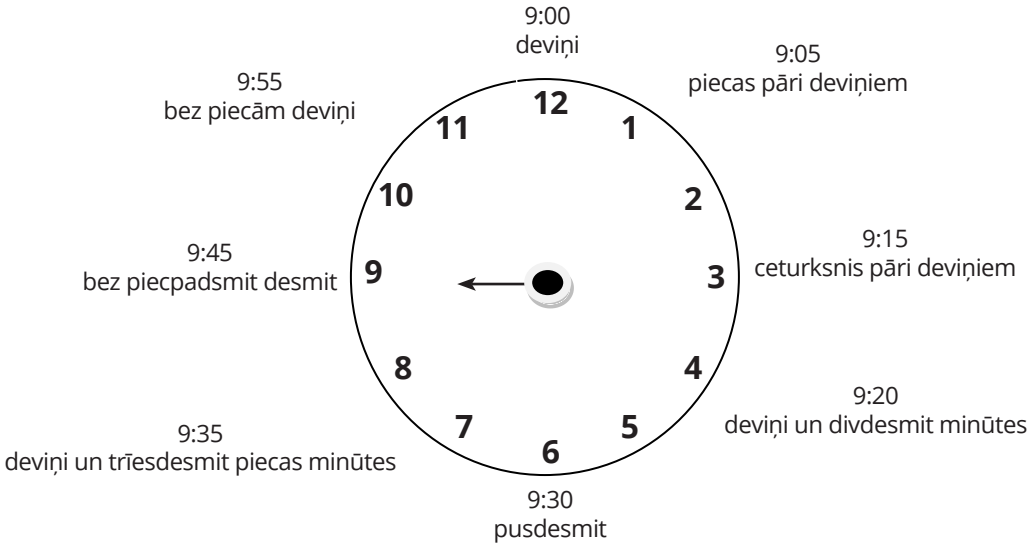
The following chart shows common phrases of time used in Latvian:

pirms daudziem gadiem *many years ago*	divdesmit gadus vēlāk *20 years later*	pēc divdesmit gadiem *in 20 years*	pēc piecām dienām *after five days*
nākamgad *next year*	vakar no rīta *yesterday morning*	mēneša beigās *at the end of the month*	mēneša sākumā *at the beginning of the month*
laika gaitā *in the course of time*	mēneša vidū *in the middle of the month*	laiku pa laikam *from time to time*	bērnībā, jaunībā, vecumā *in childhood, youth, old age*
vēlu *late*	agrāk *earlier*	vēlāk *later*	agri *early*

Military Time

Military time (24-hour clock) is used in Latvia. With military time, the first 12 hours of the day are the same as in standard time. However, in the afternoon 12:59 becomes 13:00. This continues until 23:59 when it becomes 0:00 at midnight. For example:

12-Hour	24-Hour
11:00 am	11:00
2:00 pm	14:00
11:00 pm	23:00



Activities

A. Telling Time

Practice saying the following times in Latvian. Check your answers.

1. 11:10	3. 5:30	5. 14:00	7. 10:30	9. 9:35	11. 3:33	13. 5:18	15. 21:30
2. 2:53	4. 7:01	6. 6:30	8. 18:37	10. 8:45	12. 20:05	14. 13:00	16. 12:00

B. Military Time

On a separate piece of paper, write down how you would express each of the following in military time. Check your answers.

1. 3:00 p.m.	3. 2:19 p.m.	5. 7:45 a.m.	7. 1:01 p.m.	9. 4:44 p.m.	11. 11:12 p.m.
2. 5:15 p.m.	4. 10:30 p.m.	6. 6:50 p.m.	8. 8:24 p.m.	10. 9:37 p.m.	12. 3:30 a.m.

C. Time Practice

On a separate piece of paper, write out each of the times below in Latvian, using the given words. Check your answers.

1.	4:00	*Cik ir pulkstenis?*	4.	4:15	*ceturksnis pāri*	7.	4:47	state exactly
2.	4:01	*pāri*	5.	4:30	*cikos? pus*	8.	4:56	*pirms*
3.	4:09	*pēc (pāri)*	6.	4:45	*bez ceturkšņa*	9.	5:00	*cikos?*

D. Common Errors

The following sentences have bolded and starred errors. Correct and explain the errors to your companion. Check your answers.

1. Tavai uzstāšanās vajadzētu būt aptuveni desmit **minūte*** garai.
   Your talk should be approximately 10 minutes long.
2. Stunda sākas **deviņi***.
   The lesson starts at nine.
3. **Ir*** pieci.
   It is five o'clock.
4. **Pusčetros*** spēlēsim futbolu.
   We will play soccer at 4:30.
5. Vilciens izbrauca **pēc*** trim minūtēm.
   The train left three minutes ago.
6. Autobuss atiet bez desmit **minūtes trim***.
   The bus leaves at 2:50.
7. Tiksimies **šonakt*** septiņos.
   Let's meet at seven o'clock tonight.
8. **Cik ir pulkstenis*** baznīca**?**
   What time does church start?

E. Error Corrections

With your companion, take turns reading the following sentences aloud. Start by giving the English translation and then say the sentence as it is written in Latvian. Then have the other companion identify errors, if any, and restate the sentence correctly. Check your answers.

1. Es mostos pussešos katru rītu.
   I wake up at 6:30 every day.
2. Redzēsimies pēc divas dienas.
   We will see you in two days.
3. Tagad ir divdesmit līdz četriem.
   Right now it is 20 till four.
4. Es studēšu par ticību rīt rīt.
   I will study about faith tomorrow morning.
5. Cikos ir tagad?
   What time is it now?
6. Mēs gavējam katru mēnesis sākumā.
   We fast at the beginning of every month.
7. Mēs tiksimies divpadsmit.
   We will meet at 12.
8. Iekšā divdesmit pieci gadi baznīca Latvijā ir krietni augusi.
   In 25 years, the Church has grown much in Latvia.

F. Companion Practice Activities

Look at your schedule for tomorrow with your companion. Take turns asking and telling each other what time each activity is going to be. Make goals to use Latvian whenever you talk about time together.

G. Role Play

1. Practice street teaching with your companion. Take turns role-playing as the missionary and the investigator. As the missionary, testify about the importance of attending church. Explain where it is and at what time it begins. Describe what happens at church each hour.
2. Practice scheduling appointments. Ask what time would be best for the investigator and confirm the appointment after you make it. Get feedback on how well you expressed the time.

Days, Dates, and Years

Examples

We go to church **on Sundays**.	Mēs **svētdienās** apmeklējam baznīcu.
My birthday is **July 31.**	Mana dzimšanas diena ir **trīsdesmit pirmajā jūlijā.**
They like to ice fish **during the winter.**	Viņiem **ziemā** patīk bļitkot.
The Church was established **in 1830.**	Baznīca tika nodibināta **tūkstoš astoņsimt trīsdesmitajā gadā.**

Explanation

There are specific ways of talking about days, dates, and years in Latvian that will be explained in this chapter.

Days

The following chart shows days as in "yesterday," "today," and "tomorrow." The suffix *-dien* can be added to any of these words, but it cannot be removed from *šodien*. For times of day (e.g., morning, afternoon), see chapter 27, "Telling Time."

pirmdiena *Monday*	**otrdiena** *Tuesday*	**trešdiena** *Wednesday*	**cetrurtdiena** *Thursday*	**piektdiena** *Friday*	**sestdiena** *Saturday*	**svētdiena** *Sunday*
aizaizvakar *2 days before yesterday*	aizvakar *the day before yesterday*	vakar *yesterday*	šodien *today*	rīt *tomorrow*	parīt *the day after tomorrow*	aizparīt *2 days after tomorrow*

Days of the week are not capitalized in Latvian. To say that something happened or will happen on a certain day, use the adverbial form of that day of the week. Adverbial form implies singular locative, but the ending is removed and the word doesn't decline. To say that something happens regularly on a certain day, use plural locative. The following chart shows the days of the week along with commonly used constructions:

Nedēļas Dienas ***Days of the Week***	pirmdiena *Monday*	otrdiena *Tuesday*	trešdiena *Wednesday*	ceturtdiena *Thursday*	piektdiena *Friday*	sestdiena *Saturday*	svētdiena *Sunday*
Adverbial Form	pirmdien *on Monday*	otrdien *on Tuesday*	trešdien *on Wednesday*	ceturtdien *on Thursday*	piektdien *on Friday*	sestdien *on Saturday*	svētdien *on Sunday*
Plural Locative ***on (days)***	pirmdienās *on Mondays*	otrdienās *on Tuesdays*	trešdienās *on Wednesdays*	ceturtdienās *on Thursdays*	piektdienās *on Fridays*	sestdienās *on Saturdays*	svētdienās *on Sundays*

Examples

Manuprāt, **svētdiena** ir pati foršākā nedēļas diena.
*In my opinion, **Sunday** is the coolest day of the week.*

Trešdien mums būs intervijas ar misijas prezidentu.
*We will have interviews with the mission president **on Wednesday**.*

Pirmdienās es spēlēju tenisu ar savu tēti.
*I play tennis with my dad **on Mondays**.*

Adverbial Form vs. Nouns

The following examples show how days and seasons can be expressed either as an adverb or as a noun.

Examples	Explanation
Kārlis **ceturtdien** palīdzēs mums mācīt stundiņu. *Karlis will help us teach a lesson **on Thursday**.*	Usually, adverbial form is used for the days of the week when they are in a singular form.
Ceturtdienās misionāri māca angļu valodu. *Missionaries teach English **on Thursdays**.*	When days of the week are used in plural, they are nouns that can decline. However, they are mostly used in locative.
Šoziem mēs bieži gājām pikoties. ***This winter,** we often had snowball fights.*	*Šoziem* in this example is in the adverbial form. Adverbial form doesn't decline.
Šī ziema ir pati labākā ziema manā mūžā. ***This winter** is the best winter of my life.*	In this example, *šī ziema* is a noun in the nominative case. If expressed in another case, the noun will decline.

Note: Words starting with *šo-*, *pagāš-*, and *nākam-* and singular days of the week use adverbial form.

Months

The names of all the months are masculine and are not capitalized. The following chart shows Latvian months:

Mēnesis *Month*						
	janvāris *January*	februāris *February*	marts *March*	aprīlis *April*	maijs *May*	jūnijs *June*
	jūlijs *July*	augusts *August*	septembris *September*	oktobris *October*	novembris *November*	decembris *December*

To say "in (month)," put the month into locative:

Mēnesī *in (Month)*						
	janvārī *in January*	februārī *in February*	martā *in March*	aprīlī *in April*	maijā *in May*	jūnijā *in June*
	jūlijā *in July*	augustā *in August*	septembrī *in September*	oktobrī *in October*	novembrī *in November*	decembrī *in December*

Dates

Dates are expressed by using ordinal numbers (first, second, third) with a definite adjective ending for the day and then the month:

divdesmitais decembris *December 20*	sestais aprīlis *April 6*	piecpadsmitais marts *March 15*	trešais augusts *August 3*

To say "on (a date)," put both the day and the month in locative:

divdesmitajā decembrī *December 20*	sestajā aprīlī *April 6*	piecpadsmitajā martā *March 15*	trešajā augustā *August 3*

Season

The following chart shows the seasons in Latvian, along with common constructions:

ziema *winter*	ziemā *during the winter*	pagājušajā ziemā *last winter*	šoziem *this winter*	nākamajā ziemā *next winter*
pavasaris *spring*	pavasarī *during the spring*	pagājušajā pavasarī *last spring*	šopavasar *this spring*	nākamajā pavasarī *next spring*
vasara *summer*	vasarā *during the summer*	pagājušajā vasarā *last summer*	šovasar *this summer*	nākamajā vasarā *next summer*
rudens *fall*	rudenī *during the fall*	pagājušajā rudenī *last fall*	šoruden *this fall*	nākamajā rudenī *next fall*

Years

In order to say a year, state the number with the last word declining to match *gads* in the appropriate case.

	year—nominative	**the year of—genitive**	**in the year of—locative**
1820	tūkstoš astoņsimt* divdesmitais gads	tūkstoš astoņsimt divdesmitā gada	tūkstoš astoņsimt divdesmitajā gadā
1999	tūkstoš deviņi simti deviņdesmit devītais gads	tūkstoš deviņi simti deviņdesmit devītā gada	tūkstoš deviņi simti deviņdesmit devītajā gadā
2000	divtūkstošais gads	divtūkstošā gada	divtūkstošajā gadā
2015	divtūkstoš piecpadsmitais gads	divtūkstoš piecpadsmitā gada	divtūkstoš piecpadsmitajā gadā

* This can also be expressed as *tūkstoš **astoņi simti** divdesmitais gads*.

Examples

Viņš bija dzimis **tūkstoš astoņsimt piektajā gadā**.
*He was born **in 1805**.*

Pionieri ieradās Jūtā **tūkstoš astoņsimt četrdesmit septītā gada divdesmit ceturtajā jūlijā**.
*The pioneers arrived in Utah **on July 24, 1847**.*

Neatkarības diena bija **tūkstoš deviņsimt/deviņi simti astoņpadsmitā gada astoņpadsmitajā novembrī**.
*Independence Day was **on November 18, 1918**.*

Nom	1830. gads	tūkstoš astoņsimt trīsdesmitais gads
Acc	1830. gadu	tūkstoš astoņsimt trīsdesmito gadu
Gen	1830. gada	tūkstoš astoņsimt trīsdesmitā gada
Dat	1830. gadam	tūkstoš astoņsimt trīsdesmitajam gadam
Loc	1830. gadā	tūkstoš astoņsimt trīsdesmitajā gadā

Adverbs

Days, seasons, and years are most commonly used as adverbs. Here are a few examples:

pirmdien *Monday*	šoziem *this winter*	nākamgad *next year*

Examples

Piektdien mēs būsim Liepājā.
***On Friday** we will be in Liepaja.*

Es **pagājušonedēļ** viņu redzēju.
*I saw him **last week**.*

Viņiem patiks **šovasar** kristīties jūrā.
*They will like being baptized in the sea **this summer**.*

Word Order

Usually, time phrases will come directly following the subject.

Examples

Mēs **piektdien** brauksim uz Ventspili.
*We will go to Ventspils **on Friday**.*

Viņi **nākamvasar** plāno nopirkt jaunu mašīnu.
*They are planning to buy a new car **next summer**.*

To specifically emphasize the time phrase, place it at the beginning of the sentence.

Examples

Pēc divām nedēļām es būšu bijusi misijā jau vienu gadu.
***In two weeks** I will have been on my mission for one year.*

Pagājušajā ziemā mēs braucām slēpot uz Itāliju.
***Last winter** we went skiing in Italy.*

To de-emphasize the time phrase, put it at the end of the sentence and add the word *kāds(a) / kādi(as)*.

Examples

Es ēdīšu pusdienas **pēc kādām divām stundām.**
*I will eat lunch **in about two hours**.*

Viņš atgriezās no misijas **pirms kāda gada.**
*He returned home from his mission **about a year ago**.*

However, in response to a question, the time phrase will be placed at the end of the sentence.

Question	Answer
Kad tu plāno kristīties? ***When** are you planning to get baptized?*	Es plānoju kristīties **pēc mēneša**. *I plan to be baptized **in a month.***
Cikos tu ieradīsies? ***What time** are you going to arrive?*	Es ieradīšos **deviņos**. *I will arrive **at nine o'clock**.*

Activities

A. Translation

Translate the following dates and times. Check your answers.

1. August 26	7. November 5	13. December 7	19. April 9	25. February 22
2. September 9, 1380	8. March 11, 1881	14. October 2, 1837	20. January 18, 1923	26. May 9, 1945
3. on December 25	9. on July 4	15. on April 6	21. on June 14	27. on November 1
4. in May	10. in April	16. in August	22. in December	28. in September
5. on Mondays	11. on Sundays	17. on Wednesdays	23. in winter	29. in summer
6. in 1861	12. in 1991	18. in 1830	24. on Thursday	30. on Monday

B. Fill In the blank

On a separate piece of paper, fill in the blank with the correct word. Check your answers.

1. 1820. gada ___ Džozefs devās uz tuvējo birztalu.
   In the spring of 1820, Joseph went to a nearby grove.
2. Mums ___ ir kristības.
   The baptism is this Saturday.
3. Vai tev ___ ir jāstrādā?
   Do you have work on Sundays?
4. Šodien ir __ janvāris.
   Today is January 22.
5. __ būs trešdiena. .
   Tomorrow is Wednesday.
6. Vispārējā Konference būs __ aprīlī.
   General conference will be April fifth.
7. __ __ es biju Jelgavā.
   Last winter I was in Jelgava.
8. Viņi __ atgriezīsies.
   They will return the day after tomorrow.

C. Companionship Practice

With your companion, make a list of 20 dates that are important in your lives. Each companion should come up with 10 sentences. Using as much Latvian as possible, tell each other about these dates and why they are important to you.

D. Common Errors

The following sentences have bolded and starred errors. Correct and explain the errors to your companion. Check your answers.

1. **Vakardien*** bija **otrdien***.
   Yesterday was Tuesday.
2. **Ziemai*** bieži snieg.
   In the winter, it often snows.
3. Mēs **svētdienā*** apmeklējam baznīcu.
   We go to church on Sundays.
4. Mana dzimšanas diena ir **marts***.
   My birthday is in March.
5. **Pagājuša*** vasarā es dzīvoju Īrijā.
   Last summer I lived in Ireland.
6. Redzēsimies **piecdien***!
   We will see you on Friday.
7. Mums ir sagatavošanās diena **pirmdien***.
   We have preparation day on Mondays.
8. Viņi **vakar*** brauks uz Vāciju.
   They will leave for Germany tonight.

E. Error Correction

With your companion, take turns reading the following sentences aloud. Start by giving the English translation and then say the sentence as it is written in Latvian. Then have the other companion identify errors, if any, and restate the sentence correctly. Check your answers.

1. Jēzus Kristus baznīca tika atjaunota sestais aprīlis.
   The Church of Jesus Christ was restored on April sixth.
2. Šodien ir svētdien.
   Today is Sunday.
3. Šis tika sarakstīts tūkstotis deviņsimt deviņdesmit piektajā gadā.
   This was written in 1995.
4. Vai mēs varētu ar jums tikties šomēnes trešā svētdienā?
   Could we meet with you on the third Sunday of this month?
5. Kur tu biji vakarā?
   Where were you yesterday?
6. Mēs ar jums redzēsimies vakar rīt.
   We will see you tomorrow night.
7. Ko tu darīsi šonaktī?
   What are you doing tonight?
8. Es runāju ar Niklāvu vakarvakardien par čūskām.
   I talked with Niklavs about snakes the day before yesterday.

F. Reading

Practice reading aloud the following passage from "Reformatori" (*Sludini Manu Evaņģēliju*, 57). Focus on saying the dates correctly.

- Džons Viklifs: Dzimis 14. gs. Anglijā. Oksforda universitātes teoloģijas profesors. Mācīja, ka katoļu baznīcai nav priesterības atslēgu, ka svētā Euharistija jeb Svētais Vakarēdiens nav uzskatāms par reālo Kristus miesu un asinīm un ka baznīcai nevajadzētu īstenot politisku varu pār cilvēkiem. Pārtulkoja Bībeli angļu valodā. Nomira 1384. gada 31. decembrī.
- Mārtiņš Luters: Dzimis 1483. gada 10. novembrī Vācijā. Studēja Erfurtes un Vitenbergas universitātēs. Pienagloja pie Vitenbergas pils baznīcas durvīm 95 tēzes kā izaicinājumu vairākām Romas katoļu baznīcas mācībām, tai skaitā tam, ka cilvēkiem jāmaksā naudu, lai saņemtu grēku piedošanu. Nomira 1546. gada 18. februārī.
- Viljams Tindeils: Dzimis Velsā 1494. gadā. Studējis Oksfordā un Kembridžā. Pārtulkoja Jauno Derību angļu valodā. Padarīja Svētos Rakstus pieejamus vienkāršiem cilvēkiem, lai atmaskotu nepatiesas mācības un reliģisko vadītāju pagrimumu. Tika sodīts ar nāvi 1536. gada 6. oktobrī.
- Žans Kalvins: Dzimis 1509. gada 10. jūlijā Francijā. Studēja Parīzē, lai kļūtu par priesteri. Viens no vadošajiem līderiem kustībā par katoļu baznīcas reformāciju. Lielāko daļu mūža pavadīja Šveicē. Viņš mācīja, ka cilvēki savā būtībā ir samaitāti un var tikt glābti, vienīgi pateicoties Dieva labvēlībai. Uzrakstīja daudzus Bībeles teksta skaidrojumus. Nomira 1564. gada 27. maijā.

Locative Case

Examples

Our Church is located in **Riga**, **Liepaja**, **Jelgava**, and **Daugavpils**.	Mūsu baznīca atrodas **Rīgā**, **Liepājā**, **Jelgavā**, un **Daugavpilī**.
We must put God **first** in our **lives**.	Mums Dievs jāliek **pirmajā vietā** mūsu **dzīvēs**.
They can speak (in the **language** of) Latvian, Russian, and English.	Viņi māk runāt latviešu, krievu, un angļu **valodās**.
Let's meet next week **at the same place**.	Tiksimies nākamnedēļ **tajā pašā vietā**.

Explanation

Locative case is used to express location in Latvian. Locative case communicates "in, at, on, or within." Locative case is most often used in reference to time and place. Functions of this case include:

Function	Example
1) Locative of place. Answers the question "where?"	Es sēdēju **istabā.** *I sat **in a room**.*
2) Locative of time. Answers the question "when?" See chapter 27, "Telling Time," and 28, "Days, Dates, Years."	Baznīca sākas **desmitos**. *Church starts **at 10**.*
3) Locative of manner. Answers the question "how?"	Bērns kliedza **skaļā balsī.** *The child screamed **in a loud voice**.*
4) Locative of reference.	Viņam ir talants **mūzikā.** *He has a talent **in music**.*

The following chart has additional explanations and examples of when and how to use the locative case.

Examples	Explanation
Mēs vēlamies dalīties ar jums vienā **pantā**. *We want to share a **verse** with you.*	*Dalīties* is a verb that forces locative.
Es apstājos **izbrīnā**. *I stopped **in surprise**.*	This example shows locative of manner (answers the question "how?").
Es sajūtu Svēto Garu **savā sirdī.** *I feel the Holy Ghost **in my heart**.*	Locative indicates where the Holy Ghost is being felt.
Nekas netīrs nevar ieiet* Dieva **valstībā**. *Nothing unclean can enter **(into) the kingdom** of God.*	V*alstība* in locative answers the question "where?" and thus is locative of place.

* The prefix *ie-*, which means "in" or "into," is often used with the verbs preceding locative case.

Locative Case Endings

The following is an example of how the noun "church" is used in the locative case:

Example	Nom		Loc
	baznīca *church*	→	baznīcā *church*

Sentence	Nom	Pronoun	Verb	Loc
	Es *I*	viņu *him*	atradu *found*	baznīcā. *in the church.*

The following chart shows how each ending declines with the locative case endings highlighted:

Masculine	I		II		III		Feminine	I		II		III	
	Sg	Pl	Sg	Pl	Sg	Pl		Sg	Pl	Sg	Pl	Sg	Pl
Nominative Kas	-s	-i	-is	*-i	-us	-i	**Nominative Kas**	-a	-as	-e	-es	-s	-is
Accusative Ko	-u	-us	-i	*-us	-u	-us	**Accusative Ko**	-u	-as	-i	-es	-i	-is
Genitive Kā	-a	-u	*-a	*-u	-us	-u	**Genitive Kā**	-as	-u	-es	*-u	-s	*-u
Dative Kam	-am	-iem	-im	*-iem	-um	-iem	**Dative Kam**	-ai	-ām	-ei	-ēm	-ij	-īm
Locative Kur	-ā	-os	-ī	*-os	-ū	-os	**Locative Kur**	-ā	-ās	-ē	-ēs	-ī	-īs

* Indicates where softening takes place. See chapter 1, "Alphabet and Pronunciation," for softening patterns.

Note: Using long signs is essential to convey locative case.

The following chart shows the endings for words in locative case and an example for each ending:

Masc	I		II		III		Fem	I		II		III	
	Sg	Pl	Sg	Pl	Sg	Pl		Sg	Pl	Sg	Pl	Sg	Pl
Loc	-ā	-os	-ī	*-os	-ū	-os	**Loc**	-ā	-ās	-ē	-ēs	-ī	*-īs
Example	tēvā	tēvos	brālī	brāļos	Kristū	Kristos	**Example**	māsā	māsās	mātē	mātēs	sirdī	sirdīs

* Indicates where softening of the previous letter occurs.

Locative Pronouns

The chart below shows personal pronouns in nominative and how they decline into locative case:

Nominative				→	Locative			
Sg		Pl			Sg		Pl	
es *I*		mēs *we*			manī *in me*		mūsos *in us*	
tu *you (informal)*		jūs *you (formal or plural)*			tevī *to you*		jūsos *in you*	
viņš - viņa *he - she*		viņi - viņas *they (m-f)*			viņā - viņā *in him - her*		viņos - viņās *in them (m-f)*	
šis - šī *this (m-f)*	tas - tā *that (m-f)*	šie - šīs *these (m-f)*	tas - tā *those (m-f)*		šajā - šajā *in this (m-f)*	tajā - tajā *in that (m-f)*	šajos - šajās *in these (m-f)*	tajos - tajās *in those (m-f)*

Verbs

There are several verbs that force the direct object into locative case.

piedalīties	iemīlēties	ieklausīties	dalīties
to participate (in something)	*to fall in love (with someone)*	*to listen (to something)*	*to share*

Examples

Ja gribam saņemt norādījumus no Dieva, mums jāieklausās praviešu **vārdos**.
*If we want to receive guidance from God, we should listen (intently) **to the words** of the prophets.*

Mēs Jūs aicinām kopā ar mums piedalīties **dievkalpojumā.**
*We invite you (formal) to participate together with us **in a church service**.*

Note: When these verbs are followed by a preposition, they no longer force locative (e.g., *dalīties ar konfektēm*).

Locative Case and Prepositions

There are no locative prepositions. However, prepositions can at times be used to communicate location. The following are examples in which it would be appropriate to use a preposition, rather than locative case, to communicate location:

Locative	Preposition
Mēs esam pieturā. *We are at the bus stop.*	Mēs esam pie pieturas. *We are by the bus stop.*
Grāmatas stāv galdā. (wrong) *The books are in the table.*	Grāmatas stāv uz galda. *The books are on the table.*
Mēs stāvam Ģertrūdes baznīcā. *We are standing inside the Gertrude church.*	Mēs stāvam pie Ģertrūdes baznīcas. *We are standing next to the Gertrude church.*

Note: Locative is used when the location is "in" somewhere, precisely.

Activities

A. Declination

Decline each of the following words into singular and plural locative case on a separate piece of paper. Practice declining out loud. Check your answers.

1. patiesība *truth*	5. pravietis *prophet*	9. māte *mother*	13. ticība *faith*	17. lūgšana *prayer*
2. misionārs *missionary*	6. cerība *hope*	10. tēvs *father*	14. baznīca *church*	18. dzīve *life*
3. Dievs *God*	7. gars *spirit*	11. brālis *brother*	15. Amerika *America*	19. stāsts *story*
4. sapulce *meeting*	8. grāmata *book*	12. māsa *sister*	16. sirds *heart*	20. Bībele *Bible*

B. Translation

Translate the following phrases on a separate piece of paper. Pay special attention to locative case and look up any words you don't know. Check your answers.

1. Will you pray in faith?
2. We kneel when we pray, to show respect to God.
3. What languages do you speak?
4. Can we come into your home?
5. We can read in the Bible how Christ was baptized.
6. Are you at home?
7. They live in heaven together with God.
8. We live in the last days before the coming of Christ.
9. Even in the dark, I have no fear.
10. Which city do you (pl.) live in?

C. Pronouns

On a separate piece of paper, fill in the blanks with the correct pronoun. Check your answers.

1. Jūs varat atrast atbildi ___ grāmatā.
   *You can find the answer **in that** book.*
2. Kas tev vislabāk patīk __ baznīcā?
   *What do you like the most **in this** Church?*
3. Mēs viņus satikām pagāšnedēļ ___ parkā.
   *We met them **in this** park last week.*
4. Kas tev __ patīk?
   *What do you like about **(in) yourself**?*
5. Iemācies __ saskatīt dievišķo!
   *Learn to recognize the divine **in them.***
6. Mēs stipri sajutām Dieva Garu ___ stundā.
   *We felt the Spirit strongly **in that** lesson.*

D. Common Errors

The following sentences have bolded and starred errors. Correct and explain the errors to your companion. Check your answers.

1. Es dzīvoju **Rīga***.
   *I live in **Riga**.*
2. Es tevi pieminu **savai lūgšanai***.
   *You are **in my prayers** (I mention you in my prayers).*
3. Viņš ir stiprs gan miesā, gan **gara***.
   *He is strong in body and **spirit**.*
4. Par ko tu pagāšnedēļ lasīji Mormona **Grāmatu***?
   *What did you read about last week in the **Book** of Mormon?*
5. Es kalpoju **misijai***.
   *I am serving a **mission**.*
6. Vai tu piedalīsies mūsu **pasākums***?
   *Will you participate in our **activity**?*
7. Viņi ir **iekšā*** baznīcā.
   *They are **in** the church.*
8. Jums ir jāvirzās uz priekšu ar nelokāmību **Kristum***.
   Ye must press forward with a steadfastness in Christ.
9. Mēs cenšamies sekot **pēc*** Viņa pēdās.
   *We strive to follow **in** His footsteps.*
10. Šodien es vēlos dalīties **savu liecību*** par Jēzu Kristu.
    *Today I want to share **my testimony** about Jesus Christ.*

E. Error Correction

With your companion, take turns reading the following sentences aloud. Start by giving the English translation and then say the sentence as it is written in Latvian. Then have the other companion identify errors, if any, and restate the sentence correctly. Check your answers.

1. Tiksimies piektdienā!
   Until we meet on Friday.
2. Mēs esam Dievā rokas.
   We are in God's hands.
3. Vai jūs sajūtat Svēto Garu jūsos sirdīs?
   Do you feel the Spirit in your hearts?
4. Ko tu iemācījies svētdienas skola?
   What did you learn in Sunday School?
5. Man kabatā ir atslēgas.
   I have the keys in my pocket.
6. Mēs noslēdzam lūgšanu Jēzus Kristus Vārds, āmen.
   We close our prayers, "In the name of Jesus Christ, amen."
7. Viņa ar mums tiksies uz svētdienas.
   She will meet with us on Sunday.
8. Evelīna stundiņā dalījās pantu par Grēku Izpirkšanu.
   Evalina shared a verse about the Atonement in the lesson.
9. Dārzai ir puķes un ogas.
   In the garden are flowers and berries.
10. Viņš kristīsies uz upes.
    He will get baptized in the river.

F. Companion Activity

Practice declining these words (or add your own) as fast as you can with your companion.

Dievs	brālis	kuģis	paklausība	miers	zāles
sirds	zemene	ķiploks	rieksti	upe	mērķis
māsa	lapas	rudens	zars	tēja	pazemība

Companion 1 will state a noun and companion 2 will state that noun in locative case and then quickly state a new noun for companion 1 to decline. Do this back and forth for several minutes, trying to incorporate different noun endings in your practice. Check the conjugations for the above words in the answers section.

Example

Companion 1:	"Dievs"
Companion 2:	"Dievā . . . sirds"
Companion 1:	"sirdī . . . māsa"
Companion 2:	"māsā . . . brālis," etc.

G. Scripture Activity

Read the following excerpts from 2 Nephi 31–33 in Latvian. Pay attention to how locative case is used. On a separate piece of paper, write each of the locative nouns and pronouns that you find. Check your answers.

2 Nephi 31:

3 Jo mana dvēsele priecājas skaidrībā; jo tādā veidā Dievs Tas Kungs veic Savu darbu starp cilvēku bērniem. Jo Dievs Tas Kungs dod gaismu saprašanai; jo Viņš runā uz cilvēkiem viņu valodā pēc viņu saprašanas.
6 Un tagad es gribu jums vaicāt, mani mīļotie brāļi, kā Dieva Jērs piepildīja visu taisnību, topot kristīts ūdenī?
7 Vai jūs nezināt, ka Viņš bija svēts? Bet, neskatoties uz to, ka Viņš bija svēts, Viņš parādīja cilvēku bērniem, ka miesā Viņš pazemojas Tēva priekšā un liecina Tēvam, ka Viņš būs Viņam paklausīgs, turot Viņa pavēles.
8 Tāpēc, pēc tam, kad Viņš tapa kristīts ar ūdeni, Svētais Gars nolaidās uz Viņu baloža izskatā.
11 Un Tēvs sacīja: Nožēlojiet, nožēlojiet grēkus un topiet kristīti Mana mīļā Dēla Vārdā!
14 Bet lūk, mani mīļotie brāļi, tā pie manis nāca Dēla balss, sakot: Kad jūs būsit nožēlojuši savus grēkus un liecinājuši Tēvam, ka jūs gribat turēt Manus baušļus, kristoties ūdenī un saņemot kristības ar uguni un Svēto Garu, un varēsit runāt jaunā mēlē, jā, patiesi, eņģeļu mēlē, un pēc tam Mani noliegsit, tad jums būtu bijis labāk, ja jūs Mani nebūtu zinājuši.
20 Tāpēc jums ir jāvirzās uz priekšu ar nelokāmību Kristū, esot ar pilnīgu cerības spožumu un ar mīlestību uz Dievu un uz visiem cilvēkiem. Tāpēc, ja jūs virzīsities uz priekšu, baudot Kristus vārdu, un pastāvēsit līdz galam, lūk, tā saka Tēvs: Jums būs mūžīgā dzīve.

2 Nephi 32:

1 Un tagad, lūk, mani mīļotie brāļi, man šķiet, ka jūs pārdomājat savās sirdīs kaut ko par to, kas jums būs jādara pēc tam, kad jūs būsit uzsākuši šo ceļu. Bet lūk, kāpēc jūs pārdomājat šīs lietas savās sirdīs?
4 Tad nu tagad, kad es esmu runājis šos vārdus, ja jūs nevarat saprast tos, tad tāpēc, ka nevaicājat un neklauvējat; tāpēc jūs netiekat atvesti gaismā, bet jums jāiet bojā tumsā.
6 Lūk, šī ir Kristus mācība, un vairāk mācības netiks dotas, līdz Viņš jums parādīsies miesā. Un, kad Viņš jums parādīsies miesā, tad to, ko Viņš jums sacīs, jums vajadzēs ievērot, lai jūs to darītu.

2 Nephi 33:

1 Un tagad es, Nefijs, nevaru rakstīt visu, kas tika mācīts manas tautas vidū; es arī neesmu tik varens rakstībā kā runā; jo, kad cilvēks runā ar Svētā Gara spēku, Svētā Gara spēks nes sacīto cilvēku bērnu sirdīs.
2 Bet lūk, ir daudzi, kas nocietina savas sirdis pret Svēto Garu, ka tam nav vietas viņos, tāpēc viņi atmet daudzas lietas, kas ir rakstītas, un neuzskata tās par vērtīgām.
3 Bet es, Nefijs, esmu rakstījis to, ko es esmu rakstījis, un es uzskatu to par ļoti vērtīgu, un it īpaši manai tautai. Jo es nepārtraukti lūdzu par viņiem dienā, un naktīs mans spilvens paliek slapjš no manām asarām viņu dēļ; un es piesaucu savu Dievu ticībā un es zinu, ka Viņš izdzirdēs manas vaimanas.
6 Es gavilēju skaidrībā, es gavilēju patiesībā, es gavilēju savā Jēzū, jo Viņš ir atpestījis manu dvēseli no elles.
11 Un, ja tie nav Kristus vārdi, spriediet paši,—jo Kristus pēdējā dienā rādīs jums ar spēku un lielu godību, ka tie ir Viņa vārdi; un jūs un es stāvēsim vaigu vaigā Viņa tiesas priekšā; un jūs zināsit, ka Viņš bija man pavēlējis rakstīt šīs lietas, neskatoties uz manu vājību.
12 Un es lūdzu Tēvu Kristus Vārdā, lai daudzi no mums, ja ne visi, varētu tikt izglābti Viņa valstībā tanī lielajā un pēdējā dienā.
14 Un jūs, kas nebaudīsit Dieva labestību un neturēsit cieņā jūdu vārdus un arī manus vārdus, un arī vārdus, kas nāks no Dieva Jēra mutes, lūk, es atvados no jums uz visiem laikiem, jo šie vārdi jūs notiesās pēdējā dienā.

Review: Time, Date, and Location

This review will help you see how well you have learned the material in the previous section. It will also help you evaluate your ability to apply several different grammar principles you have learned in performing the following function:

Asking and Answering Questions of Time, Date, and Location

- Telling Time
- Days, Dates, Years
- Locative Case

Activities

A. Error Correction

On a separate sheet of paper, rewrite the paragraph below, correcting the nine errors in it. Check your answers.

Ernests ir dzimis 1980 gada 22. augusts. Viņš ir no Ventspils, taču viņš strādā Rīgai kā arhitekts. Pagāšziemā viņš brauca ar savu ģimeni uz Austriju slēpot. Ernests ceļas katrrītu ap pussešiem, lai apmeklētu sporta zāli. Vasara viņam patīk būt savos laukos, kas ir Kuldīgas. Viņam arī patīk makšķerēt ar saviem draugiem un ēst gardas zemenes. Ernests arī ir Latvjias patriots, tādēļ katra gada 18. novembrim viņš svin Latvijas Neatkarības dienu.

Ernests was born on August 22, 1980. He is from Ventspils, but he works in Riga as an architect. Last winter he went skiing in Austria with his family. Ernests wakes up every day around 6:30 a.m. to go to the gym. During the summer he enjoys going to his countryside, which is in Kuldiga. He also enjoys fishing with his friends and eating delicious strawberries. Ernests is also a patriot of Latvia, so every year on November 18th he celebrates Latvia's Independence Day.

B. Error Correction

Each of the following sentences contains one or more errors. Write down the sentence correctly and say it to your companion. Check your answers. The answers section will refer you to the principle used in each sentence.

1. Es katrdien lasu Svētos Rakstus.
   I read the scriptures every day.
2. Juris pirmdien spēlē futbolu.
   Juris plays soccer on Mondays.
3. Es pagāšgad dzīvoju Bauskai.
   Last year I was living in Bauska.
4. Pulkstenis ir pusseptiņi vakarā.
   The time is 7:30 p.m.
5. Mēs plānojam ar viņu satikties otrdienā.
   We are planning to meet with him on Tuesday.
6. Kristīnei pieci jābrauc pie friziera.
   Kristine has to leave at five o'clock to go to the salon.
7. Rītdien būs pirmdien.
   Tomorrow is Monday.
8. Mežam ir ļoti viegli nomaldīties.
   It is really easy to get lost in the forest.
9. Cik pulkstenis mums ir jābūt uz kristīšanos?
   At what time do we have to attend the baptism?
10. Mums ir jādzīvo saskaņa ar Dieva baušļiem.
    We need to live according to God's commandments.
11. Mana brāļa dzimšanas diena ir janvārim.
    My brother's birthday is in January.
12. Vai tu esi bijis Soltleiksitija?
    Have you been in Salt Lake City?
13. Es esmu dzimis tūkstoš deviņsimt deviņdesmit trešais gadā.
    I was born in 1993.
14. Misionāri šonakt septiņos mācīs angļu valodu.
    The missionaries will teach English at seven o'clock tonight.
15. Mēs parasti gavējam katra mēneša pirmā svētdienā.
    We usually fast on the first Sunday of each month.
16. Tev vienmēr būs vieta manai sirdij.
    You will always have a place in my heart.
17. Pēc divpadsmit dienas es varēšu piezvanīt savai ģimenei.
    I will able to call my family in 12 days.
18. Ceturdiena ir ceturtā nedēļas diena.
    Thursday is the fourth day of the week.
19. Viņa vakarvakar saņēma savu patriarhālo svētību.
    Two days ago she received her patriarchal blessing.
20. Viņš tagad dzīvo Īrijas.
    He is currently living in Ireland.

C. Translation

On a separate piece of paper, translate the words in parentheses into Latvian. Check your answers.

1. Atklāsmei ir (*vital*) loma tavā ikdienas darbā.
2. Misionāri (*every week*) raksta e-pastu savai ģimenei.
3. Pulkstenis ir (*4:35 p.m.*).
4. Dalies savā (*message*) un liecini par Kristu!
5. Kristaps (*on Sundays*) apmeklē dievkalpojumu.
6. Misionāriem (*at 9 p.m.*) jābūt mājās.
7. Svētais Gars palīdzēs tev visos tava darba (*aspects*).
8. (*In two years*) es varēšu braukt misijā.
9. Tagad ir piecas minūtes (*after*) trijiem.
10. (*In nine minutes*) būs Jaunais Gads.
11. (*Everyone*) no mums ir Kristus Gars.
12. (*Last week*) es pabeidzu lasīt Mormona Grāmatu.
13. Pulkstenis ir septiņas minūtes (*before*) sešiem.
14. Mana ģimene dzīvo (*in Riga*).
15. Es (*three days ago*) biju Jūrmalā.
16. Cik ir (*clock*)?
17. Patiesība ir atrodama (*in the scriptures*).
18. (*The day after tomorrow*) man būs piecpadsmit gadu.
19. Viņai (*at 4:30*) jādodas pie zobārsta.
20. Dievs nemīt nešķīstos (*temples*).

D. Companion Activity

Each of you think back to your most memorable day as a missionary thus far. Take turns telling each other everything you can remember about that day. Make sure to include what day it was, what you were doing, what time of the day you were doing those things, where you were, etc. Give each other feedback where necessary.

E. *Preach My Gospel* Activity

Read through the taxi driver's experience on pages 169–170 of *Sludini Manu Evaņģēliju* and find answers to the following questions: 1) When and where did he first see the missionaries? 2) How long after he first ran into the missionaries did they actually come to meet at his house? 3) What day, month, and year did the missionaries first come to his house? 4) How long after their first formal meeting was he baptized? 5) How much later was his wife baptized? 6) What month was she baptized in? 7) When and where was their family sealed? Check your answers.

F. Member Activity

Identify three members you would like to encourage to do missionary work. Prepare a short message to share with them about missionary work, then explain that you would like to help them in their missionary efforts. Then help them identify 1) who they would like to share the gospel with, 2) how they will share the gospel with that person, 3) when and where they will share the gospel with that person, and 4) when you can call them to follow up with them on how it went. You may also consider writing down their plan for them on a piece of paper or role-playing with them how they will invite the person to hear the gospel.

G. Map Activity

Pull out a map of your area. Ask each other questions for five minutes about where things are. Then take five minutes to ask each other questions about how to get from one place to another. Give each other feedback, and ask natives any questions you are unsure about.

H. Telling Time Activity

Practice telling time in Latvian from three o'clock to five o'clock using five-minute intervals.

I. Planning Activity

After completing your plans today, tell Heavenly Father where you will be, what you will be doing, and when you will be doing it during the day in prayer. Pay attention to your feelings. If you feel you should change your plan in any way, tell your companion what changes you think should be made.

Asking and Answering Questions of Quality and Quantity

Purpose

This function is to help you talk about quantities of things; for example, how many kingdoms of glory there are or how many Apostles we have today. The grammar principles in this section are targeted at helping you perform this function. Below are examples of the types of things you will be able to express with the grammar in this function.

- There were **five** investigators at church today. ("Numbers")
- The **first** principle of the gospel is faith in Jesus Christ. ("Numbers")
- **How often** do you read your scriptures? ("Duration, Frequency, Distance")

Application

Below is a list of doctrinal points that these grammar principles will help you teach, as well as some common missionary tasks that they will help you perform. This list is not comprehensive; it is meant to help you think about how you can use the grammar in real situations. In parentheses next to each point are some sample questions that you can ask yourself to help you think about how to apply the grammar.

Doctrines from the Lessons

- The Savior's Earthly Ministry (How many Apostles did Jesus call? How did the Savior live His life? How can we become more like Him?)
- Kingdoms of Glory (How many kingdoms of glory are there? What kind of people live in each kingdom?)
- Obey the Law of the Fast (How often do we fast? How long do we fast for?)
- Baptism, Our First Covenant (How do we qualify for baptism? How old do we have to be to be baptized?)

Tasks from the *Missionary Vocabulary and Phrases* Book

- Make a Purchase (How much does this item cost? How many should we buy?)
- Make a Telephone Call (What is our investigator's phone number?)
- Give Directions (Where is the nearest church building? How far away is the church?)

Numbers

Examples

There are **seven** days in a week.	Nedēļā ir **septiņ<u>as</u>** dien**<u>as</u>**.
We have **twelve** apostles on the earth today.	Mūsdienās uz Zemes ir **divpadsmit** apustuļi.
I have **five** siblings.	Man ir **piec<u>i</u>** brāl**<u>i</u>** un mās**<u>as</u>**.
Let's read today from **third** Nephi.	Lasīsim šodien no **trešā** Nefija grāmatas!

Explanation

Numbers are usually used as adjectives and must match in number, case, and gender. Numbers decline just like adjectives. However, numbers that end in *-t* do not decline.

Numbers

There are two types of numbers:

Cardinal	1, 2, 3	indefinite adjective endings
Ordinal	1st, 2nd, 3rd	definite adjective endings

Cardinal Numbers

vieni *ones*	**padsmiti** *teens*	**desmiti** *tens*	**simti** *hundreds*	**tūkstoši** *thousands*
1 viens	11 vienpadsmit	10 desmit	100 simts*	1 000 tūkstoš
2 divi	12 divpadsmit	20 divdesmit	200 divsimt	2 000 divtūkstoš
3 trīs	13 trīspadsmit	30 trīsdesmit	300 trīssimt	3 000 trīstūkstoš
4 četri	14 četrpadsmit	40 četrdesmit	400 četrsimt	4 000 četrtūkstoš
5 pieci	15 piecpadsmit	50 piecdesmit	500 piecsimt	5 000 piectūkstoš
6 seši	16 sešpadsmit	60 sešdesmit	600 sešsimt	6 000 seštūkstoš
7 septiņi	17 septiņpadsmit	70 septiņdesmit	700 septiņsimt	7 000 septiņtūkstoš
8 astoņi	18 astoņpadsmit	80 astoņdesmit	800 astoņsimt	8 000 astoņtūkstoš
9 deviņi	19 deviņpadsmit	90 deviņdesmit	900 deviņsimt	9 000 deviņtūkstoš

Examples			
	22 divdesmit divi	137 simt trīsdesmit septiņi	5 894 piectūkstoš astoņsimt deviņdesmit četri
	1 000 tūkstotis	1 001 tūkstoš viens	1 000 years tūkstošgade

* Only when the number is exactly 100, you use *simts.* When it is more than 100, the ending *-s* is dropped.

Note: Nouns following a number ending in *-desmit, -padsmit, simt,* or *tūkstoš* will take on genitive endings.

Ordinal Numbers

Below the declension for ordinal numbers is shown. These follow the definite adjective endings.

Ordinal
1st: pirmais(ā)
2nd: otrais(ā)
3rd: trešais(ā)
4th: ceturtais(ā)
5th: piektais(ā)
6th: sestais(ā)
7th: septītais(ā)
8th: astotais(ā)
9th: devītais(ā)
10th: desmitais(ā)

Ordinal Declension

	Masculine	Feminine
Nom	astot**ais**	astot**ā**
Acc	astot**o**	astot**o**
Gen	astot**ā**	astot**ās**
Dat	astot**ajam**	astot**ajai**
Loc	astot**ajā**	astot**ajā**

Examples	15th piecpadsmitais	22nd divdesmitā	100th simtais

As adjectives, numbers can be expressed as either singular or plural. Ordinal numbers in writing are followed by a period.

Plural	5 classes	5 klases	piecas klases
Singular	5th class	5. klase	piektā klase

Trīs

Trīs has an irregular declension pattern. Occasionally you may hear *trīsi*. If *trīs* is referring to both masculine and feminine objects, it doesn't decline.

	Masc + Fem	Masc	Fem
Nom	trīs *trīs māsas un brāļi*	trīs *trīs brāļi*	trīs *trīs māsas*
Acc	trīs *trīs māsas un brāļus*	trīs *trīs brāļus*	trīs *trīs māsas*
Gen	trīs *trīs brāļu un māsu*	triju *triju brāļu*	triju *triju māsu*
Dat	trīs *trīs brāļiem un māsām*	trijiem *trijiem brāļiem*	trijām *trijām māsām*
Loc	trīs *trīs brāļos un māsās*	trijos *trijos brāļos*	trijās *trijās māsās*

Decimals

The word *komats* ("comma") is used with decimals. For example:

1,5	viens komats pieci
99,9	deviņdesmit deviņi komats deviņi

Fractions

The following table shows examples of fractions and how you would say them in Latvian:

1/4	ceturtdaļa
1/3	trešdaļa
1/2	puse
2/3	divas trešdaļas
3/4	trīs ceturtdaļas
1 1/2	vienarpus pusotrs(a)
4 1/2	četrarpus

Activities

A. Numbers

Say the following numbers aloud, first using cardinal numbers and then using ordinal. Check your answers.

1. 70	4. 400	7. 8	10. 37	13. 9	16. 144 000	19. 80	22. 48
2. 1 805	5. 153	8. 52	11. 89	14. 42	17. 101	20. 2	23. 15
3. 99	6. 24	9. 2 020	12. 109	15. 61	18. 1 001	21. 573	24. 9 876 543 210

B. Scriptures

Practice saying the reference to the scriptures you will be using in your teaching today. Here are some additional scripture references you can practice saying. Ask the members you teach which scriptures they love and why.

Jēkaba v. 1:5	M&D 8:2-3	Almas 37:6	Helamana 5:12
Jāņa 3:16-17	Moronija 10:4-5	Āmosa 3:7	Etera 12:27
2. Nefija 25:26	Mozus 1:39	Jesajas 41:10	3. Nefija 11:11

C. Pass the Scriptures

With your companion, set a 90-second alarm. Start the timer, then open the scriptures randomly and point to a scripture. Say the reference for the verse you point to, then close the scriptures and pass them to your companion. The companion then opens the scriptures and points to a random verse, which he or she references, and then passes the scriptures again. See how many scriptures you can reference in 90 seconds.

D. *Cik Maksā?*

You are in the grocery store helping a blind woman know how much everything costs. Practice saying the price for each of the following food items. Check your answers.

Examples	ābols €,22	Ābols maksā divdesmit divus centus. *The apple costs 21 cents.*
	gāzēts ūdens €1,00	Gāzēts ūdens maksā vienu eiro. *Sparkling water costs one euro.*

1. banāns €0,79	3. vista €2,89	5. siers €3,27	7. pupiņas €1,11	9. medus kūka €5,05	11. kartupelis €,22
2. ābols €0,22	4. šokolāde €4,63	6. biezpiens €0,94	8. maize €1,58	10. ūdens €0,76	12. sula €1,50

E. Phone Numbers

With your companion, role-play asking someone for their phone number. One companion will play the missionary and the other will play a person that you would like to set up a lesson with. Switch roles once you finish and role-play again.

F. Memorize

Memorize important numbers and addresses: your phone number, your mission president's phone number, your apartment address, and the chapel near you.

G. Fractions and Decimals

Say the following fractions and decimals aloud. Check your answers.

1. 2 1/2	3. 3,3	5. 6/8	7. 5,99	9. 5 1/2	11. 1 1/2
2. 6.75	4. 4,5	6. 1 1/3	8. 2,2	10. 10,4	12. 1,8

H. Common Errors

The following sentences have bolded and starred errors. Correct and explain the errors to your companion. Check your answers.

1. Eglīšu ģimene dzīvo **divā*** stāvā.
   The Eglitis family lives on the second floor.
2. Es esmu **četurtais*** bērns savā ģimenē.
   I am the fourth child in my family.
3. Anita nopirka **pieci*** puķes savai vecmāmiņai.
   Anita bought five flowers for her grandma.
4. Šogad Lieldienas ir **divi*** aprīlī.
   This year Easter is on April second.
5. Pavisam ir trīspadsmit ticības **apliecinājumi***.
   There are thirteen Articles of Faith.
6. **Trīsdaļa*** no visiem Dieva bērniem izvēlējās sekot Sātanam.
   A third of all God's children chose to follow Satan.
7. Lūdzu, atveriet Almas Grāmatas trīsdesmit **otrā nodaļa***.
   Please open to Alma chapter 32.
8. Receptei vajadzīga **viens un puse*** glāze miltu.
   The recipe calls for one and a half cups of flour.
9. Helamans devās karagājienā savu **divi tūkstoši*** karavīru priekšgalā.
   Helaman marched at the head of his two thousand soldiers.
10. Man ir **diviem*** brāļa dēli.
    I have two nephews.

I. Error Correction

With your companion, take turns reading the following sentences aloud. Start by giving the English translation and then say the sentence as it is written in Latvian. Then have the other companion identify errors, if any, and restate the sentence correctly. Check your answers.

1. No divi vai trīs liecinieku mutes katrs vārds tiek apstiprināts.
   From the mouth of two or three witnesses every word is established.
2. Plāksnēm no misiņa ietvēra piektās Mozus grāmatas.
   The brass plates contained the five books of Moses.
3. Mazi bērni nav nepieciešams kristīties, līdz viņi ir sasnieguši astoņi gadi vecumu.
   Small children don't need to be baptized until they have reached the age of eight.
4. Nefijs, kas sarakstīja Ceturtais Nefijs Grāmata, bija Kristus mācekļis.
   Nephi, who wrote fourth Nephi, was a disciple of Christ.
5. Džozefs atrada plāksnes otrdesmit otrais septembris.
   Joseph found the plates on the twenty-second of September.
6. Pus desmitām jaunavām nebija jebkāda eļļa.
   Half of the 10 virgins didn't have any oil.
7. Ādams bija viens pravietis uz Zemes.
   Adam was the first prophet on the earth.
8. Blociņš maksā deviņdesmit trijus centus.
   The notebook costs 93 cents.
9. Es to esmu darījis simts reiz.
   I have done that hundreds of times.
10. Uldim ir puspieci gadi.
    Uldis is five and a half years old.

Duration, Frequency, and Distance

Examples

I will be a missionary **for two years**.	Es **uz diviem gadiem** būšu misionārs(e).
They come to church **every week**.	Viņi(as) **katru nedēļu** apmeklē baznīcu.
We are **three hours** (distance) from Riga.	Mēs esam **trīs stundu** attālumā **no** Rīgas.
I have believed in God **my whole life**.	Es esmu ticējis(usi) Dievam **visu savu dzīvi**.

Explanation

This chapter explains how to speak about duration, frequency, and distance in Latvian.

Duration

Duration is used to communicate "*cik ilgi*" ("how long") something will last. To express how long an action lasts, use the accusative case without a preposition:

Examples

Viņi(as) jau **vienu gadu** mācās latviešu valodu.
*They have already been studying Latvian for **one year**.*

Es jau **divus mēnešus** dzīvoju Latvijā.
*I have already lived in Latvia for **two months**.*

To express that something **will** happen for a certain amount of time, (e.g., for how long?), use the preposition *uz*:

Examples

Baznīcas locekļi **uz** nedēļu aizbrauks uz templi.
*Church members will go to the temple **for** a week.*

Es **uz** četriem gadiem mācīšos Anglijā.
*I will study in England **for** four years.*

If the question "*uz cik ilgu laiku*" ("how long **will** it take?") is asked, the answer is given with future tense, using the preposition *pēc*.

Examples

Es būšu klāt **pēc** desmit minūtēm.
*I will be there **in** 10 minutes.*

Pēc dažiem mēnešiem Gatis kristīsies.
***In** a few months, Gatis will get baptized.*

When a question is asked in the past tense—"*cik ilgā laikā?*" ("how long **did** it take?")—the answer is given in locative.

Examples

Es divpadsmit **stundās** aizlidoju no Amerikas uz Latviju.
*I flew from America to Latvia in 12 **hours**.*

Mēs pabeidzām stundiņu desmit **minūtēs**.
*We finished the lesson in 10 **minutes**.*

In order to express the duration for a certain time period, you can use "no___ līdz___," "from__, until__."

Examples

Laulībai nevajadzētu būt tikai **no** precēšanās brīža **līdz** nāvei.
*Marriage should not only be **from** the wedding **until** death.*

Es **no** marta **līdz** augustam dzīvoju Alūksnē.
*I lived in Aluksne **from** March **until** August.*

Frequency

Frequency is used to communicate "*cik bieži*" ("how often") something is done. This is most often expressed using the adjective *katrs* with the noun it describes in accusative case:

Cik bieži?	
	katr<u>u</u> mēnes<u>i</u> *every month*
	katr<u>u</u> stund<u>u</u> *every hour*
	katr<u>u</u> otro dien<u>u</u> *every other day*

Frequency can also be expressed using two time frames. The smaller time unit is accusative and the larger unit is locative:

Cik bieži?	
	divreiz* nedēļ<u>ā</u> *two times a week*
	četr<u>as</u> reiz<u>es</u> dien<u>ā</u> *four times a day*
	div<u>us</u> mēnešu<u>s</u> gad<u>ā</u> *two months a year*

* The word *reize* can be combined with a number to become an adverb.

Distance

Distance is used to communicate "*cik tālu*" ("how far") something is located. Distance is expressed using the accusative case:

Cik talu?	
	Kristaps Porziņģis dzīvo **piec<u>u</u> minūš<u>u</u>** attālumā no parka. *Kristaps Porzingis lives **five minutes** (distance) from the park.*
	Baznīca ir **div<u>us</u> kilometr<u>us</u>** no šejienes. *The church is **two kilometers** from here.*
	Brauciet **div<u>as</u> pieturu<u>as</u>** tālāk, lūdzu! *Travel **two stops** further, please.*

Activities

A. Translation

Translate the following sentences into Latvian on a separate piece of paper. Then check your answers.

1. I have been in Latvia for six months.
2. We will meet with Aivars in two hours.
3. They eat five times a day.
4. He waited for an hour already.
5. We study Latvian every day for an hour.
6. I will answer your question in a minute.
7. We fast once a month.
8. Let's call them back in three hours.

B. Common Errors

The following sentences have bolded and starred errors. Correct and explain the errors to your companion. Check your answers.

1. Mēs te būsim **par četrām dienām***.
   We will be here for four days.
2. Es **katra diena*** lasu Bībeli.
   I read the Bible every day.
3. Es jau **uz diviem gadiem*** esmu baznīcas loceklis(e).
   I have been a Church member for two years.
4. Kad tu būsi bijis baznīcas loceklis jau **viens gads***, tu varēsi tikt saistīts ar savu ģimeni.
   After a year of being a member, you can be sealed to your family.
5. Viņi ir **piecpadsmitas*** minūtes no vilcienu stacijas.
   They are 15 minutes from the train station.
6. Mēs viņu mācām katru **otru*** nedēļu.
   We teach him every other week.
7. Viņš **septiņās minūtēs*** būs baznīcā.
   He will be at church in seven minutes.
8. Mēs ēdam **trijas*** reizes dienā.
   We eat three times a day.

C. Error Correction

With your companion, take turns reading the following sentences aloud. Start by giving the English translation and then say the sentence as it is written in Latvian. Then have the other companion identify errors, if any, and restate the sentence correctly. Check your answers.

1. Mēs pamodamies katrdien pusseptiņos.
   We get up every day at 6:30.
2. Viņi dzīvo viena minūte no baznīcas.
   They live one minute away from the church.
3. Katru mēnešu mums ir iespēja gavēt.
   Each month we have the opportunity to fast.
4. Vispārējā Konference notiek divus reizes gadā.
   General conference is twice a year.
5. Brālis Bite māca stundu katra otro nedēļa.
   Brother Bite teaches the lesson every other week.
6. Paula kristīsies divās nedēļās.
   Paula will be baptized in two weeks.
7. Baznīca ir trīsdesmit minūtes tālu prom šejienes.
   The church is 30 minutes away from here.
8. Māsa Cimdiņa būs pēc desmit minūtes.
   Sister Cimdina will be here in 10 minutes.

D. Fill in the Blank

On a separate piece of paper, fill in the blanks in the following sentences with the correct words. Pay attention to the translations to know which word to use. Check your answers.

1. Mēs rakstām savām ģimenēm ___ ___.
   We write our families once a week.
2. Man vēl ___ ___ jāstudē, lai kļūtu par ārstu.
   I will be studying another two years in order to become a doctor.
3. Stunda sāksies ___ ___ ___.
   The lesson starts in five minutes.
4. Es ___ gadu svinu Ziemassvētkus.
   I celebrate Christmas every year.
5. Kristus valdīs uz ___ ___.
   Christ will reign for a thousand years.
6. Mēs būsim baznīcā no ___ līdz ___.
   We will be at the church from five until seven.
7. Pionieri staigāja ___ ___.
   The pioneers walked hundreds of kilometers.
8. Es apsolu paklausīt, sākot ar ___ līdz pat savai nāvei.
   I promise to obey from this day even until death.

E. Writing Application

Write a paragraph about your favorite family vacation. Describe how far you have to travel, how often you go, and how long you usually spend there.

Review: Quality and Quantity

This review will help you see how well you have learned the material in the previous section. It will also help you evaluate your ability to apply several different grammar principles you have learned in performing the following function:

Asking and Answering Questions of Quality and Quantity

- Numbers
- Duration, Frequency, and Distance

Activities

A. Error Correction

On a separate sheet of paper, rewrite the paragraph below, correcting the 11 errors in it. Check your answers.

Izvērtējiet, cik gari katra diena esat „izmetuši makšķeri". „Mums nevajadzētu līdzināties zvejniekiem, kuri domā, ka visa diena makšķerējuši, kaut gan patiesībā lielāko daļu laika pavadījuši, dodoties uz ūdenstilpni un atpakaļ, ēdot pusdienas un ķimerējoties ap makšķerēšanas piederumiem. Veiksmīgs loms atkarīgs nevis no tā, cik laiks esam pavadījuši ārpus mājām, bet gan no tā, cik ilgi esam izmetuši savu makšķeri. Dažiem zvejniekiem, kuri atgriežas mājās pēc divpadsmitām stundām, pludiņš bijis ūdenī desmit stundu. Citiem zvejniekiem, kaut arī viņi atgriežas mājās pēc divpadsmit stundām, makšķere bijusi izmesta tikai divus stundas. Šie pēdēji, iespējams, brīnās, kādēļ viņiem nav tik labu panākumu kā tiem — otriem. Šis princips attiecas arī uz misionāriem, kurus Skolotājs dēvēja par „cilvēku zvejniekiem". Misionāram būtu jāizmet sava makšķere to pašu brīdis, kad viņš vai viņa iziet no sava dzīvokļa." Dalins H. Oukss

Evaluate how long your "line" is in the water each day. "None of us should be like the fisherman who thinks he has been fishing all day when in reality he has spent most of his time getting to and from the water, eating lunch, and fussing with his equipment. Fishing success is related to how long you have your line in the water, not to how long you are away from the apartment. Some fishermen are away from home for twelve hours and have their line in the water for ten hours. Other fishermen are away from home for twelve hours and have their line in the water for only two hours. This last type may wonder why they do not have the same success as others. The same principle applies to missionaries, whom the Master called 'fishers of men.' A missionary's line should drop into the fishing water the moment he or she leaves the apartment." Dallin H. Oaks

B. Error Correction

Each of the following sentences contains one or more errors. Write down the sentence correctly and say it to your companion. Check your answers. The answers section will refer you to the principle used in each sentence.

1. Dalīsimies trīspadsmitos ticības apliecinājumos!
   Let's share the 13 Articles of Faith.
2. Antions zelta ir vienāds trīs šibloniem.
   An antion of gold is equal to three shiblons.
3. Viņiem ir piecas bērni.
   They have five children.
4. Viņi vismaz gadiem jau bijuši baznīcas locekļi.
   They have been members for at least one year.
5. Izvirzi mērķus katra nedēļai un katra dienai!
   Set weekly and daily goals.
6. Mēs redzējām viņa lielo izaugsmi sešā nedēļu griezumā.
   We saw his great progress in a period of six weeks.
7. Rivo mātei ir četri meitas.
   Rivo's mother has two daughters.
8. Vispārējā Konference notiek divi reizes gadā.
   General conference happens two times a year.
9. Pionieri nostaigāja 2092 kilometri uz Soltleiksitiju.
   The pioneers walked 2,092 kilometers to Salt Lake City.
10. Noturiet ikdien plānošanas apspriedi no 21:00 līdz 21:30!
    Hold a daily planning session from 9:00 p.m. to 9:30 p.m.
11. Ineta apprecējusies 33 gada vecumā.
    Ineta got married at 33 years of age.
12. Priesterības nesēji ir vismaz divpadsmitu gadus veci.
    Priesthood holders are at least 12 years old.
13. Jaunietes piedalās Jauno sieviešu programmā no 12 uz 18.
    Youth participate in the Young Women program from 12 to 18.
14. Nedēļas plānošana var prasīt divas līdz trīsas stundas.
    Weekly planning may take two to three hours.
15. Jēzus augšamcēlās pēc trīsām dienām.
    Jesus was resurrected after three days.
16. Brigams Jangs mācījās vesels gads, pirms piekrita kristīties.
    Brigham Young learned for a whole year before agreeing to be baptized.
17. Mums nākamajai nedēļai ir plāni no pirmdienas uz svētdien.
    We have plans for next week from Monday to Sunday.
18. Olga ar savu meitu tikai laiku pa laiku apmeklē baznīcu.
    Olga and her daughter attend church only once in a while.
19. Mēs sazināmies ar saviem klausītajiem katro diena.
    We contact our investigators every day.
20. Sekosim līdzi ar viņu saistību 24 stundā laikā.
    We will follow up with their commitment within 24 hours.

C. Translation

On a separate piece of paper, translate the words in parentheses into Latvian. Check your answers.

1. Pagājušajā stundiņā mēs mācījām par (*Ten Commandments*).
2. Viņi (*every other week*) brauc uz laukiem.
3. (*The first*) evaņģēlija princips ir ticība Jēzum Kristum.
4. Ievērojot desmitās tiesas likumu, mēs maksājam (1/10) daļu no saviem ienākumiem.
5. Sākot ar (*12*) gadu vecumu, cienīgi vīrieši saņem Ārona priesterību.
6. Visi bērni (*from*) 3 (*to*) 11 (*years*) vecumam apmeklē Sākumskolu.
7. Mums ir (*five*) stundiņas, kurās mēs vēlamies ar jums dalīties.
8. Rihards jau (*many years*) nesmēķē.
9. Atbildības vecums ir (*eight years*).
10. Viņi jau (*fifth*) reize satiekas ar šo klausītāju.
11. Mēs gavējam, izlaižot (*two*) secīgas ēdienreizes.
12. Es (*for two years*) dzīvošu Latvijā.
13. Rīga ir (*45*) minūšu attālumā no šejienes.
14. Dievs apstiprina Savu vārdus no (*two or three*) liecinieku mutes.
15. Pēc (*centuries*) ilgas garīgās tumsības, Dievs caur pravieti Džozefu Smitu atjaunoja patiesības pilnību.
16. Džozefs Smits bija (*14 years old*), kad viņš ieraudzīja Dievu.
17. Viņi jau (*for about half an hour*) gaida autobusu.
18. Mēs nepaliksim ilgāk par (*45 minutes*).
19. Santa dzīvo (*six kilometers*) no baznīcas.
20. Viņam vēl jāstudē (*three years*), lai kļūtu par ārstu.

D. Companion Activity

Often missionaries are asked to describe what they do each day. Work together with your companion to describe what you normally do each day. Take turns saying sentences, and give each other feedback on how well you use the grammar from this review. Focus on the sequence of what you do each day, the duration and number of times you do things, and things that you always, often, or normally do. For example, the first companion could say, "We always wake up at 6:30 a.m." The other companion could then say, "Then after praying, we exercise for 30 minutes." Continue until you have gone through a whole day in the life of a missionary in your area.

E. Scripture Activity

Alma 36:16–19, 23–24: In these verses, Alma narrates his conversion experience to his son Helaman. Notice the words, phrases, and grammar that Alma uses to show sequence and forward movement of time.

F. Member Activity

Plan to meet with a member and ask them to share with you what their typical week is like. Find out what they do for work and what they do with their Church calling. Prepare questions about when, where, and how often they participate in each activity. Ask them what they wish they could do if they had more time. See if there is something you could help them with in exchange for going contacting with you or to an appointment with you.

G. Speaking Activity

Prepare to share a memorable experience about when you found someone to teach. Describe how you found them and what the result of your teaching was. The following questions will give you some ideas of what to talk about: How long had you been finding that day before you found them? How did you feel? Why did they agree to meet with you? How long was it before your first lesson with them? How long was it until they were baptized? What was their major concern? How did they overcome it? Give each other feedback.

H. District Activity

Bring a few jars or containers filled with small objects (such as beans, rice, or candy). Have the missionaries guess how many objects are in each of the jars by saying "I think there are ____ (beans) in the jar." In order for a guess to count, it must be stated with proper grammar. After each guess, tell the missionary whether the actual number is higher or lower. Then, proceed to the next missionary until the correct number is guessed.

Asking and Answering Questions of Cause and Effect

Purpose

This function will help you talk about actions or events that are conditional on other things; for example, why God loves us or what we do to keep the Sabbath day holy. The grammar principles in this section are targeted at helping you perform this function. Below are examples of the types of things you will be able to express with the grammar in this function.

- God loves us **because** we are His children. ("Conjunctions")
- If Christ **would** not have completed the Atonement, we **would** not be able to return to the presence of God. ("Conditional Mood")
- Christ died **so that** we **could** be free from sin. ("Conjunctions," "Conditonal Mood")

Application

Below is a list of doctrinal points that these grammar principles will help you teach, as well as some common missionary tasks that they will help you perform. This list is not comprehensive; it is meant to help you think about how you can use the grammar in real situations. In parentheses next to each point are some sample questions that you can ask yourself to help you think about how to apply the grammar.

Doctrines from the Lessons

- The Great Apostasy (Why was there a Great Apostasy?)
- The Restoration of the Gospel of Jesus Christ (What would have happened without the Restoration? What doctrines were restored by Joseph Smith?)
- The Atonement (What would happen if Christ didn't perform the Atonement? How does the Atonement help you find peace?)
- Agency and the Fall of Adam and Eve (What happened because of the Fall? What would have happened if Eve hadn't partaken of the fruit?)
- Repentance (What happens when we repent? What happens if we don't repent?)

Tasks from the *Missionary Vocabulary and Phrases* Book

- Extend Commitment Invitations (What blessings will they receive after they have kept their commitment?)
- Use the Scriptures (Why do we need to read the scriptures? How would this scripture apply to the life of our investigator?)
- Offer a Prayer (What do we need to do in order to receive answers to our prayers?)

Conditional Mood

Examples

God **would answer** your prayer if you **would pray**.	Dievs **atbildētu** uz tavām lūgšanām, ja tu **lūgtu**.
You **should** read the Book of Mormon.	Tev **vajadzētu** lasīt Mormona Grāmatu.
Do you have friends who **would be** interested in our message?	Vai tev ir draugi, kuri **būtu** ieinteresēti mūsu vēstījumā?
When **could** we meet?	Kad mēs **varētu** tikties?

Explanation

Conditional mood is used to express what "would" or "could" happen under certain conditions.

Would, Could, Should

Would

In order to express "would" in Latvian, add the conditional ending *-u* to the infinitive verb. If the verb is reflexive, remove the *-ies* and replace it with the conditional ending *-os*:

	Infinitive Verb		Ending		Conditional Verb
Regular	mācīt	+	-u	=	mācītu *would teach*
Reflexive	mācīt~~ies~~	+	-os	=	mācītos *would learn*

Examples

Tas **būtu** brīnišķīgi!
*That **would be** wonderful!*

Kā tu **justos**, ja tu **būtu bijis(usi)** klāt?
*How **would** you **feel** if you **would have been** present?*

Ko Jēzus **darītu**?
*What **would** Jesus **do**?*

Could

"Could" is expressed in Latvian by putting *varēt* into conditional mood:

varēt *can* → varētu *could*

Examples

Mēs **nevarētu** paveikt šo darbu bez Svētā Gara palīdzības.
*We **could not** do this work without the help of the Holy Ghost.*

Jēzus nomira, lai mēs visi **varētu** atkal dzīvot.
*Jesus died so that we **could** all live again.*

Kā mēs **varētu** sasniegt savus mērķus?
*How **could** we reach our goals?*

Should

"Should" is expressed in Latvian by putting the verb *vajadzēt* into conditional mood. This verb requires dative construction.

vajadzēt *need* → vajadzētu *should*

Examples

Tev **vajadzētu** dalīties savā liecībā.
*You **should** share your testimony.*

Man **vajadzētu** aizrakstīt savai ģimenei par to, kā man iet.
*I **should** write to my family about how I am doing.*

Jums **vajadzētu** vairāk studēt Svētos Rakstus.
*You (pl.) **should** study the scriptures more.*

Hypothetical

Hypothetical statements and "if . . . then" statements express the idea that something could or would happen given certain conditions:

Examples

Ko tu **darītu**, ja tu **zinātu**, ka mūsdienās ir pravietis uz zemes?
*What **would** you **do** if you knew we had a prophet on the earth today?*

Ja mēs vienmēr **atcerētos**, cik ļoti Dievs mūs mīl, tad mēs **būtu** laimīgāki.
*If we **would** always **remember** how much God loves us, then we would be happier.*

Ja Jēzus **nebūtu** paveicis Grēku Izpirkšanu, neviens **nevarētu** atgriezties pie Dieva.
*If Jesus **hadn't** performed the Atonement, no one could return to God.*

Lai "so that, in order to"

Lai is a unique conjunction that sometimes forces the verb following it into conditional mood. *Lai* can also be used to express one's desire for another person to do something:

Examples

Vai tu lūgsi, **lai** uzzinātu, vai Džozefs Smits bija pravietis?
*Will you pray **to** find out if Joseph Smith was a prophet?*

Dievs vēlas, **lai** visi Viņa bērni rastu mieru šajā dzīvē.
God wants all of His children to find peace in this life.

Lai nožēlotu grēkus, mums tie vispirms ir jāapzinās.
***In order** to repent of our sins, we must first acknowledge them.*

Kaut

Kaut is often used in combination with conditional mood to express a desire or a wish:

Examples

Kaut es tur būtu bijis(usi).
If only I had been there.

Kaut rīt nelītu.
I wish it wouldn't rain tomorrow.

Kaut Edgars būtu baznīcā.
If only Edgars would be at church.

Politeness

Conditional mood is often used to ask polite questions or make polite requests:

Examples

Mēs **vēlētos** ar Jums dalīties pantā.
*We **would like** to share a scripture with you (formal).*

Vai Jūs **nevarētu** mums palīdzēt atrast šo adresi?
***Could** you (formal) help us find this address?*

Vai tu **gribētu** uzzināt vairāk par Jēzus Kristus baznīcu?
***Would** you **like** to find out more about the Church of Jesus Christ?*

Kad tu **gribētu** vēlreiz tikties?
*When **would** you **like** to meet again?*

Negation

Here are examples of negated conditional mood:

Examples

Kāpēc mums **nevajadzētu** citus tiesāt?
*Why **shouldn't** we judge others?*

Kas būtu noticis, ja Džozefs Smits **nebūtu** lūdzis?
*What would have happened if Joseph Smith **would not have** prayed?*

Es **nevarētu** sludināt evaņģēliju bez sava pārinieka/savas pārinieces.
*I **wouldn't be able** to preach the gospel without my companion.*

Activities

A. Conjugation

Conjugate each verb in the conditional tense. Check your answers. Then create a sentence that you could use in a teaching situation for each verb.

1. būt	4. varēt	7. vajadzēt	10. iet	13. dot
2. domāt	5. saprast	8. izvēlēties	11. patikt	14. vēlēties
3. zināt	6. ticēt	9. mācīties	12. atgriezties	15. nozīmēt

B. Translate

Translate each of the following sentences. Check your answers.

1. Would Verners like a cookie?
2. Could you please help me?
3. We should go visit Rudolfs.
4. It would be wonderful if you could help us teach a lesson.
5. They would forget to read the scriptures if we hadn't reminded them.
6. Could you share (lit. mention) an example?
7. Would Dzinta testify to her neighbors?
8. Would she share a verse with us?
9. You should listen to the missionaries' message.
10. Would you (formal) like to know how to pray?

C. Common Mistakes

The following sentences have bolded and starred errors. Correct and explain the errors to your companion. Check your answers.

1. Vai tu vēlētos **noskaitītu*** lūgšanu?
   Would you like to say the prayer?
2. **Mēs*** vajadzētu aicināt Austru apmeklēt baznīcu.
   We should invite Austra to come to church.
3. **Varētu*** mācīt par Grēku Izpirkšanu?
   Could you teach about the Atonement?
4. Kāpēc jūs to **gribat zinātu***?
   Why would you want to know?
5. Vai tu man **varēt*** palīdzēt**?**
   Could you help me?
6. Ja tu zinātu, ka Dievs tev atbildēs uz jebkuru jautājumu, ko tu Viņam **prasi***?
   If you knew that God would answer any question, what would you ask Him?
7. Ja viņa nebūtu lasījusi Mormona Grāmatu, viņa **nezināja***, ka šī baznīca ir patiesa.
   If she had not read the Book of Mormon, she would not know this Church is true.
8. Mēs **varamtu*** viņiem mācīt par templiem un mūžīgajām ģimenēm.
   We could teach them about temples and eternal families.
9. Bez Atjaunošanas daudzas patiesības vēl **esot*** pazudušas.
   Without the Restoration, many truths would still be lost.
10. Jums vajadzētu **runājat*** ar Dievu caur lūgšanu.
    You should talk with God through prayer.

D. Error Correction

With your companion, take turns reading the following sentences aloud. Start by giving the English translation and then say the sentence as it is written in Latvian. Then have the other companion identify errors, if any, and restate the sentence correctly. Check your answers.

1. Kā jūs varētu man palīdzētu?
   How could you (pl.) help me?
2. Es gribu tevi lūgt.
   I want you to pray.
3. Vēlētos tu lasīt Mormona Grāmatu?
   Would you like to read the Book of Mormon?
4. Kā mēs varētu tev palīdzētu?
   How could we help you?
5. Mēs gaidītos ilgāku, bet mums ir jāiet.
   We would wait longer, but we have to go.
6. Mums vajadzētu iemācīties, kā mīlatu visus cilvēkus.
   We should learn how to love everyone.
7. Ja nebūtu bijusi Atkrišana, Atjaunošana nebūt vajadzīga.
   If there had been no apostasy, there would have been no need of a restoration.
8. Ko tas tev nozīmē, ja tu vari pēc nāves atkal satikt savu ģimeni?
   What would that mean to you if you could see your family again after death?
9. Ko jūs būt gatavi darītu, lai uzzinātu patiesību.
   What would you be ready to do to find out the truth?
10. Mēs varētu otrdien aizbraukt pie tevis, lai novadīsim stundiņu.
    We could travel to you (your place) on Tuesday to teach a lesson.

E. Listening

Listen to how native speakers use the conditional mood. Consider how they use it differently than you do, and set goals to help you use the conditional more like a native.

F. Scriptures

Read some of the scriptures that you frequently share with investigators, and find some that use the conditional. Memorize the scriptures and practice sharing them with your companion. For example, Mozus Grāmata 5:11:

> "Un Ieva, viņa sieva, dzirdēja to visu un bija laimīga, sakot: Ja **nebūtu** mūsu pārkāpuma, mums nekad **nebūtu** pēcnācēju, un mēs nekad **nepazītu** ne labu, ne ļaunu, ne mūsu pestīšanas prieku, ne mūžīgo dzīvi, ko Dievs dod visiem paklausīgajiem."

G. *Sludini Manu Evaņģēliju* Activity

Complete the first personal study activity on page 205 of *Sludini Manu Evaņģēliju*. Write down, in Latvian, what you would do in the situation given, and go over your answers with your companion. Together with him or her, come up with other hypothetical situations and write down how you would respond to each one.

H. Writing Activities

Choose one of the following cause/effect topics, and write a paragraph about it. Focus on using conditional correctly. Underline this grammar in your paragraph and have a native speaker check it.

- How would your life be different if you hadn't had the gospel in your life?
- Which missionary from the scriptures would you like to serve with, and how would your mission be if you served with that companion?

I. What If

Take turns asking your companion a "what if" question. Then have your companion answer what they would do in that situation. Then switch.

Example

?: Kas notiktu, ja mēs uz rokām valkātu zeķes?
What if we wore socks on our hands?

A: Mums būtu siltas rokas.
We would have warm hands.

?: Ko tu darītu, ja tevi pēkšņi aicinātu rīt uzstāties baznīcā?
What would you do if you were suddenly asked to speak in church tomorrow?

A: Es lūgtu un pārdomātu, ko teikt.
I would pray and ponder about what to say.

Conjunctions

Examples

I know **that** my Redeemer lives.	Es zinu, **ka** mans Glābējs ir dzīvs.
God loves us **because** we are His children.	Dievs mūs mīl, **tāpēc ka** mēs esam Viņa bērni.
If you love me, keep my commandments (John 14:15).	**Ja** jūs mani mīlat, turiet manus baušļus!
The Holy Ghost **not only** guides us **but also** comforts us.	Svētais Gars **ne vien** mūs vada, **bet arī** mierina.

Explanation

Conjunctions are connecting words used to join or logically connect and order clauses (or concepts within clauses). Commas are always placed before conjunctions when clauses are being connected. This chapter will discuss simple, complex, and combined conjunctions and their function as subordinating and coordinating conjunctions.

Division

Simple Conjunctions

Simple conjunctions connect parts of a sentence by using one word. Here are some examples of common simple conjunctions:

ka *that*	un *and*	kamēr *while, until*	ne *not, nor*	ja *if*	vai *or, whether*	līdz *until*	lai *so that*
arī *also, too*	bet *but*	jeb *or*	taču *but*	tad *then*	tomēr *still, yet*	kopš *since*	jo *because*

Examples	Explanation
Tā **arī** ir laba ideja. That **also** is a good idea.	arī is expressed before the idea in Latvian. It is wrong to say, "Tā ir laba ideja arī."
Ādamam un Ievai bija jāpamet Ēdenes dārzs, **lai** vairotos un piepildītu zemi. Adam and Eve had to leave the Garden of Eden **in order to** multiply and replenish the earth.	lai is a conjunction that forces the verb, following it into conditional.
Misionāri turpināja apmeklēt Beldavu ģimeni, **kamēr** viņi izlēma kristīties. Missionaries continued to visit the Beldavs family **until** they decided to get baptized.	When kamēr is used in the future, it means "until."

Ar and *Un*

The conjunction *un* is used for "and" in almost all situations, but the preposition *ar* (meaning "with") emphasizes the fact that two people are doing something together or doing the same thing; thus, it works better in some situations.

Remember that *ar* forces the accusative case.

Un	Ar
Māte **un** tēvs spēlē tenisu. *Mother **and** father are playing tennis.*	Māte **ar** tēvu spēlē tenisu. *Mother **and** father are playing tennis.*
Liene **un** es gribējām noskatīties kādu filmu. *Liene **and** I wanted to watch a movie.*	Mēs **ar** Lieni gribējām noskatīties kādu filmu. *(We **with** Liene—Lit.) Liene **and** I wanted to watch a movie.*
Tu **un** Iveta uzcepāt gardus cepumiņus. *You **and** Iveta baked delicious cookies.*	Jūs **ar** Ivetu uzcepāt gardus cepumiņus. *You **and** Iveta baked delicious cookies.*

Note: In the previous examples, ar emphasizes that the action is done together, so it sounds much better. Un is used more generally and does not necessarily imply that the action is done together.

Jeb or *Vai*

Both jeb and vai are used in different situations to mean "or" in Latvian. The following chart explains when to use each.

"or"	Example	Explanation
jeb	Melhisedeka jeb augstākā priesterība *The Melchizedek, or higher, Priesthood*	Jeb is used when the alternative has the same meaning.
vai	ābols **vai** apelsīns *apple or orange*	Vai is used with two alternative possibilities.

Examples

Rīcības brīvība **jeb** spēja izvēlēties ir viena no lielākajām dāvanām.
Agency, **or** the ability to choose, is one of the greatest gifts.

Nāve nemaina mūsu vēlmes attiecībā uz labu **vai** ļaunu.
Death does not change our desires for right **or** wrong.

Complex Conjunctions

Complex conjunctions function like simple conjunctions by connecting parts of a sentence. These conjunctions are complex because they consist of more than one word. Here are a few examples of complex conjunctions:

tāpat kā *the same as*	lai gan *although*	kaut gan *even though*	tā kā *since*	bet arī *but also*	tāpēc ka *for, because*	neskatoties uz to *nevertheless*

Examples

Dievs iedvesmo cilvēkus mūsdienās **tāpat kā** Bībeles laikā.
God inspires people today **the same as** in the time of the Bible.

Tā kā cilvēkiem ir rīcības brīvība, viņi paši ir atbildīgi par savu rīcību.
Since people have agency, they themselves are accountable for their actions.

Es zinu, ka šī ir patiesība, **tāpēc ka** es lūdzu un saņēmu atbildi.
I know that this is true **because** I prayed and received an answer.

Combined Conjunctions

Simple and complex conjunctions can be combined within the same sentence. Here are a few examples of combined conjunctions:

gan . . . gan both . . . and	ne . . . ne neither . . . nor	ir . . . ir* both . . . and	vai nu . . . vai arī either . . . or	ne vien . . . bet arī not only . . . but also	nevis . . . bet not . . . but	jo . . . jo the (sooner) . . . the (better)

* This conjunction has the same meaning as gan . . . gan but is rarely used. It is more common to use gan . . . gan.

Examples

Dievs ir ar mums **gan** priekos, **gan** bēdās.
God is with us in **both** the happy **and** the sad times.

Vai nu šī grāmata ir pilnīgi patiesa, **vai** arī galīgi nepatiesa.
This book is **either** completely true **or** not true at all.

Tavs mērķis ir **ne vien** pasniegt visas misionāru stundiņas, **bet arī** palīdzēt cilvēkiem nākt pie Kristus.
Your purpose is **not only** to give all the missionary lessons **but also** to help people come unto Christ.

Function

Coordinating Conjunctions

Coordinating conjunctions link independent ideas of equal strength together. Here are some common Latvian coordinating conjunctions. The English translations are approximate.

un and	arī also	nevis instead, not	vai or, whether	gan totally	bet but	tomēr still, yet	taču but	jeb or	tikai also, only

The following chart shows how coordinating conjunctions are used to link independent clauses:

Clause I		Clause II		Examples
Es mīlu Dievu. I love God.	+	Es kalpoju Dievam. I serve God.	→	Es mīlu un kalpoju Dievam. I love and serve God.
Mēs varam mācīties no pagātnes. We can learn from the past.	+	Mēs nevaram dzīvot pagātnē. We can't live in the past.	→	Mēs varam mācīties no pagātnes, bet mēs nevaram dzīvot pagātnē. We can learn from the past, but we can't live in the past.

Examples

Atjaunošana, **nevis** reformācija, bija nepieciešama.
The Restoration, **not a** reformation, was necessary.

Dievs sagatavoja mums plānu **un** Kristus Grēku Izpirkšana ir tā centrā.
God prepared a plan for us **and** Christ's Atonement is central to it.

Cilvēki **arī** noraidīja Jēzu.
People **also** rejected Jesus.

Subordinating Conjunctions

Subordinating conjunctions introduce a new clause within a sentence which is dependent on the other clause. Here are some common examples. The English translations are approximate.

ka that	ja if	tāpēc ka *because*	tā kā *since*	kaut gan *even though*	kamēr *while*	kopš *since*	iekams* *before*
lai so that	jo because	tādēļ ka because	tā ka so that	lai gan although	līdz until	tiklīdz as soon as	pirms before

* This conjunction has the same meaning as pirms but is rarely used. It is more common to use pirms.

The following chart shows how subordinating conjunctions are used to introduce a new dependent clause:

Clause I		Dependent Clause		Examples
Es kalpoju Dievam. I serve God.	+	Es mīlu Dievu. I love God.	→	Es kalpoju Dievam, **tāpēc ka** es viņu mīlu. I serve God **because** I love Him.
Vai tu tici? Do you believe?	+	Jēzus ir Kristus. Jesus is the Christ.	→	Vai tu tici, **ka** Jēzus ir Kristus? Do you believe (**that**) Jesus is the Christ?

Examples

Oksana lasa Mormona Grāmatu katru dienu, **lai gan** viņai nav daudz brīvā laika.
Oksana reads the Book of Mormon every day, **although** she doesn't have much free time.

Ja mēs esam cienīgi, mēs varam baudīt nepārtrauktu Svētā Gara klātbūtni.
If we are worthy, then we can enjoy continuous companionship of the Holy Ghost.

Mēs strādājam, **kamēr** viņi spēlējas.
We work **while** they play.

"That"

The word "that" has many meanings in English and is used as a conjunction, a pronoun, and an adverb. Communicating the different meanings of "that" is done in Latvian by using many different words:

Conjunction "That"	Pronoun "That"	Adverb "That"
ka, lai	kas, tas, tā, kurš	tā, tik

Ka

Ka ("that") is a conjunction used to connect clauses that are dependent on one another. Be careful not to confuse *ka* with the genitive *kā* or the question word *kā* ("how").

Examples

Es tikko atcerējos, **ka** rītdien ir gavēņa svētdiena.
I just remembered **that** tomorrow is fast Sunday.

Tā sajūta ir pierādījums tam, **ka** Svētais Gars ir ar tevi.
That feeling is evidence **that** the Holy Ghost is with you.

Es domāju, ka viņš sapratīs, **ka** mēs tikai gribam viņam palīdzēt.
I think (that) he will understand **that** we only want to help him.

More detailed representations of *ka* being used in a sentence are displayed in the following charts:

Subject	Verb	Conjunction	Sentence or Clause	Explanation
Viņš He	teica, said	ka (that)	viņš gribētu kristīties. he would like to be baptized.	The second clause in each of these sentences is the direct object of the verb—what was said, known, and heard—that is usually in accusative. However, a whole clause cannot be put into accusative, so the sentence is reset using ka.
Es I	zinu, know	ka (that)	Kristus izcieta manis dēļ. Christ suffered on my behalf.	
Mēs We	dzirdējām, heard	ka (that)	rītdiena būšot lietaina. tomorrow will be rainy.	

Sentence or Clause	Conjunction	Sentence or Clause	Explanation
Viņa bija tik nogurusi, She was so tired	ka (that)	viņa nevarēja skaidri padomāt. she couldn't think clearly.	In these examples, the second clause explains the meaning of, or reason behind, the first clause. Ka is used as a subordinate conjunction to connect these clauses.
Vai jūs esat bēdīgi, Are you (pl.) sad	ka (that)	es nevarēšu atnākt? I won't be able to come?	
Ticība ir cerība, Faith is a hope	ka (that)	beigu beigās viss būs kartībā. in the end everything will be all right.	

Tas/Tā, Ka

Tas ("that") is a declinable pronoun and can be used to represent a noun or a whole clause. *Tas* is used to represent a clause, while *ka* is used to reset the sentence. The following chart shows how *tas* and *ka* can be used together in sentences:

Sentence with a pronoun for the direct object	Conjunction	Sentence or Clause
Vai jums patīk tas, Do you like (it)	ka (that)	baznīca sākas vienos? church starts at one?
Es saprotu to, I understand (that)	ka (that)	man ir jānožēlo grēki, lai varētu dzīvot kopā ar Dievu. I must repent in order to live with God.

Note: For more examples and information about *tas,* see chapter 10, "Pronouns."

Par To, Ka

The phrase *par to, ka* is used in some complex sentences when the direct object of the first clause is the entire second clause. The preposition *par* can only act on one word, not an entire clause, so the pronoun *tas* is used to represent the entire second clause, which clause is introduced by the conjunction *ka. Par to, ka* can be interpreted as "for the fact that." Here are some examples:

Examples

Es esmu pateicīgs **par to, ka** man ir labi draugi.
I am grateful **that** I have good friends.

Viņš liecināja **par to, ka** Jēzus Kristus ir dzīvā Dieva Dēls.
He testified **that** Jesus Christ is the living Son of God.

Samuēls pravietoja **par to, ka** Kristus nāks uz zemi.
Samuel prophesied **that** Christ would come to earth.

Par to, ka is used with certain verbs and often when there is more than just a noun afterwards. Because the preposition *par* requires something to be in accusative, the pronoun *to* is always needed and cannot be dropped.

Examples

Es **pateicos** par to, ka šodien ir jauka diena.
I am **thankful** that today is a nice day.

Es **priecājos** par to, ka mūsu klausītājs drīz kristīsies.
I am **glad** that our investigator will be baptized soon.

Svētdienas skolas skolotājs **runāja** par to, ka mēs visi esam Dieva bērni.
The Sunday School teacher **talked** about the fact that we all are God's children.

Compare *par to, ka* to prepositions used more often with relative pronouns—*par to, kas/kurš/kāds;* see chapter 10, "Pronouns."

Omitting "That"

Latvians often omit the pronouns *par to* and *tas/tā* when combined with *ka.* In English, the conjunction "that" is often left out.However, the conjunction *ka* **cannot** be omitted in Latvian. There is no way to say, "I know the Book of Mormon is true." Instead, you **must** say, "I know **that** The Book of Mormon is true." The following chart shows how *tas* ("that") is often omitted:

# of Times Used	Ka	To, Ka	Par To, Ka	Kas	To, Kas	Par To, Kas
Book of Mormon	**3269**	**10**	**6**	**3559**	**165**	**56**

Other to, ka Phrases

Phrase	Example
uz to, ka	Neskatoties uz to, ka misionāriem nav daudz laika, lai iemācītos valodu, viņi veiksmīgi komunicē ar cilvēkiem. *Regardless of the fact that missionaries don't have much time to learn the language, they successfully communicate to people*.
izņemot to, ka	Viņš par mūsu baznīcu zināja visu, izņemot to, ka mēs nedzeram kafiju. *He knew everything about our Church, except that we don't drink coffee.*
arī to, ka	Mēs viņai mācīsim arī to, ka Kristus Baznīca atkal tika nodibināta uz Zemes. *We will teach her also the fact that Christ's Church was restored again on the earth.*
tikai to, ka	Stundiņas laikā es pamanīju tikai to, ka mūsu klausītājam iedegās acis, kad mēs runājām par kristībām. *During the lesson I noticed only (the fact) that our investigator's eyes lit up when we talked about baptism.*
ar to, ka	Mūsu saruna beidzās ar to, ka viņš piekrita ar mums tikties, lai mācītos vairāk par evaņģēliju. *Our conversation ended with him agreeing to meet with us to learn more about the gospel.*
vienīgi to, ka	Es saprotu vienīgi to, ka es neko nesaprotu. *I understand only the fact that I don't understand anything.*

Activities

A. Translation

Translate the following sentences into Latvian. Check your answers.

1. I know that my Redeemer lives.
2. We have the priesthood so that we can help people.
3. Do you believe that God will answer your prayers?
4. Because Christ loves us, He died for us.
5. God sent us to earth so that we can progress.
6. My experience was both bitter and sweet.
7. I have felt the Spirit tonight while being with you. (jūs)
8. I have lived here since March.
9. We go through not only good but also hard times.
10. Are they happy or sad?

B. Fill In the Blank

Fill in the blanks with the conjunction or conjunctional phrase that fits best. Check your answers.

1. Mēs esam pateicīgi__ __, __ mums ir iespēja kalpot.
   We are thankful that we have the opportunity to serve.
2. Mēs ceram, __Tamāra atnāks.
   We hope (that)Tamāra comes.
3. Viņš būs pasākumā __viņam nebūs jāstrādā.
   He will be at the activity if he doesn't have to work.
4. Viņi zina, ka šī ir patiesība, __ viņi ir lūguši.
   They know this is true because they have prayed.
5. Es priecājos__ __ , __ mana mamma kristīsies.
   I rejoice that my mom will be baptized.
6. Ārā ir auksts un tumšs, __ viņi tik un tā ir laimīgi.
   It is cold and dark outside, yet they are still happy.
7. Mums nav daudz, __ mums ir ticība.
   We don't have much; however, we do have faith.
8. Viņiem patīk sportot __ ēst.
   They love to play sports and eat.
9. Tā ir grūta situācija, __ __ laba iespēja mācīties.
   That is a hard situation but also a good learning opportunity.
10. Es zinu, __ galu galā viss būs kārtībā.
    I know that in the end all will be well.

C. *Ar* and *Un*

Fill in the blanks with the correct form of "and." Check your answers.

1. Mēs neesam atbildīgi par Ādama __ Ievas Krišanu.
   We are not accountable for the Fall of Adam and Eve.
2. Mēs __ Ivetu būsim rīt baznīcā pusdeviņos.
   I and Iveta will be at the church tomorrow at 8:30.
3. Viņi ir laipni __ mīloši.
   They are kind and loving.
4. Mēs gājām uz baznīcu kopā ar Lindu __ Emīliju.
   We went to church together with Linda and Emilija.
5. Mēs __ Zigrīdu dziedājām "Es esmu Dieva bērns."
   Zigrida and I sang "I Am a Child of God."
6. Mēs __ tevi kopā mācīsimies un augsim.
   You and I are going to learn and grow together.

D. *Jeb* or *Vai*

Fill in the blanks with the correct form of "or." Check your answers.

1. Celestiālā valstība tiek salīdzināta ar saules godību__ spožumu.
   *The celestial kingdom is compared with the glory **or** brightness of the sun.*
2. Par visiem grēkiem ir jāmaksā--vai nu mums pašiem, __ arī Kristum.
   *All sin must be paid for, either by ourselves **or** by Christ.*
3. Dieva Gars, __ Svētais Gars, ir Dievības loceklis.
   The Spirit of God, or the Holy Ghost, is a member of the Godhead.
4. Mēs esam misionāri(es) __ brīvprātīgie(ās).
   We are missionaries, or volunteers.
5. Vai mūsu tikšanās ir sestdien __ svētdien?
   Is our meeting Saturday or Sunday?
6. Kam jūs sekosiet--Dievam, __ saviem draugiem?
   Who will you follow—God or your friends?

E. Common Errors

The following sentences have bolded and starred errors. Correct and explain the errors to your companion. Check your answers.

1. Mormona Grāmata liecina **to, ka*** Dievs mīl savus bērnus.
   The Book of Mormon testifies about the fact that God loves His children.
2. **Tā kā* pirmā vīzija,** zināšanas par patiesību ir izplatījušās visā pasaulē.
   Since the First Vision, knowledge of truth has increased in all the world.
3. Viņai ir tik daudz brīvā laika, **tas*** viņa nezina, ko ar sevi darīt.
   She has so much free time (that) she doesn't know what to do with herself.
4. Mēs esam pateicīgi **par, ka*** mums ir dzīvais pravietis.
   We are thankful for the fact that we have a living prophet.
5. Man ir jānožēlo grēki, **ka varu*** dzīvot kopā ar Dievu.
   I must repent so that I can live with God.
6. Es **zinu*** Mormona Grāmata ir patiesa.
   I know the Book of Mormon is true.
7. Mums visiem ir vecāki - **gan** māte, **un*** tēvs.
   We all have parents, both a mother and a father.
8. Es zinu, ka **ticību ir svarīgu*.**
   I know that faith is important.
9. Dievs vēlas **mums būt*** laimīgi.
   God wants us to be happy.
10. **Viņš un es ir*** labi draugi.
    He and I are good friends.

F. Error Corrections

With your companion, take turns reading the following sentences aloud. Start by giving the English translation and then say the sentence as it is written in Latvian. Then have the other companion identify errors, if any, and restate the sentence correctly. Check your answers.

1. Lai gan mēs nevairs esam kopā ar Dievu, mēs joprojām varam ar Viņu sazināties
   Although we are no longer with God, we can still communicate with Him.
2. Kopš kura laika tu zināji, tu vēlējies kalpot misijā?
   Since when did you know (that) you wanted to serve a mission?
3. Ģimene ir pati svarīgākā sociālā vienība gan pašlaik un mūžībā.
   The family is the most important social unit both now and in eternity.
4. Man patīk to, ka viņš ir sācis lasīt Mormona Grāmatu.
   I like (that) that he has started to read the Book of Mormon.
5. Es esmu pateicīgs, ka Dievs atbild uz lūgšanām.
   I am grateful for the fact that God answers prayers.
6. Viņa ir veca dāma, viņa vienīgi izskatās jauna.
   She is an old lady, only she looks young.
7. Viņiem ir patiesība, vēl viņiem nav patiesības pilnības.
   They have truth, yet they don't have a fulness of truth.
8. Es to redzēju arī.
   I also saw that.
9. Paļaujies uz Dieva, ne uz pasaules žēlastību.
   Rely on the mercy of God, not on the mercy of the world.
10. Viņiem nav ne ēdiena un ūdens.
    They have neither food nor water.

G. Relative Pronouns and Clauses

The following sentences are translated into Latvian by using either relative pronouns or conjunctions. Determine which construction to use and then translate the sentences. Check your answers.

1. We learned about how to properly fill out the area book.
2. Christ is the only one who understands me completely.
3. I testify (about the fact) that Christ will come again to earth.
4. I am grateful that the gospel of Jesus Christ has been restored.
5. I testify that God has not forgotten you.
6. I have shared what I know to be true.
7. I can't remember who asked me to help in their garden.
8. Jenny liked what we taught her about how families can be eternal.

H. Language Study Plan Activity

Read the fourth bullet point under "Memorize Vocabulary and Phrases" (*Preach My Gospel*, 129). Conjunctions can help you improve the variety and flow of your Latvian as you seek to communicate with native speakers. Memorize the meanings of each simple, complex, and combined conjunction from this chapter, and make a goal to use each one at least once per day for three days. Keep track of your progress in your planner and ask your companion to follow up with you each day on your goal.

I. Companionship Teaching Activity

Role-play teaching a 15- to 20-minute lesson of your choice. The first companion starts teaching and keeps speaking until he or she uses a conjunction, at which point the next companion completes the sentence and picks up the lesson. Continue switching off until the lesson is completed. Keep going until the lesson is completed.

J. Resource Activities

Read these verses and study how they use the conjunctions from this section.

1 Nephi 17:13	Helaman 5:12	Helaman 8:16	3 Nephi 28:37
Jacob 5: 60	Alma 32:28	3 Nephi 19:22	Mormon 8:5

Review: Cause and Effect

This review will help you see how well you have learned the material in the previous section. It will also help you evaluate your ability to apply several different grammar principles you have learned in performing the following function:

Asking and Answering Questions of Cause and Effect

- Conditional Mood
- Conjunctions

Activities

A. Error Correction

On a separate sheet of paper, rewrite the paragraph below, correcting the nine errors in it. Check your answers.

Jēzus Kristus evaņģēlijs nosaka tava vēstījuma saturu un tavu mērķi; citiem vārdiem sakot, tas izskaidro gan to, kas ir misionāru darbs, gan tas, kādēļ tas tiek veikts. Glābējs mācīja, Viņa evaņģēlijā ir ietvertas dažas ļoti būtiskas pamatdoktrīnas. Viņš nāca pasaulē, izpildīt Sava Tēva gribu, un Tēvs sūtīja Viņu pasaulē, lai Viņš tikt pacelts pie krusta. Caur Viņa veikto Grēku Izpirkšanu un augšāmcelšanos visi cilvēki tiks pacelti, lai stātu Kristus priekšā un tiktu tiesāti par saviem darbiem — jeb tie būtu labi vai ļauni.

The gospel of Jesus Christ defines both your message and your purpose; that is, it provides both the "what" and the "why" of missionary work. The Savior defined His gospel to include some very vital and basic doctrines. He came into the world to do His Father's will, and His Father sent Him into the world to be lifted up on the cross. By His Atonement and Resurrection, all men will be lifted up to stand before Christ to be judged of their works, whether they be good or evil.

B. Error Correction

Each of the following sentences contains one or more errors. Write down the sentence correctly and say it to your companion. Check your answers. The answers section will refer you to the principle used in each sentence.

1. Dievs grib tevi lasīt Mormona Grāmatu un lūgt katru dienu.
   God wants you to read the Book of Mormona and pray every day.
2. Tev vajag rekomendāciju doties uz templi un kristīties par citiem.
   You need a recommend to go to the temple and be baptized for others.
3. Tāpēc Viņš ir mūsu Tēvs, Viņš atbildēs uz mūsu lūgšanām.
   Because He is our Father, He will answer our prayers.
4. Ar Svēta Gara spēku tu apliecināsi šis vēstījums ir patiess.
   With the power of the Holy Ghost, you will confirm this message is true.
5. Cītīgi studē Svētos Rakstus, lai atpazīt un izprast Svēto Garu!
   Diligently study the scriptures to recognize and understand the Holy Ghost.
6. Jo labāk cilvēki apgūst evaņģēliju, vēl jutīgāka kļūst sirdsapziņa.
   The more people obtain the gospel, the more sensitive their conscience is.
7. Lai man ir ticība Dievam, man vēl ir pārbaudījumi.
   Although I have faith in Christ, I still have trials.
8. Lūdz, lai baznīcas locekļi ieteikt jums kādu, kuru jūs varat mācīt!
   Pray that Church members recommend someone whom you can teach.
9. Visiem ir iespēja izvēlēties, paklausīt Dievam vai arī nē.
   Everyone can choose to obey God or not.
10. Es baudu Svētos Rakstus, tad tie paver durvis uz atklāsmi.
    I enjoy the scriptures because they open the door to revelation.
11. Topiet Kristīti Manā Vārdā, lai jūs varat tikt iesvētīti!
    Be baptized in My name, that you can be sactified.
12. Mums jālūdz Dievam, lai viņš mums piedod.
    We must pray to God so that He will forgive us.
13. Kas ir evaņģēlijs vai Kristus mācību?
    What is the gospel or doctrine of Christ?
14. Ko Jēzus jādara?
    What would Jesus do?
15. Kā lai izkoptu Kristum piemītošās īpašības?
    How can I develop Christlike attributes?
16. Viņa vecāki atbalsta viņa lēmumu arī.
    His parents also support his decision.
17. Atdari savu muti, lai dalītu atjaunotajā evaņģēlijā.
    Open your mouth to share the restored gospel.
18. Ko mēs varam darīt, kļūtu tikpat ticīgi kā Jēkabs?
    What can we do to become as faithful as Jacob?
19. Mums jāpaļaujas ne uz sevi, bet uz Kristu.
    We need to rely not on ourselves but on Christ.
20. Mormona Grāmata liecina, Dievs mīl savus bērnus.
    The Book of Mormon testifies that God loves His children.

C. Translation

On a separate piece of paper, translate the words in parentheses into Latvian. Check your answers.

1. Es saprotu, (that) man jālūdz (in order to) uzzinātu patiesību.
2. Kā man jāizmaina sava sirds, lai (become) līdzīgāks Kristum?
3. Rīcības brīvība (or) spēja izvēlēties ir dāvana no Dieva.
4. Mēs mācām, (to help) cilvēkiem sagatavoties kristībām.
5. Bija nepieciešama (not) reformācija, (but even) atjaunošana.
6. Kā (do I recognize and understand) Svētā Gara pamudinājumus?
7. (Just like) Džozefs lūdza (to receive) atbildes, mēs arī varam lūgt.
8. Kad tevi ir vadījis Svētais Gars (or) kad tu esi saņēmis atklāsmi?
9. (Nevertheless) galu galā viņš (still) uzaicināja mūs pie sevis vakariņās.
10. Svētie Raksti atklāj, (that) Krišana patiesībā ir svētība.
11. Tev (should not) pazaudēt drosmi.
12. Pirms kristīšanās viņš katru dienu (prayed and read).
13. Mēs varam izvēlēties (either) labu (or) ļaunu.
14. Gita gribēja, (me to come) viņu apciemot.
15. Paturi prātā, (that) Dievs tevi aicināja misijā.
16. Ko tu (would do), ja tu (could) darīt jebko.
17. Es (would go home, if) man nevajadzētu strādāt.
18. Es zinu, (that) Jēzus Kristus ir Glābējs.
19. Dievs mūs mīl, (that's why) Viņš ir sūtījis Savu Dēlu.
20. Tu vari pacelt (both) brīdinājuma, (and) cerības balsi.

D. Companion Activity

With your companion, discuss in Latvian what things each of you did in order to prepare for your missions. What are some things you wish you would have done? Then identify a member or couple in the ward that is or will soon be preparing to serve a mission. Prepare to teach them a lesson about what they can do now to prepare to serve a mission, and help set a goal of what they will start doing now to prepare. You may also consider sharing "cause and effect" moments in your life that increased your desire to serve a mission. Ask the member for feedback on your use of conjugations and conditional mood.

E. *Preach My Gospel* Activity

With your companion, read "How to Begin Teaching" (*Preach My Gospel*, 176–177). While reading, take note of three different ways you could improve your "how to begin teaching" to have a more positive outcome with your investigators. Afterwards, practice the methods you have chosen. Focus on using correct conjunctions and uses of conditional mood. Discuss further any factors, good or bad, that may affect your teaching appointments and how you can react. Then practice again.

F. Writing Activity

Identify a member that was baptized in the last year that you would like to visit. Prepare questions that will help you find out all you can about what they, the missionaries, and the ward did in order to help them prepare for baptism. Then ask them what things they wish they would have done to prepare or wish the missionaries or ward would have done to help them prepare. Pay attention to their usage of "in order to" and conjunctions. Write down the main points of their response. For further practice, identify one of your progressing investigators that is nearing baptism. Share with them the list of things that the member did to prepare for baptism, and help them set goals of what they will do in order to prepare for their own baptism.

G. Reading Activity

Have a native read the following scriptures one sentence at a time: 1 Nephi 3:7, 2 Nephi 31:19, Mosiah 3:19, Mosiah 27:26, and Alma 42:13 (each of these verses contains one or more grammar structures from this function). Repeat each sentence they read after they do so, and try to match their pronunciation, accentuation, and speed (i.e., what words they put emphasis on and which ones they don't, where they speed up, where they slow down, etc.). Ask them for feedback on your pronunciation. Then ask them which of these five scriptures they like the most, and have a short discussion with them about it. Make sure to use the grammar structures from this lesson in your discussion.

H. Speaking Activity

Discuss the answers to the following questions with your companion in Latvian:

- What drove Joseph Smith to pray in the grove of trees?
- What was the result of Nephi's faith in getting the brass plates?
- What causes people you have worked with to either progress or to stumble?
- What would have happened if there were no Atonement?
- What causes a person to have a broken heart and contrite spirit?
- How has your mission impacted your life?

I. Listening Activity

Before you go to sacrament meeting this week, make a list of conjunctions that you will be listening for during one of the sacrament meeting talks. During the talk, check off the conjunctions as you hear them and note any time the conditional is used. Upon hearing these principles, try to write down the phrase it was used in. How was it used? Was it used differently than how you typically use it? Pay attention to the cause and effect situations in each speaker's talk, and discuss what you learned from the speakers with your companion after church.

J. Discussion Activity

With your companion, a leader, or a member, discuss your answers to the first activity on page 193 of *Preach My Gospel.* The activity is included below in Latvian:

Padomā, kā tu rīkotos, nonākot turpmāk minētajās situācijās. Kā tu varētu izmantot šajā nodaļā aprakstītos principus un prasmes, lai palīdzētu šiem cilvēkiem garīgi pilnveidoties? Padomā, kā tu tos piemērotu katrā no šīm situācijām.

– Ejot caur parku, tu pamani, ka uz soliņa sēž kāda sieviete un maziņš puisītis. Sieviete raud.

– Tu ierodies pie klausītājiem, kuri gatavojas kristībām, bet viņi pasaka, ka vairs nevēlas ar tevi tikties.

– Tu jau septīto reizi tiecies ar klausītāju, kuru pēdējo divu gadu laikā mācījuši vairāki misionāri, taču nav vērojams gandrīz nekāds progress.

– Tu sāc mācīt kādai baznīcas locekļu ģimenei vēstījumu par evaņģēliju, bet viņi saka: „Mēs jau esam visiem saviem paziņām piedāvājuši tikties ar misionāriem, taču viņi visi ir atteikušies."

Asking and Answering Questions of Judgment, Doubt, Emotion, Possibility, and Influence

Purpose

This function will help you talk about judgment, doubt, emotion, possibility, and influence; for example, what you can possibly do or what your investigators are able to do. The grammar principles in this section are targeted at helping you perform this function. Below are examples of the types of things you will be able to express with the grammar in this function.

- **Supposedly** the new church building will be completed this summer. ("Relative Mood")
- Church **begins** at 10 o'clock each Sunday. ("Transitive and Intransitive Verbs")
- **I heard that** your son **finished** his mission last Thursday. ("Relative Mood," "Transitive and Intransitive Verbs")

Application

Below is a list of doctrinal points that these grammar principles will help you teach, as well as some common missionary tasks that they will help you perform. This list is not comprehensive; it is meant to help you think about how you can use the grammar in real situations. In parentheses next to each point are some sample questions that you can ask yourself to help you think about how to apply the grammar.

Doctrines from the Lessons

- Agency and the Fall (What can we do or not do because of the Fall? Why did Adam and Eve partake of the fruit?)
- Through Christ We Can Be Cleansed from Sin (How can we be cleansed? What is our part to experience change?)
- The Resurrection, Judgment, and Immortality (What blessings will await us after this life if we are faithful? How will God judge us differently than we judge ourselves?)
- Teaching and Learning in the Church (What things have you learned by teaching them? How can Church members work together to learn and teach the gospel of Christ?)

Tasks from the *Missionary Vocabulary and Phrases* Book

- Help People Resolve Their Concerns (How will we help our investigators?)
- Offer a Prayer (Does God really hear me when I pray?)
- Perform Priesthood Ordinances (What ordinances can be performed with the priesthood?)
- Ask Questions and Listen (How do our investigators feel about what we have taught them?)
- Extend Commitment Invitations (Will you follow Christ's example and be baptized?)

Relative Mood

Examples

Gunars will **supposedly attend** church today.	Gunārs šodien **apmeklēšot** baznīcu.
Ruta **supposedly** has completely read the Book of Mormon.	Ruta **esot** izlasījusi Mormona Grāmatu.
He **supposedly is** a former investigator.	Viņš **esot** bijušais klausītājs.
Viktors **supposedly has decided** to be baptized.	Viktors **esot izlēmis** kristīties.

Explanation

Relative mood is used to express information told or given to, but not originating from, the speaker. It usually implies doubt or uncertainty. This is commonly expressed in English with "supposedly," "I've heard," and "or so they told me." Relative mood is formed by modifying the verb based on the tense.

Past	Viņa **esot** daudz domājusi par kristīšanos. *She **supposedly had** thought a lot about baptism.*
Present	Viņam **patīkot** mācīt svētdienas skolu. *He **supposedly likes** to teach Sunday School.*
Future	Ja viņam vajag palīdzību, Viņš man **piezvanīšot**. *If he needs help, he **will supposedly call** me.*

Past

The following chart shows how to express relative mood in past tense by changing *būt* in the sentence with present perfect tense to *esot* (*būt* in relative mood):

Subject	*Būt*	Verb
Draudzes prezidents *The branch president*	tika *was*	atbrīvots. *released.*
Viņa *She*	ir *has*	lasījusi. *read.*

→ **Relative Mood**

Subject	*Esot*	Verb
Draudzes prezidents *The branch president*	**esot ticis** ***supposedly was***	atbrīvots. *released.*
Viņa *She*	**esot** ***supposedly has***	lasījusi. *read.*

Examples

Arnis **esot** kalpojis misijā Vācijā.
*Arnis **supposedly** served a mission in Germany.*

Viņa **esot** mani atcerējusies no apgabala konferences.
*She **supposedly** remembered me from district conference.*

Marta **esot** aizmirsusi, ka viņai ir jāstrādā, tāpēc viņa **neesot** varējusi atnākt.
*Marta **supposedly** forgot she had to work; that is why she (**supposedly**) couldn't come.*

Relative mood in past tense implies uncertainty. It is used when you have heard something that you are not sure actually happened. There is no past simple relative mood—it is always used in past active participle constructions.

Present

Relative mood in present tense is formed by adding *-ot,* or *-oties* (for reflexive verbs), to the present-tense stem of the verb.

Sentence

Subject	Verb	Object
Santa *Santa*	guļ *sleeps*	uz dīvāna. *on the couch.*
Viņš *He*	ir *is*	gudrs. *wise.*

→ **Relative Mood**

Subject	Verb	Object
Santa *Santa*	**guļot** ***(supposedly) sleeps***	uz dīvāna. *on the couch.*
Viņš *He*	**esot** ***(supposedly) is***	gudrs. *wise.*

Examples

Mūsu kaimiņš it kā **zinot** angļu valodu.
*Our neighbor **supposedly knows** English.*

Viņš ar sievu **ejot** uz teātri katru nedēļu.
*He **supposedly goes** with his wife every week to the theater.*

Māsa Zariņa **gatavojot** vislabāko medus kūku.
*Sister Zariņa **supposedly makes** the best honey cake.*

Future

Future-tense relative mood is formed by adding *-šot,* or *-šoties* (for reflexive verbs), to the future-tense verb stem.

	Subject	Verb	Object
Sentence	Tu *You*	**lūgsi** *will pray*	Dievam. *to God.*
	Viņi *They*	**būs** *will be*	baznīcā. *at church.*

→

	Subject	Verb	Object
Relative Mood	Tu *You*	**lūgšot** ***will supposedly pray***	Dievam. *to God.*
	Viņi *They*	**būšot** ***will supposedly be***	baznīcā. *at church.*

Examples

Savās kristībās Viktorija **dalīšoties** savā liecībā.
*At her baptism, Viktoria will **supposedly** share her testimony.*

Veikals rīt **nebūšot** atvērts.
*The store **supposedly** won't be open tomorrow.*

Viņam pēc stundas **esot** jāiet.
*He will **supposedly** have to go in an hour.*

Constructions

Relative mood can be used in sentence constructions. The following are some examples:

Sentence using Relative Mood	Construction
Man ***vajagot*** atjaunot vīzu. *I **supposedly need** to renew my visa.*	dative construction
Viņam šodien **esot** jāstrādā. *He **supposedly** has to work today.*	debitive mood
Viņa **esot** ļoti laipna un ticīga *She **supposedly is** really kind and faithful.*	būt
Viņa **esot bijusi** apmulsusi par savu aicinājumu. *She **supposedly was** confused about her calling.*	perfect tense

Note: Adverb participles use a construction similar to relative mood in present tense. See chapter 26, "Adverb Participles."

Activities

A. Change the Mood

Translate the following sentences into Latvian. Then rewrite each sentence and change it to be in relative mood. Check your answers.

1. He sees angels often.
2. She has prayed but hasn't received an answer.
3. They will come to the activity on Friday.
4. Janis will invite a friend to church on Sunday.
5. He told his mom that we are meeting.
6. Agnese has been baptized in another church.
7. She prays every day.
8. They won't accept a Book of Mormon.
9. He wanted to find out who lives here.
10. You are ready to make covenants with God.

B. Answering Questions

Imagine you are asked the following questions. On a separate piece of paper, write an appropriate response using relative mood. Have a member, your companion, or a teacher check your sentences.

1. Kurš no jums ir sportiskāks?
2. Vai tu pazini Romānu?
3. Kas ir vissvarīgākā lieta, ko mums šodien vajag izdarīt?
4. Vai jūsu klausītājs šodien apmeklēs baznīcu?
5. Vai Uldis drīz atgriezīsies no sava ceļojuma?
6. Kad Ludmila tika kristīta?
7. No kurienes ir Džonsonu ģimene?
8. Kāpēc Emīls pārstāja tikties ar misionāriem?
9. Vai jūs varat braukt uz Rīgu ar vilcienu?
10. Vai baznīcas locekļi zina par šīvakara garīgo sapulci?

C. Common Errors

The following sentences have bolded and starred errors. Correct and explain the errors to your companion. Check your answers.

1. Viņi šodien **esot*** nenākšot laikapstākļu dēļ.
   They supposedly will not come today because of the weather.
2. Viņam **nav*** Mormona Grāmatas, tāpēc ka viņš to **iedevot*** mātei.
   He doesn't have a Book of Mormon because he supposedly gave it to Mom.
3. Elzai ir jāstrādā katru dienu, viņa **celtšoties*** piecos no rīta.
   Elza has to work every day; she supposedly wakes up at five in the morning.
4. Viņa **esot būs*** tur.
   She will supposedly be there.
5. Linda **nemainšot*** lēmumu braukt uz ārzemēm.
   Linda supposedly will not change her decision to travel abroad.
6. Jums **patīk*** dzīvot Latvijā, pat ziemā?
   You'll supposedly like living in Latvia, even in the winter?
7. Viņš **apmeklētot*** skolu tālu no šejienes.
   He supposedly attends school far away from here.
8. Kārlis **būtot*** izdzēris visu ābolu sulu.
   Karlis supposedly drank all of the apple juice.
9. **Man*** būšot vienīgā amerikāniete.
   I will supposedly be the only American.
10. Viņa esot **lasījis*** Mormona Grāmatu.
    She has supposedly read the Book of Mormon.

D. Error Correction

With your companion, take turns reading the following sentences aloud. Start by giving the English translation and then say the sentence as it is written in Latvian. Then have the other companion identify errors, if any, and restate the sentence correctly. Check your answers.

1. Viņš katru rītu brokastīs ēstot pankūkas.
   He supposedly eats pancakes every morning at breakfast.
2. Man būsot iespēja liecināt par savām kristībām.
   I'll supposedly have the opportunity to testify at my baptism.
3. Viņi mūs gaidītot divos.
   They are supposedly expecting us at two.
4. Tu esot bijis Jaunzēlandē.
   You supposedly have been to New Zealand.
5. Mēs palīdzēsim slaukt govis.
   We supposedly will help milk the cows.
6. Abas māsas esam kalpojušas misijā tempļa laukumā.
   Both sisters have supposedly served missions on Temple Square.
7. Pēc gulēšanas, es atceršoties to, kas man ir jādara.
   After sleeping, I supposedly will remember what I must do.
8. Evaņģēlijs viņam esot palīdzējusi ar parbaudījumiem.
   The gospel supposedly helped him with his trials.
9. Kalņinu ģimene bijot atgriezot no tempļa brauciena vakar vakarā.
   The Kalnins family returned yesterday evening from their temple trip.
10. Nauris svētdien ešot saņemt Ārona priesterību.
    Nauris will supposedly receive the Aaronic Priesthood on Sunday.

E. Reading Activity

Read the following story (*Sludini Manu Evaņģēliju,* 226) shared by President Hinckley in the April 1999 general conference. Notice how relative mood is used in this story.

Kādudien es saņēmu ļoti interesantu vēstuli. Man rakstīja sieviete, kura bija pievienojusies Baznīcai pirms gada. Viņa rakstīja:

„Man ceļš uz pievienošanos Baznīcai ir bijis unikāls un samērā grūts. Šis pēdējais gads ir kļuvis par grūtāko laiku manā dzīvē. Taču tas ir bijis arī visvērtīgākais. Kā jaunpievērstā, es katru dienu sastopos ar jauniem izaicinājumiem."

Viņa turpina, rakstot, ka pēc pievienošanās Baznīcai neesot izjutusi nekādu atbalstu no bīskapijas vadītājiem. Šķita, ka bīskapam nerūp, kas ar viņu kā jaunpievērsto notiek. Jūtoties noraidīta, viņa vērsās pie misijas prezidenta, kurš pavēra viņai jaunas iespējas.

Viņa raksta: „Baznīcas locekļi nezina, kā tas ir — būt par jaunpievērsto. . . . Tādēļ viņiem ir tikpat kā neiespējami saprast, kā sniegt mums atbalstu."

Es aicinu jūs, mani brāļi un māsas, — ja jūs nezināt, kā tas ir, tad pacentieties iztēloties! Var gadīties, ka jaunpievērstie jūtas briesmīgi vientuļi. Viņi var izjust vilšanos. Iespējams, viņi ir nobijušies. Mēs šajā Baznīcā atšķiramies no šīs pasaules daudz lielākā mērā, nekā mums šķiet. Šī sieviete raksta: „Kad mēs, klausītāji, kļūstam par baznīcas locekļiem, mēs sev par pārsteigumu atklājam, ka esam ienākuši pilnīgi citā pasaulē — pasaulē ar jaunām tradīcijām, kultūru un valodu. Mēs atklājam, ka nav neviena cilvēka vai avota, pie kura vērsties pēc padoma mūsu ceļojumā pa šo jauno pasauli. Sākotnēji ceļojums šķiet aizraujošs, un mūsu kļūdas — pat uzjautrinošas —, taču tad nāk vilšanās, kas ar laiku pāraug dusmās. Un šajā vilšanās un dusmu periodā mēs aizejam. Mēs atgriežamies pasaulē, no kuras nācām, kur zinājām savu lomu, kur varējām sniegt savu pienesumu un kuras valodā pratām sarunāties."

Transitive and Intransitive Verbs

Examples

Missionaries **returned** to their apartment. (I)	Misionāri **atgriezās** savā dzīvoklī.
She can **play** the violin. (T)	Viņa prot **spēlēt** vijoli.
The children **are playing** outside. (I)	Bērni ārā **spēlējas**.
We **bought** groceries for the next week. (T)	Mēs **sapirkām** pārtikas produktus nākamajai nedēļai.

Explanation

While English has no distinction between transitive and intransitive verbs, Latvian does. It is important to use the correct verb.

Transitive

Transitive verbs (T) affect an object. If the verb has or could logically have an object or object phrase following it that answers the questions *ko?* (the object is in accusative case) or *ko darīt?* then it is a **transitive** verb.

Transitive	Question (ko?)	Object/Object Phrase
Matīss **ēda** hamburgeru. *Matiss **ate** a hamburger.*	Ko Matīss **ēda**? *What did Matiss **eat**?*	Hamburgeru. *A hamburger.*
Viņa **grib** mums nodziedāt dziesmiņu. *She **wants** to sing a song for us.*	Ko viņa **grib** (darīt)? *What does she **want** (to do)?*	Nodziedāt mums dziesmiņu. *To sing a song for us.*
Mēs **spēlējām** futbolu. *We **played** soccer.*	Ko mēs **spēlējām**? *What did we **play**?*	Futbolu. *Soccer.*

Intransitive

Intransitive verbs (I) do not answer the question *ko?* or *ko darīt?* but refer to or describe an action that relates only to the subject. Prepositional and predicate phrases can still be used to relate the subject's action to other nouns, however, as expressed in the examples. The action of **intransitive** verbs applies only to the subject.

Examples

Es **dzīvoju** Rīgā.
*I **live** in Riga.*

Viņas **skrien**.
*They **are running**.*

Mazais sunītis **pazuda**.
*The little dog **got lost**.*

Some verbs can be used as both transitive and intransitive verbs; however, many are designated specifically as transitive or intransitive. Here are some examples of verbs that are similar in their meaning, but some of them are transitive and others intransitive:

Transitive		Intransitive	
Verb	**Example**	**Verb**	**Example**
pazaudēt *to lose*	Es pazaudēju atslēgas. *I lost the keys.*	pazust *to be/get lost*	Atslēgas pazuda. *The keys got lost.*
salauzt *to break*	Vējš salauza lietussargu. *The wind broke the umbrella.*	salūzt *to break*	Lietussargs salūza. *The umbrella broke.*
kristīt *to baptize*	Jānis mani kristīja. *Jānis baptized me.*	kristīties *to be baptized*	Es kristījos. *I was baptized.*
nobaidīt *to scare*	Putns nobaidīja kaķi. *The bird scared the cat.*	nobīties *to be scared*	Kaķis nobijās. *The cat got scared.*
sākt *to start*	Pagāšgad Juris sāka nākt uz baznīcu. *Juris started coming to church last year.*	sākties *to start*	Baznīca sākas deviņos. *Church starts at nine.*
beigt *to finish*	Beidz lielīties! *Stop boasting.*	beigties *to end*	Stunda beidzas 12os. *The class ends at noon.*
pacelt *to raise*	Students pacēla savu roku. *A student raised his hand.*	piecelties *to rise*	Es piecēlos kājās. *I stood up (on my legs).*

-ināt and *-ināties*

Usually, verbs that end in *-ināt* are transitive. Verbs that end in *-ināties* are intransitive.

Transitive	Intransitive	Transitive	Intransitive
dedzināt *to burn something*	degt *to burn*	pārliecināt *to convince someone*	pārliecināties *to make sure*
audzināt *to raise*	augt *to grow*	turpināt *to continue something*	turpināties *to continue*
raudināt *to make someone cry*	raudāt *to cry*	vingrināt *to practice something*	vingrināties *to practice/train*

Activities

A. Translation

Look at the following sentences and determine if the bolded verb is transitive (T) or intransitive (I). Then translate them to English. Check your answers.

1. Kaķis **skrēja** pa ielu.
2. Mamma **dziedāja** skaistu dziesmu.
3. Viņš brīnišķīgi **dziedāja**.
4. Vecmamma gāja **lasīt** ogas.
5. Daudz ļaužu **vēlējās** kristīties, lai **saņemtu** savu grēku piedošanu.
6. Manam brālim patīk **spēlēt** bungas.
7. Misionāri(es) **runāja** ar cilvēkiem.
8. Portugāle **uzvarēja** Pasaules futbola čempionātā.
9. Annai **patīk klausīties** mūziku.
10. Jānis **cer** uz to, ka viss būs kārtībā.

B. Transitive vs. Intransitive

On a separate piece of paper, choose the correct verb (transitive vs. intransitive). Pay attention to the translations to know which word to use. Check your answers.

1. Jēzus Kristus Baznīca __ (pazaudēt/pazust) Dieva pilnvaras.
   The Church of Jesus Christ lost God's authority.
2. Vai tu ievērosi desmitās tiesas likumu, kad būsi __ (kristīt/kristīties)?
   Will you observe the law of tithing when have been baptized?
3. Es tevi __ (kristīt/kristīties) Tēva un Dēla un Svēta Gara vārdā.
   I baptize you in the name of the Father and of the Son and of the Holy Ghost.
4. Kaķēns __ (pazaudēt/pazust).
   The kitten got lost.
5. Spēļmantiņa __ (salauzt, salūzt).
   The toy broke.
6. Viņš __ viņas sirdi (salauzt, salūzt).
   He broke her heart.

C. Common Errors

The following sentences have bolded and starred errors. Correct and explain the errors to your companion. Check your answers.

1. Viņa adīja **cimdiņi*** bērniem.
   She knitted mittens for the children.
2. Vai tu **juties*** Svēto Garu?
   Do you feel the Holy Ghost?
3. Ūdens uz **plītu*** burbuļoja.
   Water was boiling on the stove.
4. Viņam ir **liecību***.
   He has a testimony.
5. Rīt snigs **sniegu***.
   It will snow tomorrow.
6. Mēs dzīvojam **Rīgu***.
   We live in Riga.
7. Es pirmdien iešu **skolu***.
   I will go to school Monday.
8. Es gribu **siera***.
   I want cheese.

D. Error Correction

With your companion, take turns reading the following sentences aloud. Start by giving the English translation and then say the sentence as it is written in Latvian. Then have the other companion identify errors, if any, and restate the sentence correctly. Check your answers.

1. Es jutu slims.
   I feel sick.
2. Viņš salūza roku.
   He broke his arm.
3. Sestdien mūsu klausītājs kristīs.
   Our investigator will be baptized on Saturday.
4. Man pazaudēja maks.
   My wallet got lost.
5. Rihards paslēpās savu cepuri.
   Rihards hid his hat.
6. Mēs bieži nolasām Mormona Grāmatu.
   We often read the Book of Mormon.
7. Jums ir jāizlemj, vai gribēt kristīties.
   You have to decide whether you want to get baptized.
8. Viņa nevarēja atcerēties, kur viņa palika savu somiņa.
   She couldn't remember where she left her purse.

E. Transitive vs. Intransitive

Remember that transitive verbs always have a direct object (answer *ko?* or *ko darīt?*), but intransitive verbs do not. Read the following sentences and decide whether the following sentences are transitive or intransitive. Check your answers.

1. Do you pray every day?
2. We explored the forest.
3. We went to church.
4. I love you.
5. He read the book.
6. The pioneers walked to Zion.
7. She ate cake on her birthday.
8. God reveals truth to the prophet.
9. They are lost.
10. We lost our keys.

F. Just (T) vs. Justies (I)

Read the following sentences and decide whether the following sentences are transitive or intransitive. Check your answers.

1. Misionāram vajadzētu __ brīvi, lai mācītu ar saviem vārdiem.
   A missionary should feel free to teach in his own words.
2. Caur Svētā Gara spēku mēs varam ___ Dieva mīlestību un vadību.
   Through the Holy Ghost we can feel God's love and guidance.
3. Alma __ Jēzus Kristus veiktās Grēku Izpirkšanas spēku.
   Alma felt the power of Jesus Christ's Atonement.
4. Dievs ir devis mums ģimenes, lai mēs varētu __ laimīgi.
   God has given us families so that we can feel happy.
5. Es __ labi.
   I feel good.
6. Vai tu__, ka Dievs uzklausa tavas lūgšanas?
   Do you feel that God listens to your prayers?
7. Grēks liek mums __ vainu un kaunu.
   Sin makes us feel guilt and shame.
8. Ziemassvētku laikā cilvēki __ priecīgāki.
   During Christmastime people feel more joyful.

G. Reading

Read the following paragraph from *Preach My Gospel* and determine whether the bolded verbs are transitive or intransitive. Check your answers.

Šajā vīzijā Džozefam Smitam **parādījās**[1] Dievs Tēvs un Viņa Dēls, Jēzus Kristus. Glābējs **pateica**[2] Džozefam, lai viņš **nepievienojas**[3] nevienai no baznīcām, jo „tās visas ir nepatiesas" un „visas viņu mācības [ir] negantība". Viņš **pasludināja**[4]: „Tie **tuvojas**[5] Man ar savām lūpām, bet viņu sirdis ir tālu no Manis, viņi **sludina**[6] mācības, kas ir cilvēku likumi, viņiem ir dievības izskats, bet viņi **noliedz**[7] tās spēku" (Džozefs Smits —Vēsture 1:19). Lai gan daudzi labi cilvēki tolaik **ticēja**[8] Kristum un **centās**[9] izprast un **mācīt**[10] Viņa evaņģēliju, viņiem **nebija**[11] patiesības pilnības, kā arī priesterības pilnvaru kristīt un veikt visus citus glābšanas priekšrakstus. . . . Dievs **aicināja**[12] Džozefu Smitu par pravieti.

*In this vision God the Father and His Son, Jesus Christ, **appeared**[1] to Joseph Smith. The Savior **told**[2] Joseph not to **join**[3] any of the churches, for they "were all wrong" and "all their creeds were an abomination." He **stated**[4], "They **draw**[5] near to me with their lips, but their hearts are far from me, they **teach**[6] for doctrines the commandments of men, having a form of godliness, but they **deny**[7] the power thereof" (Joseph Smith—History 1:19). Even though many good people **believed**[8] in Christ and **tried**[9] to understand and **teach**[10] His gospel, they did not **have**[11] the fulness of truth or the priesthood authority to baptize and perform other saving ordinances. . . . God **called**[12] Joseph Smith to be a prophet.*

Review: Judgment, Doubt, Emotion, Possibility, and Influence

This review will help you see how well you have learned the material in the previous section. It will also help you evaluate your ability to apply several different grammar principles you have learned in performing the following function:

Asking and Answering Questions of Judgment, Doubt, Emotion, Possibility, and Influence

- Relative Mood
- Transitive and Intransitive

Activities

A. Error Correction

On a separate sheet of paper, rewrite the paragraph below, correcting the nine errors in it. Check your answers.

Tas, ko mēs darām sabatā, parādas, cik liela ir mūsu apņemšanās godāt un pielūgt Dievu. Turot sabata dienu svētu, mēs parādām Dievam, ka vēlam ievērot ar Viņu noslēgtās derības. Katru sabatu mēs dodamies uz Tā Kunga namu, lai Viņu pielūgtu. Svētdienās baznīca Rīgā sāk desmitos. Tur mēs pieņemam Svēto Vakarēdienu, atcerēties par Jēzu Kristu un Viņa veikto Izpirkšanu. Valdis, mūsu klausītājs, sen ir kādreiz būt mūsu baznīcas dievkalpojumā. Viņš arī teica, ka būs šosvētdien. Renārs runāja ar Valdi un viņš grib kristīt, jo viņš tagad zina, ka Mormona Grāmata ir patiesa.

Our Sabbath-day behavior is a reflection of our commitment to honor and worship God. By keeping the Sabbath day holy, we show God our willingness to keep our covenants. Each Sabbath day, we go to the Lord's house to worship Him. On Sundays, church starts at ten in Riga. There we partake of the sacrament to remember Jesus Christ and His Atonement. Valdis, our investigator, said that one time a while ago, he had gone to our Church's sacrament meeting. He also said that he will come this Sunday. Reinars talked with Valdis and he supposedly wants to be baptized, because now he knows that the Book of Mormon is true.

B. Error Correction

Each of the following sentences contains one or more errors. Write down the sentence correctly and say it to your companion. Check your answers. The answers section will refer you to the principle used in each sentence.

1. Kad dzīve kļūst grūta, Linda daudz smejot, kas it kā palīdzēt uzlabot garastāvokli.
   I've heard when life gets hard Linda laughs a lot, which supposedly helps her be more optimistic.
2. Toms lasīja grāmatu par Grēku Izpirkšana.
   Tom was reading a book about the Atonement.
3. Anita domā, ka mēs glābšoties, bet viņa nav pārliecināta.
   Anita thinks that we will be saved, but she's not sure.
4. Pirms misijas mans pārinieks vēlu ceļoties, bet tagad ir paklausīgs.
   Before his mission, my companion woke up late, but now he is obedient.
5. Es rudenī braukšot uz Kuldīgu.
   In the fall I supposedly must to travel to Kuldiga.
6. Roberts man teica, ka viņš man rakstot katru nedēļu.
   Robert told me that he will write me every week.
7. Viņš it kā zinām, kas notika ar tavu draugu.
   He supposedly knows what happened to your friend.
8. Viens vīrietis autobusā izskatīja kā viens no baznīcas locekļiem.
   A man on the bus looked like one of the members of the Church.
9. Lūdzu, beidzies!
   Please stop!
10. Gaisma mums palīdz būt laimīgākiem, it īpaši ziemā.
    I've heard light helps us to be happy, especially in the winter.
11. Raimonds man teica, ka viņa suns nekož, bet es joprojām baidu.
    Raimonds told me that his dog (supposedly) doesn't bite, but I am still scared.
12. Edgars pirms gada kristīja.
    Edgars was baptized a year ago.
13. Kad es aizmiegu, es bieži kustināt savas kājas.
    While sleeping I supposedly often move my legs.
14. Zēni jau irot nomazgājušies visus traukus.
    The boys supposedly have already washed all the dishes.
15. Vai jūs jebkad ir salūzis savu roku?
    Have you ever broken your arm?
16. Viņs mums pateicās Mormona Grāmatu.
    He thanked us for the Book of Mormon.
17. Mārtiņš nedzert veselu mēnesi!
    Martins told us that he didn't drink all month!
18. Vai tu juti laimīga par savu jauno aicinājumu?
    Do you feel happy with your new calling?
19. Mēs sagatavošanās dienā spēlējāmies futbolu.
    We played soccer on preparation day.
20. Pēc skolas pabeigšanas es kļūšu skolotājs.
    After school I will become a teacher.

C. Translation

On a separate piece of paper, translate the words in parentheses into Latvian. Check your answers.

1. Dievs ar Jēzu Kristu (appeared) Džozefam Smitam.
2. Pēteris (feels) Svētā Gara ietekmi.
3. Sapulce (will start) vienos un (will end) trijos.
4. Zigfrīds netīšām (broke) savas brilles.
5. Baiba (supposedly is scared) no tumsas.
6. (I've heard) Tu jau (have decided) braukt uz ārzemēm.
7. Es darbā visu dienu (sit down).
8. Lūdzu, nāciet iekšā un (sit down)!
9. Vecmāmiņa (supposedly raised) astoņus bērnus.
10. (I've heard) Natālija (looks) līdzīga savai mammai.
11. Es (read out loud) Viktorijai savu mīļāko pantu no Mormona Grāmatas.
12. Es (feel) diezgan slikti, tāpēc ka es pagāšnakt nevarēju aizmigt.
13. Vai mēs varam (start) stundiņu ar lūgšanu?
14. Es (broke) savu solījumu apmeklēt baznīcu.
15. Ērika iekliedzās un (scared me).
16. Viņas vectēvs (supposedly can't leave) no savas mājas.
17. Mūsu pūles palīdzēs (raise up) Tā Kunga valstību.
18. Paula strauji (rose up) no krēsla, kad bērniņš (started) raudāt.
19. Vai jūs (were raised) baznīcā?
20. Olīvija (will look for) darbu gan Jelgavā, gan Bauskā.

D. Companion Activity

Role-play a situation where one of you is a missionary and the other is an investigator that is having a difficult time deciding whether or not to get baptized. Ask questions to help the investigator sort through their feelings and set a goal for when they will be baptized. Then switch roles and do the role-play again. Afterwards, discuss how you both felt as you role-played the investigator (Did you feel that the missionary cared about you? Did you feel that they were giving you too much pressure? etc.). Make plans to have this discussion with an investigator you are currently meeting with.

E. *Preach My Gospel* Activity

Turn to page 10 of *Preach My Gospel* and read the second paragraph under "A Successful Missionary," starting with the third sentence ("Your responsibility . . ."). Discuss together the conflicting feelings the passage describes that may come when people choose not to accept your message. Can you feel successful even when people reject your message? Why shouldn't you become discouraged despite being rejected?

F. Writing Activity

Write about a time when you were making a difficult decision and you had conflicting feelings inside (going to a certain college, coming on a mission, deciding whether or not to keep a certain commandment, etc.). Use grammar from this lesson to write out your experience. Have your companion check your sentences. Think of a time when you could share this experience.

G. Member Activity

Visit a member family and ask them if they had any contrasting attitudes, emotions, or feelings as they were preparing to join the Church. Was one person more willing to get baptized than another? Did they have any fears despite knowing that it was good for their family?

Missionary Tasks

Introductions

Basic Conversation

Greeting	Conversation	Response	Salutation
Sveiki *Hello*	**Kā Jums iet?v** *How are you doing?*	**Man iet labi.** *I am well.*	**Atā.** *Goodbye.*
	Prieks iepazīties. *Nice to meet you.*	**Man arī.** *It's nice to me too.*	**Uz redzēšanos.** *See you later.*

Introductions

Question
Kā Jūs sauc? *How you they call?*

Acc. Pronoun	Verb	Nom. Noun
Mani *Me*		**Elders (Elderi)_____.** *Elder(s).*
	sauc . . . *they call . . .*	**Māsa (Māsas)_____.** *Sister(s).*
Viņus *Them*		**Brālis (Brāļi)_____.** *Brother(s).*
Viņu *Him/Her*		
Mūs *Us*		

This/These	Pos. Pronoun	Nom. Noun
Šis/Šie *This is (These are)(m)*	**mans / mani** *my (m) (pl)*	**parinieks/parinieki** *companion(s) (m)*
Šī/Šīs *This is (These are)(f)*	**mana / manas** *my (f) (pl)*	**pariniece/parinieces** *companion(s) (f)*

Talking About Families

Have	Nom. Noun
Vai Jums ir *(Do you have)*	**ģimene?** *a family?*
Kam ir *(Who has)*	**brāļi?** *brothers?*
	māsas? *sisters?*
	bērni? *children?*
Mums ir *We have (To us is)*	**stunda.** *a lesson.*
	vēstījums. *a message.*

I Have	Family Members
Man ir *I have (To me is)*	**viens brālis.** *one brother.*
	viena māsa. *one sister.*
	divas māsas. *two sisters.*
	trīs brāļi. *three brothers.*
	pieci brāļi. *five brothers.*
	seši brāļi. *six brothers.*

Asking Where Someone is From

Question
No kurienes Jūs esat? *Where are you from?*

I Am From	Gen. Noun
Es esmu no *I am from*	**Jutas štata.** *the state of Utah.*
	Amerikas. *America.*
	Kanādas. *Canada.*

Telling About Yourself

Tell	Us/Me	About	Object
Stastiet *Tell (command)*	**mums** *to us*	**par** *about*	**sevi.** *yourself.*
			savu ģimeni. *your family.*
	man *to me*		**saviem bērniem.** *your family.*
			savu darbu. *your work.*

Question
Ko Jums patik darīt? *What do you like to do?*

I like	Nom. Noun/Verb
	sporti *sports*
Man patik . . . *I like . . .*	**mūzika** *music*
	māksla *art*
	lasīt *to read*
Mums patik . . . *We like . . .*	**sportot** *to play sports*
	spēlēt *to play*

Give a Simple Overview

Describing What You Will Teach

Pronoun	To Be	Genetive	Nom. Noun
Mēs *We*	**esam** *are*	**Dieva** *God's* **Tā Kunga** *the Lord's* **Jēzus Kristus** *Jesus Christ's* **Debesu Tēva** *Heavenly Father's*	**misionāri** *missionaries.* **misionāres** *(sister) missionaries* **bērni** *children.*

What	Means to you	Noun
Ko *What*	**Jums nozīmē...** *to you means...*	**Jēzus?** *Jesus?* **Dievs?** *God?* **ticība?** *faith*

Asking Why

Why	__ important	For You
Kāpēc *Why*	**ģimene ir svarīga** *family is important(f)* **ticība ir svarīga** *faith is important (f)* **Kristus ir svarīgs** *Christ important (m)* **šis/šī ir svarīgs(a)** *this is important(f/m)*	**Jums/ Tev?** *for you?*

Connecting Words
un
and
tāpēc ka
because
arī
also

Basic Statements About God and Jesus Christ

Nom. Noun	Present Verb	Acc. Noun
Dievs *God* **Kristus** *Christ* **Viņš** *He*	**mīl** *loves* **pazīst** *knows* **klausās** *listens*	**mūs.** *us***.** **Jūs.** *you.* **Jūsu ģimeni.** *your family.* **visus.** *everyone***.**

Nom. Noun	Past Verb	Acc. Noun	Dat. Pronoun
Dievs *God* **Viņš** *He*	**deva** *gave* **sūtīja** *sent*	**Kristu** *Christ* **praviešus** *prophets* **ģimeni** *family* **Mormona Grāmatu** *the Book of Mormon*	**mums.** *to us.* **Jums.** *to you.* **visiem.** *to everyone.*

Nom. Noun	Present Verb	Dat. Noun	Acc. Noun
Jēzus *Jesus* **Mormona Grāmata** *Book of Mormon* **Pravieši** *Prophets*	**māca** *teaches*	**mums** *to us* **Jums** *to you* **Jūsu ģimenei** *to your family* **visiem** *to everyone*	**ticību.** *faith***.** **grēku nožēlošanu.** *repentance.* **Pēstīšanas Ieceri.** *The Plan of Happiness.* **patiesību.** *truth***.** **Dieva vārdu.** *the Word of God.*
Mēs *We*	**mācām** *teach*		

Identifying Needs

Yes/No	You	Present Verb	Acc. Noun
Vai *Do*	**Jūs** *you*	**gribat** *want* **mēklējat** *searching (for)* **vēlaties** *desire*	**piedošanu?** *forgiveness?* **ticību Dievam?** *faith in God?* **laimīgu ģimeni?** *happy family?* **patiesību?** *truth?* **laimi?** *happiness?*

Offer a Prayer

Poss. Pronoun	Adjective	Name
Mans *My* **Mūsu** *Our*	**Dārgais** *Dear* **Mīļošais** *Loving*	**Debesu Tēvs,** *Heavenly Father,* **Dievs,** *God,*

Express Gratitude

Pronoun	Thank	Thee	Prep.	Acc. Noun
Es *I*	**pateicos** *thank*	**Tev** *(to) Thee*	**par** *for*	**ģimeni.** *family.* **evaņģēliju.** *the Gospel.* **Svēto Garu.** *the Holy Ghost.* **Tavu palīdzību.** *Thy help.*
Mēs *We*	**pateicamies** *thank*			
Es esmu *I am*	**pateicīg(s/a)** *thankful*			
Mēs esam *We are*	**pateicīg(i/as)** *thankful*			

Asking for Help and Blessings

Pronoun	Verb	Thee	To Help	Dative	Verb
Es *I*	**lūdzu** *ask*	**Tevi** *Thee*	**palīdzi** *to help*	**man** *to me* **mums** *to us* **klausītājam** *to the investigator*	**saprast.** *to understand.* **pilnveidoties.** *to change.*
Mēs *We*	**lūdzam** *ask*				

Please	Bless	Acc. Pronoun	Instr. Noun	So That	Pronoun	Con. Verb	Verb
Lūdzu *Please*	**svētī** *bless*	**mūs** *us* **mani** *me* **viņu** *him (her)* **viņus** *them*	**ar Svēto Garu.(,)** *with the Holy Ghost.(,)* **ar spēku.(,)** *with strength.(,)* **ar svešvalodas dāvanu.(,)** *with the gift of tongues.(,)* **ar vēlmi.(,)** *with desire.(,)*	**lai** *so that*	**Es** *I* **viņš (viņa)** *he (she)* **mēs** *we* **viņi** *they*	**varētu** *could* **varētu** *could*	**ticēt.** *to believe.* **nožēlot grēkus.** *to repent.* **kristīties.** *to be baptized.* **labi stūdēt valodu.** *well to study the language.*

Jēzus Kristus vārdā, āmen.
In the name of Jesus Christ, amen.

Testify

Statements About What You Know

I Know	That	Nom. Noun	Adjective
Es zinu, *I know,*		**Dievs** *God*	**ir mūsu Debesu Tēvs.** *our Heavenly Father.*
Mēs zinām, *We know,*	**ka** *that*	**Jēzus Kristus** *Jesus Christ*	**ir žēlīgs.** *is merciful.*
Jūs zināt, *You know,*			**ir mīļošs.** *is loving.*

Describing How God and the Holy Ghost Communicate with Us

Nom. Noun	Past Verb	Gen. Noun	Acc. Noun
Jēzus Kristus *Jesus Christ*	**juta** *felt*	**nāves** *of death*	**sāpes.(,)** *pain*
Glābējs *The Savior*	**pieredzēja** *experienced*	**grēku** *of sins.(,)*	**slogu.(,)** *burden*
	pārvarēja *overcame*		**sodu.(,)** *punishment*

	Pronoun	Verb	Noun
	es varu *I am able*	**paļauties uz** *to rely upon*	**viņa mācībām.** *His teachings.*
un tāpēc *and that is why*	**mēs varam** *we are able*	**ticēt** *to believe in*	**viņa žēlastību/ai.** *His mercy.*
	Jūs varat *you are able*		**viņu/viņam.** *Him.*

Thanks To	Dat. Noun	Able To	Verb	Acc. Noun
	Jēzum Kristum, *to Jesus Christ,*	**es varu** *I am able*		**bēdas** *sorrows (regrets).*
Pateicoties *Thanks (to)*	**grēku nožēlošanai,** *to repentance,*	**Jūs varat** *you are able*	**pārvarēt** *to overcome*	**pārbaudījumus.** *trials.*
		viņš (viņa) var *he (she) is able*		**ciešanas.** *sufferings.*

Extend an Invitation

Extending and Invitation

Will You	Invitation
Vai Jūs *Will you*	**lasīsiet Mormona Grāmatu?** *read the Book of Mormon?* **apmeklēsiet baznīcu?** *go church?* **kristīsieties?** *be baptized?*

Will	Verb	About	Prep. Noun
Vai Jūs *Will you*	**lasīsiet** *read* **lūgsiet** *pray*	**par** *about*	**Mormona Grāmatu?** *the Book of Mormon?* **kristīšanos?** *baptism?* **baznīcu?** *church?*

Promising Blessings

If	You Will	Invitation	Then	You Can	Verb	Acc. Noun
Ja *If*	**Jūs** *you will*	**lasīsiet Mormona Grāmatu,** *to read the Book of Mormon,* **apmeklēsiet baznīcu,** *to go into church,* **lūgsiet,** *to pray,* **nožēlosiet grēkus,** *to repent,* **kristīsieties,** *to be baptized,*	**tad** *then*	**Jūs varēsiet** *you will be able to*	**saņemt** *receive* **atrast** *find* **zināt** *know* **just** *feel*	**atbildes.** *answers.* **ticību.** *faith.* **piedošanu.** *forgiveness.* **patiesību.** *truth.* **mīlestību.** *love.*

When	Verb	Subject	You	"will help"	Verb
Keď *When*	**ukážete svoju vieru,** *you will show your faith* **budete činiť pokánie**, *you will repent*	**Kristus** *Christ* **Duch Svätý** *Holy Ghost*	**vám** *you*	**pomôže** *will help*	**byť očistený(á).** *to be cleansed. (feminine)* **sa zmeniť.** *to change.*

Following up

You	Past Invitation
Vai Jūs *(Did) You*	**lasījāt Mormona Grāmatu?** *read the Book of Mormon?* **apmeklējāt baznīcu?** *went to church?*

You	Past Verb	Prep. Noun
Vai Jūs *(Did) You*	**lasījāt par** *read about* **lūdzāt par** *pray about*	**baznīcu?** *church?* **kristīšanos?** *baptism?*

What	You	Past Verb
Ko *What*	**Jūs** *you*	**jutāt?** *felt?* **sapratāt?** *understand?*

Share a Scripture

Introducing the Scripture

"Let's read"	Noun	Preposition	Prepositional Phrase
Čítajme *Let's read*	**verš** *a verse* **pasáž** *a passage*	**o** *about*	**viere a pokání.** *faith and repentance.* **krste.** *baptism.* **Duchu Svätom.** *the Holy Ghost.* **obrátení.** *conversion.*

When	Verb	Intro Phrase		"how"	"you can"	Verb + Noun
Keď *When*	**čítam,** *I read,* **čítame,** *we read,* **čítate,** *you read,*	**rozmýšľajte** *think*	**o tom,** *about that,*	**ako** *how*	**môžete** *you can*	**činiť pokánie.** *repent.* **nasledovať Krista.** *follow Christ.* **uplatniť uzmierenie.** *apply the Atonement.* **dostávať odpovede.** *recieve answers.*

Reading the Passage

Read	"please"	Direct Object	Prepositional Phrase	Book	Verse	Number
Prečítajte *Read (command)*	**prosím** *please*	**desiatu kapitolu** *tenth chapter* **prvú kapitolu** *first chapter* **úvod** *the introduction*	**v knihe** *in the Book*	**Moroniho** *(of) Moroni* **Jakuba** *(of) James*	**verš(e)** *verse(s)*	**tri až päť.** *three to five.* **päť.** *five.*

Verb	"what it means"	Subject
Viete, *Do you know,* **Rozumiete tomu,** *Do you understand (it)*	**čo znamená** *what it means*	**úprimné srdce?** *a sincere heart?* **táto veta?** *this sentence?* **toto slovo?** *this word?*

Applying the Scriptures

Question Phrase	Verb	Object
Ako môžete *How can you*	**ukázať** *show*	**vieru v Krista?** *faith in Christ?*
Ako môžeme *How can we*	**uplatniť** *apply*	**skutočný zámer?** *real intent?*
		tento príklad? *this example?*
		tento verš? *this verse?*

Verb	"you have"	Direct Object
Aké *What kind of*	**máte** *you have*	**otázky?** *questions?*
		myšlienky? *thoughts?*
		obavy? *concerns?*

Share an Experience

Introducing the Experience

Subject	"wanted"	Verb	"whether"	---	Phrase
Joseph Smith *Joseph Smith*	**chcel(a)** *wanted (feminine)*	**vedieť,** *to know,*	**či** *whether*	**je** *there is*	**pravdivá cirkev.** *a true church.*
On *He*		**rozumieť,** *to understand,*			**milosrdný Boh.** *a merciful God.*
Ja som *I*		**zistiť,** *find out,*			**odpustenie hriechov.** *forgiveness of sins.*
				Boh *God*	**existuje.** *exists.*
				Ježiš *Jesus*	**ma pozná.** *knows me.*

Preto *Therefore*
Tak *So*

Subject	Past Tense Verb	Verb + Noun
On *He*	**sa rozhodol(la)** *decided (feminine)*	**navštevovať zhromaždenie.** *to visit church.*
Ja som *I*	**začal(a)** *began (feminine)*	**poslúchať slovo Boha.** *to obey the word of God.*
		modliť sa k Bohu. *to pray to God.*
		študovať písma. *to study the scriptures.*
		prejaviť vieru v Krista. *to show faith in Christ.*

Explaining What Happened

Subject	Verb	Object
Joseph Smith *Joseph Smith*	**videl** *saw*	**Boha a Ježiša Krista.** *God and Jesus Christ.*
On *He*		

Transition	Pronoun	Past Verb	"God"	Phrase
Ako dôsledok, *As a consequence,*	**on** *he*	**zistil(a), že** *found out (feminine), that*	**Boh** *God*	**a Ježiš sú odlišné bytosti.** *and Jesus are separate beings.*
Vďaka tomu, *Thanks to that,*	**ja som** *I*			**má fyzické telo.** *has a physical body.*
				odpovedá na modlitby. *answers prayers.*
				sa stará o svoje deti. *God cares for His children.*

Applying the Experience

Adverb	---	Verb	"that"	Subject	Verb	Object
Predtým, *Before that,*	**on** *he*	**zistil(a),** *found out (feminine)*	**že** *that*	**Boh** *God*	**počuje** *hears*	**svoje deti.** *His children.*
Potom, *After that,*	**ja som** *I*	**rozumel(a),** *understood (feminine)*		**Ježiš Kristus** *Jesus Christ*	**vedie** *leads*	**ma.** *me.*
Podobne, *Similarly,*	**môžete** *you can*	**zistiť,** *find out*			**požehnáva** *blesses*	**nás.** *us.*
		rozumieť, *understand*			**uzdravuje** *heals*	**vás.** *you.*

Scenario Practice

Scenario Practice

The following list contains prompts to practice how you would respond to certain scenarios. Use these prompts throughout your mission to improve your ability to answer a variety of questions and respond to different situations. You can practice responding to these prompts on your own, with your companion, or with a native speaker.

While you may not encounter these exact scenarios, practicing the language with these scenarios will help you:

- Learn new vocabulary words
- Memorize words and phrases
- Improve your understanding of grammar principles
- Have more comfortable and natural conversations
- Prepare for situations that you might encounter in your daily activities

Teaching

1. You have just extended a baptismal commitment to a progressing investigator and she has declined. She says that she doesn't see any need in getting baptized. Answer the question "Why do I need to be baptized?"
2. You are conducting a lesson with a recent convert. Teach a short lesson about the sacrament.
3. A man who you are talking to on a bus says that he has heard that we baptize dead people in the Church. Explain the doctrine of vicarious ordinances for the dead.
4. Give a short talk about the Holy Ghost at a baptismal service.
5. Explain patriarchal blessings to a recent convert who has just heard a talk in church about patriarchal blessings.
6. Explain how and why priesthood blessings are given to a progressing investigator who has suddenly become sick.
7. Explain the difference between the Aaronic and Melchizedek Priesthoods to a recent convert young man who is preparing to receive the Aaronic Priesthood.
8. Explain to an investigator with a baptismal date what they need to do to prepare to go the temple.
9. Explain repentance to a new investigator with no religious background.
10. Explain faith to an investigator who is struggling with an alcohol addiction.
11. You are teaching an investigator for the second time. You have just talked about Moroni's promise in Moroni 10:3-5. Explain who the Holy Ghost is and what he does for us.
12. Explain the difference between the influence of the Holy Ghost and the gift of the Holy Ghost to an investigator who has just accepted a baptismal commitment.
13. Explain the difference between the Restoration and the Reformation to the non-member mother of a family in which the father and the 18-year-old son have just been baptized.
14. A woman whom you met while waiting in line at the post office asks you, "What's the difference between your church and any other church? What's special about your church?"
15. Explain the importance of making and keeping commitments to an investigator who is struggling to keep the commitment to read and pray.
16. Teach a small lesson in district meeting about using the scriptures.
17. Explain the necessity of trials to an investigator that is going through economic hardship.
18. You are asked to give a short talk in sacrament meeting about the scriptures. Explain the relationship between the Book of Mormon and the Bible.
19. Teach about and extend a commitment to keep the Sabbath day holy to a less-active family.

20. Explain how to pray to a man who has grown up reciting prayers.
21. A new investigator came to church last week for fast and testimony meeting and was a little confused at what fasting is and why we do it. Explain what fasting is and why it's important.
22. Explain confirmation and the gift of the Holy Ghost to an investigator with a baptismal date.
23. You are talking to an investigator who doesn't quite understand why her baptism in another church is not valid in our church. Respond to her concern.
24. Tell an investigator what happens after we die.
25. Tell an investigator about pre-earth life.
26. Explain the importance of prophets to a man that has very little experience with religion or with reading the Bible.
27. You are planning to teach a new investigator about the Restoration. Prepare three questions that will help you check for understanding.
28. Explain the Great Apostasy to a devout Christian whom you met through one of his member friends.
29. An investigator tells you that she has heard that we do not believe in the Bible.
30. Tell an investigator who does not have a Christian background about the resurrection of Christ. Bear your testimony of this event and of the principle of resurrection.
31. Explain how resurrection and reincarnation are different to an investigator who currently believes in reincarnation.
32. You are helping a member see how the gospel has blessed their life in order to motivate them to do missionary work. Tell how your life would be different if you didn't have the gospel.

Testifying

33. You are teaching an investigator with a baptismal date about the law of tithing. Testify about the importance of tithing.
34. You are teaching an investigator with a baptismal date about the law of chastity. Testify to an investigator about the importance of the law of chastity.
35. Testify about the importance of temples to a recent convert who is preparing to go to the temple.
36. You are teaching a woman with three small children who feels overwhelmed by everything that is required of her. Explain how daily prayer has blessed your life.
37. You are meeting for the first time with a family that was referred to you by the second counselor in the branch presidency. Testify of how the Atonement of Christ has affected your life.
38. Bear your testimony of the importance of obedience in a zone conference.
39. You are teaching a progressing investigator about dispensations and apostasy. Tell about how following the prophet has blessed your life.

Commitments and Follow-up

40. You are working with a less-active man who has not been to church since he was baptized. Promise blessings associated with coming to church.
41. You meet and begin talking with a young couple while going to another appointment. Invite them to hear more about eternal families and set up a meeting with them for another time.
42. Invite an active member to invite their non-member friends to a ward activity next week.
43. Invite the father of a part-member family (the mother and two sons are active members) to start taking the missionary lessons.
44. Follow up on a commitment you gave to a new investigator to read 3 Nephi 11 and pray about the Book of Mormon.

45. Follow up on a commitment you gave to an investigator with a baptismal date to stop smoking.
46. Promise blessings to an active member family associated with helping others learn of the gospel. Ask for referrals.
47. Extend a baptismal commitment to an investigator who has read and prayed about the Book of Mormon and has felt a confirmation that it is true.

Resolving Concerns

48. One of your progressing investigators asks you the question, "Why do bad things happen to good people?"
49. An investigator asks you why she cannot drink alcohol every once in a while in social situations.
50. A new investigator says that he likes some of the things that the Church teaches but thinks that there is more than one true church. Bear you testimony of the Restoration.
51. Ask three questions that would help you find out why a recent convert has become less active.
52. An investigator tells you that she wants to get baptized but does not know what her family will think.
53. Ask three questions that will help you understand why a new investigator does not want to come to church.

Telling a Story

54. You have an appointment with a less-active family that struggles with their testimonies of the Book of Mormon. Tell the story of the Brother of Jared. Talk about what you can learn from that story.
55. You are talking to a new investigator about the Book of Mormon. Talk about how you came to know that the Book of Mormon is true.
56. While tracting you meet a young man who invites you in. You have already talked about his religious background and he asks you what makes your church different from all the others. Briefly relate the story of the First Vision.
57. You are teaching a Sunday School class. Talk about how the Atonement worked in the life of Alma the Younger.
58. Relate your favorite experience that you have had while with your current companion while talking to your mission president in an interview.
59. You are talking to a recent convert who is trying to adopt the principles of the gospel in their parenting, but they feel overwhelmed. Tell about one thing that your parents have done to help you in your life.
60. Briefly relate the story of Adam and Eve in the Garden of Eden while talking to an investigator with a baptismal date about agency.
61. There is a young man in your area that has just received his mission call. He asks you what the MTC is like. Tell about your first day in the MTC. Who was there? When was it? What did you feel?

Getting to Know Someone

62. You have started up a conversation with a woman on a bus, she asks about where you are from. Talk about your hometown.
63. Tell about your family to the bishop in the ward you have just been transferred into.
64. Tell a man whom you met on the bus who you are and why you are here as a missionary.
65. A woman in the grocery store asks why you are wearing name tags. Explain your calling as a missionary. Get to know her and invite her to learn more about the gospel.

66. You've just moved into a new apartment. Introduce yourself to your next door neighbor and explain missionary service. Invite them to hear the first lesson.
67. Ask three questions that would help you get to know your new companion.

Other

68. Your companion came down sick this morning. Leave a phone message for an investigator telling them that you need to reschedule a meeting.
69. You are in a district meeting. Tell your district leader about the progress of one of your investigators.
70. You have just talked to a man on the street about the gospel and he is interested in learning more. He has set up a time to meet with you again, but you have also invited him to come to church with you on Sunday. He does not know how to get there. Tell him how to get to the chapel.
71. Talk with the branch president about how to help a less-active brother come back to church. Discuss how you can help him as missionaries, and discuss what the branch can do to help.
72. Leave a phone message for the missionaries in the area next to yours telling them about a man you met today on the street who lives in their area.
73. You are meeting with an active member before his investigator friend is coming over for a lesson. Tell him your plan for the lesson and let him know how you would like him to help teach.
74. Talk with your companion about your plans for the day, who you are visiting, what you are teaching them, where they live, and what commitments you would like to extend. Also discuss finding activities.
75. A new investigator is curious about missionary life. Talk about what you normally do on preparation day.
76. Tell a new investigator what to expect at a sacrament meeting.

Grammar Glossary

Grammar Glossary

This glossary is designed to be a quick reference to common grammar terms. Explanations on how to use these terms in Latvian, as well as grammar terms unique to the language, can be found in different sections throughout the book.

adjective

Adjectives are words that modify or describe a noun or pronoun. They often match the noun they describe in number (singular or plural), case (subject, object, etc.), and gender (masculine or feminine). "An adjective tells you what sort, how many, how large or small, whose, and so on" (*Chicago* 5.66).

adverb

An adverb is a word that describes a verb, an adjective, or another adverb.

article

An article is a word used next to a noun to indicate what kind of reference the noun is making (definite or indefinite). The English articles are "the," "a," and "an."

clause

A clause is a combination of words that includes both a subject and a verb. A clause can be independent or dependent. An independent clause can stand as a sentence on its own. A dependent clause cannot stand on its own, even though it has a subject and a verb, because it does not express a complete thought (e.g., it might start with "because" or "which," making its expression a dependent or incomplete thought).

conjugation

Conjugation means changing a verb's form to show, the tense (present, past, etc.), the person of the subject (e.g., I, you, she, etc.), and the number (e.g., singular or plural).

conjunction

Conjunctions are connecting words used to join or logically connect and order clauses (or concepts within clauses). Some common conjunctions include "and," "or," "if," and "but."

demonstrative

A demonstrative is a word used to point to specific things, such as "this," "that," "those," "this one," and "that one." Demonstrative adjectives modify nouns in the sentence. Demonstrative pronouns replace the nouns that they refer to.

case

A grammatical change in nouns, pronouns, and adjectives that reflect the function of the word in the sentence. English marks case primarily in pronouns. It has three cases: nominative (to mark the subject, for example, I, you, he, etc.), objective (to mark objects, for example, me, you him, her, etc.), and genitive or possessive (to mark possession, for example, my, your, his, her, etc.). Many languages mark all the words in the noun phrase with affixes to indicate case. Some languages have as many as fifteen or more different cases.

gerund

In English a gerund is a verb that is modified by adding –ing to form a noun. For example, "Hiking is my favorite sport."

helping verb

A helping, or auxiliary, verb is used in coordination with a main verb to express nuances in the meaning of the main verb, for example, "I see" vs. "I have seen." "Have" is the helping verb and must be combined with the main verb "seen" to express the nuance in meaning.

noun

A noun is a person, place, thing, or idea. A noun can be the subject or the object of the sentence.

object

The object of the sentence is whatever is being acted upon by the subject. Not all sentences have objects, but many do. Objects can be direct or indirect.

- *Direct*: A direct object is the person, place, thing, or idea which the verb is directly acting upon.
- *Indirect*: An indirect object is the person, place, thing, or idea which is receiving or benefiting from the action. It is often (though not always) translated in English as "to" or "for" something.

particle

A particle is a word that does not fit under the main parts of speech. Particles can be used to emphasize particular words or parts of a sentence, and many do not translate well into English. Some particles can also act as another part of speech (e.g., conjunctions).

phrase

A phrase is a combination of words that lacks either a subject or a verb.

possessive adjective

A possessive adjective is a word used with nouns to show possession, such as "my," "your," and "his."

preposition

Prepositions tell us how, when, or where something is taking place. These words always precede a noun or pronoun. Combining a preposition with a noun or pronoun forms a prepositional phrase. For example, "through the Spirit" is a prepositional phrase in which "through" is the preposition and "the Spirit" is the noun.

pronoun

Pronouns are words that replace nouns. For example, "they" instead of "the people," or "he" instead of "the man."

subject

The subject of a sentence is the person, place, thing, or idea (the noun) that performs an action (the verb).

verb

Verbs express actions or states of being. For example, a person "prays," "loves," and "blesses." These are things the subject (doer of the verb) does. A person "is," "seems," and "belongs." These express states the subject experiences.

verb tense

Verbs will conjugate, or change, to indicate whether an action happened in the past, is happening in the present, or will happen in the future.

Abbreviations Used in This Book

acc	accusative cas, ko?
adj	adjective
adv	adverb
conj	conjunction
dat	dative case, kam?
DO	direct object
fem	feminine
FP	feminine plural
FS	feminine singular
gen	genitive case, kā?
I	intransitive
IO	indirect object
loc	locative case, kur?
masc	masculine
MP	masculine plural
MS	masculine singular
nom	nominative case, kas?
O	object
pl	plural
prep	preposition
S	subject
sg	singular
T	transitive
V	verb
voc	vocative case

Latvian uses two forms of "you." When completing the activities in this book, the answers will be given using tu, unless otherwise specified in the activity.

Grammar Terms in Latvian

accusative	*akuzatīvs, ko?*
active voice	*darāmā kārta*
adjective	*īpašības vārds*
adverb	*apstākļa vārds*
alphabet	*alfabēts*
comma	*komats*
conditional	*vēlējuma izteiksme*
to conjugate	*locīt*
conjugation	*locīšana*
dative	*datīvs, kam?*
debitive mood	*vajadzības izteiksme*
declension	*locīšana, deklinācija*
to decline	*locīt*
diminutive	*pamazināmais vārds, deminutīvs*
genitive	*ģenitīvs, kā?*
imperative	*pavēles izteiksme*
indeclinable	*nelokāms*
intransitive verb	*nepārejošs darbības vārds*
locative	*lokatīvs, kur?*
negation	*noliegums*
nominative	*nominatīvs, kas?*
noun	*lietvārds*
object	*priekšmets, objekts, papildinātājs*
paragraph	*rindkopa*
participle	*divdabis*
passive voice	*ciešamā kārta*
period	*punkts*
plural	*daudzskaitlis*
preposition	*prievārds*
pronoun	*vietniekvārds*
reflexive verb	*atgriezeniskais darbības vārds*
sentence	*teikums*
singular	*vienskaitlis*
subject	*teikuma priekšmets*
transitive verbs	*pārejošs darbības vārds*
vocative	*darbības vārds*
	vokatīvs

Answers

Answers

1 Alphabet and Pronunciation

G. Softening Practice

1. briežu **2.** baznīcas locekļu **3.** vīriešu **4.** sieviešu **5.** koru **6.** lāču **7.** zemeņu **8.** pasauļu

H. Common Errors

1. Jēzus **2.** brāļa **3.** Dženija **4.** PAteikt **5.** LabRĪT **6.** cepāt

2 Parts of Speech

A. Identify the Verb—The infinitive form of the verb is given in parentheses.

1. mīl (mīlēt) **2.** sajutīsi (sajust) **3.** esat (būt) **4.** lūgsi (lūgt) **5.** māca (mācīt) **6.** ir (būt), aicinājis (aicināt) **7.** ticu (ticēt) **8.** palīdz (palīdzēt), nākt (nākt)

B. Identify the Pronoun—The nomitive form of the pronoun is given in parentheses.

1. (jūs) jūs- *nom.* **2.** (mēs) mēs- *nom.* **3.** (tu) tu- *nom.* **4.** (mēs) mūsu- *gen.* **5.** (es) es- *nom*. **6.** (viņš) viņš- *nom.* **7.** (viņi) viņi- *nom.* **8.** (mēs) mūs- *acc.*

C. Identify the Adjective

1. patiess **2.** labs **3.** vienīgā, patiesā, dzīvā (all are definite adj.) **4.** skaista **5.** cienīgiem **6.** Svētajam, klusa, maiga **7.** nevainojamu **8.** mūžīgā, atkarīga

D. Identify the Adverb

1. klusi **2.** čakli **3.** ļoti **4.** spoži **5.** patiešām **6.** patiesi **7.** pacietīgi, sirsnīgi **8.** taisnīgi, mūžīgi

E. Identify the Preposition

1. caur (acc.) **2.** pēc (gen.) **3.** uz (gen.) **4.** pie (gen.) **5.** bez (gen.) **6.** no (dative-plural) **7.** par (acc.) **8.** bez (gen.)

F. Identify Parts of Speech

1. noun **2.** possessive pronoun **3.** pronoun **4.** article (remember—there are no articles in Latvian) **5.** adjective **6.** adjective **7.** verb **8.** preposition **9.** verb **10.** verb **11.** verb **12.** pronoun **13.** preposition **14.** adjective **15.** noun
"Dievs ir mūsu Debesu Tēvs. Mēs esam Viņa bērni. Viņam ir godības pilns un nevainojams ķermenis no miesas un kauliem. Viņš mūs mīl. Viņš raud kopā ar mums, kad mēs ciešam, un priecājas, kad mēs rīkojamies pareizi. Viņš vēlas ar mums sazināties, un mēs varam sazināties ar Viņu caur sirsnīgu lūgšanu." (*Sludini Manu Evaņģēliju*, 43)

G. Common Errors

1. noskaitīsi lūgšanu **2.** Svētie **3.** ātri **4.** sava **5.** svarīgi **6.** meklēja patiesību (omit *par)* **7.** Mana **8.** gribu

H. Error Correction

1. Glābējs no jauna **nodibināja** Savu Baznīcu uz zemes. **2.** Vai Jūs ticat Jēzum Kristum? **3.** Džozefs nolēma lūgt **Dievu**, lai uzzinātu, kas viņam jādara. **4. Baznīcā**, Dace tevi gaida. **5.** Es iedošu **Mormona** Grāmatu manam tēvam. **6.** Viņa **uzmanīgi** izvēlējās, kuru skolu apmeklēt. **7. Mēs ar Judīti** kopā apmeklēju konferenci. **8.** Viņam ir **ticība**, ka caur Kristu viss būs iespējams. **9.** Autobuss reti apstājas **šajā pieturā**; iesim uz **citu**! **10.** Pravietis runā **Dieva vārdā**.

3 Latvian Cases

A. Translation

1. Es$_{nom}$ sajūtu Svētā Gara$_{gen}$ spēku.$_{acc}$ **2.** Ainārs$_{nom}$ deva savam dēlam$_{dat}$ priesterības$_{gen}$ pilnvaras.$_{acc}$ **3.** Elder$_{nom}$, mēs$_{nom}$ esam Jēzus$_{gen}$ Kristus$_{gen}$ liecinieki$_{nom}$ saviem$_{gen}$ klausītājiem.$_{dat}$ **4.** Viņš$_{nom}$ man$_{dat}$ nodziedāja dziesmiņu.$_{acc}$ **5.** Atcerieties, ka viņas$_{gen}$ kristības$_{nom}$ ir sestdien!$_{loc}$ **6.** Juris$_{nom}$ izlasīja avīzē$_{loc}$ par jaunās$_{gen}$ baznīcas$_{gen}$ ēkas$_{gen}$ celtniecību$_{acc}$ Rīgā.$_{loc}$

B.Case Identification

1. Dative **2.** Nominative **3.** Dative **4.** Locative **5.** Accusative **6.** Genitive **7.** Nominative **8.** Accusative **9.** Locative **10.** Dative

C. Common Errors

1. Kas **2.** šo darbu **3.** Tā Kunga **4.** Valdi **5.** Mūsu **6.** Līgai **7.** Grāmatā **8.** Glābēju, Pestītāju **9.** Gudrības **10.** mājskolotājiem

D. Error Correction

1. Edgar, es tevi sen neesmu redzējis(usi). **2.** Vai tu gatavosies doties uz **templi**? **3.** Mormona **Grāmatas** liecība apstiprina **Bībeles** patiesumu. **4.** Kā lai es rodu **mieru** un **prieku**? **5.** Mēs jau mācījām Ditai par škīstības **likumu**. **6.** no error. **7.** Baznīcas **locekļiem** vajadzētu lūgt par tiem, kuri nav no mūsu **baznīcas**. **8.** Piedāvā **iemācīt cilvēkiem**, kā noturēt ģimenes mājvakarus! **9. Klausītājiem** būs ļoti atšķirīga attieksme pret Svētajiem Rakstiem. **10.** Vai tu atceries, kur **Mārtiņš** dzīvo?

E. Scripture Activity

Mūsu$_{gen}$ dzīvais Dievs$_{nom}$ ir mīlošs Dievs$_{nom}$! Viņš$_{nom}$ vēlas, lai Viņa$_{gen}$ bērni$_{nom}$ iepazītu Viņu$_{acc}$ un Jēzu$_{acc}$ Kristu$_{acc}$, kuru$_{acc}$ Viņš$_{nom}$ ir sūtījis! Un Viņš$_{nom}$ vēlas, lai Viņa$_{gen}$ bērni$_{nom}$ iegūtu nemirstību$_{acc}$ un mūžīgo dzīvi$_{acc}$!
Ar šo brīnišķo mērķi$_{acc}$ mūsu$_{gen}$ misionāri$_{nom}$ māca par Atjaunošanu$_{acc}$. Viņi$_{nom}$ zina, ka aptuveni pirms 2000 gadiem$_{dat}$ Tas Kungs$_{nom}$ nodibināja Savu Baznīcu$_{acc}$. Taču pēc Viņa$_{gen}$ krustā$_{loc}$ sišanas$_{gen}$ un Viņa$_{gen}$ apustuļu$_{gen}$ nāves$_{gen}$ cilvēki$_{nom}$ izmainīja Baznīcu$_{acc}$ un tās$_{gen}$ mācības$_{acc}$. Tad, pēc paaudzēm$_{dat}$ ilgas garīgās tumsības$_{gen}$, kā to$_{acc}$ bija pareģojuši pravieši$_{nom}$, Debesu$_{gen}$ Tēvs$_{nom}$ un Jēzus$_{nom}$ Kristus$_{nom}$ atjaunoja Savu Baznīcu$_{acc}$, tās$_{gen}$ mācības$_{acc}$ un priesterības$_{gen}$ pilnvaras$_{acc}$. Pateicoties šai atjaunošanai$_{dat}$, visiem$_{dat}$ cilvēkiem$_{dat}$ atkal ir pieejamas zināšanas$_{nom}$ un būtiski pestīšanas$_{gen}$ un paaugstināšanas$_{gen}$ priekšraksti$_{nom}$. Visbeidzot, paaugstināšana$_{nom}$ ļauj mums$_{dat}$ mūžīgi dzīvot Dieva$_{gen}$ un Jēzus$_{gen}$ Kristus$_{gen}$ klātbūtnē$_{loc}$ kopā ar savām ģimenēm$_{dat}$!

"Our living God is a loving God! He wants His children to know Him and Jesus Christ, whom He has sent! And He wants His children to gain immortality and eternal life!
For this glorious purpose, our missionaries teach of the Restoration. They know that some 2,000 years ago, the Lord established His Church. After His Crucifixion and the death of His Apostles, men changed the Church and its doctrine. Then, after generations of spiritual darkness, and as predicted by previous prophets, Heavenly Father and Jesus Christ restored the Church, its doctrine, and its priesthood authority. Because of that Restoration, knowledge and essential ordinances for salvation and exaltation are again available to all people. Ultimately, that exaltation allows each of us to dwell with our families in the presence of God and Jesus Christ forever!"

4 Nouns

A. Gender Identification

1. feminine (*eye*) **2.** masculine (*child*) **3.** masculine (*computer*) **4.** masculine (*honey*) **5.** feminine (*bag*) **6.** masculine (*market*) **7.** feminine (*sock*) **8.** masculine (*path*) **9.** feminine (*family*) **10.** masculine (*brother*) **11.** feminine (*cow*) **12.** feminine (*street*) **13.** masculine (*goal*) **14.** feminine (*tea*) **15.** feminine (*river*) **16.** masculine (*example*)

B. Number

1. acis **2.** bērni **3.** datori **4.** - *(used only in singular)* **5.** somas **6.** tirgi **7.** zeķes **8.** ceļi **9.** ģimenes **10.** brāļi **11.** govis **12.** ielas **13.** mērķi **14.** tējas **15.** upes **16.** piemēri

C. Case Declination—Answers are give in the following order: nom, acc, gen, dat, loc

1. *Sg:* acs, aci, acs, acij, acī *Pl:* acis, acis, acu, acīm, acīs **2.** *Sg:* bērns, bērnu, bērna, bērnam, bērnā *Pl:* bērni, bērnus, bērnu, bērniem, bērnos **3.** *Sg:* dators, datoru, datora, datoram, datorā *Pl:* datori, datorus, datoru, datoriem, datoros **4.** *Sg:* medus, medu, medus, medum, medū *Pl:* no plural **5.** *Sg:* soma, somu, somas, somai, somā *Pl:* somas, somas, somu, somām, somās **6.** *Sg:* tirgus, tirgu, tirgus, tirgum, tirgū *Pl:* tirgi, tirgus, tirgu, tirgiem, tirgos **7.** *Sg:* zeķe, zeķi, zeķes, zeķei, zeķē *Pl:* zeķes, zeķes, zeķu, zeķēm, zeķēs **8.** *Sg:* ceļš, ceļu, ceļa, ceļam, ceļā *Pl:* ceļi, ceļus, ceļu, ceļiem, ceļos **9** *Sg:* ģimene, ģimeni, ģimenes, ģimenei, ģimenē *Pl:* ģimenes, ģimenes, ģimeņu, ģimenēm, ģimenēs **10.** *Sg:* brālis, brāli, brāļa, brālim, brālī *Pl:* brāļi, brāļus, brāļu, brāļiem, brāļos **11.** *Sg:* govs, govi, govs, govij, govī *Pl:* govis, govis, govju, govīm, govīs **12.** *Sg:* iela, ielu, ielas, ielai, ielā *Pl:* iela, ielas, ielu, ielām, ielās **13.** *Sg:* mērķis, mērķi, mērķa, mērķim, mērķī *Pl:* mērķi, mērķus, mērķu, mērķiem, mērķos **14.** *Sg:* tēja, tēju, tējas, tējai, tējā *Pl:* tējas, tējas, tēju, tējām, tējās **15.** *Sg:* upe, upi, upes, upei, upē *Pl:* upes, upes, upju, upēm, upēs **16.** *Sg:* piemērs, piemēru, piemēra, piemēram, piemērā *Pl:* piemēri, piemērus, piemēru, piemēriem, piemēros

D. Constructing Dimiutives

1. actiņa **2.** bērniņš **3.** datoriņš **4.** medutiņš **5.** somiņa **6.** tirdziņš **7.** zeķīte **8.** celiņš **9.** ģimenīte **10.** brālītis **11.** gotiņa **12.** ieliņa **13.** mērķītis **14.** tējiņa **15.** upīte **16.** piemēriņš

E. Irregular -s Ending Noun Declension

1. *Sg:* ūdens, ūdeni, ūdens, ūdenim, ūdenī *Pl:* ūdeņi, ūdeņus, ūdeņu, ūdeņiem, ūdeņos **2.** *Sg:* krāsns, krāsni, krāsns, krāsnij, krāsnī *Pl:* krāsnis, krāsnis, krāšņu, krāsnīm, krāsnīs **3.** *Sg:* auss, ausi, auss, ausij, ausī *Pl:* ausis, ausis, aušu, ausīm, ausīs **4.** *Sg:* suns, suni, suns, sunim, sunī *Pl:* suņi, suņus, suņu, suņiem, suņos **5.** *Sg:* akmens, akmeni, akmens, akmenim, akmenī *Pl:* akmeņi, akmeņus, akmeņu, akmeņiem, akmeņos **6.** *Sg:* sirds, sirdi, sirds, sirdij, sirdī *Pl:* sirdis, sirdis, siržu, sirdīm, sirdīs **7.** Sg: sāls, sāli, sāls, sālim, sālī *Pl:* sāļi*, sāļus, sāļu, sāļiem, sāļos **8.** *Sg:* klints, klinti, klints, klintij, klintī *Pl:* klintis, klintis, klinšu, klintīm, klintīs

* When you are refering to salt you add to food, you use it as an uncountable, singular noun.
The plural *sāļi* is a term in chemistry that refers to different types of salts.

F. Uncountable and Plural Nouns

1. Jūsu sāpes var tikt paņemtas prom no jums caur Kristus Izpirkšanu. **2.** Ziemassvētki ir laiks, kad mēs atceramies par Kristus dzimšanu. **3.** Mēs parādām savu mīlestību pret Dievu, turot baušļus. **4.** Vai tu nopirki pienu? **5.** Kad Ādams un Ieva krita, viņi ieguva zināšanas par labu un ļaunu. **6.** Viņas svārki ir melni. **7.** Evaņģēlija skaistums ir tā vienkāršībā. **8.** Vakariņās mēs ēdām rīsus. **9.** Viens no maniem hobijiem ir dejošana. **10.** Ejam uz pārtikas veikalu, lai nopirktu miltus!

G. Identification

1. Misionāri$_S$ klausītājam$_{IO}$ stundu$_{DO}$ **2.** Mēs$_S$ viņam$_{IO}$ evaņģēliju$_{DO}$ **3.** Misionāri$_S$ valodu$_{DO}$ **4.** Jēzus$_S$ apustuļiem$_{IO}$ priesterību$_{DO}$ **5.** Džozefs Smits$_S$ Grāmatu$_{DO}$ **6.** Jēzus$_S$ mums$_{IO}$ dzīvi$_{DO}$ **7.** Mēs$_S$ patiesību$_{DO}$ **8.** Dievs$_S$ mums$_{IO}$ baušļus$_{DO}$ **9.** Misionāri$_S$ vīrietim$_{IO}$ Grāmatu$_{DO}$ **10.** Eņģelis$_S$ Nefijam$_{IO}$ vīziju$_{DO}$

H. Common Errors

1. Pravieši **2.** patiesību **3.** tempļus **4.** Mana brāļa **5.** Dievu **6.** mēness **7.** iemesla**,** Dieva **8.** vārdus **9.** uz, jautājumiem **10.** pārtiku **11.** Mana, pilna **12.** skaisti svārki

I. Error Correction

1. Nāve neizmaina mūsu raksturu. **2.** Visi cilvēki ir daļa no Dieva **ģimenes**. **3.** Ādams un Ieva dzīvoja Ēdenes **Dārzā** **4.** Mums vajag attīstīt **gara** dāvanas. **5.** Pestīšanas iecere atbild **uz trīm jautājumiem** **6.** Grēku Izpirkšana atļauj **mums** atgriezties pie Dieva. **7.** Viņiem patika mūsu **stunda.** **8.** Mums ir rīcības brīvība, bet **katrai rīcībai** ir sekas. (*Rīcība* is used only in singular.) **9.** Mēs iedevām **viņiem(ām)** Mormona Grāmatu. **10.** Dievs atjaunoja **evaņģēliju** caur pravieti **Džozefu Smitu**.

5 Nominative Case

A. Recognition

1. princips (masc. sg.) **2.** ticība (fem. sg.) **3.** ticība (fem. sg.) **4.** Viņš (masc. sg.) **5.** Dēls (masc. sg.) **6.** Glābējs (masc. sg.) **7.** Pestītājs (masc. sg.) **8.** princips (masc. sg.) **9.** nožēlošana (fem. sg.) **10.** ticība (fem. sg.) **11.** mīlestība (fem. sg.) **12.** domas (fem. pl.) **13.** ticība (fem. sg.) **14.** nožēlošana (fem. sg.) **15.** Priekšraksts (masc. sg.) **16.** rituāls (masc. sg.) **17.** ceremonija (fem. sg.) **18.** mēs (pronoun pl.) **19.** Jēzus (masc. sg.) **20.** kristīšanās (fem. pl.) **21.** mēs (pronoun pl.) **22.** mēs (pronoun pl.) **23.** mācekļi (masc. pl.) **24.** Mēs (pronoun pl.)

B. FIll In the Blank

1. Tēvs **2.** bērni, misionāri **3.** pravietis **4.** Dēls **5.** misionārs(e) **6.** Tēvs**,** Glābējs **7.** Pravieši, Misionāri, Glābējs **8.** Glābējs **9.** pravietis **10.** Ģimene, Pravietis, Glābējs, Bērns **11.** Pravieši, Misionāri **12.** ģimene **13.** Glābējs **14.** pravieši, Glābējs, Tēvs.

C. Translation

1. Mani vecāki man mācīja par Dievu. **2.** Apustuļi ir Dieva izvēlēti vīri. **3.** Mums ir jāatceras Jēzus. **4.** Viņa būs vecmāmiņa. **5.** Kas ir tavas apmeklējošās māsas? **6.** Viņi zina, ka Mormona Grāmata ir patiesa. **7.** Man tas patiktu. **8.** Kas ir tavs labākais draugs/tava labākā draudzene? **9.** Jūs esat lielisks piemērs. **10.** Jēzus ir tavs brālis un draugs.

D. Common Errors

1. Dēls **2.** Kas **3.** likums **4.** liecība **5.** Mēs **6.** Jūs **7.** Kas **8.** vārdi, vārdi **9.** šī baznīca, patiesa **10.** Tu

E. Error Correction

1. Svētie Raksti ir **pieraksti** par Dieva darbiem starp Viņa bērniem. **2.** Sabata **diena** ir svēta **diena**. **3.** no error **4. Dievs** aicina praviešus. **5.** Es gribu uzzināt, **kas** tas ir. **6. Jūs** tiksiet atbrīvoti no grēkiem caur Jēzu Kristu. **7.** Vai tev bija jāpieskata **bērni**? **8.** Mans tētis ir labs **cilvēks**. **9.** Grēku **nožēlošana** ir **izmaiņa**. **10.** no error **11.** Pēc šīs dzīves **mēs** dzīvosim Dieva klātbūtnē. **12. Kristus** nomira mūsu dēļ.

6 "To Be" (*Būt, Kļūt*)

A. Fill In the Blank

1. ir **2.** būsiet **3.** kļūšu **4.** ir **5.** kļūstam **6.** ir **7.** esam **8.** kļuvi **9.** ir **10.** esmu

C. Translation

1. Es esmu Jēzus Kristus pārstāvis. **2.** Skolotājs bija laipns. **3.** Mēs neesam amerikāņi. **4.** Jēzus ir ideāls piemērs. **5.** Tu esi brīnišķīgs(a). **6.** Jūs būsiet students(e). **7.** Viņš ir latvietis. **8.** Apustuļi arī ir pravieši. **9.** Es biju priecīgs(a) tevi svētdien redzēt. **10.** Viņi(as) nav gatavi(as) iet. **11.** Viņi ir lieliski vecāki. **12.** Prezidents Nelsons ir mūsdienu pravietis. **13.** Es nebūšu skaļš(a). **14.** Tu esi mierīgs(a). **15.** Viņa ir Jāņa meita. **16.** Džozefs Smits bija Atjaunošanas pravietis.

D. Common Error

1. ir **2.** bija **3.** neesmu **4.** ir **5.** esat **6.** nav **7.** esi **8.** būsim **9.** kļūt **10.** ir

E. Error Correction

1. Mēs **bijām pateicīgi(as)** par iespēju palīdzēt Leldei. **2.** Es **esmu misionārs(e).** **3.** Vai Diāna **ir** Brāļa Ozola meita? **4.** Jūs pēc kristīšanās **kļūsiet** tīri(as). **5.** Tu vēl **neesi** gatavs(a) kristīties. **6.** Misionāriem(ēm) ir jābūt **pazemīgiem(ām)**. **7.** Ar laiku jūs **kļūsiet** pilnīgi(as). **8.** Mans(a) pārinieks(ce) **nav** no Amerikas. **9.** Viņi(as) **ir** ļoti labi(as) skolotāji(as). **10.** Vai tu **esi** no Rīgas?

F. Translation

1. Viņš pagājušgad kļuva par draudzes prezidentu. **2.** Viņi(as) drīz kļūs par baznīcas locekļiem(lēm). **3.** Tu kļūsi pilnīgs(a) Kristū. **4.** Baznīca man kļuva par vietu, kur es varu sajust mieru. **5.** Es kļūstu stiprāks(a), kad es lūdzu. **6.** Mēs ar Sintiju kļūsim par labiem draugiem/labām draudzenēm. **7.** Viņi(as) caur praksi kļuva par vislabākajiem(ām) skolotājiem(ām). **8.** Tu kļūsti līdzīgāks(a) Dievam, sekojot Viņam. **9.** Mormona Grāmata kļuva par Helēnas ticības pamatu. **10.** Mēs kļūstam tīri, kad mēs pieņemam Svēto Vakarēdienu.

G. "Is Not" and "Have Not"

1. locekļi *Will you invite your friends who **are not** Church members to church?* **2.** kauna *Literal: How (is it that) you have no shame (to do something)?* **3.** daudz pacietības *He doesn't have enough patience to manage children.* **4.** skaista *Life is beautiful.* **5.** mūsu pienākums *To criticize is not our duty (or responsibility).* **6.** brāļu un māsu *She doesn't have brothers and sisters.* **7.** ļauns *He is not evil.* **8.** laika *My sister doesn't have time to meet with missionaries.*

7 Accusative Case

A. Identification

1. To Kungu **2.** ieceri **3.** pilnību **4.** Garu **5.** praviešus **6.** Grāmatu **7.** šo baznīcu **8.** piedošanu **9.** mani **10.** mūs un grēkus

B. Declination — Answers are given as singular, plural.

1. Dievu, dievus **2.** lūgšanu, lūgšanas **3.** pravieti, praviešus **4.** Bībeli, Bībeles **5.** Kristu, Kristus **6.** sirdi, sirdis

C. Companion Practice — Answers are given as singular, plural.

1. Elderu, Elderus **2.** galdu, galdus **3.** māsu, māsas **4.** lampu, lampas **5.** Bībeli, Bībeles **6.** krēslu, krēslus **7.** skolotāju, skolotājus(as) **8.** datoru, datorus

D. Translation

1. Es mīlu savu Glābēju. **2.** Dievs sūtīja Savu Dēlu, jo Viņš mūs mīl. **3.** Kristus vada šo baznīcu. **4.** Vai tu lūdzi par Mormona Grāmatu? **5.** Mēs sajūtam Svēto Garu. **6.** Vai Jūs lasāt Bībeli? **7.** Evaņģēlijs svētī ģimenes. **8.** Cik ilgi tu jau viņu pazīsti?

E. Common Errors

1. Ilon**u** **2.** apustu**ļ**us un pravie**š**us **3.** Diev**u** **4.** kurs**us** **5.** pārbaudījum**iem** **6.** cerīb**u**

F. Error Correction

1. Mēs varam saņemt **mūžīgo** dzīvi. **2.** no error **3.** Mammas vakaros bieži dzied **šūpuļdziesmas** saviem bērniem. **4.** Es nespēju runāt par **Atjaunošanu** pieklusināti. **5.** Autobuss izbrauks ap **vieniem**. **6.** no error

G. Accusitive Adjectives

Word	Indefinite singular	Definite Singular	Indefinite Plural	Definite Plural
Elder	labu Elderu *a good elder*	labo Elderu *the good elder*	labus Elderus *(some) good elders*	labos Elderus *the good elders*
	brīnišķīgu Elderu *a wonderful elder*	brīnišķīgo Elderu *the wonderful elder*	brīnišķīgus Elderus *(some) wonderful elders*	brīniškīgos Elderus *the wonderful elders*
	milzīgu Elderu *a huge elder*	milzīgo Elderu *the huge elder*	milzīgus Elderus *(some) huge elders*	milzīgos Elderus *the huge elders*
	skaistu Elderu *a handsome elder*	skaisto Elderu *the handsome elder*	skaistus Elderus *(some) handsome elders*	skaistos Elderus *the handsome elders*
	stingru Elderu *a strict elder*	stingro Elderu *the strict elder*	stingrus Elderus *(some) strict elders*	stingros Elderus *the strict elders*
	garu Elderu *a tall elder*	garo Elderu *the tall elder*	garus Elderus *(some) tall elders*	garos Elderus *the tall elders*
	svētu Elderu *a holy elder*	svēto Elderu *the holy elder*	svētus Elderus *(some) holy elders*	svētos Elderus *the holy elders*
	zilu Elderu *a blue elder*	zilo Elderu *the blue elder*	zilus Elderus *(some) blue elders*	zilos Elderus *the blue elders*

Note that the same adjective ending is used no matter what the adjective is. This is because adjectives match the noun. For the rest of the words from activity C, only one example will be given to show the correct ending.

galds	zilu galdu *a blue table*	zilo galdu *the blue table*	zilus galdus *(some) blue tables*	zilos galdus *the blue tables*
māsa	skaistu māsu *a pretty sister*	skaisto māsu *the pretty sister*	skaistas māsas *(some) beautiful sisters*	skaistās māsas *the beautiful sisters*
lampa	garu lampu *a tall lamp*	garo lampu *the tall lamp*	garas lampas *(some) tall lamps*	garās lampas *the tall lamps*
Bībele	svētu Bībeli *a Holy Bible*	svēto Bībeli *the Holy Bible*	svētas Bībeles *(some) Holy Bibles*	svētās Bībeles *the Holy Bibles*
krēsls	milzīgu krēslu *a huge chair*	milzīgo krēslu *the huge chair*	milzīgus krēslus *(some) huge chairs*	milzīgos krēslus *the huge chairs*
dators	labu datoru *a good computer*	labo datoru *the good computer*	labus datorus *(some) good computers*	labos datorus *the good computers*

H. Fill In the Blank

1. savu ģimeni **2.** mūžīgās patiesības **3.** Svēto Garu, mieru **4.** Bībeli **5.** Svētos Rakstus **6.** to, ko **7.** savu tēvu, savu māti **8.** likumu, Vārdu **9.** savu desmito tiesu **10.** dzīvokli

I. Create a Sentence

1. Džozefs redzēja Dievu. **2.** Dievs mūs mīl. **3.** Es lasīšu Bībeli. **4.** Svētais Gars apstiprinās patiesību. **5.** Nefijs būvēja kuģi. **6.** Viņi(as) dziedāja dziesmu. **7.** Vai tu turēsi desmit baušļus? **8.** Priesterības nesēji veic svētus priekšrakstus. **9.** Baznīcas locekļi maksā gavēņa ziedojumus. **10.** Viņa saņēma aicinājumu.

The following is just one example of how the simple sentence could be expanded.

1. Džozefs pēkšņi redzēja Dievu virs savas galvas. *Joseph suddenly saw God above his head.* **2.** Dievs mūs ļoti mīl, pat ja mēs esam pieļāvuši kļūdas. *God really loves us even if we have made mistakes.* **3.** Es lasīšu svēto Bībeli katru dienu. *I will read the Holy Bible every day.* **4.** Svētais Gars apstiprinās patiesību, ja mēs sirsnīgi vaicāsim. *The Holy Ghost will confirm the truth if we ask sincerely.* **5.** Nefijs nezināja, kā būvēt kuģi, bet viņš paļāvās uz Dievu. *Nephi did not know how to build a ship, but he relied on God.* **6.** Viņi (Viņas) baznīcā skaisti dziedāja brīnišķīgu latviešu dziesmu. *They beautifully sang a wonderful Latvian song at church.* **7.** Vai Jūs turēsiet Dieva dotos desmit baušļus? *Will you keep God's given Ten Commandments?* **8.** Priesterības nesēji cienīgi veic svētus glābšanas priekšrakstus. *Priesthood holders worthily perform sacred saving ordinances.* **9.** Baznīcas locekļi ticīgi un labprātīgi maksā gavēņa ziedojumus. *Church members faithfully and willingly pay fast offerings.* **10.** Viņa saņēma vēl vienu baznīcas aicinājumu. *She received another Church calling.*

8 Asking Questions

A. Translation

1. Kurš ir tavs mīļākais Svēto Rakstu pants? **2.** Ko Jūs zināt par Mormona Grāmatu? **3.** Kur mēs dzīvojām pirms šīs dzīves? **4.** Vai tu tici, ka Dievs tevi mīl? **5.** Kāpēc/Kādēļ tava ģimene tev ir svarīga? **6.** Ko Jūs saprotat ar vārdu "pravietis"? **7.** Kurš no mums mācīs svētdienas skolu? **8.** Vai Roberts zina, kur atrodas pasta birojs? **9.** Kas mums palīdz sajust Svēto Garu? **10.** Kā jums dzīvē pietrūkst? **11.** Kāda ir jūsu reliģiskā pārliecība? **12.** Ko tu man tikko jautāji?

B. Fill In the Blank

1. Kad **2.** Kas **3.** kā **4.** Vai **5.** Kādu/Kuru **6.** Kā (Ko), kāda **7.** Vai **8.** Kāpēc **9.** Cikos **10.** Kā, kas

D. Using *Vai* or *Ja*

1. Mēs nezinām, **vai** tu gribi mācīties vairāk **vai nē**. **2. Ja** jūs mani mīlat, turiet manus baušļus! **3.** Viņa jautāja, **vai** Džozefs Smits bija pravietis. **4. Ja** tu lūgsi, tu saņemsi atbildi. **5.** Vai tu vēlies zināt, **vai** Dievs tevi mīl? **6. Ja** tu saņemsi atbildi, ka šī ir patiesība, vai tu kristīsies?

E. Questions with *Kā*

1. How can one repent? *(Kā* is an indeclinable question word meaning "how.") **2.** Who are we visiting (as guests) tonight? *(Kā,* the genitive form of *kas*, is used because of the preposition *pie*.) **3.** How can one find out if this is truth? *(Kā* is an indeclinable question word meaning "how.") **4.** Whose fence did you (pl.) paint? *(Kā* is used as genitive because it asks about a possession.) **5.** Where do people originate from? (The genitive preposition *no* requires the genitive form of *kas*.) **6.** What was he lacking that made him steal? (The verb *trūkt* requires the use of genitive, so *kā* is used.)

F. Common Errors

1. Kas **2.** Kā **3.** Kā **4.** Kas **5.** kurš **6.** No kurienes **7.** Kas/Kurš **8.** uzdot **9.** Kam **10.** Ko

G. Error Correction

1. Cikos sāksies sapulce? **2. Kam** mēs varam palīdzēt? **3.** Vai tu lūdzi par to, **vai** Džozefs Smits bija pravietis? **4.** Mēs viņiem **uzdevām** jautājumus par viņu ticību. **5. Kurā skolā** tu ej? **6. Kā** jūs lūdzat? **7.** Vai ir zināms **kurš ir atbildīgs**? **8. Kas** mācīja saviem dēliem būt paklausīgiem? **9. Kas** tev ir svarīgi? **10. Kura baznīca** ir patiesa?

H. Answering Questions

1. *When was the last time you were at church?* Es pēdējo reizi biju baznīcā pirms mēneša. *The last time I was at church was a month ago.* **2.** *Where is the market?* Tirgus atrodas centrā. *The market is located in the center (of the city).* **3.** *How (by what means) will we travel to Riga?* Mēs brauksim uz Rīgu ar vilcienu. *We will go to Riga by train.* **4.** *What did you teach about?* Mēs mācījām par pestīšanas ieceri. *We taught about the plan of salvation.* **5.** *Who speaks the word of God?* Pravietis runā Dieva vārdā. *The prophet speaks in the name of God.* **6.** *Who does Pauls live with?* Pauls dzīvo kopā ar savu vectēvu. *Pauls lives with his grandfather.* **7.** *Whom did you send a text message to?* Es nosūtīju īsziņu klausītājam. *I sent a text message to an investigator.* **8.** *What bus will we travel with?* Mēs brauksim ar trešo autobusu. *We will travel with bus number 3.* **9.** *Was there anyone who didn't get to watch general conference?* Jā, Rivo nebija iespējas skatīties Vispārējo Konferenci. *Yes, Rivo did not have a chance to watch the general conference.* **10.** *Whom did Pāvels buy a coloring book for?* Pāvels nopirka krāsojamo grāmatu savai meitiņai. *Pavels bought a coloring book for his daughter.*

M. Scripture Activity

10. Un tagad es vaicāju jums, **uz kādiem (dat—pl. prepositional object)** nosacījumiem viņi tika izglābti? Jā, **kāds (nom—asking about the subject)** viņiem bija pamats cerēt uz glābšanu? **Kas (nom—asking about the subject)** bija par iemeslu tam, ka viņi tika atraisīti no nāves saitēm, jā, un arī no elles važām?
11. Lūk, es varu jums pateikt—**vai (used to make a statement a question)** mans tēvs Alma neticēja tiem vārdiem, kas tika pateikti ar Abinadija muti? Un **vai (used to make a statement a question)** viņš nebija svēts pravietis? **Vai (used to make a statement a question)** viņš nerunāja Dieva vārdus, un vai mans tēvs Alma tiem neticēja?

Review: State of Being

A. Error Correction

Daudzi prāto: „**No kurienes** mēs **esam** nākuši? **Kādēļ** mēs te esam? **Kas būs** pēc tam?" Pestīšanas iecere sniedz mums **atbildes** uz šiem jautājumiem. Dievs ir mūsu **garu** Tēvs. **Mēs** pavisam burtiski **esam** Viņa **bērni**, un Viņš **mūs** mīl. Pirms mēs nācām šajā pasaulē, mēs dzīvojām Debesīs kā mūsu Debesu Tēva gara bērni. Taču mēs nebijām **tādi** kā mūsu Debesu Tēvs un bez laicīgās dzīves pieredzes fiziskajā ķermenī nevarējām **kļūt** līdzīgi Viņam un baudīt **visas** tās svētības, **kuras** bauda **Viņš**.

B. Error Correction

1. Tēvs ("Nominative Case"), esam ("To Be' (*Būt*, *Kļūt*)") **2.** Kāda ("Asking Questions") **3.** šķirti ("To Be' (*Būt*, *Kļūt*)") **4.** tu ("Nominative Case"), kļūtu ("To Be' (*Būt*, *Kļūt*)"), locekli ("Accusative Case") **5.** kas ("Nominative Case"), Grāmatu ("Accusative Case") **6.** visu ("Accusative Case") **7.** Kurš ("Asking Questions"), bauslis ("Nominative Case") **8.** ir ("To Be' (*Būt*, *Kļūt*)"), noslēgakmens ("Nominative Case") **9.** Dievs ("Nominative Case"), praviešus ("Accusative Case") **10.** skolu ("Accusative Case"), par juristu ("To Be' (*Būt*, *Kļūt*)") **11.** Ieva ("Nominative Case") **12.** mīlošais Tēvs ("To Be' (*Būt*, *Kļūt*)") **13.** Katrs pats ("Nominative Case"), **14.** kļūšu ("To Be' (*Būt*, *Kļūt*)") **15.** Jēzus Kristus ("Nominative Case") **16.** Uz ko ("Asking Questions"), būt ("To Be' (*Būt*, *Kļūt*)") **17.** volejbolu ("Accusative Case") **18.** Kā ("Asking Questions"), uzlaboju **19.** Jūs ("Nominative Case"), esat ("To Be' (*Būt*, *Kļūt*)") **20.** Ko ("Asking Questions")

C. Translation

1. Vai tavs skolotājs **2.** Kas **3.** vēl viena liecība **4.** tētis **5.** mēs **6.** kļūt par policistu **7.** Ko **8.** Mēs ar savu brāļa dēlu **9.** Kur **10.** Būt, nebūt **11.** patiesību **12.** šaubas un bažas **13.** saldi arbūzi **14.** vēstījumu **15.** Mormona Grāmatu **16.** Desmitā tiesa ir **17.** Ko **18.** Cik bieži, baznīca **19.** Kā kļūt par **20.** likums

9 Genitive Case

A. Declination—Answers are given as singular, plural.

1. patiesības, patiesību **2.** misionāra, misionāru **3.** Dieva, dievu **4.** sapulces, sapulču* **5.** pravieša, praviešu **6.** Grēku Izpirkšanas, no plural **7.** gara, garu **8.** grāmatas, grāmatu **9.** mātes, mātu# **10.** tēva, tēvu **11.** brāļa, brāļu **12.** māsas, māsu **13.** ticības, ticību **14.** mācekļa, mācekļu **15.** Amerikas, Ameriku **16.** sirds, sirdzi **17.** lūgšanas, lūgšanu **18.** dzīves, dzīvju* **19.** stāsta, stāstu **20.** Nefija, Nefiju **21.** baznīcas, baznīcu **22.** drauga, draugu **23.** cerības, no plural **24.** Džozefa Smita, Džozefu Smitu

* Indicates softening of the ending of the word. #*Mātu* is an exception where the ending is not softened.

B. Translation Practice

1. Dieva Dēls **2.** Marijas Dēls **3.** sirds vēlme **4.** dzīves mērķis **5.** Kristus māceklis **6.** Baznīcas Prezidents **7.** Svētā Gara spēks **8.** Priesterības pilnvaras **9.** Džozefa Smita lūgšana **10.** Ziemassvētku brīnums **11.** Tā Kunga nams **12.** pestīšanas iecere **13.** Kristus Grēku Izpirkšana **14.** Kristīšanās derība **15.** baznīcas locekļa ticība **16.** pasaules Glābējs **17.** pravieša vārdi **18.** eņģeļu mēle **19.** Dieva žēlastība **20.** glābšanas darbs **21.** Dieva griba **22.** godības valstības **23.** ticības apliecinājumi **24.** Gara dāvanas

C. Prepositions

1. virs **2.** pie **3.** uz **4.** bez **5.** kopš, par **6.** no **7.** Pēc **8.** pēc

D. Pronouns

1. mūsu **2.** tevis **3.** viņu **4.** mūsu **5.** tavas **6.** manis **7.** tavu **8.** Viņa

E. Scripture Activity

2.Nefija 31:21 neviena cita ceļa; vārda; dota - used with *nav*. Answers the question *Kā nav?* Dieva; Kristus; Tēva, Dēla, Svētā Gara - expresses possession **1 Nephi 11:25** dzelzs - *no* is a genitive preposition Dieva, dzīvā ūdens, dzīvības, Dieva mīlestības - expresses possession **James 1:5** gudrības - forced by *trūkst* Dieva - *no* is a genitive preposition

H. Declining in Sentences (other uses)

1. ēdiena **2.** manu, elles **3.** Izpirkšanas **4.** taisnības, žēlastības **5.** baznīcas **6.** koka **7.** misijas **8.** nepacietības, strīdu, ķildu, asaru

J. Common Errors

1. laika **2.** Pravieša **3.** Grēku **4.** tevis **5.** nekādas vēlmes **6.** Ēdenes **7.** Lūgšanas **8.** Mormona **9.** Pravieša vārdi **10.** Svēto Rakstu

K. Error Correction

1. Cik daudz **laik<u>a</u>** mums ir? **2.** Es esmu no **Amerik<u>as</u>**. **3.** Baznīca ir ārpus mūsu **rajon<u>a</u>**. **4.** Kristus baznīca ir celta uz **apustuļ<u>u</u> un praviešu** pamata. **5.** Vai tu pazīsti **viņ<u>a</u>** brāli? **6.** Pašreiz mūsu Baznīcu vada **mūsdienu** pravietis. **7.** Cilvēki nav **pilnīgi**. **8.** Bez Kristus Grēku **Izpirkšan<u>as</u>** šai dzīvei nebūtu jēgas.

10 Pronouns

A. Clause Identification—Relative pronouns are bolded and clauses are underlined.

1. You are **who** <u>we have been looking for</u>. **2.** Scripture study is one thing **that** <u>we should do every day</u>. **3.** The Book of Mormon, **which** <u>testifies of Christ</u>, is true. **4.** I feel my Savior's love, **which** <u>is unconditional love</u>. **5.** We are grateful for **what** <u>our mission president taught us</u>. **6.** I know the Spirit, **who** <u>is a member of the Godhead</u>, teaches truth. **7.** The gospel of Jesus Christ is **what** <u>we need to return to God</u>. **8.** Today we learned **what** <u>we have to do to be saved</u>. **9.** God's plan for families is **what** <u>we will teach Sara about</u>. **10.** Do you believe **what** <u>we have taught you today</u>?

B. Fill In the Blank

1. to, kas **2.** ko **3.** kas **4.** kas **5.** to, ko **6.** kas **7.** tas, kam **8.** tas, ko **9.** tas, ko **10.** tam, ko

C. Demonstratives

1. Šī *(sg, nom, f)* **2.** tajā *(sg, loc, m)* **3.** šīs *(sg, gen, f)* **4.** Tie *(pl, nom, m)* **5.** Šo *(sg, acc, m)* **6.** tām *(pl, dat, f)* **7.** šīm *(pl, dat, f)* **8.** šai *(sg, dat, f)* **9.** tiem (*pl, dat, m)* **10.** Tas *(sg, nom, m)*

D. Demonstrative Translation

1. Šī grāmata ir patiesa. **2.** Tas ir tik forši! **3.** Man tas patīk. **4.** Kas tā ir par grāmatu, kas tev ir rokās? **5.** Tu esi citāds(a), nekā tie(tās) tur. **6.** Šī ir atjaunotā Dieva baznīca mūsdienās uz Zemes. **7.** Vai tu, lūdzu, varētu man ar šo palīdzēt? **8.** Šis vīrietis vēlas uzzināt vairāk par to grāmatu. **9.** Tie cilvēki, kas tic Dievam, cenšas Viņam sekot. **10.** Šie vārdi liecina par to, ka Kristus ir dzīvs.

E. Possessive Pronouns

1. Mūsu **2.** jūsu **3.** tavas **4.** Viņas **5.** Mana, manu **6.** savu **7.** Viņa **8.** mūsu **9.** savu **10.** Tavs

F. Pats

1. paši **2.** pats(i) **3.** pats(i) **4.** paša **5.** pašas **6.** pašu **7.** pats(i) **8.** pašas

G. Reflexive Pronouns

1. Viņa saprata **sevi** labāk pēc rakstīšanas dienasgrāmatā. **2.** Vai tu tici **sev**? **3.** Tu vienīgi vari **sev** palīdzēt, ievērojot Dieva baušļus. **4.** Es **sev** patīku. **5.** Agnese saņēma vēstuli no **sevis**. **6.** Viņa nopirka **sev** saldējumu.

H. Fill In the Blank

1. paša **2.** Sevi **3.** pats(i) **4.** sevi **5.** savas **6.** savam **7.** pašam (pašai) **8.** savu

I. Declining Indefinite and Definite Pronouns

	Sg m/f	**Pl m/f**	**Sg m/f**	**Pl m/f**	**Sg m/f**	**Pl**	**Sg m/f**	**Pl m/f**
nom	cits/cita	citi/citas	viss/visa	visi/visas	kaut kas/ -	-	-	abi/abas
acc	citu/citu	citus/citas	visu/visu	visus/visas	kaut ko/ -	-		abus/abas
gen	cita/citas	citu/citu	visa/visas	visu/visu	kaut kā/ -	-	-	abu/abu
dat	citam/citai	citiem/citām	visam/visai	visiem/visām	kaut kam/ -	-	-	abiem/abām
loc	citā/citā	citos/citās	visā/visā	visos/visās	kaut kur/ -	-		abos/abās
nom	pats/pati	paši/pašas	dažs/daža	daži/dažas	katrs/katra	-	ikviens/ikviena	-
acc	pašu/pašu	pašus/pašas	dažu/dažu	dažus/dažas	katru/katru	-	ikvienu/ikvienu	-
gen	paša/pašas	pašu/pašu	daža/dažas	dažu/dažu	katra/katras	-	ikviena/ikvienas	-
dat	pašam/pašai	pašiem/pašām	dažam/dažai	dažiem/dažām	katram/ katrai	-	ikvienam/ ikvienai	-
loc	pašā/pašā	pašos/pašās	dažā/dažā	dažos/dažās	katrā/katrā	-	ikvienā/ikvienā	-

Note: *Ikkatrs* declines the same way as *katrs*.

J. Translation with Indefinite and Definite Pronouns

1. Dievs mīl visus cilvēkus un vēlas, lai viņi zinātu par Viņu. **2.** Viņa nevēlas/negrib ne runāt, ne lūgt citu cilvēku priekšā. **3.** Dažām ģimenēm nav liekas naudas, tomēr tās tāpat maksā desmito tiesu. **4.** Mums visiem ir kaut kas, kas mums ir jāiemācās no mūsu misijas. **5.** Vai tu pazīsti visus baznīcas locekļus savā draudzē? **6.** Neviens nezina tavus grēkus, kā vienīgi Dievs un tu pats. **7.** Mēs abi ieradāmies Latvijā vienā un tajā pašā laikā. **8.** Mums katram pašam ir jānolemj, kam mēs ticēsim. **9.** Baznīcā bija daži cilvēki, kurus es nepazinu. **10.** Ikviens gribēja palīdzēt Evai.

K. Negative Pronouns

1. nevari, neko, nesaki neko **2.** nekad, neaizmirsīs **3.** Nevienam, nav **4.** nesaņemot nekādu **5.** nav nekā **6.** to nedarītu **7.** nesaprotam neko **8.** Nekādā, neatstāj/nepamet

M. Common Errors

1. ko **2.** viņas **3.** saviem **4.** nav **5.** viņu **6.** paša **7.** Mani **8.** tas

N. Error Correction

1. Vai tu turēsi **manas** pavēles? **2.** no error **3.** no error **4.** no error **5.** Misionāri(es) māca to, **ko** no mums sagaida Glābējs. **6.** Svētais Gars tev **vajadzīgā** brīdī dos, kas tev jāsaka. **7.** Vai tu tiksi kristīts no kāda, **kam ir** priesterības pilnvaras? **8.** Misionāru stundiņas satur mācības un baušļus, pēc **kuriem** tev vajag dzīvot.

Review: Possession and Ownership

A. Error Correction

Svarīgākais **Dieva** mērķis — **Viņa** darbs un Viņa godība — ir palīdzēt katram no **mums** būt spējīgiem baudīt visas Viņa svētības. Lai īstenotu **Savu** mērķi, **Viņš** ir nācis klajā ar nevainojamu ieceri. Pirms nācām uz šo zemi, mēs guvām izpratni par Viņa ieceri un pieņēmām to. Svētajos Rakstos Dieva iecere tiek saukta par **žēlastības** ieceri, **laimes** ieceri, pestīšanas ieceri vai glābšanas ieceri.

B. Error Correction

1. mūsu ("Genitive Case," "Pronouns") **2.** nāves ("Genitive Case") **3.** sev, to ("Pronouns") **4.** tam, viņus ("Pronouns") **5.** paša ("Genitive Case," "Pronouns") **6.** ķermeņa, gara ("Genitive Case") **7.** šajos ("Pronouns") **8.** Dieva ("Genitive Case") **9.** miesas ("Genitive Case") **10.** desmitās tiesas ("Genitive Case") **11.** pašu ("Pronouns") **12.** mans ("Pronouns," "Genitive Case") **13.** viņa, piemēra ("Pronouns," "Genitive Case") **14.** Katrs ("Pronouns") **15.** laika ("Genitive Case") **16.** ūdens ("Genitive Case") **17.** pati ("Pronouns") **18.** Katra mēneša, gavēņa ("Genitive Case") **19.** sevi, citiem ("Pronouns") **20.** mūsu ("Genitive Case")

C. Translation

1. Tā, viņas **2.** Dieva **3.** Viņam **4.** Šī, mana **5.** Katram, kuru, pašam **6.** visu, ko, citiem **7.** mums, Viņa **8.** miesas **9.** mūs, Viņa **10.** darbu, pati **11.** Pravieša, Dieva **12.** Mūsu, zemes **13.** Šīs, man **14.** mēs, kurus **15.** citus, viņiem **16.** Mums, evaņģēlija **17.** savus, kristību **18.** mēs, sava Glābēja **19.** Mēs, Svētā, kristīšanās **20.** Tie, kas/kuri, garu

E. Scripture Activity

1. nefijiešu **2.** savas **3.** savas **4.** savas **5.** savus **6.** viņi **7.** tos **8.** savu **9.** ienaidnieku **10.** rokām **11.** viņi **12.** savas **13.** savas **14.** savu **15.** viņi **16.** savām

11 Adjectives

A. Declining Adjectives

Word	Case	Masculine		Feminine	
		Sg	Pl	Sg	Pl
1. labs	**nom**	labs	labi	laba	labas
	acc	labu	labus	labu	labas
	gen	laba	labu	labas	labu
	dat	labam	labiem	labai	labām
	loc	labā	labos	labā	labās
2. laimīgs	**nom**	laimīgs	laimīgi	laimīga	laimīgas
	acc	laimīgu	laimīgus	laimīgu	laimīgas
	gen	laimīga	laimīgu	laimīgas	laimīgu
	dat	laimīgam	laimīgiem	laimīgai	laimīgām
	loc	laimīgā	laimīgos	laimīgā	laimīgās
3. jautrs	**nom**	jautrs	jautri	jautra	jautras
	acc	jautru	jautrus	jautru	jautras
	gen	jautra	jautru	jautras	jautru
	dat	jautram	jautriem	jautrai	jautrām
	loc	jautrā	jautros	jautrā	jautrās
4. pazemīgs	**nom**	pazemīgs	pazemīgi	pazemīga	pazemīgas
	acc	pazemīgu	pazemīgus	pazemīgu	pazemīgas
	gen	pazemīga	pazemīgu	pazemīgas	pazemīgu
	dat	pazemīgam	pazemīgiem	pazemīgai	pazemīgām
	loc	pazemīgā	pazemīgos	pazemīgā	pazemīgās
5. brīnišķīgs	**nom**	brīnišķīgs	brīnišķīgi	brīnišķīga	brīnišķīgas
	acc	brīnišķīgu	brīnišķīgus	brīnišķīgu	brīnišķīgas
	gen	brīnišķīga	brīnišķīgu	brīnišķīgas	brīnišķīgu
	dat	brīnišķīgam	brīnišķīgiem	brīnišķīgai	brīnišķīgām
	loc	brīnišķīgā	brīnišķīgos	brīnišķīgā	brīnišķīgās
6. lielisks	**nom**	lielisks	lieliski	lieliska	lieliskas
	acc	lielisku	lieliskus	lielisku	lieliskas
	gen	lieliska	lielisku	lieliskas	lielisku
	dat	lieliskam	lieliskiem	lieliskai	lieliskām
	loc	lieliskā	lieliskos	lieliskā	lieliskās

7. skaists	**nom** **acc** **gen** **dat** **loc**	skaists skaistu skaista skaistam skaistā	skaisti skaistus skaistu skaistiem skaistos	skaista skaistu skaistas skaistai skaistā	skaistas skaistas skaistu skaistās
8. vienkāršs	**nom** **acc** **gen** **dat** **loc**	vienkāršs vienkāršu vienkārša vienkāršam vienkāršā	vienkārši vienkāršus vienkāršu vienkāršiem vienkāršos	vienkārša vienkāršu vienkāršas vienkāršai vienkāršā	vienkāršas vienkāršas vienkāršu vienkāršām vienkāršās
9. svētais	**nom** **acc** **gen** **dat** **loc**	svētais svēto svētā svētajam svētajā	svētie svētos svēto svētajiem svētajos	svētā svēto svētās svētajai svētajā	svētās svētās svēto svētajām svētajās
10. pēdējais	**nom** **acc** **gen** **dat** **loc**	pirmais pirmo pirmā pirmajam pirmajā	pirmie pirmos pirmo pirmajiem pirmajos	pirmā pirmo pirmās pirmajai pirmajā	pirmās pirmās pirmo pirmajām pirmajās

B. Translation

1. Es liecinu, ka Bībele ir **svēta** grāmata. **2.** Mes ticam, ka šī ir **vienīgā patiesā** baznīca uz zemes. **3.** Mans pārinieks ir **pazemīgs** un **uzcītīgs** misionārs. **4.** Es jūtu **Svēto** Garu caur tādu **labu** un **siltu** sajūtu. **5.** Dievs tev dos **Svēto** Garo pēc tavas kristīšanās. **6. Lielajai** Atkrišanai sekoja **garīgā** tumsība. **7. Senie** pravieši mācīja cilvēkus būt **laipniem** vienam pret otru. **8.** Tu atradīsi šīs **mūžīgās** patiesības Svētajos Rakstos. **9.** Es zinu, ka Prezidentam Monsonam ir **spēcīga** liecība. **10. Atšķirīgās** kultūrās ir **atšķirīgi** uzskati par to, kas ir grēks.

C. Indefinite vs. Definite

1. Dzīvais Kristus. (Definite) **2.** Es esmu pateicīgs(a) par dzīvo pravieti. (Definite) **3.** Šī ir mana skaistā māja. (Definite) **4.** Kāpēc Jūs esat tik laimīgs(a)? (Indefinite) **5.** Viņš ir laipns cilvēks. (Indefinite) **6.** Viņi(as) ir labākie(ās) baznīcas locekļi(les) pasaulē. (Definite) **7.** Es redzēju garu sievieti. (Indefinite) **8.** Mūžīgā dzīve ir lielākā dāvana no Dieva. (Definite, Definite)

D. Common Errors

1. priecīgi **2.** Vecās **3.** Personīgās **4.** visus cilvēkus **5.** ātra **6.** pirmais **7.** garšīgus **8.** labās **9.** rudzu **10.** pēdējā

E. Error Correction

1. Man**a** māte ir laipn**a**. **2.** Priecīg**us** Ziemassvētk**us**! **3.** Mums ir jābūt paklausīg**iem** misionār**iem**. **4.** Nefijam bija stipr**a** ticība. **5.** Mans mīļākais Svēt**o** Rakst**u** pants ir . . . **6.** Mēs dzīvojam pēdēj**ās** dienās. **7.** Viņi dzīvē ir laimīg**i**. **8.** Mēs palīdzējām trokšņaina**jai** sievietei. **9.** Viņa redzēja **garu** vīrieti. **10.** Viņiem ir lab**a** izpratne par Dieva ieceri.

12 Comparatives and Superlatives

A. Fill In the Blank

1. pa nakti **2.** Kurpes **3.** Liepājā **4.** Annai **5.** ar saviem brāļiem **6.** manai māsai **7.** Dieva vārds **8.** Svētie Raksti **9.** evaņģēlijs **10.** ar mani

B. Practice

1. skaistākas dziesmas *more beautiful songs*, skaistākās dziesmas *the most beautiful songs*, visskaistākās dziesmas *the most beautiful songs of all*, pats skaistākās dziesmas *the very most beautiful songs* **2.** godīgāks pārbaudījums *fairer test*, godīgākais pārbaudījums *the fairest test*, visgodīgākais pārbaudījums *the fairest test of all,* pats godīgākais pāŗbaudījums *the very most fair test* **3.** ērtāki krēsli *more comfortable chairs*, ērtākie krēsli *the most comfortable chairs*, visērtākie krēsli *the most comfortable chairs of all*, pats ērtākie krēsli *the very most comfortable chairs* **4.** pieejamāka iespēja *more available opportunity*, pieejamākā iespēja *the most available opportunity*, vispieejamākā iespēja *the most available opportunity*, pats pieejamākā iespēja *the very most available opportunity* **5.** zilāks ezers *bluer lake*, zilākais ezers *the bluest lake*, viszilākais ezers *the bluest lake of all*, pats zilākais ezers t*he very bluest lake* **6.** maigāka balss *softer voice*, maigākā balss *the softest voice*, vismaigākā balss *the softest voice of all*, pats maigākā balss *the very softest voice*

C. Adjective or Adverb

1. adverb - Es sajūtu Svēto Garu **stiprāk**, kad es lūdzu. **2.** adverb - Es varu dziedāt **skaļāk** nekā viss koris kopā. **3.** adjective - Mēs esam **laimīgāki**, kad mums ir Evaņģēlijs. **4.** adverb - Viņš **pateicīgāk** izrādīja mīlestību pret savu ģimeni. **5.** adjective - Es esmu **ātrāks(a)** nekā tu. **6.** adjective - Gars ir **stiprāks**, kad es lūdzu. **7.** adjective - Es esmu **skaļāks(a)** nekā viss koris kopā. **8.** adverb - Mēs dzīvojam **laimīgāk**, kad mums ir Evaņģēlijs. **9.** adjective - Viņš ir **pateicīgāks** par savu ģimeni. **10.** adverb - Es skrienu **ātrāk** nekā tu.

D. "More" Examples

1. Vai tu jūties mierīgāks(a) par savu lēmumu kristīties? **2.** Ir svarīgāk būt laipnam(ai), nekā būt tam(i), kuram(i) ir taisnība. **3.** Vai jūs vēlētos vairāk informācijas par to, kam mēs ticam? **4.** Viņa bija priecīgāka doties uz templi pēc mūsu stundiņas. **5.** Caur grēku nožēlošanu, mūsu domas kļūst līdzīgākas Kristus domām. **6.** Tagad es esmu vairāk apjucis(kusi) nekā iepriekš. **7.** Es vienmēr vēlos, lai dienā būtu vairāk stundu. **8.** Mēs studēsim Svētos Rakstus cītīgāk. **9.** Stundiņām nevajadzētu būt ilgāk kā 45 minūtes. **10.** Dacei nav nepieciešams grūtāks darbs./Dacei nevajag grūtāku darbu.

E. Translate

1. Pravieša svarīgākais pienākums ir liecināt par Jēzu Kristu. **2.** Kristus mācība iekļauj pašus svarīgākos evaņģēlija principus. **3.** Vissvarīgākais, ko Jēzus Kristus darīja, bija tas, ka Viņš paveica Grēku Izpirkšanu. **4.** Vecākiem jābūt labākajiem piemēriem saviem bērniem. **5.** Lūdzot tu vari dalīties savās dziļākajās sajūtās ar Dievu. **6.** Vislabākais veids, kā mācīt, ir ar Svēto Garu. **7.** Pestīšana ir vislielākā Dieva dāvana. **8.** Svētdiena ir mana mīļākā nedēļas diena. **9.** Ģimene ir pati svarīgākā vienība tagad un mūžībā. **10.** Kas ir Jūsu mīļākais Bībeles stāsts?

F. Common Errors

1. labākais **2.** nekā **3.** vislabākais **4.** kā **5.** vissportiskākais **6.** vislielāko

G. Error Correction

1. Jēzus Kristus ir mūsu **vecākais** brālis. **2.** Viņa ir **pats jaukākais** cilvēks pasaulē. **3.** no error. **4.** Mans(a) pārinieks(ce) ir garīgāks(a) **nekā** es. **5.** Es neesmu garāks(a) **kā** viņš. **6.** Usains Bolts ir **visātrākais** skrējējs **pasaulē**.

13 *Kas, Kurš, Kāds*

A. Fill In the Blank

1. kam **2.** tam, ko **3**. kas **4.** kas **5.** tas, kas **6.** kas **7.** tas, ko **8.** to, ko **9.** ko **10.** tas, par ko

B. Translation

1. Baptism must be performed by one with the right priesthood authority. **2.** What we do on the Sabbath shows our commitment to follow God. **3.** Ask for advice from your mission president, who will give guidance. **4.** Our eternal progression is dependent on how we use our agency. **5.** Home is the best place to teach and learn gospel principles. **6.** Determine how the person you are teaching understands the prophet's role. **7.** By being baptized you agree to do what God asks of you. **8.** We rely on faith, not on what we can see. **9.** What do you think Christ's role is, taking into consideration what we have taught? **10.** What is your apartment like?

D. Asking Questions

1. ko Ar Daci. Viņas ir labas dradzenes. *With Dace. They are good friends.* **2. Kurš/Kas** Brālis Balodis šodien mācīs svētdienas skolu. *Brother Balodis will teach Sunday School today.* **3. Kas** Man patika dziedāt dziesmas. *I liked to sing the songs.* **4. kuru** Uz pazemību, lai es varētu pakļaut savu gribu Viņa gribai. *On humility, so I can submit my will to His.* **5. Kurš/Kas** Man liekas, ka tavu somu paņēma tavs pārinieks. *I think that your companion took your bag.* **6. Kurš** Mans mīļākais pants ir 1. Nefija 3. nodaļas septītais pants. *My favorite scripture is 1 Nephi chapter 3 verse 7.* **7. Kurš/kura** Mēs visi gribētu dzīvot kopā ar Dievu. *All of us would like to live together with God.* **8. Kuri** Mums pieteicās palīdzēt gandrīz visi baznīcas locekļi! *Almost all members said they can help us!* **9. Ko** Šos cimdiņus, viņi ir smuki. *These mittens, they are cute.* **10. Kas** Prezidents Monsons. *President Monson.*

F. Common Errors

1. kurš **2.** kas/kuri **3.** kura **4.** kas/kuri **5.** kādas **6.** kuriem **7.** kāds, kam/kuram **8.** Kāda **9.** kuras/kas **10.** kam

G. Error Correction

1. Cienīgi baznīcas **locekļi**, **kuriem** ir rekomendācija, var ieiet templī. **2.** Pravieši ir Dieva aicināti vīri, **kuriem** Kristus piešķīris priesterību. **3.** Mēs dalāmies evaņģēlijā ar **tiem**, kuri to vēl nav pieņēmuši. **4.** Pirmdienas vakars ir laiks, **kurš** ir ģimenēm, lai to pavadītu kopā. **5.** Kristoties mēs apsolām **palīdzēt tiem, kam** tas nepieciešams. **6.** no error **7.** Es gribu kļūt **tāds**, **kāds** ir Kristus. **8.** Kurš padalīsies **tajā**, ko **viņš** ir iemācījies? **9.** no error **10.** Tas, **kam** mēs ticam, ir rakstīts Svētajos Rakstos.

14 Reflexive Verbs

A. Reflexive Verb Conjugation

1. Past (stem = griez) **-** es atgriezos, tu atgriezies, mēs atgriezāmies, jūs atgriezāties, (viņi) atgriezās **Present** (stem = griež) **-** es atgriežos, tu atgriezies, mēs atgriežamies, jūs atgriežaties, (viņi) atgriežas **Future** (stem = griezī) **-** es atgriezīšos, tu atgriezīsies, mēs atgriezīsimies, jūs atgriezīsieties, (viņi) atgriezīsies **2. Past** (stem = cent) **-** es centos, tu centies, mēs centāmies, jūs centāties, (viņi) centās **Present** (stem = cenš) **-** es cenšos, tu centies, mēs cenšamies, jūs cenšaties, (viņi) cenšas **Future** (stem = centī) **-** es centīšos, tu centīsies, mēs centīsimies, jūs centīsieties, (viņi) centīsies **3. Past** (stem = priecā) **-** es priecājos, tu priecājies, mēs priecājāmies, jūs priecājāties, (viņi) priecājās **Present** (stem = priecā) **-** es priecājos, tu priecājies, mēs priecājamies, jūs priecājaties, (viņi) priecājas **Future** (stem = priecā) **-** es priecāšos, tu priecāsies, mēs priecāsimies, jūs priecāsieties, (viņi) priecāsies **4. Past** (stem = cerē) **-** es atcerējos, tu atcerējies, mēs, atcerējāmies, jūs atcerējāties, (viņi) atcerējās **Present** (stem = cer) **-** es atceros, tu atceries, mēs atceramies, jūs atceraties, (viņi) atceras **Future** (stem = cerē) **-** es atcerēšos, tu atcerēsies, mēs atcerēsimies, jūs atcerēsieties, (viņi) atcerēsies **5. Past** (stem = staigā) **-** es pastaigājos, tu pastaigājies, mēs pastaigājāmies, jūs pastaigājāties, (viņi) pastaigājās **Present** (stem = staigā) **-** es pastaigājos, tu pastaigājies, mēs pastaigājamies, jūs pastaigājaties, (viņi) pastaigājas **Future** (stem = staigā) **-** es pastaigāšos, tu pastaigāsies, mēs pastaigāsimies, jūs pastaigāsieties, (viņi) pastaigāsies **6. Past** (stem = rīko) **-** es rīkojos, tu rīkojies, mēs rīkojāmies, jūs rīkojāties, (viņi) rīkojās **Present** (stem = rīko) **-** es rīkojos, tu rīkojies, mēs rīkojamies, jūs rīkojaties, (viņi) rīkojas **Future** (stem = rīko) **-** es rīkošos, tu rīkosies, mēs rīkosimies, jūs rīkosieties, (viņi) rīkosies **7. Past** (stem = met) **-** es apmetos, tu apmeties, mēs apmetāmies, jūs apmetāties, (viņi) apmetās **Present** (stem = met) **-** es apmetos, tu apmeties, mēs apmetamies, jūs apmetaties, (viņi) apmetas **Future** (stem = metī) **-** es apmetīšos, tu apmetīsies, mēs apmetīsimies, jūs apmetīsieties, (viņi) apmetīsies **8. Past** (stem = dev) **-** es devos, tu devies, mēs devāmies, jūs devāties, (viņi) devās **Present** (stem = dod) **-** es dodos, tu dodies, mēs dodamies, jūs dodaties, (viņi) dodas **Future** (stem = do) **-** es došos, tu dosies, mēs dosimies, jūs dosieties, (viņi) dosies **9. Past** (stem = mācīj) **-** es mācījos, tu mācījies, mēs mācījāmies, jūs mācījāties, (viņi) mācījās **Present** (stem = māc) **-** es mācos, tu mācies, mēs mācāmies, jūs mācāties, (viņi) mācās **Future** (stem = mācī) **-** es mācīšos, tu mācīsies, mēs mācīsimies, jūs mācīsieties, (viņi) mācīsies **10. Past** (stem = pūt) **-** es atpūtos, tu atpūties, mēs atpūtāmies, jūs atpūtāties, (viņi) atpūtās **Present** (stem = pūš) **-** es atpūšos, tu atpūties, mēs atpūšamies, jūs atpūšaties, (viņi) atpūšas **Future** (stem = pūtī) **-** es atpūtīšos, tu atpūtīsies, mēs atpūtīsimies, jūs atpūtīsieties, (viņi) atpūtīsies

B. Reflexive Verbs in a Sentence

1. sazinos *I get in touch with my family every week.* **2.** rīkosieties *If you (formal) act, you (formal) will know that this is the truth.* **3.** atcerējās *Yesterday she remembered to read her scriptures.* **4.** attiecas *The story of Nephi applies also to my life.* **5.** draudzējās *Church members were friends with that family.* **6.** izvēlaties *Do you choose to follow Jesus Christ?* **7.** vēlaties *Do you (formal) wish to change?* **8.** paļausieties *If you (pl.) will rely on God, He will show you (pl.) what to do.*

C. Regular or Reflexive

1. sajūt **2.** jāsteidzas **3.** iemācījos **4.** sākt **5.** satikos, runājāmies **6.** uzlabošu **7.** atrisinājās **8.** runājām **9.** iepazīt **10.** uzlabo

D. Translation

1. Vai tu šovakar nometīsies ceļos un lūgsi? **2.** Šī dzīve ir laiks sagatavoties satikt Dievu. **3.** Es pat nevaru iedomāties, cik tas būtu grūti. **4.** Viņa uztraucas par savu ģimeni. **5.** Viņu ģimene kopā mācījās par evaņģēlija atjaunošanu. **6.** Debesu Tēvs un Jēzus Kristus parādījās Džozefam Smitam. **7.** Mēs apsolām vienmēr atcerēties Kristu. **8.** Viņš ieklausījās Svētajā Garā un tika Gara pamudināts. **9.** Dzīvošana pēc baušļiem mūs sagatavos atgriezties pie Dieva. **10.** Es jūtos tik svētīts(a), ka es varu būt misionārs(e)!

E. Common Errors

1. satiksimies **2.** dalāmies **3.** Jūs **4.** tuvosieties **5.** Rīkojies **6.** mācīs **7.** pārliecināts **8.** mācīšos **9.** pilnveidoties **10.** centīšos

F. Error Correction

1. Es **esmu uztraucies** sniegt runu baznīcā. **2.** Mēs piektdien **sazvanīsimies**. **3.** Pēc šīs dzīves jūs **dosieties uz** garu pasauli. **4.** Ko tu **vēlies**? **5.** Mums vajag **gatavoties** Svēt**ā** Vakarēdien**a** sapulc**ei.** **6.** Mēs **skatīsimies** filmu par Atjaunošanu. **7.** no error **8.** no error **9.** Viņš man**ī neklausās**. **10.** Viņi **cenšas** atrast jaunu baznīcu, ko apmeklēt.

J. Making Verbs Reflexive

1. Manas valodas prasmes **uzlabojās**. *My language skills improved.* **2.** Vācijā **ceļas** jauns templis. *A new temple is being built in Germany.* **3.** Elderu plāni **mainījās**. *The elder's plans changed.* **4.** Stundiņa **turpinājās**. *The lesson continued.* **5.** Elderi **savāksies** kopā uz sapulci. *The elders will gather together for a meeting.* **6**. Kaķis **paslēpās**. *The cat hid.*

K. *Preach My Gospel* Activity—verbs are underlined, **reflexive verbs** are bolded and underlined

"Pirmais evaņģēlija princips ir ticība Tam Kungam Jēzum Kristum. Ticība Kristum ietver nešaubīgu pārliecību, ka Viņš ir vienpiedzimušais Dieva Dēls un pasaules Glābējs un Pestītājs. Mēs atzīstam, ka varam **atgriezties** un dzīvot ar mūsu Debesu Tēvu, vienīgi **paļaujoties** uz Viņa Dēla labvēlību un žēlastību. Ja mēs ticam Kristum, mēs pieņemam un pielietojam Viņa veikto Grēku Izpirkšanu un Viņa mācības. Mēs **uzticamies** Viņam un tam, ko Viņš saka. Mēs zinām, ka Viņš spēj turēt Savus solījumus. Debesu Tēvs svētī tos, kuri ticot paklausa Viņa Dēlam.Ticība Kristum vedina **rīkoties**. Tā vedina uz patiesu un pastāvīgu grēku nožēlošanu. Ticība liek mums **mācīties** par mūsu Glābēju un no visas sirds **censties** kļūt līdzīgākiem Viņam. Mēs **vēlamies** uzzināt Viņa baušļus un paklausīt tiem. Kaut arī mēs tik un tā turpinām pieļaut kļūdas, mēs izrādām savu mīlestību pret Viņu, **cenšoties** pildīt Viņa baušļus un **vairoties** no grēka."

Review: Describing Objects and People

A. Error Correction

Ģimenes attiecības var kļūt par **vislielākās** laimes avotu šeit, uz zemes. Sātans uzbrūk ģimenēm no **visdažādākajām** pozīcijām, un **pārāk** daudz ģimeņu **šo** pūliņu rezultātā izirst. Vēstījums par atjaunoto Jēzus Kristus evaņģēliju dāvā ģimenēm iespēju būt **vienotām** gan tagad, gan mūžībā. Dzīvojot pēc evaņģēlija principiem, ģimenes locekļi var **baudīt mierpilnu** un **priekpilnu** dzīvi, **apzināties savu** identitāti un rast piederības izjūtu. **Centies** atrast un mācīt ģimenes — tēvu, māti un bērnus —, **kuri** var atbalstīt cits citu, dzīvojot pēc evaņģēlija, lai beigu beigās tiktu saistīti ar atjaunotās priesterības pilnvarām, kļūstot par **mūžīgo** ģimeni.

B. Error Correction

1. ko ("*Kas, Kurš, Kāds*") **2.** Vissvarīgākā ("Comparitives and Superlatives") **3.** gatavojās doties ("Reflexive Verbs") **4.** nešaubīgu ("Adjectives") **5.** spožāka ("Comparitives and Superlatives") **6.** Lielās, priesterības ("Adjectives") **7.** svētu ("Adjectives") **8.** kas ("*Kas, Kurš, Kāds*") **9.** visas, mācīties ("Adjectives," "Reflexive Verbs") **10.** zemākajā ("Comparitives and Superlatives") **11.** ko ("*Kas, Kurš, Kāds*") **12.** jāsagatavojas ("Reflexive Verbs") **13.** pasaulīgām ("Adjectives") **14.** īstas ("Adjectives") **15.** kas ("*Kas, Kurš, Kāds*") **16.** piedalīties ("Reflexive Verbs") **17.** ko ("*Kas, Kurš, Kāds*") **18.** Apspriedieties ("Reflexive Verbs") **19.** vismazāko ("Comparitives and Superlatives") **20.** dziļākās ("Comparitives and Superlatives")

C. Translation

1. Tas, ko **2.** mesties ceļos **3.** ko **4.** kas **5.** vislielākos **6.** iegrimsti **7.** svarīgākos **8.** tiem, kam **9.** savu mazo **10.** vislietderīgāk **11.** Pats labākais ir **12.** uzņemties **13.** turpmākajām **14.** Mana, laimīga, laipna **15.** nepieciešama **16.** Vingrinieties **17.** lepojas **18.** tajā, ko **19.** seši, bagāta **20.** apmierināts

15 Dative Case

A. Dative Declension — Answers are given as singular, plural.

1. māsai, māsām **2.** derībai, derībām **3.** jakai, jakām **4.** zobenam, zobeniem **5.** rokai, rokām **6.** grāmatai, grāmatām **7.** dēlam, dēliem **8.** garam, gariem **9.** Dievam, dieviem **10.** brālim, brāļiem **11.** sanāksmei, sanāksmēm **12.** sirdij, sirdīm **13.** zivij, zivīm **14.** ziedam, ziediem **15.** putnam, putniem **16.** ledum, lediem **17.** zemei, zemēm **18.** evaņģēlijam **19.** apustulim, apustuļiem **20.** ģimenei, ģimenēm

B. Fill In the Blank

1. viņām **2.** mums **3.** jums **4.** Man **5.** Viņai **6.** mums **7.** tev **8.** Viņam **9.** viņam **10.** viņiem, viņiem

C. Dative Verbs

1. saviem dēliem **2.** Kalniņu ģimenei **3.** Dievam, Tēvam, Dēlam, Kristum, Garam **4.** mums **5.** viņai **6.** Man **7.** piemēram **8.** Tam Kungam **9.** viņam **10.** man

D. Direct vs. Indirect Object

1. kafiju—direct obj. **2.** mums—indirect obj.; padomu—direct obj. **3.** vēstuli—direct obj. **4.** Ilonas tantei—indirect obj.; lapas—direct obj. **5.** Džozefam—indirect obj.; norādījumus—direct obj.; baznīcu—direct obj. **6.** man—indirect obj. **7.** tev—indirect obj.; dāvanu—direct obj. **8.** klavieres—direct obj. **9.** tev—indirect obj. **10.** sniegam—indirect obj.

E. Preposition Practice

1. par, to, baznīcas locekļiem **2. pāri**, tuksnesim, **uz**, apsolīto zemi **3. ar**, augļiem **4. uz**, mums **5. blakus**, baznīcai, **pāri**, ielai **6. cauri**, bēdām un grūtībām **7.** mums, **līdzi 8. no**, ziemeļiem, **uz**, dienvidiem **9.** Mums, **garām 10. ar**, savām rokām

F. Translation

1. Vai tu man palīdzēsi? **2.** Es sāku gatavoties savai misijai, kad man bija astoņi gadi. **3.** Vai Jūs ticat spokiem? **4.** Dievs dod priesterības nesējiem spēku rīkoties Viņa vārdā. **5.** Dievs mums dod baušļus, lai mēs varētu būt laimīgi. **6.** Dievs mums ļauj izvēlēties. **7.** Viņš man teica, ka viņš ir slims. **8.** Uzrakstīsim Lindai dzimšanas dienā kartiņu! **9.** Vai jūs viņam esat mācījuši(as) visas stundiņas? **10.** Man tev ir dāvana.

G. Common Errors

1. Kam **2.** tev **3.** jums **4.** misionāram **5.** locekļiem **6.** Mārtiņam **7.** Svētajiem Rakstiem **8.** pacietīgiem(ām) **9.** viņai **10.** vieniem

H. Error Correction

1. Viņam sāp galva. **2.** Ko tu mācījies no **tā**? **3.** Dievs visu atklāj saviem **praviešiem**. **4.** Vai Jūs esat kalpojis **misijā**? **5.**Tu vari lūgt **Dievam pēc palīdzības**. **6.** Es **tev** došu iespēju liecināt par **savām kristībām**. **7.** Mēs sekojam Jēzus Kristus **mācībām**. **8. Kam** tu tici? **9.** Man patīk papļāpāt ar **draugiem**. **10. Man** bija jāskrien **uz** autobusu.

J. Companion Practice Activity

1. Dievam **2.** sirdij **3.** māsai **4.** brālim **5.** zemenei **6.** lapām **7.** kuģim **8.** ķiplokam **9.** rudenim **10.** paklausībai **11.** riekstiem **12.** zariem **13.** mieram **14.** upei **15.** tējai **16.** zālēm **17.** mērķiem **18.** pazemībai

16 Dative Construction

A. Declination

1. Man 2. Viņam 3. Mums 4. tev 5. Inesei 6. jums 7. Ivaram 8. Man 9. Līgai 10. Mums

B. Translation

1. Man garšo pica. **2.** Vai Dievam priekš mums ir plāns? **3.** Mums nav laika. **4.** Manai mammai ir pieci bērni. **5.** Viņa brālim patika mūsu stundiņa. **6.** Tev būs daudz prieka dzīvē, ja dzīvosi pēc evaņģēlija. **7.** Viņiem patīk mācīties par Jēzu Kristu. **8.** Mums vajag lūgt katru dienu. **9.** Viņai ir stipra liecība par Gudrības Vārdu. **10.** Vai tev ir mīļākais Svēto Rakstu pants?

D. Possession

1. Tā ir mana grāmata. Man ir tā grāmata. **2.** Man bija liela problēma, ko atrisināt. Tā ir tava problēma. **3.** Manas atbildes ne vienmēr ir pareizas. Man nav visu atbilžu. **4.** Viņas divi bērni ir ļoti jauki. Viņai drīz būs divi bērni. **5.** Tas nav tavs suns. Tev nav suņa. **6.** Man ir vēstule no tēta. Tēta vēstule ir uz galda. **7.** Viņam ir brīnišķīga māte. Viņa māte ir brīnišķīga. **8.** Man nebūs laika. Mans laiks ir dārgs.

E. Need

1. Do you need a car? **2.** She does not need a pencil, because she has a pen. **3.** Mums vajadzēs vairāk Mormona Grāmatu. **4.** Do we need to buy groceries? **5.** Nē, paldies, man nevajag Jūsu lietussargu. **6.** Jesus needed to experience all difficulties so that He could help us. **7.** Tev vajag spēku, kas nāk caur Izpirkšanu. **8.** Mums ar pārinieku vajag vienam otru redzēt un dzirdēt. **9.** You did not need light to walk home. **10.** I will always need a chance to receive forgiveness. **11.** Janis's son needs to find out about the plan of salvation. **12.** Pēterim vajadzēja būt pazemīgam, lai viņš varētu saņemt atbildi uz savu lūgšanu.

F. Common Errors

1. Man ir **2.** Grāmatas **3.** tev **4.** vajadzēja **5.** jums iet **6.** Viņiem **7.** Man ir **8.** ēdienu**. 9.** liekas **10.** Jums patīk

G. Error Correction

1. Man **nav** nekādu jautājumu. **2.** Tev ir **grāmata**. **3.** Vai **kādam** patika **stundiņa**? **4.** Mums nevajag **ūdeni**. **5. Manai jaunākajai māsai** ir septiņpadsmit gadu. **6. Ko** tev vēl vajag šodien izdarīt? **7. Prezidentam Monsonam** ir daudz **stāstu**, ko stāstīt. **8. Man ir** auksti. **9. Kas** taviem brāļiem patīk? **10.** Vai es jums **patīku**?

I. Conversation

1. tev **2.** iet **3.** Man **4.** iet **5.** tev **6.** Man **7.** ir **8.** -s **9.** Elīnai **10.** vajag **11.** -u **12.** Man **13.** Man **14.** nav **15.** -a **16.** Man **17.** ir **18.** -s **19.** man **20.** vajag **21.** Viņam **22.** ir **23.** -s **24.** viņam **25.** vajadzēs **26.** ko **27.** Viņam **28.** patīk **29.** citiem **30.** viņam **31.** ir **32.** -a **33.** viņam **34.** nav **35.** -as **36.** manai **37.** mammai **38.** ir **39.** Elīnai **40.** būs **41.** -s **42.** Viņai **43.** pietrūkst **44.** -as **45.** -es **46.** Man **47.** liekas/šķiet **48.** Manam **49.** brālim **50.** būs **51.** Man **52.** vajag **53.** man **54.** liekas/šķiet **55.** Elīnai **56.** ir **57.** -s **58.** viņai **59.** ir **60.** Viņam **61.** patiks **62.** tas **63.** viņam **64.** ir **65.** -s **66.** viņam **67.** patīk **68.** -a **69.** Kuram **70.** gan **71.** viņa **72.** Viņai **73.** ir **74.** -a **75.** -s **76.** Tev **77.** ir **78.** -a

17 Debitive Mood

A. Practice Conjugation

1. jāmīl **2.** jāstrādā **3.** jāredz **4.** jādomā **5**. jāpalīdz **6.** jādod **7.** jāatbild **8.** jāliecina **9.** jādara **10.** jāsaņem **11.** jāmāca **12.** jālūdz **13.** jālasa **14.** jāapsola **15.** jārunā **16.** jāvar

B. Have, Have, Have

1. necessity—Man (ir) jāiet. **2.** perfect tense—Viņi jau iepriekš ir bijuši baznīcā. **3.** perfect tense—Kristus ir sarāvis nāves saites. **4.** possession—Mūsu klausītājiem ir stipras liecības. **5.** necessity—Mums (ir) jāapmeklē baznīca katru svētdienu. **6.** possession—Tev ir spēja pašam izvēlēties. **7.** perfect tense—Mēs esam dalījušies tajā, ko mēs zinām, ka tas ir patiess. **8.** possession (in perfect tense)—Viņiem ir bijusi iespēja braukt uz templi. **9.** necessity, possession—Man ir nepieciešams miers savā dzīvē. **10.** necessity—Misionāriem (ir) jābūt paklausīgiem.

C. Translations

1. Mums par šo būs jālūdz. **2.** Sabatā mums (ir) jāatpūšas no saviem darbiem. **3.** Tev ir jātic Kristum./Tev ir vajadzīga ticība Kristum. **4.** Klausītājiem pirms kristīšanās (ir) patiesi jānožēlo grēki. **5.** Man bija jābūt baznīcā stundu agrāk. **6.** Jēzum bija jāizcieš par mūsu grēkiem. **7.** Jums (ir) jālūdz ticībā. **8.** Mums (ir) jābūt pateicīgiem(ām) par savām svētībām. **9.** Man (ir) jādalās savā liecībā. **10.** Viņiem būs jāsaprot.

D. Common Errors

1. jābūt **2.** baušļiem **3.** jāuzstāda **4.** ar mani **5.** vairāk **6.** jādzīvo **7.** bija **8.** laipnam **9.** mums **10.** jāvingro

E. Error Correction

1. Man ir jālasa Mormona **Grāmata**. **2.** Mums ir jāseko **Jēzum Kristum,** lai saņemtu mūžīgo dzīvi. **3.** Nefijam bija jābūt **labam piemēram** saviem brāļiem. **4.** Jums būs jāatmet **smēķēšana**. **5. Viņiem** ir **jāmācās**, kā mainīties. **6.** Mums katram pašam ir **jāzina**, kas ir patiess. **7. Viņai** ir drīz jābūt mājās. **8.** Mums ir jādara **tas,** ko māca pravietis. **9.** Tev **bija** jāizvēlas dzīvot saskaņā ar Dieva likumiem. **10.** Mums ir tagad **jānolemj**, kam mēs sekosim.

18 Imperative Mood

A. Conjugation

1. lūdz; lūdziet; lūgsim **2.** lasi; lasiet; lasīsim **3.** atceries; atcerieties; atcerēsimies **4.** izvairies; izvairieties; izvairīsimies **5.** studē; studējiet; studēsim **6.** nāc; nāciet; nāksim **7.** Esi; esiet; būsim **8.** seko; sekojiet; sekosim **9.** griezies; griezieties; griezīsimies **10.** nešaubies, nebaidies; nešaubieties, nebaidieties; nešaubīsimies, nebaidīsimies.

B. *Lai* Commands

1. iemācās **2.** lasa **3.** atceras **4.** izvairās **5.** notiek **6.** studē **7.** nāk **8.** ir **9.** seko **10.** lūdz

C. Common Errors

1. atcerieties, atcerieties **2.** Dari **3.** Esiet **4.** dara **5.** Dalīsimies **6.** Negriezies, griezies **7.** Lūdz **8.** Centieties **9.** Lasīsim **10.** Neaizmirsti

D. Error Correction

1. Mēs esam klāt, **nebaidieties**! **2. Aizejam** rītvakar pie Santas! **3. Atver** viņai durvis! **4. Ielaid viņu** iekšā! **5. Pieklauvē** pie Artura **durvīm**! **6. Izvēlies** pareizo! **7.** Lūdzu, **palīdziet** man atrast Dumbrāja ielu 24a! **8. Meklējiet** pēc iespējām kalpot un palīdziet tiem, kas ir jums apkārt! **9. Lūdziet,** un jums taps dots. **10. Mīliet** cits citu!

E. Translation Activity

1. Lai bērniņš guļ! **2.** Apstājies/Apstājieties! **3.** Nedziedāsim to dziesmu! **4.** Runā/runājiet ar visiem! **5.** Gaidīsim un redzēsim! **6.** Lai citi cilvēki paši izvēlas! **7.** Neaizmirsti/Neaizmirstiet! **8.** Pasaki/Pasakiet, lai viņš neaiziet! **9.** Raugies/Raugieties uz nākotni ar ticību Kristum! **10.** Lūdzu parādi/parādiet man, kur ir baznīca!

Review: Expressing Desire, Need, Preference, etc.

A. Error Correction

Manai pāriniecei bija daži jautājumi par to, **kas mums jāmāca,** lai palīdzētu **klausītājiem** dzīvot pēc **baušļiem**. Ceturtā stunda ietver baušļus, kas **misionāriem** ir jāmāca saviem klausītajiem. Baušļi tiek mācīti ar mērķi palīdzēt **cilvēkiem** dzīvot saskaņā ar evaņģēliju. Daži baušļi ceturtajā stundā ir: **esi** paklausīgs, bieži lūdz Dievu, **turi** sabata dienu **svētu**, **seko** pravietim un ievēro Gudrības Vārdu. Mūsu mērķis ir ne vien pasniegt visas misionāru stundas, bet arī palīdzēt citiem nākt pie Kristus caur ticību **Jēzum Kristum**, grēku nožēlošanu, kristīšanos, Svētā Gara saņemšanu un pastāvēšanu līdz **galam**. Ja cilvēki dzīvos pēc **šiem baušļiem, viņi** būs gatavi kristīties. **Ņem** vērā klausītāju vajadzības un Svētā Gara pamudinājumus, izvēloties, ko mācīt. Nepārtraukti **domā** un **lūdz** par to, kā palīdzēt saviem klausītājiem dzīvot saskaņā ar evaņģēliju!

B. Error Correction

1. Ādams un Ieva (“Debitive Mood”) **2.** jālasa, jāapdomā un jālūdz (“Debitive Mood”) **3.** Dievam (“Dative Case”) **4.** tev vajadzēs (“Dative Construction”) **5.** attīrītiem (“Debitive Mood”) **6.** nav jāmaksā (“Debitive Mood”) **7.** Sludiniet, sludiniet (“Imperative Mood”) **8.** Pāvilam (“Dative Construction”) **9.** cilvēkiem (“Dative Construction”) **10.** Priecājieties, atcerieties (“Imperative Mood”) **11.** nepatīk (“Dative Construction”) **12.** jātic (“Debitive Mood”), Glābējam (“Dative Case”) **13.** tev (“Dative Construction”) **14.** saviem vārdiem (“Dative Case”) **15.** vajag (“Dative Construction”) **16.** katrs lūdz (“Imperative Mood”) **17.** Priesterība (“Dative Construction”) **18.** Piesauc (“Imperative Mood”) **19.** palīdzi (“Imperative Mood”), Man jāiet (“Debitive Mood”) **20.** nevajadzētu (“Dative Construction”)

C. Translation

1. Aicini **2.** Klausieties **3.** Man, pietrūkst **4.** Vairāki no praviešiem **5.** jādara, misionāram **6.** Madarai patīk **7.** Taivānu **8.** Padomājiet **9.** pāriniekam **10.** tu patīc **11.** Pievērs uzmanību saistībām **12.** ir jāvirzās **13.** katram no mums **14.** jāturpina **15.** Mums vajadzēja, pārbaudītiem **16.** mums mūsu grēkus **17.** Paturi prātā **18.** bērniem, apstājies un pārrunā **19.** man būtu jāmāca **20.** visiem saviem jautājumiem

D. Imperative Mood

1. lūdz, lūdziet, lūgsim **2.** palīdzi, palīdziet, palīdzēsim **3.** lasi, lasiet, lasīsim **4.** seko, sekojiet, sekosim **5.** atceries**,** atcerieties, atcerēsimies **6.** apstājies, apstājieties, apstāsimies **7.** paklausi, paklausiet, paklausīsim **8.** tici, ticiet, ticēsim **9.** gaidi, gaidiet, gaidīsim **10.** raksti, rakstiet, rakstīsim

E. Sentence Construction

1. Mums vajadzēja kalpot citiem. Mums vajag kalpot citiem. Mums vajadzēs kalpot citiem. **2.** Jūs sekojāt pravietim. Jūs sekojat pravietim. Jūs sekosiet pravietim. Tu sekoji pravietim. Tu seko pravietim. Tu sekosi pravietim **3.** Es pateicos Dievam par svētībām. Es pateicos Dievam par svētībām. Es pateikšos Dievam par svētībām. **4.** Ilze rakstīja Jānim. Ilze raksta Jānim. Ilze rakstīs Jānim.

F. *Preach My Gospel* Activity

1. am **2.** mums **3.** iem **4.** mums **5.** am **6.** ei **7.** iem **8.** ai **9.** mums **10.** iem **11.** am

19 Verbs

A. Practice Conjugation

1. 2nd- **Past**- es mīlēju, tu mīlēji, mēs mīlējām, jūs mīlējāt, viņi (*ect.*) mīlēja **Present**- es mīlu, tu mīli, mēs mīlam, jūs mīlat, viņi (*ect.*) mīl **Future**- es mīlēšu, tu mīlēsi, mēs mīlēsim, jūs mīlēsiet, viņi (*ect.*) mīlēs **2.** 2nd- **Past**- es palīdzēju, tu palīdzēji, mēs palīdzējām, jūs palīdzējāt, viņi (*ect.*) palīdzēja **Present**- es palīdzu, tu palīdzi, mēs palīdzam, jūs palīdzat, viņi (*ect.*) palīdz **Future**- es palīdzēšu, tu palīdzēsi, mēs palīdzēsim, jūs palīdzēsiet, viņi (*ect.*) palīdzēs **3.** 1st- **Past**- es ēdu, tu ēdi, mēs ēdām, jūs ēdāt, viņi (*ect.*) ēda **Present**- es ēdu, tu ēd, mēs ēdam, jūs ēdat, viņi (*ect.*) ēd **Future**- es ēdīšu, tu ēdīsi, mēs ēdīsim, jūs ēdīsiet, viņi (*ect.*) ēdīs **4.** 3rd- **Past**- es lasīju, tu lasīji, mēs lasījām, jūs lasījāt, viņi (*ect.*) lasīja **Present**- es lasu, tu lasi, mēs lasām, jūs lasāt, viņi (*ect.*) lasa **Future**- es lasīšu, tu lasīsi, mēs lasīsim, jūs lasīsiet, viņi (*ect.*) lasīs **5.** 1st- **Past**- es strādāju, tu strādāji, mēs strādājām, jūs strādājāt, viņi (*ect.*) strādāja **Present**- es strādāju, tu strādā, mēs strādājam, jūs strādājat, viņi (*ect.*) strādā **Future**- es strādāšu, tu strādāsi, mēs strādāsim, jūs strādāsiet, viņi (*ect.*) strādās **6.** 3rd- **Past**- es atbildēju, tu atbildēji, mēs atbildējām, jūs atbildējāt, viņi (*ect.*) atbildēja **Present**- es atbildu, tu atbildi, mēs atbildam, jūs atbildat, viņi (*ect.*) atbild **Future**- es atbildēšu, tu atbildēsi, mēs atbildēsim, jūs atbildēsiet, viņi (*ect.*) atbildēs **7.** 2nd- **Past**- es redzu, tu redzēji, mēs redzējām, jūs redzējāt, viņi (*ect.*) redzēja **Present**- es redzu, tu redzi, mēs redzam, jūs redzat, viņi (*ect.*) redz **Future**- es redzēšu, tu redzēsi, mēs redzēsim, jūs redzēsiet, viņi (*ect.*) redzēs **8.** 1st- **Past**- es saņēmu, tu saņēmi, mēs saņēmām, jūs saņēmāt, viņi (*ect.*) saņēma **Present**- es saņemu, tu saņem, mēs saņemam, jūs saņemat, viņi (*ect.*) saņem **Future**- es saņemšu, tu saņemsi, mēs saņemsim, jūs saņemsiet, viņi (*ect.*) saņems **9.** 1st- **Past**- es mācīju, tu mācīji, mēs mācījām, jūs mācījāt, viņi (*ect.*) mācīja **Present**- es mācu, tu māci, mēs mācām, jūs mācāt, viņi (*ect.*) māca **Future**- es mācīšu, tu mācīsi, mēs mācīsim, jūs mācīsiet, viņi (*ect.*) mācīs **10.** 3rd- **Past**- es devu, tu devi, mēs devām, jūs devāt, viņi (*ect.*) deva **Present**- es dodu, tu dod, mēs dodam, jūs dodat, viņi (*ect.*) dod **Future**- es došu, tu dosi, mēs dosim, jūs dosiet, viņi (*ect.*) dos **11.** 3rd- **Past**- es apsolīju, tu apsolīji, mēs apsolījām, jūs apsolījāt, viņi (*ect.*) apsolīja **Present**- es apsolu, tu apsoli, mēs apsolām, jūs apsolāt, viņi (*ect.*) apsola **Future**- es apsolīšu, tu apsolīsi, mēs apsolīsim, jūs apsolīsiet, viņi (*ect.*) apsolīs **12.** 2nd- **Past**- es runāju, tu runāji, mēs runājām, jūs runājāt, viņi (*ect.*) runāja **Present**- es runāju, tu runā, mēs runājam, jūs runājat, viņi (*ect.*) runā **Future**- es runāšu, tu runāsi, mēs runāsim, jūs runāsiet, viņi (*ect.*) runās **13.** 2nd- **Past**- es varēju, tu varēji, mēs varējām, jūs varējāt, viņi (*ect.*) varēja **Present**- es varu, tu vari, mēs varam, jūs varat, viņi (*ect.*) var **Future**- es varēšu, tu varēsi, mēs varēsim, jūs varēsiet, viņi (*ect.*) varēs **14.** 2nd- **Past**- es liecināju, tu liecināji, mēs liecinājām, jūs liecinājāt, viņi (*ect.*) liecināja **Present**- es liecinu, tu liecini, mēs liecinām, jūs liecināt, viņi (*ect.*) liecina **Future**- es liecināšu, tu liecināsi, mēs liecināsim, jūs liecināsiet, viņi (*ect.*) liecinās **15.** 1st- **Past**- es lūdzu, tu lūdzi, mēs lūdzām, jūs lūdzāt, viņi (*ect.*) lūdza **Present**- es lūdzu, tu lūdz, mēs lūdzam, jūs lūdzat, viņi (*ect.*) lūdz **Future**- es lūgšu, tu lūgsi, mēs lūgsim, jūs lūgsiet, viņi (*ect.*) lūgs

B. Translation

1. Kristus izpirka mūsu grēkus. **2.** Vai tu saproti, ko mēs sakām? **3.** Grēku Izpirkšana ļauj mums pārvarēt grēkus un vājības. **4.** Jūs apsolīsiet vienmēr atcerēties Kristu. **5.** Mormona Grāmata liecina, ka Jēzus ir Kristus. **6.** Svētais Gars man palīdzēja, kad es aizmirsu, kā pateikt to vārdu. **7.** Viņi(as) māk adīt. **8.** Es pazīstu Helvi. **9.** Pēc kristīšanās tu saņemsi Svētā Gara dāvanu. **10.** Jūsu liecība mani ļoti aizkustināja.

C. Common Errors

1. runājām **2.** lūdzu **3.** dzīvo **4.** apmeklējat **5.** kalpojam **6.** teica **7.** gāja **8.** iemācījāties **9.** bijām **10.** iedevi

D. Error Correction

1. Es to pierakstīšu, citādi es to **aizmirsīšu**. **2.** Viņš **lūdza**, lai uzzinātu patiesību. **3.** Kristus **ir** mūsu brālis. **4. Viņiem patīk**, kad spīd saule. **5.** Kristus **dziedināja** tos, kam bija ticība Viņam. **6.** Mēs **runājam** ar Svētā Gara spēku. **7.** Vai tu **nožēlosi** savus grēkus? **8.** Vakar mēs **braucām** uz Liepāju. (iet—to go by foot; also past tense) **9.** Šis pants **attiecas** uz visiem. **10.** Mūsu vēstījums **atnesīs** mieru un gaismu jūsu dzīvēs.

E. Conjugation Practice

1. Kristus **saprot**, kā jūs **jūtaties**. **2.** Vai jūs **ticat** Dievam? **3.** Es **mīlu** savu ģimeni. **4.** Dievs **atbild** uz maniem jautājumiem caur Svēto Garu. **5.** Kā jūs **rodat** mieru savā dzīvē? **6.** Viņš vakar **atgriezās** mājās. **7.** Dievs mūs **svētī** saskaņā ar mūsu paklausību. **8.** Pravieši mums **māca** Dieva gribu. **9. Ejam** rīt agrāk uz baznīcu! **10.** Svētais Gars **apstiprina** patiesību.

20 Verb Prefixes and Synonyms

A. "To Ask"

1. sagaida **2.** Uzdod **3.** jautāja **4.** Palūdz **5.** jautāja **6.** vaicāja

B. Common Errors

1. teica **2.** pazīsti **3.** runāsim (aprunāt= to gossip about) **4.** māku/protu **5.** klausīsieties (klausīt= obey) **6.** uzdevām **7.** izlasījis **8.** Brauksim (the verb iet means to go by foot) **9.** Paturiet **10.** pārcelšos

C. Error Correction

1. Vai tu **zini** par Džozefu Smitu? **2.** Mormona Grāmata **ietver** Dieva vārdu. **3.** Beigu beigās mums ir **jāpastāv** līdz galam.**4.** Es labi **izgulējos**. **5.** Jūs labi **runājat** angļu valodā. **6.** Mēs **atzvanījām** Edgara. **7.** Vai tu **pieņemsi** šo izaicinājumu? **8.** Es **apzinos**, ka es savā jaunībā biju nomaldījies. **9.** Viņi **nokavēs** baznīcu. **10.** Es **saprotu**, ka upuris nes svētības.

E. Prefixes

1. Jesus atoned for the sins of all mankind. **2.** Warning! The door is closing. **3.** Please turn on the light. **4.** We will compare a seed to faith. **5.** How do you correctly pronounce this word? **6.** We can communicate with God through prayer. **7.** Come in, please. **8.** How do you imagine heaven will be? **9.** We experience hard things so that we can grow. **10.** I spoke at church on Sunday.

21 Perfect Tense

A. Conjugation

Subject	1.	2.	3.	4.	5.	6.	7.
Es	bijis	ticis	zinājis	domājis	dzirdējis	redzējis	atcerējies
Tu	bijusi	tikusi	zinājusi	domājusi	dzirdējusi	redzējusi	atcerējusies
Mēs	bijuši	tikuši	zinājuši	domājuši	dzirdējuši	redzējuši	atcerējušies
Jūs	bijušas	tikušas	zinājušas	domājušas	dzirdējušas	redzējušas	atcerējušās
Viņš	bijis	ticis	zinājis	domājis	dzirdējis	redzējis	atcerējies
Viņa	bijusi	tikusi	zinājusi	domājusi	dzirdējusi	redzējusi	atcerējusies
Viņi	bijuši	tikuši	zinājuši	domājuši	dzirdējuši	redzējuši	atcerējušies
Viņas	bijušas	tikušas	zinājušas	domājušas	dzirdējušas	redzējušas	atcerējušās

Subject	8.	9.	10.	11.	12.	13.	14.	15.
Es	mācījies	centies	darījis	sajutis	nācis	sacījis	lūdzis	kristījies
Tu	mācījusies	centusies	darījusi	sajutusi	nākusi	sacījusi	lūgusi	kristījusies
Mēs	mācījušies	centušies	darījuši	sajutuši	nākuši	sacījuši	lūguši	kristījušies
Jūs	mācījušās	centušās	darījušas	sajutušas	nākušas	sacījušas	lūgušas	kristījušās
Viņš	mācījies	centies	darījis	sajutis	nācis	sacījis	lūdzis	kristījies
Viņa	mācījusies	centusies	darījusi	sajutusi	nākusi	sacījusi	lūgusi	kristījusies
Viņi	mācījušies	centušies	darījuši	sajutuši	nākuši	sacījuši	lūguši	kristījušies
Viņas	mācījušās	centušās	darījušas	sajutušas	nākušas	sacījušas	lūgušas	kristījušās

B. Fill In the Blank

1. Vai tu esi **lūgusi**, lai uzzinātu, vai šīs lietas ir patiesas? **2.**Vai jūs esat **domājis** par to, kāpēc mēs esam šeit uz zemes? **3.** Es ceru, ka jūs esat **sajutušas** Dieva mīlestību savā dzīvē. **4.** Dievs ir **teicis**, ka nekas netīrs nevar ieiet Viņa Valstībā. **5.** Ko mēs šodien esam **darījuši**? **6.** Pravieši ir **liecinājuši**, ka Kristus nāks. **7.** Es esmu **saņēmusi** daudzas svētības no Dieva. **8.** Es zināju, ka es biju **veicis** pareizo izvēli.

C. Translation

1. Tūkstošiem cilvēku ir saņēmuši liecību par Mormona Grāmatu. **2.** Es jau biju domājis, ka tā varētu notikt. **3.** Kā ir mainījusies tava dzīve, kopš mēs tevi satikām? **4.** Kāpēc Dievs ir devis mums mūsdienu praviešus? **5.** Mēs ticam visam, ko Dievs ir atklājis. **6.** Viņas ir kļuvušas atvērtākas uz mācīšanos. **7.** Tu esi nodzīvojis ilgu dzīvi. **8.** Tu esi mācījusies tik daudz.

D. Common Errors

1. Mēs, esam **2.** dzirdējis(usi) **3.** lūdzis(gusi) **4.** redzējis(usi) **5.** izlasījis **6.** mācījuši(as) **7.** esi **8.** esam lūguši(as)

E. Error Correction

1. Es jau esmu šeit **bijis(usi)** piecus mēnešus. **2.** Vai tu esi **nogaršojis(usi)** pastu? **3.** Tas Kungs ir **aicinājis** pravieti, lai vadītu Viņa baznīcu. **4.** Ko Jēzus **būtu darījis**? **5.** Vai viņi(as) ir **kristījušies(ās)**? **6.** Vai jūs esat **dzirdējuši** labo ziņu? **7.** Man liekas, ka es esmu **pieredzējusi** kaut ko **līdzīgu** tam. **8.** Vai tu esi **mācījies** par desmit **baušļiem**?

22 Passive Voice

A. Identification

"Pēc augšāmcelšanās, kad mūsu ķermenis un gars no jauna **tiks** apvienoti, mēs **tiksim** atvesti Dieva klātbūtnē, lai **tiktu** tiesāti. Mēs pilnībā atminēsimies gan savus taisnīgos darbus, gan vainu. Ja būsim nožēlojuši grēkus, mēs saņemsim žēlastību. Mēs **tiksim** atalgoti par mūsu darbiem un mūsu vēlmēm."

*"When our bodies and spirits **are** reunited through the Resurrection, we **will be** brought into God's presence **to be** judged. We will remember perfectly our righteousness and our guilt. If we have repented, we will receive mercy. We **will be** rewarded according to our works and our desires."*

B. Conjugation

1. tika pazaudētas **2**. tiku atbalstīts(a) **3.** tikt saistīts **4.** tika pievērsti **5.** tiks aicināta **6.** tiek atbrīvotas **7.** tiktu glābti **8.** tika sagrozītas, aizmirstas **9.** tiek balstītas **10.** tika noraidīts, sists

C. Fill In the Blank

1. tika upurēts *He was sacrificed for us.* **2.** tiek aicināts *Everyone is invited to come unto Christ.* **3.** tiek stiprināta *My testimony is strengthened every day.* **4.** tika aicināts *Joseph Smith was called to be a prophet.* **5.** tikt svētīti *Be baptized in My Name, that you (pl.) can be blessed.* **6**. prasīja *I was asked to help with the young men.* **7.** tiekām glābti *We are saved because of Jesus Christ's Atonement.* **8.** Mums misionāru skolā mācīja *We were taught Latvian grammar at the school for* missionaries (MTC).

D. Translation

1. I am strengthed through my hope in Christ. **2.** The Church of Jesus Christ has been restored. **3.** We must be understood in order to teach effectivly. **4.** We will stand in the presence of God to be judged. **5.** A vision was revealed to Joseph Smith. **6.** Šosestdien tiks kristīts mūsu klausītājs. **7.** Viņu jautājumi tiek atbildēti caur lūgšanu un studēšanu. **8.** Mormona Grāmata ir tikusi pārtulkota daudzās valodās. **9.** Patiesība tiek apstiprināta caur Svēto Garu. **10.** Es liecinu, ka mūsu lūgšanas tiek sadzirdētas.

E. Changing from Passive to Active Voice

1. Jēzus Kristus mani stiprina. **2.** Džozefs Smits atjaunoja Jēzus Kristus baznīcu. **3.** Klausītājiem ir mūs jāsaprot, lai mēs varētu efektīvi mācīt. **4.** Dievs mūs tiesās, kad mēs stāvēsim tiesas priekšā. **5.** Debesu Tēvs un Jēzus Kristus parādījās Džozefam Smitam. (In this sentence, the verb *parādīties* is used because people "show" themselves and objects are "revealed.") **6.** Draudzes prezidents sestdien kristīs mūsu klausītāju. **7.** Svētais Gars viņiem atbild caur lūgšanu un studēšanu. **8.** Mūsu baznīca ir pārtulkojusi Mormona Grāmatu daudzās valodās. **9.** Svētais Gars apstiprina patiesību. **10.** Es liecinu, ka Dievs sadzird mūsu lūgšanas.

F. Changing from Active to Passive Voice

1. Mēs tikām aicināti kalpot savās misijās Latvijā. (We were called to serve our missions in Latvia.) **2.** Dievkalpojuma laikā tiek sniegtas liecības. (Testimonies are offered in sacrament meeting.) **3.** Svētdienas skolas laikā tiks iepazīstināti divi jauni klausītāji. (Two new investigators will be introduced during Sunday School.) **4.** Dieva spēks vairs netiks paņemts prom no Zemes. (God's power won't be taken again from the earth.) **5.** Mēs tikām sūtīti uz Zemi, lai mācītos un augtu. (We were sent to earth to learn and to grow.) **6.** Zelta plāksnes tika atrastas zem zemes. (The gold plates were found in the ground.) **7.** Jānim Kristītājam tika dotas pilnvaras kristīt. (John the Baptist was given authority to baptize.) **8.** Apustuļi tika nogalināti. (The Apostles were killed.) **9.** Alma un Amuleks tika glābti no nāves. (Alma and Amulek were saved from death.) **10.** Viņam tiks parādīta Mormona Grāmata. (The Book of Mormon will be shown him.)

G. Common Errors

1. aicināti **2.** tika izlasīta **3.** attrīrītiem **4.** tika **5.** tiks **6.** svētīta **7.** saistītas **8.** atklāta **9.** tiks pieņemts **10.** pasniegti

H. Error Correction

1. Tie, kas izvēlas paklausīt, **tiek** svētīti. **2.** Derības tiek **noslēgtas** caur priekšrakstiem. **3.** Baznīcas vadītāji tika publiski **atbalstīti** baznīcā. **4. Pravieši** ir **aicināti** un **izvēlēti**. **5.** Tie, kas tic Viņam un nožēlo grēkus, tiek **atpestīti**. **6.** Gavēņa **ziedojumi** tiek **lietoti**, lai palīdzētu nabadzīgiem cilvēkiem. **7. Augšāmceltas būtnes** vairs netiks **pakļautas** slimībām, sāpēm, un nāvei. **8.** Svētajos Rakstos Dieva iecere **tiek saukta** par laimes ieceri. **9.** Caur Kristu **tika** pārvarētas gan laicīgās, gan garīgās nāves sekas. **10.** Mēs **tiksim** atalgoti par mūsu darbiem un mūsu vēlmēm.

23 Adverbs

A. Forming Adverbs

1. vienīgi **2.** tumši **3.** bedīgi **4.** lēni **5.** pacietīgi **6.** nejauši **7.** slinki **8.** stingri **9.** bezgalīgi **10.** patīkami

B. Identify the Adverb

1. Vienīgi, tīri (Only through the Savior's grace can we become clean from sin.) **2.** ļoti, būtiski (It is very essential to ponder and pray about the Book of Mormon.) **3.** ilgi (God restored the gospel of Jesus Christ that had been long lost for centuries.) **4.** tik (Why is it so important that you be baptized and receive the Holy Ghost?) **5.** daudz, labāk (By observing the Word of Wisdom, I understand spiritual truths much better.) **6.** Īpaši (Especially serious [heavy] sins we confess to Church leaders.) **7.** Uzticīgi (Faithfully fulfill your calling.) **8.** vienmēr (We promise to always be witnesses of God.) **9.** kopīgi (Both parents must teach children together.) **10.** pastāvīgi (God promises to continually lead us.)

C. Translation

1. Man ļoti patīk mācīt. **2.** Es labi pazīstu savus klausītājus. **3.** Es katru dienu lūdzu, lai man būtu Svētā Gara klātbūtne. **4.** Mēs skaidri un kodolīgi mācījām evaņģēliju. **5.** Renārs pēkšni piecēlās un izgāja no istabas. **6.** Mums vajag drosmīgi sekot Svētā Gara vadībai. **7.** Mums vajadzētu regulāri apmeklēt templi. **8.** Dievs mūs svētī gan garīgi, gan laicīgi. **9.** Viņi grib, lai mūsu klausītāji justos ērti. **10.** Jūs esat ļoti novērtēti(as).

D. Fill In the Blank

1. Pat **2.** arvien **3.** cītīgi **4.** pat labāk **5.** vārdu pa vārdam **6.** ļoti **7.** citādi **8.** pazemīgi **9.** labprātīgi **10.** ilgi

E. Common Errors

1. nesen **2.** svinīgi **3.** regulāri **4.** drosmīgi **5.** pilnīgi **6.** bieži **7.** cītīgi, Svētie Raksti **8.** vairs **9.** netālu **10.** negaidīti

F. Error Correction

1. vēl **2.** daudz **3.** īslaicīgi piekopa daudzsievību **4.** steidzami **5.** visdrīzāk **6.** pilnīgi, pakāpeniski. **7.** taisni, taisnīgi, nepārtraukti **8.** precīzi **9.** it īpaši **10.** Pamatīgi, mācīsi

24 Prepositions

A. Translate

1. Mormona Grāmata liecina **par** Kristu. **2.** Ko tu mācījies **no** šī panta? **3.** Izpaud savu mīlestību **pret** Dievu un citiem! **4.** Mums ir jāpastāv **līdz** galam. **5.** Ej uz priekšu **ar** ticību Kristum! **6.** Pastaigāsim **pa** parku! **7.** Mums visiem ir vajadzīga Dieva žēlastība mūsu grēku **dēļ**. **8.** Dzīve **pēc** nāves patiešām pastāv. **9.** Mēs **mazpamazām** uzlabojamies ar katru dienu. **10.** Ticība **bez** darbiem ir mirusi.

B. Fill In the blank

1. no **2.** aiz **3.** ar **4.** pēc **5.** par **6.** līdzi **7.** ārpus **8.** no

C. Prepositional Object

1. galda **2.** vieniem **3.** locekļiem **4.** sirds **5.** vīrieti, sievieti **6.** mežam **7.** šo **8.** Liepāju **9.** Dievu, šīs dzīves **10.** mūsu

D. Common Errors

1. par **2.** Dievam **3.** pie Santas **4.** soli pa solim **5.** Bez apustuļiem **6.** par Kristu **7.** saskaņā ar **8.** ar lūgšanu **9.** caur Džozefu Smitu **10.** blakus ledusskapim

E. Error Correction

1. Mums ir laiks doties. **2.** Nāc man **līdzi**! **3.** Mūsu baznīca ir saukta Pēdējo Dienu Svēto Jēzus Kristus **Baznīca**. **4.** No **tā**, ko mēs zinām par **tavām pieredzēm**, mēs domājam, ka tu esi stipra. **5.** Kristus atjaunoja Savu baznīcu **mūsu** dēļ. **6.** Dievs mūs sūtīja uz **šo Zemi**. **7.** Mēs varam tikt attirīti caur **kristīšanos**. **8.** Es esmu pateicīgs **par** jūsu **palīdzību**. **9.** Baznīca ir pāri **ielai** no Rimi. **10.** Priesterība nāk no **Dieva**.

H. I Spy

P1) no:gen-dat, pret:acc-dat, caur:acc-acc, pēc:gen-dat, par:acc-acc, par:acc-dat **P2)** par:acc-acc, ar:acc-acc, par:acc-acc, ar:acc-acc, ar:acc-acc **P3)** no:gen-dat, līdz:dat-dat, no:gen-gen, par:acc-acc **P4)** ar:acc-dat, par:acc-acc, pret:acc-dat, uz:gen-gen, par:acc-dat **P5)** uz:gen-gen, caur:acc-acc, ar:acc-acc, par:acc-acc, ar:acc-acc, pēc:gen-gen **P6)** no:gen-gen, caur:acc-acc, ar:acc-dat, no:gen-dat, no:gen-dat, no:gen-dat

Review: Actions and Events

A. Error Correction

Mēs **aicinām** tevi un visus pārējos papildināt patiesās garīgās zināšanas, ko tu **turi** augstā vērtē. Uzklausi mūsu minētos pierādījumus tam, ka mūsu Debesu Tēvs un Viņa Dēls Jēzus Kristus ir no **jauna mīloši** vērsušies **pie** Dieva bērniem un **atklājuši** evaņģēlija pilnību pravietim. Džozefs Smits **tika** aicināts kļūt par **pravieti** un caur viņu evaņģēlijs tika **atjaunots**. Pierādījums šai brīnišķīgajai patiesībai ir Mormona Grāmata, un tu vari to lasīt, **apdomāt** un lūgt par to. Ja tu lūgsi **sirsnīgi**, ar patiesu nolūku un ticot Kristum, Dievs **ar** Svētā Gara **spēku** pavēstīs tev, ka tā ir patiesa.

B. Error Correction

1. atjaunota (“Perfect Tense” and “Passive Voice”) **2.** nākušas (“Perfect Tense”) **3.** svētībām (“Prepositions”) **4.** tikt dota (“Passive Voice”) **5.** cienīgi, dedzīgi (“Adverbs”) **6.** pietiekami spēcīgi (“Adverbs”) **7.** pārstāvēt (“Verbs”) **8.** uzzināt (“Verb Prefixes and Synonyms”) **9.** uz sevi (“Prepositions”) **10.** prasījis (“Perfect Tense”) **11.** bieži (“Adverbs”) **12.** būs izlasījusi (“Perfect Tense”) **13.** augšāmcēlās (“Verbs”) **14.** notiks (“Verb Prefixes and Synonyms”) **15.** tiks (“Passive Voice”) **16.** kalpo (“Verbs”) **17.** omit *par* (“Prepositions”) **18.** garīgi (“Adverbs”) **19.** aicināta (“Verb Prefixes and Synonyms”) **20.** izmisīgi (“Adverbs”)

C. Translation

1. ar, labvēlību, izglābti **2.** ieguva **3.** liecināt **4.** no, klātbūtnes **5.** būtu, bijuši **6.** tiksim **7.** nav nožēlojuši grēkus **8.** dzīvot mūžīgi **9.** tiek **10.** ir pielūguši **11.** izvēlējās **12.** par mūsu grēkiem **13.** kļūstam **14.** tiks apvienoti **15.** saticis(kusi) **16.** Pēc nāves, uz garu pasauli **17.** pavisam burtiski **18.** līdz galam **19.** pie Manis **20.** tika atalgots

25 Participles

A. Past Passive Participles

1. apsolītas(ās) svētības (promised blessings) **2.** dota(ā) palīdzība (given help) **3.** veikts(ais) upuris (completed sacrifice) **4.** izdzīvota(ā) pieredze (“lived-through” experience) **5.** radīta(ā) Zeme (created earth) **6.** gaidīta(ā) atbilde (“waited for” answer) **7.** salauztas(ās) sirdis (broken hearts) **8.** mīlēti(ie) brāļi (loved brothers) **9.** pārtulkots(ais) pieraksts (translated record) **10.** nolīgts(ais) zēns (hired boy) **11.** apslētas(ās) jūtas (hidden feelings) **12.** uzaicināts(ais) klausītājs (invited investigator)

B. Present Passive Participles

1. darāms(ais) darbs (doable work) **2.** nākamā nedēļa (next week) **3.** dzerams(ais) ūdens (drinkable water) **4.** piedodami(ie) grēki (forgivable sins) **5.** baudāms(ais) ēdiens (enjoyable food) **6.** neiedomājama(ā) dzīve (unbelievable life) **7.** zināmas(ās) patiesības (knowable truths) **8.** neapdzīvojama(ā) sala (uninhabited island) **9.** nemaināms(ais) cilvēks (unchangeable person) **10.** ticam**s**(ais) stāsts (believable story) **11.** saprotama(ā) stunda (understandable lesson) **12.** neaizmirstams(ais) brīdis (memorable moment)

C. Past Active Participles

1. lauzusi derība (broken covenant) **2.** piedzēries vīrietis (drunk man) **3.** dzimis Latvietis (born Latvian) **4.** pacēlusi roka (raised hand) **5.** beigusies filma (finished film) **6.** bijušie klausītāji (former investigators) **7.** pieauguši(ie) bērni (grown up [adult] children) **8.** izbijis/bijušais jurists (former lawyer) **9.** kritis pravietis (fallen prophet) **10.** apjukuši(ie) zēni (confused boys) **11.** pazudis(ušais) suns (lost dog) **12.** uzcepis cālis (roasted chicken)

D. Present Active Participles

1. domājošs(ais) bērniņš (thinking baby) **2.** kliedzoša(ā) balss (screaming voice) **3.** raudošs(ais) pāris (crying couple) **4.** dziedošs(ais) koris (singing choir) **5.** nākošs(ais) autobuss (coming bus) **6.** gaidoši(ie) studenti (waiting students) **7.** kārdinoša(ā) kafija (tempting coffee) **8.** zinoši(ie) tēvi (knowing fathers) **9.** lūdzoši(ie) misionāri (praying missionaries) **10.** braucoša(ā) mašīna (moving car) **11.** apmeklējošās māsas (visiting sisters) **12.** krītošs(ais) lietus (falling rain)

E. Translation

1. past passive, past passive, Mums ir **dāvāt<u>a</u>** rīcības brīvība pieņemt vai noraidīt praviešu un apustuļu **mācīt<u>o</u>** evaņģēliju. **2.** present active, present active, Prātā ieplūst **iedvesmoj<u>ošas</u>** un **pacilāj<u>ošas</u>** domas caur Svēto Garu. **3.** past passive, Bija grūti izlasīt **ar roku sarakstīt<u>o</u>** vēstuli no savas māmiņas. **4.** past passive, Atkrišanas laikā Dievs atņema cilvēkiem **piešķirt<u>ās</u>** priesterības pilnvaras, lai izpildītu priekšrakstus. **5.** past passive, Sātans kārdināja Ādamu un Ievu ēst **aizliegt<u>o</u>** augli. **6.** past active, No **pazud<u>ušā</u>** dēla līdzības mēs varam mācīties par mīlestību, kas Dievam ir pret mums. **7.** present passive, Ir svarīgi mācīt saskaņā ar **apmācām<u>o</u>** vajadzībām. **8.** past passive, present passive, Es liecinu ka, **atjaunotā** Jēzus Kristus baznīca mūsdienās ir **atrod<u>ama</u>** uz Zemes. **9.** past active, "Es, Nefijs, **dzimi<u>s</u>** no krietniem vecākiem..." **10.** present active, Baušļi ir **mīl<u>oša</u>** Debesu Tēva norādījumi, lai palīdzētu mums būt laimīgiem.

F. Common Errors

1. vienpiedzimušais **2.** Atgriezušais **3.** pazudušās **4.** pazaudētās **5.** gaidītā **6.** Mierinošais **7.** Apjukušais **8.** apmācāmo

G. Error Correction

1. no error **2.** Desmitās tiesas maksāšana ir **uzskatāms** apliecinājums tam, ka mēs ticam Dievam. **3.** Tas Kungs jums palīdzēs pat tad, ja tas prasīs **zināmu** laiku. **4. Lūdzošajam** zēnam vajadzēja zināt to, kāda bija Dieva griba pret viņu. **5.** Mormona Grāmata is **pārliecinošs** pierādījums tam, ka Atjaunošana tiešām notika. **6.** "Lūk, šis ir Mans **mīļotais** Dēls." **7.** Mēs ticam **atjaunotajam** evaņģēlijam. **8.** Lehijs ar savu ģimeni kuģoja uz **apsolīto** zemi.

26 Adverb Participles

A. Conjugate

1. redzot, redzēdams, redzam **2.** mēģinot,mēģinādams, mēģinām **3.** cerot, cerēdams, ceram **4.** parādot, parādīdams, parādam **5.** atstājot, atstādams, atstājam **6.** tuvojoties, tuvodamies, tuvojamies **7.** pilnveidojoties, pilnveidodamies, pilveidojamies **8.** ņemot, ņemdams, ņemam **9.** pielietojot, pielietodams, pielietojam **10.** sekojot, sekodams, sekojam **11.** daloties, dalīdamies, dalāmies **12.** kļūstot, kļūdams, kļūstam **13.** atceroties, atcerēdamies, atceramies **14.** lūdzot, lūgdams, lūdzam **15.** nākot, nākdams, nākam **16.** dzīvojot, dzīvodams, dzīvojam **17.** guļot, gulēdams, guļam **18.** ejot, iedams, ejam

B. Complete the Sentence

1. runājoties **2.** rakstot **3.** klauvējam **4.** sakām **5.** Esot **6.** dodoties **7.** mācot **8.** lasām **9.** dziedinot **10.** esot ar

C. Translation

1. Pēc Dieva gribas meklēšanas, Vita beidzot nolēma kristīties. **2.** Pētījot Moronija apsolījumu, es apdomāju mūsu klausītāju vajadzības. **3.** Mēs redzējam Jāni runājam ar viņa mammu, gaidot autobusu. **4.** Māsas jutās apmulsušas, cenšoties atrast patiesību. **5.** Viņi sajuta Svēto Garu skaidri pamudinām viņus, lūdzot pēc norādēm. **6.** Mēs dzirdējām Brāli Klintu ienākam baznīcā. **7.** Juris strādāja, apmeklējot skolu. **8.** Viņš skaisti dziedāja, viņai spēlējot klavieres. **9.** Ivars atcerējās mammu mācām ar piemēru. **10.** Es uzdodu jautājumus mācot, lai labāk saprastu.

D. Combining Sentences

1. Viņa pacietīgi gaidīja, viņas brālim beidzot darbu. (She patiently waited while her brother finished work.) Viņai pacietīgi gaidot, viņas brāļis beidza darbu. (While she patiently waited, her brother finished work.) **2.** Man viņu vērojot, viņa lūdza. (While I watched her, she prayed.) Es viņu vēroju, viņai lūdzot. (I watched her while she prayed.) **3.** Braucot Oksana klausījās mūziku. (While driving, Oksana listened to music.) Oksana brauca, klausoties mūziku. (Oksana drove while listening to music.) **4.** Mēs apmēklējam baznīcu, viņiem ejot uz pludmali. (We went to church while they went to the beach.) Mums apmeklējot baznīcu, viņi gāja uz pludmali. (While we went to church, they went to the beach.) **5.** Es pastāstīju stāstu, mācot stundiņu. (I told a story while teaching a lesson.) Stāstot stāstu, Es mācīju stundiņu. (While telling a story, I taught a lesson.) **6.** Audzinot ģimeni, viņi dzīvoja Zviedrijā. (While raising their family, they lived in Sweden.) Viņi izaudzināja ģimeni, dzīvojot Zviedrijā. (They raised their family while living in Sweden.) **7.** Toms ēda pūsdienas, pastaigājoties pa parku. (Tom ate his lunch while walking in the park.) Ēdot pusdienas, Toms pastaigājās pa parku. (While eating lunch, Toms was walking in the park.) **8.** Diana mācīja svētdienas skolu, viņas mātei mācot bērnuskolu. (Diana taught Sunday School while her mom taught Primary.) Diānai mācot svētdienas skolu, viņas māte mācīja bērnuskolu. (While Dīana taught Sunday School, her mom taught Primary.)

E. Common Errors

1. Kalpojot **2.** ejam **3.** gavēju **4.** viņu **5.** bērniem **6.** studējot **7.** paužot **8.** uzstājoties **9.** spēlēja **10.** kad vien mēs varam.

F. Error Correction

1. Lūdzu, svētī mūs, **mums plānojot** rītdien**as notikumus**! **2.** Viņš **mani** redzēja runājam ar kādu par evaņģēliju. **3. Acīmredzot** viņai vajag palīdzību, kamēr viņas vīrs ir Anglijā. **4.** Kamēr mēs **gājām** pie Pētersoniem, mēs iegaumējām pantu. **5.** Es raudāju, manam(ai) pāriniekam(cei) **liecinot**. **6. Lūgdams** Jēzus svētīja maizi. **7.** Mēs saņemam atbildes, **klausāmies** Svētajā Garā. **8. Viņam ģērbjoties**, es zvanīju mūsu klausītājiem. **9.** Es redzu **viņu** palīdzam sievietei nest viņas pārtikas. **10.** Eva redzēja Svēto Vakarēdienu **tiekam** iesvētītu.

Review: Narrating Experiences and Telling Stories

A. Error Correction

Atbildot uz lūgšanu, Svētais Gars atklās mums patiesību, **uzrunājot** mūsu sirdi un prātu. **Sajūtot**, ka tas, ko mēs apgūstam, ir patiesība, mums parādīsies vēlme uzzināt par Atjaunošanu pēc iespējas vairāk.
Noskaidrojot, ka Mormona Grāmata ir patiesa, mēs varam būt **pārliecināti**, ka Džozefs Smits bija pravietis un ka caur viņu tika **atjaunots** Jēzus Kristus evaņģēlijs.

B. Error Correction

1. atrodami ("Participles") **2.** noteikta ("Participles") **3.** salauzta ("Participles") **4.** staigājot ("Adverb Participles") **5.** aicinātas ("Participles") **6.** meklējam ("Adverb Participles") **7.** apmulsinoša ("Participles") **8.** neaizmirstama ("Adverb Participles")
9. atkritušajiem ("Participles") **10.** neiespējams ("Adverb Participles") **11.** Lasot ("Adverb Participles") **12.** mirušajiem ("Participles") **13.** iedvesmojošas ("Participles") **14.** izmantojot ("Adverb Participles") **15.** sajutu ("Adverb Participles") **16.** redzama ("Adverb Participles") **17.** runājam ("Adverb Participles") **18.** viņam ("Adverb Participles") **19.** pateicoties ("Adverb Participles") **20.** minēti ("Participles")

C. Translation

1. pazudušās **2.** apsolītajā **3.** kliedzam **4.** neticams **5.** dziedinošo **6.** paļaujoties, redzams **7.** acīmredzot, augošs **8.** ejam **9.** lūgdami **10.** dejojošas **11.** cerams, sajūtam **12.** izraudzīti **13.** nodibināti **14.** Nožēlojot, piedots **15.** mirusi **16.** ejot **17.** lūgdams **18.** kalpojot **19.** darot **20.** iespaidoti, bijušajiem

27 Telling Time

A. Telling Time—Only one of the possible answers is given, but there are many.

1. vienpadsmit un desmit minūtes **2.** divi piecdesmit trīs **3.** pusseši **4.** viena minūte pāri septiņiem **5.** divi pēcpusdienā **6.** seši trīsdesmit **7.** pusvienpadsmit **8.** seši un trīsdesmit septiņas minūtes **9.** deviņi trīsdesmit piecas **10.** ceturksnis pirms deviņiem **11.** trīs trīsdesmit trīs **12.** piecas minūtes pāri astoņiem **13.** pieci astoņpadsmit **14.** viens pēcpusdienā **15.** pusdesmit **16.** pusdienlaiks

B. Military Time

1. 15:00 **2.** 17:15 **3.** 14:19 **4.** 22:30 **5.** 7:45 **6.** 18:50 **7.** 13:01 **8.** 20:24 **9.** 16:44 **10.** 21:37 **11.** 23:12 **12.** 3:30

C. Time Practice

1. četri **2.** viens pāri četriem **3.** deviņas minūtes pēc četriem (*Pēc* is grammatically correct, but *pāri* is used most often.) **4.** ceturksnis pāri četriem **5.** puspiecos **6.** bez ceturkšņa pieci **7.** četri un četrdesmit septiņas minūtes **8.** četras minūtes pirms pieciem **9.** piecos

D. Common Errors

1. minūtes **2.** deviņos **3.** Pulkstenis **4.** Puspiecos **5.** pirms **6.** minūtēm trijos **7.** šovakar **8.** Cikos sākas

E. Error Correction

1. Es mostos **pusseptiņos** katru rītu. **2.** Redzēsimies pēc **divām dienām**. **3.** Tagad ir **bez divdesmit minūtēm četri**. **4.** Es **rīt no rīta** studēšu par ticību. **5. Cik tagad ir pulkstenis? 6.** Mēs gavējam katra **mēneša sākumā**. **7.** Mēs tiksimies **divpadsmitos**. **8.** Divdesmit piecu gadu **laikā** baznīca Latvijā ir krietni augusi.

28 Days, Dates, Years

A. Translation

1. divdesmit sestais augusts **2.** tūkstoš trīssimt astoņdesmitā gada devītais septembris **3.** divdesmit piektajā decembrī **4.** maijā **5.** pirmdienās **6.** tūkstoš astoņsimt sešdesmit pirmajā gadā **7.** piektais novembris **8.** tūkstoš astoņi simti astoņdesmit pirmā gada vienpadsmitais marts **9.** ceturtajā jūlijā **10.** aprīlī **11.** svētdienās **12.** tūkstoš deviņsimt deviņdesmit pirmajā gadā **13.** septītais decembris **14.** tūkstoš astoņsimt trīsdesmit septītā gada otrais oktobris **15.** sestajā aprīlī **16.** augustā **17.** trešdienās **18.** tūkstoš astoņsimt trīsdesmitajā gadā **19.** devītais aprīlis **20.** tūkstoš deviņsimt divdesmit trešā gada astoņpadsmitais janvāris **21.** četrpadsmitajā jūnijā **22.** decembrī **23.** ziemā **24.** ceturtdien **25.** divdesmit otrais februāris **26.** tūkstoš deviņsimt četrdesmit piektā gada devītais maijs **27.** pirmajā novembrī **28.** septembrī **29.** vasarā **30.** pirmdien

B. Fill In the blank

1. pavasarī **2.** šosestdien **3.** svētdienās **4.** divdesmit otrais **5.** Rītdien **6.** piektajā **7.** Pagājušajā ziemā**/**Pagāšziem **8.** parīt

D. Common Errors

1. Vakardiena, otrdiena **2.** ziemā **3.** svētdienās **4.** martā **5.** Pagājušajā **6.** piektdien **7.** pirmdienās **8.** šovakar

E. Error Correction

1. Jēzus Kristus baznīca tika atjaunota **sestajā aprīlī**. **2.** Šodien ir **svētdiena**. **3.** Šis tika sarakstīts **tūkstoš** deviņsimt deviņdesmit piektajā gadā. **4.** Vai mēs varētu ar jums tikties **šī mēneša trešajā** svētdienā? **5.** Kur tu biji **vakardien**? **6.** Mēs ar jums redzēsimies **rītdien vakarā**. **7.** Ko tu **šovakar** darīsi? **8.** Es **aizvakardien** runāju ar Niklāvu par čūskām.

29 Locative Case

A. Declination—Answers are given as singular, plural.

1. patiesībā, patiesībās **2.** misionārā, misionāros **3.** Dievā, dievos **4.** sapulcē, sapulcēs **5.** pravietī, praviešos **6.** cerībā **7.** garā, garos **8.** grāmatā, grāmatās **9.** mātē, mātēs **10.** tēvā, tēvos **11.** brālī, brāļos **12.** māsā, māsās **13.** ticībā, ticībās **14.** baznīcā, baznīcās **15.** Amerikā, Amerikās **16.** sirdī, sirdīs **17.** lūgšanā, lūgšanās **18.** dzīvē, dzīvēs **19.**stāstā, stāstos **20.** Bībelē, Bībelēs

B. Translation

1. Vai jūs lūgsiet ticībā? **2.** Kad mēs lūdzam, mēs nometamies ceļos, lai parādītu Dievam cieņu. **3.** Kādās valodās jūs runājat? **4.** Vai mēs drīkstam ienākt jūsu majā? **5.** Mēs varam izlasīt Bībelē par to, kā Kristus tika kristīts. **6.** Vai tu esi mājās? **7.** Viņi dzīvo debesīs kopā ar Dievu. **8.** Mēs dzīvojam pēdējās dienās pirms Kristus atnākšanas. **9.** Pat tumsā man nav bail. **10.** Kurā pilsetā jūs dzīvojat?

C. Pronouns

1. tajā **2.** šajā **3.** šajā **4.** sevī **5.** viņos **6.** tajā

D. Common Errors

1. Rīgā **2.** savās lūgšanās **3.** garā **4.** Grāmatā **5.** misijā **6.** pasākumā **7.** baznīcā **8.** Kristū **9.** pēdās **10.** savā liecībā

E. Error Correction

1. Tiksimies **piektdien**! **2.** Mēs esam Dieva **rokās**. **3.** Vai jūs sajūtat Svēto Garu **savās** sirdīs? **4.** Ko tu iemācījies svētdienas **skolā**? **5.** no error **6.** Mēs noslēdzam lūgšanu Jēzus Kristus **Vārdā**, āmen. **7.** Viņa ar mums tiksies **svētdien**. **8.** Evelīna stundiņā dalījās **pantā** par Grēku Izpirkšanu. **9. Dārzā** ir puķes un ogas. **10.** Viņš kristīsies **upē**.

G. Scripture Activity

2 Nephi 31

1. skaidrībā **2.** veidā **3.** valodā **4.** ūdenī **5.** miesā **6.** priekšā **7.** izskatā **8.** Vārdā **9.** ūdenī **10.** mēlē **11.** mēlē **12.** Kristū

2 Nephi 32

1. savās sirdīs **2.** savās sirdīs **3.** gaismā **4.** tumsā **5.** miesā **6.** miesā

2 Nephi 33

1. vidū **2.** rakstībā **3.** runā **4.** sirdīs **5.** viņos **6.** dienā **7.** naktīs **8.** ticībā **9.** skaidrībā **10.** patiesībā **13.** savā **12.** Jēzū **13.** pēdējā **14.** dienā **15.** vaigā **16.** priekšā **17.** Vārdā **18.** valstībā **19.** lielajā **20.** pēdējā **21.** dienā **22.** cieņā **23.** pēdējā **24.** dienā

Review: Time, Date, and Location

A. Error Correction

Ernests ir dzimis **1980.** gada 22. **augustā**. Viņš ir no Ventspils, taču viņš strādā **Rīgā** kā arhitekts. **Pagāšziem** viņš brauca ar savu ģimeni uz Austriju slēpot. Ernests ceļas **katru rītu** ap **pusseptiņiem**, lai apmeklētu sporta zāli. **Vasaras laikā** / **Vasarā** viņam patīk būt savos laukos, kas ir **Kuldīgā**. Viņam arī patīk makšķerēt ar saviem draugiem un ēst gardas zemenes. Ernests arī ir Latvjias patriots, tādēļ katra gada 18. **novembrī** viņš svin Latvijas Neatkarības dienu.

B. Error Correction

1. katru dienu ("Days, Dates, Years") **2.** pirmdienās ("Days, Dates, Years") **3.** Bauskā ("Locative") **4.** pusastoņi ("Telling Time") **5.** otrdien ("Locative") **6.** piecos ("Telling Time") **7.** Rīt, pirmdiena ("Days, Dates, Years") **8.** Mežā ("Locative") **9.** Cikos, omit *pulkstenis* ("Telling Time") **10.** saskaņā ("Locative") **11.** janvārī ("Days, Dates, Years") **12.** Soltleiksitijā ("Locative") **13.** trešajā ("Days, Dates, Years") **14.** šovakar ("Telling Time") **15.** pirmajā ("Days, Dates, Years") **16.** manā sirdī ("Locative") **17.** dienām ("Telling Time") **18.** Ceturtdiena ("Days, Dates, Years") **19.** aizvakar ("Telling Time") **20.** Īrijā ("Locative")

C. Translation

1. izšķiroša **2.** katru nedēļu **3.** četri trīsdesmit piecas pēcpusdienā **4.** vēstījumā **5.** svētdienās **6.** deviņos vakarā **7.** aspektos **8.** Pēc diviem gadiem **9.** pāri **10.** Pēc deviņām minūtēm **11.** Katrā **12.** Pagāšnedēļ **13.** pirms **14.** Rīgā **15.** aizaizvakar **16.** pulkstenis **17.** Svētajos Rakstos **18.** Parīt **19.** puspiecos **20.** tempļos

E. Activity

1. April 1994, in a town 8 kilometers outside of Monterrey **2.** about two months **3.** June 5, 1994 **4.** two weeks **5.** four months **6.** October **7.** December 1995 in the Mexico City Mexico Temple

30 Numbers

A. Numbers—Answers will be given as follows: cardinal, ordinal (singular masculine).

1. septiņdesmit, septiņdesmitais **2.** tūkstoš astoņsimt pieci, tūkstoš astoņsimt piektais **3.** deviņdesmit deviņi, deviņdesmit devītais **4.** četrsimt, četrsimtais **5.** simt piecdesmit trīs, simt piecdesmit trešais **6.** divdesmit četri, divdesmit ceturtais **7.** astoņi, astotais **8.** piecdesmit divi, piecdesmit otrais **9.** divtūkštoš divdesmit, divtūkstoš divdesmitais **10.** trīsdesmit septiņi, trīsdesmit septītais **11.** astoņdesmit deviņi, astoņdesmit devītais **12.** simt deviņi, simt devītais **13.** deviņi, devītais **14.** četrdesmit divi, četrdesmit otrais **15.** sešdesmit viens, sešdesmit pirmais **16.** simt četrdesmit četri tūkstoši, simt četrdesmit četri tūkstošais **17.** simt viens, simt pirmais **18.** tūkstoš viens, tūkstoš pirmais **19.** astoņdesmit, astoņdesmitais **20.** divi, otrais **21.** piecsimt septiņdesmit trīs, piecsimt septiņdesmit trešais **22.** četrdesmit astoņi, četrdesmit astotais **23.** piecpadsmit, piecpadsmitais **24.** deviņi biljoni astoņsimt septiņdesmit seši miljoni piecsimt četrdesmit trīs tūkstoši divsimt desmit, deviņi biljoni astoņsimt septiņdesmit seši miljoni piecsimt četrdesmit trīs tūkstoši divsimt desmitais

D. *Cik Maksā?*

1. septiņdesmit deviņi centi **2.** divdesmit divi centi **3.** divi eiro un astoņdesmit deviņi centi **4.** četri eiro un sešdesmit trīs centi **5.** trīs eiro un divdesmit septiņi centi **6.** deviņdesmit četri centi **7.** eiro un vienpadsmit centi **8.** eiro piecdesmit astoņi **9.** pieci eiro un pieci centi **10.** septiņdesmit seši centi **11.** divdesmit divi centi **12.** eiro piecdesmit

G. Fractions and Decimals

1. divarpus **2.** seši komats septiņdesmit pieci **3.** trīs komats trīs **4.** četri ar pusi **5.** sešas astotdaļas **6.** viens un viena trešdaļa **7.** pieci komats deviņdesmit deviņi **8.** divi komats divi **9.** pieci ar pusi **10.** desmit komats četri **11.** vienarpus/pusotrs(a) **12.** viens komats astoņi

H. Common Errors

1. otrajā **2.** ceturtais **3.** piecas **4.** otrajā **5.** apliecinājumu **6.** Trešdaļa **7.** otro nodaļu **8.** pusotra **9.** divu tūkstošu **10.** divi

I. Error Correction

1. No **divu** vai **triju** liecinieku mutes katrs vārds tiek apstiprināts. **2. Misiņa plāksnes** ietvēra **piecas** Mozus grāmatas. **3. Maziem bērniem** nav nepieciešams kristīties, līdz viņi nav sasnieguši **astoņu gadu** vecumu. **4.** Nefijs, kas sarakstīja **Ceturtā Nefija Grāmatu**, bija Kristus **māceklis**. **5.** Džozefs atrada plāksnes **divdesmit otrajā septembrī**. **6. Pusei no desmit** jaunavām **vispār** nebija **eļļas**. **7.** Ādams bija **pirmais** pravietis uz Zemes. **8.** Blociņš maksā deviņdesmit **trīs centi**. **9.** Es to esmu darījis **simtiem reižu.** **10.** Uldim ir **pieci ar pus gadu**.

31 Duration, Frequency, and Distance

A. Translation

1. Es esmu Latvijā jau sešus mēnešus. **2.** Mēs ar Aivaru tiksimies pēc divām stundām. **3.** Viņi(as) ēd piecas reizes dienā. **4.** Viņš jau gaidīja veselu stundu. **5.** Mēs katru dienu vienu stundu studējam latviešu valodu. **6.** Es pēc minūtes atbildēšu uz tavu jautājumu. **7.** Mēs gavējam reizi mēnesī. **8.** Atzvanīsim viņiem pēc trim stundām!

B. Common Errors

1. uz četrām dienām **2.** katru dienu **3.** divus gadus **4.** vienu gadu **5.** piecpadsmit **6.** otro **7.** pēc septiņām minūtēm **8.** trīs

C. Error Correction

1. Mēs **pamostamies** pusseptiņos **katru dienu**. **2.** Viņi dzīvo **vienu minūti** no baznīcas. **3.** Katru **mēnesi** mums ir iespēja gavēt. **4.** Vispārējā Konference notiek **divas** reizes gadā. **5.** Brālis Bite māca stundu **katru** otro **nedēļu.** **6.** Paula kristīsies **pēc divām nedēļām**. **7.** Baznīca ir **trīsdesmit minūšu attālumā no** šejienes. **8.** Māsa Cimdiņa būs pēc desmit **minūtēm**.

D. Fill In the Blank

1. vienreiz nedēļā/vienu reizi nedēļā **2.** divus gadus **3.** pēc piecām minūtem **4.** katru **5.** tūkstoš gadiem **6.** pieciem, septiņiem **7.** simtiem kilometru **8.** šodienu

Review: Quality and Quantity

A. Error Correction

Izvērtējiet, cik **ilgi katru dienu** esat „izmetuši makšķeri". „Mums nevajadzētu līdzināties zvejniekiem, kuri domā, ka **visu dienu** makšķerējuši, kaut gan patiesībā lielāko daļu laika pavadījuši, dodoties uz ūdenstilpni un atpakaļ, ēdot pusdienas un ķimerējoties ap makšķerēšanas piederumiem. Veiksmīgs loms atkarīgs nevis no tā, cik **laika** esam pavadījuši ārpus mājām, bet gan no tā, cik ilgi esam izmetuši savu makšķeri. Dažiem zvejniekiem, kuri atgriežas mājās pēc **divpadsmit** stundām, pludiņš bijis ūdenī desmit **stundas**. Citiem zvejniekiem, kaut arī viņi atgriežas mājās pēc divpadsmit stundām, makšķere bijusi izmesta tikai **divas** stundas. Šie **pēdējie**, iespējams, brīnās, kādēļ viņiem nav tik labu panākumu kā tiem — otriem. Šis princips attiecas arī uz misionāriem, kurus Skolotājs dēvēja par „cilvēku zvejniekiem". Misionāram būtu jāizmet sava makšķere to pašu **brīdi**, kad viņš vai viņa iziet no sava dzīvokļa." Dalins H. Oukss

B. Error Correction

1. trīspadsmit ("Numbers") **2.** trijiem ("Numbers") **3.** pieci ("Numbers") **4.** gadu ("Duration, Frequency, Distance") **5.** katrai, katrai ("Duration, Frequency, Distance") **6.** sešu ("Numbers") **7.** četras ("Numbers") **8.** divas ("Numbers") **9.** kilometrus ("Duration, Frequency, Distance") **10.** ikdienas ("Duration, Frequency, Distance") **11.** gadu ("Duration, Frequency, Distance") **12.** divpadsmit ("Numbers") **13.** 12 līdz 18 ("Duration, Frequency, Distance") **14.** trīs ("Numbers") **15.** trim/trijām ("Numbers") **16.** veselu gadu ("Duration, Frequency, Distance") **17.** līdz svētdienai ("Duration, Frequency, Distance") **18.** laikam ("Duration, Frequency, Distance") **19.** katru dienu ("Duration, Frequency, Distance") **20.** stundu ("Duration, Frequency, Distance")

C. Translation

1. desmit baušļiem **2.** katru otro nedēļu **3.** Pirmais **4.** vienu desmito **5.** divpadsmit **6.** no, līdz, gadu **7.** piecas **8.** daudzus gadus **9.** astoņi gadi **10.** piekto **11.** divas **12.** uz diviem gadiem **13.** četrdesmit piecu **14.** divu vai trīs **15.** gadu simtiem **16.** četrpadsmit gadus vecs **17.** kādu pusstundu **18.** četrdesmit piecām minūtēm **19.** sešus kilometrus **20.** trīs gadus **13.** kustinot ("Relative Mood") **14.** esot ("Relative Mood"), nomazgājuši ("Transitive and Intransitive Verbs") **15.** esat, salauzis ("Transitive and Intransitive Verbs") **16.** pateicās par ("Transitive and Intransitive Verbs") **17.** neesot dzēris ("Relative Mood") **18.** jūties ("Transitive and Intransitive Verbs") **19.** spēlējam ("Transitive and Intransitive Verbs") **20.** par skolotāju ("Transitive and Intransitive Verbs")

32 Conditional Mood

A. Conjugation

1. būtu **2.** domātu **3.** zinātu **4.** varētu **5.** saprastu **6.** ticētu **7.** vajadzētu **8.** izvēlētos **9.** mācītos **10.** ietu **11.** patiktu **12.** atgrieztos **13.** dotu **14.** vēlētos **15.** nozīmētu Some examples of possible sentences: Ko tu visvairāk vēlētos uzzināt no Dieva? (What would you want to find out from God the most?) Kā tev patiktu dzīvot debesīs kopā ar Dievu? (How would you like to live in heaven together with God?) Kristus par mums izcieta, lai mēs varētu tikt attīrīti no mūsu grēkiem. (Christ suffered for us so that we could be cleansed from our sins.)

B. Translate

1. Vai Verners gribētu cepumu (cepumiņu)? **2.** Vai tu lūdzu varētu man palīdzēt? **3.** Mums vajadzētu apciemot Rūdolfu! **4.** Tas būtu brīnišķīgi, ja tu mums varētu palīdzēt mācīt stundiņu. **5.** Viņi(as) būtu aizmirsuši(as) lasīt Svētos Rakstus, ja mēs nebūtu viņiem(ām) atgādinājuši(šas). **6.** Vai tu varētu minēt kādu piemēru? **7.** Vai Dzinta liecinātu saviem kaimiņiem? **8.** Vai viņa ar mums dalītos pantā? **9.** Tev vajadzētu klausīties misionāru vēstījumā! **10.** Vai Jūs gribētu zināt, kā lūgt?

C. Common Mistakes

1. noskaitīt **2.** Mums **3.** Vai tu varētu **4.** gribētu zināt **5.** varētu **6.** prasītu **7.** nezinātu **8.** varētu **9.** būtu **10.** runāt

D. Error Correction

1. Kā jūs varētu man **palīdzēt**? **2.** Es gribu, **lai tu lūgtu**. **3. Vai tu vēlētos** lasīt Mormona Grāmatu? **4.** Kā mēs varētu tev **palīdzēt**? **5.** Mēs **gaidītu ilgāk**, bet mums ir jāiet. **6.** Mums vajadzētu iemācīties, kā **mīlēt** visus cilvēkus. **7.** Ja nebūtu bijusi Atkrišana, Atjaunošana **nebūtu** vajadzīga. **8.** Ko tas tev **nozīmētu**, ja tu **varētu** pēc nāves atkal satikt savu ģimeni? **9.** Ko jūs **būtu** gatavi(as) **darīt**, lai uzzinātu patiesību. **10.** Mēs varētu otrdien aizbraukt pie tevis, lai **novadītu** stundiņu.

33 Conjunctions

A. Translation

1. Es zinu, ka mans Glabējs ir dzīvs. **2.** Mums ir priesterība, lai mēs varētu palīdzēt cilvēkiem. **3.** Vai tu tici, ka Dievs atbildēs uz tavām lūgšanām? **4.** Tāpēc ka Kristus mūs mīl, Viņš nomira mūsu dēļ. **5.** Dievs mūs sūtīja uz zemi, lai mēs varētu pilnveidoties. **6.** Mana pieredze bija gan rūgta, gan salda. **7.** Es šovakar sajutu Svēto Garu, kāmēr es biju kopā ar jums. **8.** Es šeit dzīvoju jau kopš marta. **9.** Mēs ejam cauri ne tikai labiem, bet arī grūtiem laikiem. **10.** Vai viņi ir laimīgi vai bēdīgi?

B. Fill In the Blank

1. par to, ka **2.** ka **3.** ja **4.** jo or tāpēc ka **5.** par to, ka **6.** tomēr or bet **7.** taču **8.** un **9.** bet arī **10.** ka

C. Ar and Un

1. un **2.** ar **3.** un **4.** un **5.** ar **6.** ar

D. Jeb or Vai

1. jeb **2.** vai **3.** jeb **4.** jeb **5.** vai **6.** vai

E. Common Errors

1. par to, ka **2.** Kopš pirmās vīzijas **3.** ka **4.** par to, ka **5.** lai varētu **6.** zinu, ka **7.** gan *māte,* gan *tēvs* **8**. ticība ir svarīga **9.** lai mēs būtu **10.** Mēs ar viņu esam

F. Error Correction

1. Lai gan mēs **vairs neesam** kopā ar Dievu, mēs joprojām varam ar Viņu sazināties. **2.** Kopš kura laika tu zināji, **ka** vēlies kalpot misijā? **3.** Ģimene ir pati svarīgākā sociālā vienība **gan** pašlaik, **gan** mūžībā. **4.** Man patīk **tas, ka** viņš ir sācis lasīt Mormona Grāmatu. **5.** Es esmu pateicīgs **par to, ka** Dievs atbild uz lūgšanām. **6.** Viņa ir veca dāma, viņa **tikai** izskatās jauna. **7.** Viņiem ir patiesība, **tomēr** viņiem nav patiesības pilnības. **8.** Es **arī** to redzēju. (word order) **9.** Paļaujies uz Dieva, **nevis** uz pasaules žēlastību. **10.** Viņiem nav ne ēdiena, **ne** ūdens.

G. Relative Pronouns and Clauses

1. Mēs mācījāmies par to, kā pareizi aizpildīt rajona grāmatu. **2.** Kristus ir vienīgais, kas mani pilnībā saprot. **3.** Es liecinu par to, ka Kristus vēlreiz nāks uz Zemes. **4.** Es esmu pateicīgs(a) par to, ka Jēzus Kristus evaņģēlijs ir atjaunots. **5.** Es liecinu, ka Dievs nav tevi aizmirsis. **6.** Es esmu dalījies(usies) tajā, ko es zinu, ka tas ir patiess. **7.** Es nevaru atcerēties, kurš man pajautāja palīdzēt savā darzā. **8.** Dženijai patika tas, ko mēs viņai mācījām par to, kā ģimenes var būt mūžīgas.

Review: Cause and Effect

A. Error Correction

Jēzus Kristus evaņģēlijs nosaka **gan** tava vēstījuma saturu, **gan** tavu mērķi; citiem vārdiem sakot, tas izskaidro gan to, kas ir misionāru darbs, gan **to**, kādēļ tas tiek veikts. Glābējs mācīja, **ka** Viņa evaņģēlijā ir ietvertas dažas ļoti būtiskas pamatdoktrīnas. Viņš nāca pasaulē, **lai izpildītu** Sava Tēva gribu, un Tēvs sūtīja Viņu pasaulē, lai Viņš **tiktu** pacelts pie krusta. Caur Viņa veikto Grēku Izpirkšanu un augšāmcelšanos visi cilvēki tiks pacelti, lai **stātos** Kristus priekšā un tiktu tiesāti par saviem darbiem — **vai** tie būtu labi vai ļauni.

B. Error Correction

1. lai tu lasītu, lūgtu ("Conditional Mood") **2.** lai dotos, kristītos ("Conditional Mood") **3.** Tā kā ("Conjunctions") **4.** ka šis ("Conjunctions") **5.** atpazītu, izprastu ("Conditional Mood") **6.** jo ("Conjunctions") **7.** Lai gan, joprojām ("Conjunctions") **8.** ieteiktu, varētu ("Conditional Mood") **9.** vai nu ("Conjunctions") **10.** jo ("Conjunctions") **11.** varētu ("Conditional Mood") **12.** piedotu ("Conditional Mood") **13.** mācība ("Conjunctions") **14.** darītu ("Conditional Mood") **15.** izkopju ("Conditional Mood") **16.** arī atbalsta—word order ("Conjunctions") **17.** dalītos ("Conditional Mood") **18.** lai kļūtu ("Conditional Mood") **19.** nevis uz ("Conjunctions") **20.** ka Dievs ("Conjunctions")

C. Translation

1. ka, lai **2.** kļūtu **3.** jeb **4.** lai palīdzētu **5.** nevis, bet gan **6.** lai es atpazīstu un izprotu **7.** Līdzīgi kā, lai saņemtu **8.** vai **9.** Neskatoties uz to, vēl **10.** ka **11.** nevajadzētu **12.** lūdza un lasīja **13.** vai nu, vai **14.** lai es nāktu **15.** ka **16.** darītu, varētu **17.** ietu mājās, ja **18.** ka **19.** tādēļ **20.** gan, gan

34 Relative Mood

A. Change the Mood—The translation is given first, and then relative mood.

1. Viņš bieži redz eņģeļus. Viņš bieži **redzot** eņģeļus. **2.** Viņa ir lūgusi, bet nav saņēmusi atbildi. Viņa **esot** lūgusi, bet **neesot** saņēmusi atbildi. **3.** Viņi piektdien nāks uz pasākumu. Viņi piektdien **nākšot** uz pasākumu. **4.** Jānis svētdien aicinās draugu nākt uz baznīcu. Jānis svētdien **aicinājšot** draugu nākt uz baznīcu. **5.** Viņš pateica savai mammai, ka mēs tiekamies. Viņš **esot** pateicis savai mammai, ka mēs tiekamies. **6.** Agnese ir tikusi kristīta citā baznīcā. Agnese **esot** tikusi kristīta citā baznīcā. **7.** Viņa lūdz katru dienu. Viņa **lūdzot** katru dienu. **8.** Viņi nepieņems Mormona Grāmatu. Viņi **nepieņemšot** Mormona Grāmatu. **9.** Viņš gribēja uzzināt, kas te dzīvo. Viņš **esot** gribējis uzzināt, kas te dzīvo. **10.** Tu esi gatavs(a) slēgt derības ar Dievu. Tu **esot** gatavs(a) slēgt derības ar Dievu.

C. Common Mistakes

1. Viņi šodien **nenākšot** laikapstākļu dēļ. **2.** Viņam **neesot** Mormona Grāmatas, tāpēc ka viņš to **esot iedevis** mātei. **3.** Elzai ir jāstrādā katru dienu, viņa **ceļoties** piecos no rīta. **4.** Viņa tur **būšot**. **5.** Linda **nemainīšot** lēmumu braukt uz ārzemēm. **6.** Jums **patikšot** dzīvot Latvijā, pat ziemā? **7.** Viņš **apmeklējot** skolu tālu no šejienes. **8.** Kārlis **esot** izdzēris visu ābolu sulu. **9.** Es **būšot** vienīgā amerikāniete. **10.** Viņa esot **lasījusi** Mormona Grāmatu.

D. Error Correction

1. Viņš katru rītu brokastīs **ēdot** pankūkas. **2.** Man **būšot** iespēja liecināt par savām kristībām. **3.** Viņi mūs **gaidīšot** divos. **4.** no error **5.** Mēs **palīdzēšot** slaukt govis. **6.** Abas māsas **esot** kalpojušas misijā tempļa laukumā. **7.** Pēc gulēšanas, es **atcerēšoties** to, kas man ir jādara. **8.** Evaņģēlijs viņam **esot** palīdzējis ar pārbaudījumiem. **9.** Kalniņu ģimene vakar vakarā **esot atgriezusies** no tempļa brauciena. **10.** Nauris svētdien **saņemšot** Ārona priesterību.

35 Transitive and Intransitive Verbs

A. Title

1. (I). The cat ran through the street. **2.** (T). Mom sang a beautiful song. **3.** (I). He sang wonderfully. **4.** (T) Grandma went to pick berries. **5.** (T) Many people desired to be baptized in order to receive forgiveness. **6.** (T) My brother likes to play drums. **7.** (I) Missionaries speak with people. **8.** (I) Portugal won the World Cup. **9.** (T) Anna likes listening to music. **10.** (I) John hopes that all will be well.

B. Transitive vs. Intransitive

1. pazaudēja (T) **2.** kristījies (I) **3.** kristīju (T) **4.** pazuda (I) **5.** salūza (I) **6.** salauza (T)

C. Common Errors

1. cimdiņus **2.** jūti **3.** plīts **4.** liecība **5.** sniegs **6.** Rīgā **7.** uz skolu **8.** sieru

D. Error Correction

1. Es **jūtos** slims(a). **2.** Viņš **salauza** roku. **3.** Sestdien mūsu klausītājs(a) **kristīsies**. **4.** Man **pazuda** maks. **5.** Rihards **paslēpa** savu cepuri. **6.** Mēs bieži **lasām** Mormona Grāmatu. **7.** Jums ir jāizlemj, vai **gribat** kristīties. **8.** Viņa nevarēja atcerēties, kur viņa **atstāja** savu **somiņu**.

E. Transitive vs. Intransitive

1. Intransitive **2.** Transitive (forest) **3.** Intransitive **4.** Transitive (you) **5.** Transitive (book) **6.** Intransitive **7.** Transitive (cake) **8.** Transitive (truth) **9.** Intransitive **10.** Transitive (keys)

F. Just (T) vs. Justies (I)

1. justies **2.** sajust **3.** sajuta **4.** justies **5.** jūtos **6.** jūti **7.** sajust **8.** jūtas

G. Reading

1. Intransitive **2.** Intransitive **3.** Intransitive **4.** Transitive **5.** Intransitive **6.** Transitive **7.** Transitive **8.** Intransitive **9.** Transitive **10.** Transitive **11.** Intransitive **12.** Transitive

Review: Judgment, Doubt, Emotion, Possibility, and Influence

A. Error Correction

Tas, ko mēs darām sabatā, **parāda**, cik liela ir mūsu apņemšanās godāt un pielūgt Dievu. Turot sabata dienu svētu, mēs parādām Dievam, ka **vēlamies** ievērot ar Viņu noslēgtās derības. Katru sabatu mēs dodamies uz Tā Kunga namu, lai Viņu pielūgtu. Svētdienās baznīca Rīgā **sākas** desmitos. Tur mēs pieņemam Svēto Vakarēdienu, **atceroties** par Jēzu Kristu un Viņa veikto Izpirkšanu. Valdis, mūsu klausītājs, sen **esot** kādreiz **bijis** mūsu baznīcas dievkalpojumā. Viņš arī teica, ka **būšot** šosvētdien. Renārs runāja ar Valdi un viņš **gribot kristīties**, jo viņš tagad zina, ka Mormona Grāmata ir patiesa.

B. Error Correction

1. smejoties, palīdzot ("Relative Mood") **2.** Izpirkšanu ("Transitive and Intransitive Verbs") **3.** tiksim glābti ("Relative Mood") **4.** ceļoties ("Relative Mood") **5.** Man, jābraucot ("Relative Mood") **6.** rakstīšot ("Relative Mood") **7.** zinot ("Relative Mood") **8.** izskatījās ("Transitive and Intransitive Verbs") **9.** izbeidz ("Transitive and Intransitive Verbs") **10.** palīdzot ("Relative Mood") **11.** nekožot ("Relative Mood"), baidos ("Transitive and Intransitive Verbs") **12.** kristījās ("Transitive and Intransitive Verbs") **13.** kustinot ("Relative Mood") **14.** esot ("Relative Mood"), nomazgājuši ("Transitive and Intransitive Verbs") **15.** esat**,** salauzis ("Transitive and Intransitive Verbs") **16.** pateicās par ("Transitive and Intransitive Verbs") **17.** neesot dzēris ("Relative Mood") **18.** jūties ("Transitive and Intransitive Verbs") **19.** spēlējam ("Transitive and Intransitive Verbs") **20.** par skolotāju ("Transitive and Intransitive Verbs")

C. Translation

1. parādījās **2.** sajūt **3.** sāksies, beigsies **4.** salauza **5.** baidoties **6.** esot izlēmis(usi) **7.** sēžu **8.** apsēdieties **9.** esot uzaudzinājusi **10.** izskatoties **11.** nolasīju **12.** jūtos **13.** sākt **14.** neizpildīju **15.** mani nobaidīja **16.** nevarot aiziet **17.** celt **18.** piecēlās, sāka **19.** uzaugāt **20.** meklēs

Index

Index

A

Absolute
  Singular and Plural 25
Accusative
  Prepositions 38
Accusative Case 16, 37
Adjectives 10, 74
  Agreement 10, 74
  Comparatives 78
  Dative Case 98
  Definite 75
  Indefinite 74
  Numbers 186
  Participles 156
  State of Being 34
  Tas/Tā 60
Adverb Participles 161
  Dative Absolute 162
Adverbs 10, 143
  Comparatives 143
  Days, Seasons, Years 176
  Participles 161
Alphabet 1
Ar 18, 200

B

Būt 33
  Debitive Mood 111

C

Cases 15
  Accusative 37
  Dative 96
  Genitive 54
  Locative 178
  Nominative 30
Commands 114
Commas 84, 187
Comparatives 78
Conditional Mood 196
  Perfect Tense 136
Conjugation 9, 123
  Reflexive Verbs 87
Conjunctions 200

D

Dates 175
Dative Case 17, 96
  Prepositions 98
Dative Construction 102
Dative Verbs 98
Days 174
Debitive Mood 109
Declension 9, 15
Demonstratives 60, 82
Diminutives 23
Directions 45
Direct Object 16, 21, 37
Distance 191
Duration 190

E

e/ē
  Narrow and Wide 4
Exclamation Points 116

F

Frequency 190

G

Gender 9
Genitive Case 17, 54
  Prepositions 55

I

Imperative Mood 114
Indirect Object 17, 21, 97
Instrumental Case 18
Intransitive 88, 215
  Past Active 157

K

Kāds 83
Kas 30, 82
  Relative Pronouns 64
Kļūt 34
Kurš 83

L

Lai 115, 197
Locative Case 18, 178

M

Months 175
Mood 9
  Conditional 196
  Debitive 109
  Imperative 114
  Relative 212

N

Need
  Dative Construction 104
Negation
  Commands 115
  Comparatives 79
  Conditional Mood 197
  Possession 102
  State of Being 34
  Verbs 125
Nominative Case 16, 30
Nouns 9, 21
  Gender 9, 15
  Irregular 22
  State of Being 34
Numbers 186
  Cardinal 186
  Ordinal 186

P

Participles 156
  Past Active 157
  Past Passive 156
  Present Active 158
  Present Passive 157
Particles 11
Passive Voice 139
Perfect Tense 135
Possession 17
  Asking about 45
  Dative Construction 102
  Genitive Case 55
  Lack 34, 56
  Possessive Pronouns 55, 61
Prefixes 129
Prepositions 10, 147
  Accusative 147
  Dative 149
  Genitive 148
  Prepositional Object 10
  Time 171
Pronouns 10, 60
  Demonstratives 60
  Emphatic Pronouns 63
  Negated Pronouns 65
  Personal Pronouns 61
  Possessive Pronouns 55, 61
  Possessive Reflexive Pronouns 63
  Reflexive Pronouns 62
  Relative Pronouns 64
Pronunciation 1

Q

Quantity Words
  Genitive Case 56
Questions 42
  Commonly Asked 45
  Dative Case 99
  Kas, Kurš, Kāds 82
  Yes/No 42
Question Words 42

R

Reflexive Verbs 87
Relative Mood 212
  Constructions 213
Relative Pronouns 84

S

Softening 3
Subject 9, 16, 21
  Dative 102
Subject Omission 139
Superlatives 80
  Pats 64

T

Tapt 140
Tense 9
That 202
The 10
Tikt 139
To Be 33
To Have 102, 112
To Like 103
Transitive 215
  Present Passive 157
Tu/Jūs 61

V

Vai 42, 201
Verbs 9, 122
  1st Conjugation 123
  2nd Conjugation 124
  3rd Conjugation 124
  Irregular 33, 125
  Locative 179
  Prefixes 129
  Reflexive 87
  Stems 122
  Synonyms 131
  Transitive and Intransitive 215
Vocative Case 18

W

Word Building
  Adjectives 75
  Nouns 23
Word Order 26
  Pronouns 10, 60
  Time 170

THE CHURCH OF
JESUS CHRIST
OF LATTER-DAY SAINTS